

# Geometry

January 29, 2025

## Contents

<b>I</b>	<b>Sheaves and Locally Ringed Spaces</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Presheaves and Sheaves</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	Presheaves . . . . .	7
1.2	Sheaves . . . . .	7
1.3	Examples of Sheaves . . . . .	9
1.4	Sheaves are determined by their values on a basis . . . . .	9
1.4.1	Flasque Sheaves . . . . .	10
1.5	Gluing Sheaves . . . . .	10
1.6	Stalks . . . . .	11
1.6.1	Examples of Stalks . . . . .	11
1.6.2	Working With Stalks . . . . .	12
1.7	Sheafification . . . . .	14
1.7.1	First Construction . . . . .	15
1.7.2	Second Construction . . . . .	16
1.7.3	Sheafification is left adjoint to the forgetful functor . . . . .	16
1.7.4	Sheafification of a presheaf of functions . . . . .	17
1.7.5	Constant Sheaf . . . . .	17
1.8	Direct and Inverse Images of Sheaves . . . . .	18
1.8.1	Direct Image . . . . .	18
1.8.2	Inverse Image . . . . .	19
1.8.3	Inverse-Direct Image Adjointness . . . . .	20
1.8.4	Proper Direct Image . . . . .	21
1.9	Sheaves and Etale Spaces . . . . .	22
1.9.1	Bundles . . . . .	22
1.9.2	Etale Spaces . . . . .	23
1.9.3	An equivalence of categories . . . . .	24
1.9.4	From <b>Top</b> / $X$ to <b>Sh</b> ( $X$ ) . . . . .	24
1.9.5	From <b>Psh</b> ( $X$ ) to <b>Etale</b> ( $X$ ) . . . . .	25
1.9.6	co-unit . . . . .	25
1.9.7	unit . . . . .	25
<b>2</b>	<b>Ringed Spaces</b>	<b>25</b>
2.1	Definition of a Ringed Space and a Locally Ringed Space . . . . .	25
2.2	Morphisms of (Locally) Ringed Spaces . . . . .	26
2.2.1	Open embedding . . . . .	28
2.2.2	Closed Immersions . . . . .	28
2.3	Gluing Ringed Spaces . . . . .	29
2.4	$\mathcal{O}_X$ -modules . . . . .	30
2.4.1	Quasi-coherent sheaves on an affine scheme . . . . .	33
<b>3</b>	<b>Sheaves of Modules</b>	<b>33</b>

<b>4</b>	<b>Sheaf Cohomology</b>	<b>34</b>
4.1	The zeroth Čech cohomology group of a covering	34
4.2	Čech cohomology	34
4.2.1	Čech Cohomology on a Separated Scheme	36
4.2.2	Cohomology of Projective Schemes	36
4.3	Sheaf Cohomology	36
4.4	Cohomology of Constant Sheaves	37
4.4.1	Singular Cohomology	37
4.4.2	Sheaf of Locally Constant $R$ -valued Functions	38
4.5	Cohomology as Derived Functor	39
<b>II</b>	<b>Algebraic Geometry</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Affine Algebraic Sets</b>	<b>39</b>
5.0.1	Maximal ideals defined by points	39
5.1	The Zariski Topology	40
5.2	Hilbert's Nullstellensatz	42
5.3	The Correspondence Between Radical Ideals and Affine Algebraic Sets	44
5.4	Changing the Underlying Field	44
5.5	Morphisms of Affine Algebraic Sets	45
5.5.1	Examples of morphisms	45
5.5.2	Parametrization of Affine Varieties	47
5.5.3	Morphisms are continuous with respect to the Zariski topology	49
5.5.4	Maps which are continuous with respect to the Zariski topology are not necessarily morphisms	50
5.6	Affine Algebraic Sets as Reduced Finitely-Generated $K$ -Algebras	50
5.6.1	Equivalence of Categories Between Affine Algebraic Sets and Reduced Finitely Generated $k$ -Algebras	51
5.7	Affine Algebraic Sets as Spaces with Functions	52
5.7.1	The Space with Functions of an Irreducible Affine Algebraic Set	52
5.7.2	The Functor from the Category of Irreducible Affine Algebraic Sets to the Category of Spaces with Functions	54
<b>6</b>	<b>Prevarieties</b>	<b>55</b>
6.1	Definition of Prevarieties	55
6.1.1	Open Subprevarieties	55
6.1.2	Function Field of a Prevariety	56
6.1.3	Closed Subprevarieties	56
6.2	Gluing Prevarieties	57
<b>7</b>	<b>Projective Varieties</b>	<b>58</b>
7.1	Homogeneous Polynomials	58
7.1.1	Dehomogenization and Homogenization	59
7.2	Definition of the Projective Space $\mathbb{P}^n(K)$	60
7.2.1	Gluing $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$ With $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$ to Make $\mathbb{P}^1(k)$	61
7.3	Projective Varieties	61
7.3.1	Segre Embedding	62
7.4	A Quartic Curve	63
<b>8</b>	<b>Irreducible Spaces</b>	<b>64</b>
8.1	Connected Spaces	64
8.2	Irreducible Affine Algebraic Sets	66
<b>9</b>	<b>Quasi-Compact and Noetherian Topological Spaces</b>	<b>66</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Dimension</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>11</b>	<b><math>\text{Spec } A</math> as a topological space</b>	<b>68</b>
11.1	Properties of $\text{Spec } A$	71
11.2	The Functor $A \mapsto \text{Spec } A$	72

<b>12 Spectrum of a Ring as a Locally Ringed Space</b>	<b>73</b>
12.1 Structure Sheaf on $\text{Spec } A$	73
12.2 Viewing $\text{Spec}$ and $\Gamma$ as Functors	76
<b>13 Schemes</b>	<b>77</b>
13.1 Definition of Schemes	77
13.2 Open subschemes	77
13.3 Morphisms to Affine Schemes	78
13.4 Morphisms to Projective Space	79
13.5 Basic properties of Schemes and Morphism of Schemes	80
13.5.1 Topological Properties	80
13.5.2 Noetherian Schemes	82
13.5.3 Fibre Product of Schemes	82
13.5.4 Diagonal Morphism and Graph	85
13.5.5 Separatedness	86
13.5.6 Universally Closed Morphisms	88
13.5.7 Valuation Criterion for Separatedness	90
13.5.8 Properties of Separated Morphisms	92
13.5.9 Finiteness Conditions	92
13.5.10 Affine, Finite, and Integral Morphisms	93
13.6 Reduced Schemes, Integral Schemes, and Function Fields	93
13.7 Divisors on Integral Schemes	94
13.8 Schemes of Finite Type over a Field	94
13.9 Subschemes and Immersions	95
13.10 Gluing of Schemes	95
13.10.1 Construction of $\mathbb{P}^n$	97
<b>14 Local Properties of Schemes</b>	<b>97</b>
14.1 Normal Schemes	97
14.2 The Tangent Space	98
14.3 Conormal Sheaf of an Immersion	99
14.4 Smooth Morphisms	99
14.4.1 Topological Motivation for Sites	100
14.5 Sheaves in the étale topology	102
14.6 The étale fundamental group	102
14.6.1 Étale Morphisms	102
14.7 Formally unramified/smooth/étale morphisms	103
<b>15 The étale topology</b>	<b>103</b>
15.1 Étale covers	104
<b>16 Proj</b>	<b>104</b>
16.1 Flatness	106
16.2 Functoriality of Proj	106
<b>17 Representable Functors</b>	<b>107</b>
<b>18 Functor of Points</b>	<b>107</b>
18.1 The $\mathbb{k}$ -valued Points of a Scheme $X$	108
18.1.1 A Surjectivity Criterion for Morphism of Schemes	109
18.2 Fiber Product of Pullback	109
18.3 Representable Functors	110
<b>19 One-Dimensional Schemes</b>	<b>110</b>
<b>20 Zariski's Main Theorem</b>	<b>110</b>
<b>21 Curves</b>	<b>112</b>
21.1 Genus of a curve	113
21.2 Models of Algebraic Curves	113

<b>22 Divisors</b>	<b>113</b>
22.1 Cartier Divisors . . . . .	113
22.2 Effective Cartier Divisors . . . . .	115
22.3 Weil Divisors . . . . .	115
<b>23 Vector Bundles</b>	<b>115</b>
23.1 Torsors and non-abelian cohomology . . . . .	115
<b>24 Serre Criterion for Affineness</b>	<b>116</b>
24.1 Non-Abelian Čech Cohomology . . . . .	118
24.1.1 Vector Bundles on $\mathbb{P}^1$ . . . . .	118
<b>25 Flat Morphisms and Dimension</b>	<b>119</b>
25.1 Hilbert Schemes . . . . .	119
<b>26 The Chow Ring</b>	<b>120</b>
26.1 Rational Equivalence . . . . .	120
26.2 Bezout’s Theorem . . . . .	121
<b>27 Weil Conjectures</b>	<b>122</b>
27.1 Statement of the Weil conjectures . . . . .	122
<b>28 Twenty-seven lines</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>29 Grassmanian</b>	<b>125</b>
29.0.1 Grassmanians: Algebraic Theory . . . . .	126
29.0.2 Grassmanians: Topological Theory . . . . .	126
<b>30 Linear Series</b>	<b>126</b>
 <b>III Differential Geometry</b>	 <b>126</b>
<b>31 Euclidean Spaces</b>	<b>126</b>
31.1 Taylor’s Theorem with Remainder . . . . .	128
31.2 Tangent Vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ as Derivations . . . . .	129
31.2.1 The Directional Derivative . . . . .	129
31.2.2 Germs of Functions . . . . .	130
31.2.3 Derivations at a Point . . . . .	130
31.2.4 Vector Fields . . . . .	132
31.3 Vector Fields as Derivations . . . . .	132
31.4 The Exterior Algebra of Multivectors . . . . .	133
31.5 Dual Spaces . . . . .	133
31.6 Differential Forms on $\mathbb{R}^n$ . . . . .	134
31.7 Jacobian . . . . .	135
<b>32 Higher Derivatives and Taylor’s Formula Via Multilinear Maps</b>	<b>136</b>
32.1 Differentiability . . . . .	136
32.1.1 Derivative of a Linear Map . . . . .	138
32.1.2 Chain Rule . . . . .	139
32.1.3 Derivative of a Chart . . . . .	140
32.2 $C^p$ maps . . . . .	140
32.3 Higher Derivatives as Symmetric Multilinear Maps . . . . .	144
32.4 Higher-Dimensional Taylor’s Formula: Motivation and Preparations . . . . .	146
32.4.1 Taylor’s Formula: Statement and Proof . . . . .	146
<b>33 Morse Lemma</b>	<b>149</b>
33.1 Separation of Variables . . . . .	150
<b>34 Construction of Vector Fields</b>	<b>152</b>
<b>35 Globalization via Bump Functions</b>	<b>152</b>
35.1 The Global Notion . . . . .	153

<b>36 Manifold with Corners</b>	<b>154</b>
36.1 Calculus on Sectors . . . . .	156
36.2 $C^p$ -Structure on Singular Strata . . . . .	157
36.3 Whitney's Extension Theorem . . . . .	157
<b>37 The Derivative of a <math>C^p</math>-Map</b>	<b>157</b>
37.0.1 The Chain Rule . . . . .	158
37.1 Properties of Derivative Mappings . . . . .	158
37.2 Parametric Curves and Velocity Vectors . . . . .	159
<b>38 Charts</b>	<b>159</b>
38.1 Construction of Products . . . . .	162
<b>39 Manifolds</b>	<b>162</b>
39.1 Compatible Charts . . . . .	163
39.1.1 An Atlas For a Product . . . . .	165
39.2 Examples of Smooth Manifolds . . . . .	165
39.2.1 Euclidean Space . . . . .	165
39.2.2 Right-Half Infinite Strip and the Right-Half Plane . . . . .	165
39.2.3 Manifolds of Dimension Zero . . . . .	166
39.2.4 Graph of a Smooth Function . . . . .	166
39.2.5 Circle $S^1$ . . . . .	167
39.2.6 Projective Line . . . . .	168
39.2.7 Sphere $S^2$ . . . . .	168
39.2.8 The Sphere $S^n$ . . . . .	169
39.2.9 Real Projective Plane . . . . .	170
39.2.10 Riemann Sphere . . . . .	170
39.2.11 Mobius Strip . . . . .	171
39.2.12 Grassmannians . . . . .	171
39.2.13 Grassmanians: Algebraic Theory . . . . .	172
39.2.14 Grassmanians: Topological Theory . . . . .	173
<b>40 Smooth Maps on a Manifold</b>	<b>173</b>
40.1 Smooth Functions . . . . .	173
40.2 Smooth Maps Between Manifolds . . . . .	174
40.2.1 Diffeomorphisms . . . . .	175
40.2.2 Smoothness in Terms of Components . . . . .	175
40.3 Germs of $C^\infty$ functions . . . . .	176
40.4 Examples of Smooth Maps . . . . .	176
40.4.1 Diffeomorphism from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to the open unit ball $B_1(0)$ . . . . .	178
40.5 Inverse Function Theorem . . . . .	178
<b>41 Tangent Spaces</b>	<b>178</b>
41.1 The Tangent Space at a Point . . . . .	179
41.2 Partial Derivatives . . . . .	180
41.2.1 Polar Coordinates . . . . .	180
41.3 Immersion, Embedding, Submersion . . . . .	181
41.3.1 Critical Point . . . . .	181
41.4 Tangent Bundle . . . . .	182
41.5 Vector Bundles . . . . .	182
41.5.1 Gluing . . . . .	183
41.5.2 Smooth Sections . . . . .	184
41.5.3 Whitney Sum . . . . .	184
<b>42 Differential Forms</b>	<b>184</b>
42.1 Differential 1-Forms . . . . .	184
42.1.1 The Differential of a Function . . . . .	184

<b>43 Bump Functions and Partitions of Unity</b>	<b>185</b>
43.1 $C^\infty$ Bump Functions	185
43.1.1 Extending $C^\infty$ Bump Functions to $M$	186
43.1.2 $C^\infty$ Extension of a Function	186
43.2 Partitions of Unity	186
43.3 Existence of a Partition of Unity	187
<b>44 Integration on Manifolds</b>	<b>188</b>
44.1 Riemann Integral of a Function on $\mathbb{R}^n$	188
44.2 Integrability Conditions	189
44.3 The Integral of an $n$ -Form on $\mathbb{R}^n$	189
44.4 Integral of a Differential Form over a Manifold	190
<b>45 Quotients and Gluing</b>	<b>191</b>
45.1 The Quotient Topology	191
45.1.1 Continuity of a Map on a Quotient	191
45.1.2 Identification of a Subset to a Point	192
45.2 Open Equivalence Relations	192
45.3 Quotients by Group Actions	193
45.4 Möbius Strip in $\mathbb{R}^3$	195
45.4.1 Embedding	195
45.5 Construction of Manifolds From Gluing Data	195
45.5.1 Mobius Strip	197
<b>46 Ringed Spaces</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>47 Equivalence between <math>C^p</math>-structures and maximal <math>C^p</math>-atlases</b>	<b>198</b>
47.1 From $C^p$ -Structures to Maximal $C^p$ -Atlases	199
47.2 From Maximal $C^p$ -Atlases to $C^p$ -Structures	199
<b>48 deRham Cohomology</b>	<b>200</b>
48.1 de Rham Complex	200
48.1.1 Examples of de Rham Cohomology	200
48.2 The $C^\infty$ Hairy Ball Theorem	201
<b>49 Exercises</b>	<b>203</b>
49.1 $SL_2(\mathbb{R})$	203
49.2 $SO_2(\mathbb{R})$	203
49.3 Vector Field in $\mathbb{R}^3$	203
49.4 Lie Groups	204

## Part I

# Sheaves and Locally Ringed Spaces

## 1 Presheaves and Sheaves

Let  $X$  be a topological space.

### 1.1 Presheaves

A **presheaf**  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  assigns to each open subset  $U \subseteq X$  a set  $\mathcal{F}(U)$ , and to every pair of open subsets  $V \subseteq U$  of  $X$ , a function  $\rho_{U,V}: \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}(V)$ , called the **restriction map**, such that

1.  $\rho_{U,U}$  is the identity map for all open sets  $U$  of  $X$ ,
2.  $\rho_{V,W} \circ \rho_{U,V} = \rho_{U,W}$  for all open sets  $W \subseteq V \subseteq U$  of  $X$ .

The elements  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  are called **sections** of  $\mathcal{F}$  over  $U$  or sections in  $\mathcal{F}(U)$ . Elements of  $\mathcal{F}(X)$  are referred to as *global* sections. Given open subsets  $V \subseteq U$  of  $X$  and a section  $s$  in  $\mathcal{F}(U)$ , we often denote its restriction in  $\mathcal{F}(V)$  by  $s|_V = \rho_{U,V}(s)$ . Very often we will also write  $\Gamma(U, \mathcal{F})$  instead of  $\mathcal{F}(U)$ .

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  be presheaves on  $X$ . A morphism of presheaves  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  is a family of maps  $\varphi_U: \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{G}(U)$  for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$  such that for all open subsets  $V \subseteq U$  of  $X$  the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{F}(U) & \xrightarrow{\varphi_U} & \mathcal{G}(U) \\ \rho_{U,V} \downarrow & & \downarrow \rho'_{U,V} \\ \mathcal{F}(V) & \xrightarrow{\varphi_V} & \mathcal{G}(V) \end{array}$$

is commutative. The composite of morphisms  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  and  $\psi: \mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$  is defined in the obvious way, namely we set  $(\psi \circ \varphi)_U = \psi_U \circ \varphi_U$  for all open sets  $U$  of  $X$ . We obtain the category of presheaves on  $X$  which we denote by  $\text{Psh}(X)$ . We often simplify our notation by denoting the composite of  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  by  $\varphi\psi$  instead of  $\varphi \circ \psi$ . Furthermore, we often drop  $U$  from subscript in  $\varphi_U$  and simply write  $\varphi$  whenever context is clear.

Using the language of category theory, we can define presheaves in a very concise way. Let  $X_{\text{T}}$  be the category whose objects are open sets  $U$  of  $X$  and whose morphisms are the inclusion maps. Then a presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  is just a contravariant functor from  $X_{\text{T}}$  to  $\text{Set}$ , and morphisms of presheaves are natural transformations between functors. We can also replace the category  $\text{Set}$  with any other category  $C$  to obtain the notion of a presheaf with values in  $C$ . The case we are interested in the most is the case where  $C$  is an Abelian category (for example,  $C$  is the category of abelian groups).

### 1.2 Sheaves

Presheaves on  $X$  are top-down constructions; we can restrict information from larger to smaller sets. However, many objects in mathematics are bottom-up constructions; they are defined locally, which we then piece together to obtain something global. Presheaves do not provide the means to deduce global properties from the properties we find locally in the open sets of  $X$ . This is where the idea of sheaves come in.

**Definition 1.1.** Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$ . Consider the following two conditions that  $\mathcal{F}$  may satisfy:

1. (Local Uniqueness) For every open subset  $U$  and for every open covering  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $U$ , if  $s, t \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $s|_{U_i} = t|_{U_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ , then we must have  $s = t$ .
2. (Gluing of Compatible Local Data) For every open subset  $U$ , for every open covering  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $U$ , and for every tuple  $(s_i) \in \prod_i \mathcal{F}(U_i)$  which is locally compatible in the sense that

$$s_i|_{U_i \cap U_j} = s_j|_{U_i \cap U_j}$$

for all  $i, j \in I$ , there exists a section  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $s_i = s|_{U_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ .

We say  $\mathcal{F}$  is **separated** if it satisfies the local uniqueness condition and we say  $\mathcal{F}$  is a **sheaf** if in addition to being separated it also satisfies the gluing of compatible local data condition. In other words,  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf if satisfies the following condition:

For every open subset  $U$ , for every open covering  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $U$ , and for every tuple  $(s_i) \in \prod_i \mathcal{F}(U_i)$  which is locally compatible, there exists a *unique* section  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $s_i = s|_{U_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ .

A morphism of sheaves is just a morphism of presheaves. The category of all sheaves on  $X$ , denoted by  $\text{Set}(X)$ , forms a full subcategory of the category of all presheaves on  $X$ . If  $C$  is an abelian category (for example the category of abelian groups), then often denote the category of all  $C$ -valued sheaves as  $\text{Ab}(X)$ .

*Remark 1.* If we apply the sheaf axiom to the empty covering of the empty set, we find that  $\mathcal{F}(\emptyset) = \{o\}$  is a singleton set. More canonically,  $\mathcal{F}(\emptyset)$  is the terminal object in the category of sets (which is unique up to unique isomorphism). If  $\mathcal{F}$  is an abelian sheaf, then the sheaf axiom implies  $\mathcal{F}(\emptyset) = 0$  which is the terminal object in an abelian category.

**Example 1.1.** Let  $E$  be a set. A presheaf of functions on  $X$  with values in  $E$  is a presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  such that  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  consists of functions from  $U$  to  $E$  for all open sets  $U$  of  $X$ . Given such a presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$ , note the only thing preventing  $\mathcal{F}$  from being a sheaf is the *existence* of global functions since *uniqueness* is already guaranteed. Indeed, suppose  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  is an open covering of an open set  $U$  of  $X$ , and suppose that for all  $i \in I$  we have  $f_i \in \mathcal{F}(U_i)$  such that  $f_i|_{U_{ij}} = f_j|_{U_{ij}}$  for all  $i, j \in I$  (here we use the notation  $U_{ij} = U_i \cap U_j$ ). Then if  $f, g \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  satisfy  $f|_{U_i} = f_i = g|_{U_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ , then we must have  $f = g$ . This is because  $f = g$  if and only if  $f(x) = g(x)$  for all  $x \in U$ , and this is true since  $x \in U_{i(x)}$  for some  $i(x) \in I$  (depending on  $x$ ), hence  $f(x) = f_{i(x)}(x) = g(x)$ .

We now give a reformulation of the sheaf axiom in terms of arrows. Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$ , let  $U$  be an open set of  $X$ , and let  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an open covering of  $U$ . We define maps

$$\begin{aligned} \rho : \mathcal{F}(U) &\rightarrow \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{F}(U_i), & s &\mapsto (s|_{U_i})_i \\ \sigma : \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{F}(U_i) &\rightarrow \prod_{(i,j) \in I \times I} \mathcal{F}(U_i \cap U_j), & (s_i) &\mapsto (s_i|_{U_i \cap U_j})_{(i,j)} \\ \sigma' : \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{F}(U_i) &\rightarrow \prod_{(i,j) \in I \times I} \mathcal{F}(U_i \cap U_j), & (s_i)_i &\mapsto (s_j|_{U_i \cap U_j})_{(i,j)} \end{aligned}$$

The presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf, if it satisfies for all  $U$  and all open coverings  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  the following condition:  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  (equipped with  $\rho$ ) is the equalizer of the diagram

$$\prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{F}(U_i) \begin{matrix} \xrightarrow{\sigma} \\ \xrightarrow{\sigma'} \end{matrix} \prod_{(i,j) \in I \times I} \mathcal{F}(U_i \cap U_j)$$

This means that the map  $\rho$  is injective and that its image is the set of elements  $(s_i) \in \prod_i \mathcal{F}(U_i)$  such that  $\sigma((s_i)) = \sigma'((s_i))$ .

For presheaves of abelian groups (or with values in any abelian category) we can reformulate the definition of a sheaf as follows: A presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf if and only if for all open subsets  $U$  and all coverings  $\{U_i\}$  of  $U$  the sequence of abelian groups

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{F}(U) & \longrightarrow & \prod_i \mathcal{F}(U_i) & \longrightarrow & \prod_{i,j} \mathcal{F}(U_{ij}) \\ & & s & \longmapsto & (s|_{U_i})_i & & \\ & & & & (s_i)_i & \longmapsto & (s_i|_{U_i \cap U_j} - s_j|_{U_i \cap U_j})_{i,j} \end{array}$$

is exact.

**Proposition 1.1.** Let  $\mathcal{F} \subseteq \mathcal{G}$  be abelian sheaves on  $X$ . Then  $\mathcal{G}/\mathcal{F}$  is separated.



*Proof.* Let  $U$  be an open subset of  $X$ . Suppose that there exists a nonzero  $\bar{t} \in \mathcal{G}(U)/\mathcal{F}(U)$  (represented by  $t \in \mathcal{G}(U)$ ) and an open cover  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $U$  such that  $\bar{t}|_{U_i} = 0$  for all  $i$ . This means that  $t|_{U_i} \in \mathcal{F}(U_i)$  for all  $i \in I$ . Since  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf and since  $(t|_{U_i})$  is locally compatible, the  $t|_{U_i}$  glue to a unique section in  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ , and since  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf, we must have  $t = s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ . It follows that  $\bar{t} = 0$ .  $\square$

**Example 1.2.** To see why  $\mathcal{G}/\mathcal{F}$  need not be a sheaf, consider the case where  $A = \mathbb{k}[x, y, z, w]$ ,  $I = \langle xw - yz \rangle$ ,  $\bar{A} := A/I$ , and  $X = \text{Spec } A$ . Let  $\mathcal{O}$  be the structure sheaf for  $X$ , let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the  $\mathcal{O}$ -ideal corresponding to the ideal  $I$  of  $A$ , and let  $\bar{\mathcal{O}} := \mathcal{O}/\mathcal{I}$ . Then for the open subset  $U = D(x, z)$ , we have  $\mathcal{O}(U) = A$  and  $\mathcal{I}(U) = I$ . On the other hand, the pair  $(y/x, w/z)$  represents an element in  $\bar{\mathcal{O}}(U)$  which does not come from an element in  $\mathcal{O}(U)/\mathcal{I}(U) = \bar{A}$ . In general,  $\bar{\mathcal{O}}$  is the unique sheaf on  $X$  such that  $\bar{\mathcal{O}}(D(s)) = \bar{A}_s$  for all  $s \in A$ . In particular,  $\bar{\mathcal{O}}(X) = \bar{A}$  and

$$\bar{\mathcal{O}}(U) = \bar{A}_x \times_{\bar{A}_{xz}} \bar{A}_z$$

and this strictly contains  $\bar{A}$ .

### 1.3 Examples of Sheaves

We now discuss several examples of sheaves.

**Example 1.3.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be topological spaces. For each open subset  $U$  of  $X$ , we define

$$\mathcal{C}_{X;Y}(U) := \{f : U \rightarrow Y \mid f \text{ is continuous}\}.$$

Then  $\mathcal{C}_{X;Y}$  is a presheaf of  $Y$ -valued functions on  $X$ . In fact, more is true:  $\mathcal{C}_{X;Y}$  is a sheaf. Indeed, let  $\{U_i\}$  be an open covering of  $U$ . If  $f : U \rightarrow Y$  is a continuous function, then by restriction to  $U_i$ , we get continuous maps  $f_i : U_i \rightarrow Y$  such that  $f_i|_{U_i \cap U_j} = f_j|_{U_i \cap U_j}$  for all  $i$  and  $j$ . Conversely, if we are given continuous maps  $f_i : U_i \rightarrow Y$  that agree on the overlaps (that is,  $f_i|_{U_i \cap U_j} = f_j|_{U_i \cap U_j}$  for all  $i$  and  $j$ ) then there is a unique set-theoretic map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  satisfying  $f|_{U_i} = f_i$  for all  $i$  and it is continuous. Indeed, for any open  $V \subseteq Y$  we have that  $f^{-1}(V)$  is open in  $U$  because  $f^{-1}(V) \cap U_i = f_i^{-1}(V)$  is open in  $U_i$  for every  $i$ .

**Example 1.4.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces and let  $X$  be an open subspace of  $V$ . Let  $\alpha \in \hat{\mathbb{N}}_0$ . For each open subset  $U$  of  $X$ , we define

$$\mathcal{C}_{X;W}^\alpha(U) := \{f : U \rightarrow W \mid f \text{ is } C^\alpha \text{ map}\}.$$

Then  $\mathcal{C}_{X;W}^\alpha$  is a sheaf of functions on  $X$ . It is a sheaf of  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces. If  $W = \mathbb{R}$ , then we simply write  $\mathcal{C}_X^\alpha$ .

**Example 1.5.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{C}$ -vector spaces and let  $X$  be an open subspace of  $V$ . For each open subset  $U$  of  $X$ , we define

$$\mathcal{O}_{X;W}(U) := \mathcal{O}_{X;W}^{\text{hol}}(U) := \{f : U \rightarrow W \mid f \text{ is holomorphic}\}.$$

Then  $\mathcal{O}_{X;W}$  (with the usual restriction maps) is a sheaf of  $\mathbb{C}$ -vector spaces.

### 1.4 Sheaves are determined by their values on a basis

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a sheaf on  $X$  and let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a basis for the topology on  $X$ . If we know what  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  is for every element  $U$  of  $\mathcal{B}$ , then we can use the sheaf property to determine  $\mathcal{F}(V)$  on an arbitrary open set  $V$  of  $X$ . We simply cover  $V$  by elements of  $\mathcal{B}$ . Here is a more systematic way of saying this:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}(V) &= \left\{ (s_U)_U \in \prod_{\substack{U \in \mathcal{B} \\ U \subseteq V}} \mathcal{F}(U) \mid \text{for } U' \subseteq U \text{ both in } \mathcal{B} \text{ we have } s_U|_{U'} = s_{U'} \right\} \\ &= \lim_{\substack{U \in \mathcal{B} \\ U \subseteq V}} \mathcal{F}(U). \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

Using this observation, we see that it suffices to define a sheaf on a basis  $\mathcal{B}$  of open sets of the topology of a topological space  $X$ : Consider  $\mathcal{B}$  as a full subcategory of  $\mathbf{O}(X)$ , then a presheaf on  $\mathcal{B}$  is a contravariant functor  $\mathcal{F} : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ . Every such presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $\mathcal{B}$  can be extended to a presheaf  $\mathcal{F}'$  on  $X$  by using (1) as a definition.

**Example 1.6.** Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be the presheaf of bounded continuous functions on  $\mathbb{R}$  with values in  $\mathbb{R}$ . Then  $\mathcal{F}$  is not a sheaf. Indeed, for each  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$  let  $U_i = (i, i+2)$  and  $f_i = x|_{U_i}$ . Then  $\{U_i\}$  is a covering of  $\mathbb{R}$  and there is no bounded continuous function  $f$  on  $\mathbb{R}$  such that  $f|_{U_i} = f_i$  for all  $i$ . The sheafification of  $\mathcal{F}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathcal{C}_{\mathbb{R};\mathbb{R}}$ .

### 1.4.1 Flasque Sheaves

**Definition 1.2.** Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a sheaf on  $X$ . We say  $\mathcal{F}$  is **flasque** (or **flabby**) if all restriction maps  $\mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}(V)$  for  $V \subseteq U \subseteq X$  open are surjective.

*Remark 2.* Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a continuous map and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a sheaf on  $Y$ . If  $\mathcal{G}$  is flasque, then  $f_*\mathcal{G}$  is flasque.

*Remark 3.* Let  $X$  be an irreducible topological space and let  $A$  be a set. Then the constant sheaf  $\underline{A}$  attached to  $A$  is flasque. Indeed, since  $X$  is irreducible,  $\underline{A}$  is given by

$$\underline{A}(U) = \begin{cases} A & \text{if } U \neq \emptyset \\ \emptyset & \text{if } U = \emptyset \end{cases}$$

for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ .

## 1.5 Gluing Sheaves

**Proposition 1.2.** Let  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an open cover of  $X$ . For all  $i \in I$ , let  $\mathcal{F}_i$  be a sheaf on  $U_i$ . Assume that for each pair  $(i, j)$  of indices we are given isomorphisms  $\varphi_{ij}: \mathcal{F}_j|_{U_{ij}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i|_{U_{ij}}$  satisfying for all  $i, j, k \in I$  the “cocycle condition”  $\varphi_{ik} = \varphi_{ij} \circ \varphi_{jk}$  on  $U_{ijk}$ . Then there exists a sheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  and for all  $i \in I$  isomorphisms  $\psi_i: \mathcal{F}|_{U_i} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i$  such that  $\varphi_{ij} \circ \psi_j = \psi_i$  on  $U_{ij}$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . Moreover,  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\psi_i$  are uniquely determined up to unique isomorphism by these conditions.

*Proof.* Let  $U$  be an open subset of  $X$ . We define  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  to be the set of collections of sections which are locally compatible:

$$\mathcal{F}(U) = \left\{ (s_i)_{i \in I} \in \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{F}_i(U_i \cap U) \mid s_i|_{U_{ij} \cap U} = \varphi_{ij}(s_j)|_{U_{ij} \cap U} \text{ for all } i, j \in I. \right\} \quad (2)$$

The restriction maps are defined pointwise. Thus if  $V$  is an open subset of  $U$ , then we set  $(s_i)|_V = (s_i|_{U_i \cap V})$ . The cocycle ensures that (2) is well-defined. By replacing  $U_i$  with  $U_i \cap U$  if necessary, we may assume that  $U_i \subseteq U$  for all  $i \in I$ . In this case, (2) has the slightly simpler description:

$$\mathcal{F}(U) = \left\{ (s_i) \in \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{F}_i(U_i) \mid s_i|_{U_{ij}} = \varphi_{ij}(s_j)|_{U_{ij}} \text{ for all } i, j \in I. \right\}$$

Let us verify that  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf. Let  $\{U_{i'}\}_{i' \in I'}$  be an open cover of  $U$  and for each  $i' \in I'$  let  $(s_{i,i'})_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{F}(U_{i'})$  such that

$$(s_{i,i'})|_{U_{ii'j'}} = (s_{i,j'})|_{U_{ii'j'}} \quad (3)$$

for all  $i', j' \in I'$ . We want to show that there exists a unique element  $(s_i) \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $(s_i)|_{U_{i'}} = (s_{i,i'})$  for all  $i' \in I'$ .

Note that (3) says for each  $i \in I$ , we have  $s_{i,i'}|_{U_{ii'j'}} = s_{i,j'}|_{U_{ii'j'}}$  for all  $i', j' \in I'$ . Thus for each  $i \in I$ , since  $\mathcal{F}_i$  is a sheaf and  $\{U_{ii'}\}_{i' \in I'}$  is an open cover of  $U_i$ , we use the fact that  $\mathcal{F}_i$  is a sheaf to obtain a unique element  $s_i \in \mathcal{F}_i(U_i)$  such that  $s_i|_{U_{ii'}} = s_{i,i'}$  for all  $i' \in I'$ . Thus we obtain a unique sequence of sections  $(s_i) \in \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{F}_i(U_i)$  such that  $(s_i)|_{U_{i'}} = (s_{i,i'})$  for all  $i' \in I'$ . This establishes uniqueness, so the only thing left to do is to check that  $(s_i) \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ . For each  $i, j \in I$ , note that  $\{U_{ij i'}\}_{i' \in I'}$  is an open cover of  $U_{ij}$  and

$$\begin{aligned} s_i|_{U_{ij i'}} &= s_{i,i'}|_{U_{ij i'}} \\ &= \varphi_{ij}(s_{j,i'})|_{U_{ij i'}} \\ &= \varphi_{ij}(s_{j,i'}|_{U_{ij i'}}) \\ &= \varphi_{ij}(s_j|_{U_{ij i'}}) \\ &= \varphi_{ij}(s_j)|_{U_{ij i'}} \end{aligned}$$

for all  $i' \in I'$ . Thus by the uniqueness part in the sheaf axiom (for  $\mathcal{F}_i$ ), we must have  $s_i|_{U_{ij}} = \varphi_{ij}(s_j)|_{U_{ij}}$ . It follows that  $(s_i) \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  as claimed.

Now for each  $i \in I$  we define  $\psi_i: \mathcal{F}|_{U_i} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i$  by

$$\psi_i((s_j)) = s_i$$

for all  $(s_j)_{j \in I} \in \mathcal{F}(U_i \cap U)$  for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ . It is straightforward to check that  $\psi_i$  is an isomorphism of sheaves whose inverse is given by

$$\psi_i^{-1}(s) = (\varphi_{ji}(s|_{U_j \cap U}))_{j \in J}$$

for all  $s \in \mathcal{F}_i(U)$  for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ . Finally, that  $\varphi_{ij} \circ \psi_j = \psi_i$  on  $U_{ij}$  for all  $i, j \in I$  follows from a direct calculation:

$$\begin{aligned} (\varphi_{ij} \circ \psi_j)((s_k)_{k \in I}) &= \varphi_{ij}(\psi_j(s_k)_{k \in I}) \\ &= \varphi_{ij}(s_j) \\ &= s_i \\ &= \psi_i((s_k)_{k \in I}). \end{aligned}$$

□

## 1.6 Stalks

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$ . Suppose that for each  $x \in X$ , there exists a smallest neighborhood containing  $x$ , say  $U_x$ . Then we can determine the sheaf completely by computing the values of the sheaf on these open sets. Indeed, then if  $U$  is an open subset of  $X$ , then  $U = \bigcup_{x \in X} U_x$  where the union is disjoint. Therefore the sheaf axiom tells us

$$\mathcal{F}(U) \cong \prod_{x \in U} \mathcal{F}(U_x).$$

The problem of course is that almost all of the topological spaces we are interested in won't have a smallest open neighborhood of  $x$ . Another way of saying this is that the limit of the diagram which consists of all open neighborhoods of  $x$  will not exist. On the other hand, colimits in **Set** do exist, so there's nothing stopping us from looking at colimits in the diagram of  $\mathcal{F}$ -images of neighborhoods of  $x$ .

**Definition 1.3.** Let  $S$  be a subset of  $X$ . Define  $\mathbf{N}(S)$  to be the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{O}(X)$  whose objects are open neighborhoods of  $S$  and whose morphisms are inclusions. If  $x$  is a point of  $X$ , then we will denote  $\mathbf{N}(\{x\})$  by  $\mathbf{N}(x)$ . By restricting  $\mathcal{F}$  to  $\mathbf{N}(S)$ , we obtain a contravariant functor (which we again denote by  $\mathcal{F}$ ) from  $\mathbf{N}(S)$  to **Set**. Note that the category  $\mathbf{N}(S)^{\text{op}}$  is filtered since for any two neighborhoods  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  of  $S$  there exists a neighborhood  $U$  of  $S$  with  $U_1 \cap U_2 \supseteq U$  (namely  $U = U_1 \cap U_2$ ) and since there is only one morphism between any two objects.

1. For each  $x \in X$ , we define the **stalk** of  $\mathcal{F}$  at  $x$ , denoted  $\mathcal{F}_x$ , to be the filtered colimit

$$\mathcal{F}_x = \text{colim}_{U \in \mathbf{N}(x)} \mathcal{F}(U).$$

More concretely, one has

$$\mathcal{F}_x = \{(U, s) \mid U \text{ is an open neighborhood of } x \text{ and } s \in \mathcal{F}(U)\} / \sim,$$

where two pairs  $(U_1, s_1)$  and  $(U_2, s_2)$  are equivalent if there exists an open neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$  such that  $U \subseteq U_1 \cap U_2$  and  $s_1|_U = s_2|_U$ . The equivalence class corresponding to  $(U, s)$  at  $x$  is denoted  $[U, s]_x$ , or even more simply by  $[s]_x$  if  $U$  is understood from context. Elements in  $\mathcal{F}_x$  are called **germs** at  $x$ . When we don't need to choose a particular representative for a germ at  $x$ , then we often use Greek letters like  $\sigma_x$  to denote germs at  $x$ .

2. For each open subset  $U \subseteq X$  we obtain a canonical map  $\mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_x$  given by  $s \mapsto [s]_x$ . Let  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  be a morphism of presheaves on  $X$ . Then for each  $x \in X$ , we obtain a map  $\varphi_x: \mathcal{F}_x \rightarrow \mathcal{G}_x$  where  $\varphi_x := \text{colim}_{U \in \mathbf{N}(x)} \varphi_U$ . In particular,  $\varphi_x$  is defined by

$$\varphi_x([U, s]_x) = [U, \varphi_U(s)]_x$$

This map is well-defined since  $\varphi$  commutes with restriction maps. We obtain a functor  $\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_x$  from the category of presheaves on  $X$  to the category of sets.

*Remark 4.* If  $\mathcal{F}$  is a presheaf of functions, one should think of the stalk  $\mathcal{F}_x$  as the set of functions defined in some unspecified open neighborhood of  $x$ .

*Remark 5.* If  $\mathcal{F}$  is a presheaf on  $X$  with values in  $\mathbf{C}$ , where  $\mathbf{C}$  is any category in which filtered colimits exist (for instance the category of groups, of rings, of  $R$ -modules, or  $R$ -algebras, etc...), then the stalk  $\mathcal{F}_x$  is an object in  $\mathbf{C}$  and we obtain a functor  $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \mathcal{F}_x$  from the category of presheaves on  $X$  with values in  $\mathbf{C}$  to the category  $\mathbf{C}$ . Let us make this more precise for a sheaf  $\mathcal{G}$  of groups. The group law of  $\mathcal{G}_x$  is defined as follows: Let  $g, h \in \mathcal{G}_x$  be represented by  $(U, s)$  and  $(V, t)$ . Choose an open neighborhood  $W$  of  $x$  with  $W \subseteq U \cap V$ . Then  $(U, s) \sim (W, s|_W)$  and  $(V, t) \sim (W, t|_W)$  and the product  $gh$  is the equivalence class of  $(W, (s|_W)(t|_W))$ . In the same way addition and multiplication is defined on the stalk for a sheaf of rings.

### 1.6.1 Examples of Stalks

**Example 1.7.** Let  $\mathcal{O}$  be the sheaf of real analytic functions on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and let  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  be a point in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Suppose  $[U, f]_{\mathbf{x}}$  is a germ at  $\mathbf{x}$ . Since  $f$  is analytic at  $\mathbf{x}$ , we there exists an open neighborhood  $V$  of  $\mathbf{x}$  such that  $V \subseteq U$  and

such that  $f|_V$  is equal to its Taylor series at  $\mathbf{x}$ : for each  $\mathbf{y} \in V$ , we have

$$f(\mathbf{y}) = f(\mathbf{x}) + \sum_i \partial_{x_i} f(\mathbf{x})(y_i - x_i) + \cdots + \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_k} \partial_{x_{i_1}} \cdots \partial_{x_{i_k}} f(\mathbf{x})(y_{i_1} - x_{i_1}) \cdots (y_{i_k} - x_{i_k}) + \cdots$$

Two real analytic functions  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  defined in open neighborhoods  $U_1$  and  $U_2$ , respectively, of  $p$  agree on some open neighborhood  $V \subseteq U_1 \cap U_2$  if and only if they have the same Taylor expansion around  $p$ . So we have a well-defined map  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{R}^n, p} \rightarrow$

**Example 1.8.** (Stalk of the sheaf of continuous functions) Let  $X$  be a topological space, let  $\mathcal{C}_X$  be the sheaf of continuous  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued functions on  $X$ , and let  $x \in X$ . Then

$$\mathcal{C}_{X,x} = \{(U, f) \mid U \text{ is an open neighborhood of } x \text{ and } f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \text{ is continuous}\} / \sim,$$

where  $(U, f) \sim (V, g)$  if there exists an open subset  $W$  of  $U \cap V$  such that  $x \in W$  and  $f|_W = g|_W$ . As  $\mathcal{C}_X$  is a sheaf of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras,  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra.

If the germ  $s \in \mathcal{C}_{X,x}$  of a continuous function at  $x$  is represented by  $(U, f)$ , then  $s(x) := f(x) \in \mathbb{R}$  is independent of the choice of representative  $(U, f)$ . We obtain an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra homomorphism

$$\text{ev}_x : \mathcal{C}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad s \mapsto s(x),$$

which is surjective because  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$  contains in particular the germs of all constant functions. Let  $\mathfrak{m}_x := \text{Ker}(\text{ev}_x)$ . Then  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  is a maximal ideal because  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}/\mathfrak{m}_x \cong \mathbb{R}$  is a field. Let  $s \in \mathcal{C}_{X,x} \setminus \mathfrak{m}_x$  be represented by  $(U, f)$ . Then  $f(x) \neq 0$ . By shrinking  $U$  we may assume that  $f(y) \neq 0$  for all  $y \in U$  because  $f$  is continuous (take  $(X \setminus f^{-1}\{0\}) \cap U$ ). Hence  $1/f$  exists and hence  $s$  is a unit in  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$ . Therefore the complement of  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  consists of units of  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$ . This shows that  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$  is a local ring with maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{m}_x$ .

**Example 1.9.** (Stalk of the sheaf of  $C^\alpha$  functions) Let  $X$  be a topological space, let  $\mathcal{C}_X$  be the sheaf of continuous  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued functions on  $X$ , and let  $x \in X$ . Then

$$\mathcal{C}_{X,x} = \{(U, f) \mid U \text{ is an open neighborhood of } x \text{ and } f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \text{ is continuous}\} / \sim,$$

where  $(U, f) \sim (V, g)$  if there exists an open subset  $W$  of  $U \cap V$  such that  $x \in W$  and  $f|_W = g|_W$ . As  $\mathcal{C}_X$  is a sheaf of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras,  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra.

If the germ  $s \in \mathcal{C}_{X,x}$  of a continuous function at  $x$  is represented by  $(U, f)$ , then  $s(x) := f(x) \in \mathbb{R}$  is independent of the choice of representative  $(U, f)$ . We obtain an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra homomorphism

$$e_x : \mathcal{C}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad s \mapsto s(x),$$

which is surjective because  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$  contains in particular the germs of all constant functions. Let  $\mathfrak{m}_x := \text{Ker}(e_x)$ . Then  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  is a maximal ideal because  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}/\mathfrak{m}_x \cong \mathbb{R}$  is a field. We claim that this is the unique maximal ideal of  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$ , i.e. that  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$  is a local ring with maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{m}_x$ .

To prove this, we need to show that the complement of  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  consists of units of  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$ . Let  $s \in \mathcal{C}_{X,x} \setminus \mathfrak{m}_x$  be represented by  $(U, f)$ . Then  $f(x) \neq 0$ . By shrinking  $U$  we may assume that  $f(y) \neq 0$  for all  $y \in U$  because  $f$  is continuous (take  $(X \setminus f^{-1}\{0\}) \cap U$ ). Hence  $1/f$  exists and hence  $s$  is a unit in  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}$ .

**Example 1.10.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces, let  $X$  be an open subspace of  $V$ , and let  $\mathcal{O}$  denote the sheaf  $\mathcal{C}_{X,W}^\alpha$ . We claim that  $\mathcal{O}_x$  is a local ring. Indeed, let  $s \in \mathcal{O}_x$  be a germ and let  $(f, U)$  be a representative of  $s$ . By the very same argument as in the example above, we may assume that  $f$  does not vanish on  $U$  so that  $1/f$  exists on  $U$ . It remains to show that  $1/f$  is  $C^\alpha$  on  $X$ . This follows from the stability of the  $C^\alpha$  property under composition and the fact that  $x \mapsto 1/x$  is a  $C^\alpha$  map from  $\mathbb{R}^\times$  to  $\mathbb{R}^\times$ .

### 1.6.2 Working With Stalks

The following result will be used very often.

**Proposition 1.3.** Let  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  be presheaves on  $X$ , and let  $\varphi, \psi : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  be two morphisms of presheaves.

1. Assume that  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf. Then  $\varphi_x : \mathcal{F}_x \rightarrow \mathcal{G}_x$  is injective for all  $x \in X$  if and only if  $\varphi_U : \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{G}(U)$  is injective for all open subsets  $U \subseteq X$ .
2. If  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  are both sheaves, then  $\varphi_x$  is bijective for all  $x \in X$  if and only if  $\varphi_U$  is bijective for all open subsets  $U \subseteq X$ .
3. If  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf, then the morphisms  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  are equal if and only if  $\varphi_x = \psi_x$  for all  $x \in X$ .

*Proof.* 1. Suppose that  $\varphi_U: \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{G}(U)$  is injective for all open subsets  $U \subseteq X$ . Let  $x \in X$  and suppose  $[s]_x = [U^x, s]_x$  and  $[t]_x = [V^x, t]_x$  are two germs in at  $x$  such that  $\varphi_x([s]_x) = \varphi_x([t]_x)$ . Then  $[\varphi_{U^x}(s)]_x = [\varphi_{V^x}(t)]_x$  which implies there exists an open neighborhood  $W^x$  of  $x$  such that  $W^x \subseteq U^x \cap V^x$  and

$$\varphi_{W^x}(s|_{W^x}) = \varphi_{W^x}(t|_{W^x}).$$

Since  $\varphi_{W^x}$  is injective, we see that  $s|_{W^x} = t|_{W^x}$  which implies  $[s]_x = [t]_x$ . It follows that  $\varphi_x$  is injective for all  $x \in X$ . Conversely, suppose  $\varphi_x: \mathcal{F}_x \rightarrow \mathcal{G}_x$  is injective for all  $x \in X$ . Let  $U$  be an open subset of  $X$  and suppose  $s$  and  $t$  are two sections in  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $\varphi_U(s) = \varphi_U(t)$ . Then for each  $x \in U$ , we have  $\varphi_x([s]_x) = \varphi_x([t]_x)$ , and since  $\varphi_x$  is injective, this implies  $[s]_x = [t]_x$ . Thus for each  $x \in U$ , there exists an open neighborhood  $U^x$  of  $x$  such that  $s|_{U^x} = t|_{U^x}$ . This implies  $s = t$  since  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf. It follows that  $\varphi_U$  is injective for all open sets  $U$  of  $X$ .

2. Suppose that  $\varphi_U: \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{G}(U)$  is bijective for all open sets  $U$  of  $X$ . By 1, it suffices to show that  $\varphi_x$  is surjective for all  $x \in X$ . Let  $x \in X$  and let  $[t]_x = [U, t]_x$  be a germ at  $x$ . Since  $\varphi_U$  is surjective, there exists a section  $s$  in  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $\varphi_U(s) = t$ . In particular, this implies  $\varphi_x([s]_x) = \varphi_x([t]_x)$ . It follows that  $\varphi_x$  is surjective for all  $x \in X$ . Conversely, suppose that  $\varphi_x$  is bijective for all  $x \in X$ . By 1, it suffices to show that  $\varphi_U$  is surjective for all open sets  $U$  of  $X$ . Let  $U \subseteq X$  be open and let  $t$  be a section over  $U$ . For each  $x \in U$ , since  $\varphi_x$  is surjective, there exists a germ  $[s^x]_x = [U^x, s^x]_x$  at  $x$  such that  $\varphi_x([s^x]_x) = [t]_x$ . By replacing  $U^x$  with a smaller open set if necessary, we may assume that  $U^x \subseteq U$  and that  $\varphi_{U^x}(s^x) = t|_{U^x}$  for each  $x \in U$ . For each  $x, y \in U$ , denote  $U^{xy} = U^x \cap U^y$  and observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{U^{xy}}(s^x|_{U^{xy}}) &= \varphi_{U^x}(s^x)|_{U^{xy}} \\ &= (t|_{U^x})|_{U^{xy}} \\ &= t|_{U^{xy}} \\ &= (t|_{U^y})|_{U^{xy}} \\ &= \varphi_{U^y}(s^y)|_{U^{xy}} \\ &= \varphi_{U^{xy}}(s^y|_{U^{xy}}), \end{aligned}$$

and hence  $s^x|_{U^{xy}} = s^y|_{U^{xy}}$  since  $\varphi_{U^{xy}}$  is injective. Since  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf and  $\{U^x\}_{x \in U}$  is an open cover of  $U$ , this implies there exists a unique section  $s$  over  $U$  such that  $s|_{U^x} = s^x$  for all  $x \in U$ . In particular, this implies that  $\varphi_U(s)|_{U^x} = \varphi_{U^x}(s^x) = t|_{U^x}$  for all  $x \in U$ . Since  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf and  $\{U^x\}_{x \in U}$  is an open cover of  $U$ , this implies  $\varphi_U(s) = t$ . It follows that  $\varphi_U$  is surjective for all  $x \in X$ .

3. Suppose that  $\varphi = \psi$ . Let  $x \in X$  and let  $[s]_x = [U, s]_x$  be a germ at  $x$ . Then since  $\varphi_U(s) = \psi_U(s)$ , we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_x([s]_x) &= [\varphi_U(s)]_x \\ &= [\psi_U(s)]_x \\ &= \psi_x([s]_x). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $\varphi_x = \psi_x$  for all  $x \in X$ . Conversely, suppose  $\varphi_x = \psi_x$  for all  $x \in X$ . Let  $U$  be an open set of  $X$  and let  $s$  be a section over  $U$ . For each  $x \in U$ , since  $[\varphi_U(s)]_x = [\psi_U(s)]_x$ , there exists an open neighborhood  $U^x$  of  $x$  such that  $U^x \subseteq U$  and  $\varphi_U(s)|_{U^x} = \psi_U(s)|_{U^x}$ . Since  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf and  $\{U^x\}_{x \in U}$  is an open cover of  $U$ , we must have  $\varphi_U(s) = \psi_U(s)$ . It follows that  $\varphi = \psi$ .  $\square$

**Definition 1.4.** We call a morphism  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  of sheaves **injective** (respectively **surjective**, respectively **bijective**) if  $\varphi_x: \mathcal{F}_x \rightarrow \mathcal{G}_x$  is injective (respectively surjective, respectively bijective) for all  $x \in X$ . A sequence

$$\mathcal{F} \xrightarrow{\varphi} \mathcal{G} \xrightarrow{\psi} \mathcal{H}$$

of morphisms of sheaves of groups is called **exact** if for all  $x \in X$  the induced sequence of stalks

$$\mathcal{F}_x \xrightarrow{\varphi_x} \mathcal{G}_x \xrightarrow{\psi_x} \mathcal{H}_x$$

is an exact sequence of groups.

Thus Proposition (1.3) tells us that  $\varphi$  is injective (respectively bijective) if and only if  $\varphi_U: \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{G}(U)$  is injective (respectively bijective) for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ . On the other hand,  $\varphi$  is surjective if and only if for all open subsets  $U \subseteq X$  and every  $t \in \mathcal{G}(U)$  there exist an open cover  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $U$  (depending on  $t$ ) and sections  $s_i \in \mathcal{F}(U_i)$  such that  $\varphi_{U_i}(s_i) = t|_{U_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ . In other words,  $\varphi$  is surjective if locally we can find a preimage of  $t$ . In particular, surjectivity of  $\varphi$  does *not* imply that  $\varphi_U: \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{G}(U)$  is surjective for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ . Indeed, in the proof of Proposition (1.3), we needed injectivity of  $\varphi_{U^{xy}}$  in order to patch up the various local sections. Here is an example from complex analysis which demonstrates this:

**Example 1.11.** Let  $\mathcal{O}_X$  be the sheaf of holomorphic functions on an open set  $X$  of  $\mathbb{C}$ . For every open set  $U$  of  $X$  and for every  $f \in \mathcal{O}_X(U)$  we let  $D_U(f) = f'$  be the derivative. We obtain a morphism  $D: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X$  of sheaves of  $\mathbb{C}$ -vector spaces. Note that  $D$  is surjective because locally every holomorphic function has a primitive. On the other hand, there exists open sets  $U$  of  $X$  and functions  $f$  on  $U$  which have no primitive on  $U$ . For instance, take  $X = \mathbb{C}$ , let  $U = \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$ , and let  $f(z) = 1/z$ . Assume for a contradiction that  $F$  is a primitive of  $f$  defined on  $U$ . Let  $\gamma: [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be the path defined by  $\gamma(t) = e^{2\pi it}$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= F(1) - F(1) \\ &= F(\gamma(1)) - F(\gamma(0)) \\ &= \int_{\gamma} f(z) dz \\ &= \int_0^1 f(\gamma(t)) \gamma'(t) dt \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{1}{e^{2\pi it}} 2\pi i \cdot e^{2\pi it} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 2\pi i dt \\ &= 2\pi i, \end{aligned}$$

which is obviously a contradiction. The issue here comes from the fact that  $\pi_1(U) \cong \mathbb{Z}$  where  $\pi_1(U)$  is the fundamental group of  $U$ . More generally, by complex analysis we know that  $D_U$  is surjective if and only if every connected component of  $U$  is simply connected (meaning  $\pi_1(U) = 0$ ). The sufficiency of this condition will also be an immediate application of cohomological methods developed later. We obtain an exact sequence of sheaves of  $\mathbb{C}$ -vector spaces

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{C}_X \xrightarrow{\iota} \mathcal{O}_X \xrightarrow{D} \mathcal{O}_X \longrightarrow 0$$

where  $\mathbb{C}_X$  denotes the sheaf of locally constant  $\mathbb{C}$ -valued functions on  $X$  and where  $\iota_U$  is the inclusion for all  $U \subseteq X$  open.

Let  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an open cover of  $X$ . A morphism of sheaves  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  is injective (respectively surjective, respectively bijective) if and only if its restriction  $\varphi|_{U_i}: \mathcal{F}|_{U_i} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}|_{U_i}$  to morphisms of sheaves on  $U_i$  is injective (respectively surjective, respectively bijective) for all  $i \in I$ . Indeed, this is because these notions are defined via the stalks. However note that the existence of the morphism  $\varphi$  is crucial: there exists sheaves  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  such that  $\mathcal{F}|_{U_i}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathcal{G}|_{U_i}$  for all  $i$  and such that  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  are not isomorphic.

## 1.7 Sheafification

There is a functorial way to attach to a presheaf a sheaf:

**Proposition 1.4.** *Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$ . There exists a pair  $(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \iota_{\mathcal{F}})$  where  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is a sheaf on  $X$  and where  $\iota_{\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is a morphism of presheaves which satisfies the following universal mapping property: for all sheaves  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $X$  and morphisms  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  there exists a unique morphism  $\tilde{\varphi}: \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  with  $\tilde{\varphi} \circ \iota_{\mathcal{F}} = \varphi$ , in other words, the following diagram is commutative:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{F} & \xrightarrow{\iota_{\mathcal{F}}} & \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \\ & \searrow \varphi & \downarrow \tilde{\varphi} \\ & & \mathcal{G} \end{array} \quad (4)$$

Moreover, the following properties hold:

1. For all  $x \in X$ , the map of stalks  $\iota_{\mathcal{F},x}: \mathcal{F}_x \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{F}}_x$  is bijective.
2. For every presheaf  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $X$  and every morphism of presheaves  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  there exists a unique morphism  $\tilde{\varphi}: \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{F} & \xrightarrow{\iota_{\mathcal{F}}} & \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \\ \varphi \downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{\varphi} \\ \mathcal{G} & \xrightarrow{\iota_{\mathcal{G}}} & \tilde{\mathcal{G}} \end{array} \quad (5)$$

commutative. In particular,  $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is a functor from the category of presheaves on  $X$  to the category of sheaves on  $X$ .

The sheaf  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  (equipped with the canonical morphism  $\iota_{\mathcal{F}}$ ) is called the **sheafification** of  $\mathcal{F}$ . We obtain a functor  $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  from  $\mathbf{Psh}(X)$  to  $\mathbf{Sh}(X)$  which we call the **sheafification functor**.

Let's discuss why we are justified in saying  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is *the* sheafification of  $\mathcal{F}$ . The point is that  $(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \iota_{\mathcal{F}})$  is unique up to unique isomorphism. Indeed, let us simplify notation by writing  $\iota = \iota_{\mathcal{F}}$ . Now if  $(\mathcal{F}', \iota')$  is another pair which satisfies the universal mapping property, then there exists a unique morphism  $\tilde{\iota}': \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}'$  such that  $\tilde{\iota}' \circ \iota = \iota'$ . Similarly there is a unique morphism  $\tilde{\iota}: \mathcal{F}' \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  such that  $\tilde{\iota} \circ \iota' = \iota$ . We claim that  $\tilde{\iota}'$  is an isomorphism whose inverse is  $\tilde{\iota}$ . Indeed,  $\tilde{\iota} \circ \tilde{\iota}': \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is a morphism which satisfies

$$\begin{aligned} (\tilde{\iota} \circ \tilde{\iota}') \circ \iota &= \tilde{\iota} \circ (\tilde{\iota}' \circ \iota) \\ &= \tilde{\iota} \circ \iota' \\ &= \iota. \end{aligned}$$

In particular, we must have  $\tilde{\iota} \circ \tilde{\iota}' = 1_{\tilde{\mathcal{F}}}$  by the uniqueness part of the universal mapping property. A similar argument shows  $\tilde{\iota}' \circ \tilde{\iota} = 1_{\mathcal{F}'}$ . Thus if  $\mathcal{F}$  is already a sheaf, then we can identify  $(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \iota_{\mathcal{F}})$  with  $(\mathcal{F}, 1_{\mathcal{F}})$  (using the unique isomorphism) and say  $\mathcal{F}$  is the sheafification of  $\mathcal{F}$  since the pair  $(\mathcal{F}, 1_{\mathcal{F}})$  clearly satisfies the universal mapping property. A similar line of reasoning also justifies our calling the functor  $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  *the* sheafification functor (since this functor is unique up to unique natural isomorphism). In the proof of Proposition (1.4) below, we will give a construction of  $(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \iota_{\mathcal{F}})$ .

### 1.7.1 First Construction

*Proof.* First we define  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ . Let  $U \subseteq X$  be open. We define  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U)$  to be the families of elements in the stalks of  $\mathcal{F}$ , which locally give rise to sections of  $\mathcal{F}$ :

$$\tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U) := \left\{ (\sigma_x)_{x \in U} \in \prod_{x \in U} \mathcal{F}_x \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for all } y \in U \text{ there exists an open neighborhood } U_y \subseteq U \text{ of } y \text{ and an } s_y \in \mathcal{F}(U_y) \\ \text{such that for all } x \in U_y \text{ the germ } \sigma_x \text{ can be represented by } (U_y, s_y) \end{array} \right\}$$

The restriction maps are defined pointwise. Thus if  $V \subseteq U$  is a smaller open set, then we set

$$((\sigma_x)_{x \in U})|_V = (\sigma_x)_{x \in V}.$$

Clearly  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is a presheaf. To see why it is a sheaf, let  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an open cover of  $U$  and for each  $i \in I$  let  $(\sigma_x)_{x \in U_i} \in \tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U_i)$  such that

$$((\sigma_x)_{x \in U_i})|_{U_{ij}} = (\sigma_x)_{x \in U_{ij}} = ((\sigma_x)_{x \in U_j})|_{U_{ij}}$$

for all  $i, j \in I$ . Then it is easy to see that  $(\sigma_x)_{x \in U}$  is the unique element in  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U)$  such that

$$((\sigma_x)_{x \in U})|_{U_i} = (\sigma_x)_{x \in U_i}$$

for all  $i \in I$ . Thus  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is clearly a sheaf (note that the same proof also shows that presheaf given by  $U \mapsto \prod_{x \in U} \mathcal{F}_x$  is a sheaf). Next we define the map  $\iota: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ . Let  $U \subseteq X$  be open and let  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ . We set

$$\iota(s) = ([U, s]_x)_{x \in U}.$$

Let us check that the pair  $(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \iota)$  satisfies the universal mapping property.

For all  $U \subseteq X$  open, we define

$$\iota_{\mathcal{F}, U}(s) = ([U, s]_x)_{x \in U}$$

for all  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ . We simplify notation by writing  $\iota$  instead of  $\iota_{\mathcal{F}}$  whenever context is clear. Now fix a point  $y \in X$ . We want to show that the induced map  $\iota_y: \mathcal{F}_y \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{F}}_y$  is a bijection. We do this in two steps:

**$\iota_y$  is injective:** let  $[s]_y = [U, s]_y$  and  $[t]_y = [V, t]_y$  be two germs in  $\mathcal{F}_y$  such that

$$[[s]_x]_{x \in U} = [[t]_x]_{x \in V}.$$

Then there exists an open neighborhood  $W \subseteq U \cap V$  of  $y$  such that  $([s]_x)_{x \in W} = ([t]_x)_{x \in W}$ , or in other words, such that  $[s]_x = [t]_x$  for all  $x \in W$ . In particular,  $[s]_y = [t]_y$ . It follows that  $\iota_y$  is injective.

**$\iota_y$  is surjective:** let  $[U, (\sigma_x)_{x \in U}]_y$  be a germ in  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}_y$ . By definition of  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U)$ , there exists an open neighborhood  $U^y \subseteq U$  of  $y$  and a section  $s^y$  in  $\mathcal{F}(U^y)$  such that  $\sigma_x = [U^y, s^y]_x$  for all  $x \in U^y$ . In particular, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_y([U^y, s^y]_y) &= [U^y, ([U^y, s^y]_x)_{x \in U^y}]_y \\ &= [U^y, (\sigma_x)_{x \in U^y}]_y \\ &= [U, (\sigma_x)_{x \in U}]_y. \end{aligned}$$



It follows that  $\iota_y$  is surjective.

Now we prove the two properties stated in the proposition:

1. Let  $x_0 \in X$ . We want to show that  $\iota_{\mathcal{F},x_0}: \mathcal{F}_{x_0} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{F}}_{x_0}$  is bijective. First we show that  $\iota_{\mathcal{F},x_0}$  is injective. Let  $[s]_{x_0} = [U, s]_{x_0}$  and  $[t]_{x_0} = [V, t]_{x_0}$  be two germs in  $\mathcal{F}_{x_0}$  such that

$$[(s)_x]_{x \in U}]_{x_0} = [(t)_x]_{x \in V}]_{x_0}.$$

Then there exists an open neighborhood  $W \subseteq U \cap V$  of  $x_0$  such that  $([s]_x)_{x \in W} = ([t]_x)_{x \in W}$ , or in other words, such that  $[s]_x = [t]_x$  for all  $x \in W$ . In particular,  $[s]_{x_0} = [t]_{x_0}$ .

Next we show that  $\iota_{\mathcal{F},x_0}$  is surjective. To see this, let  $[(s^x)_x]_{x \in U}]_{x_0}$  be a germ in  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}_{x_0}$ ; so  $U$  is an open neighborhood of  $x_0$  and  $([s^x]_x)_{x \in U} \in \tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U)$ . In fact, using the construction of  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ , we can find a better representative for this germ: choose an open neighborhood  $U_0$  of  $x_0$  and choose a section  $s_0 \in \mathcal{F}(U_0)$  such that  $[s^x]_x = [s_0]_x$  for all  $x \in U_0$ . Then clearly we have  $[(s^x)_x]_{x \in U}]_{x_0} = [(s_0)_x]_{x \in U_0}]_{x_0}$ . In particular, note that

$$\iota_{\mathcal{F},x_0}([s_0]_{x_0}) = [(s_0)_x]_{x \in U_0}]_{x_0}.$$

It follows that  $\iota_{\mathcal{F},x_0}$  is surjective.

2. Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a presheaf on  $X$  and let  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  be a morphism. We define  $\tilde{\varphi}: \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{G}}$  as follows: let  $U$  be an open set of  $X$  and define the map  $\tilde{\varphi}_U: \tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U) \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{G}}(U)$  by

$$\tilde{\varphi}_U([(s^x)_x]_{x \in U}) = ([\varphi_U(s^x)]_x)_{x \in U}$$

for all  $([s^x]_x)_{x \in U} \in \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ . It is straightforward to check that this gives rise a morphism  $\tilde{\varphi}: \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{G}}$  of presheaves. Furthermore, observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\varphi}_U \iota_{\mathcal{F},U}(s) &= \tilde{\varphi}_U([(s)_x]_{x \in U}) \\ &= ([\varphi_U(s)]_x)_{x \in U} \\ &= \iota_{\mathcal{G},U}(\varphi_U(s)) \\ &= \iota_{\mathcal{G},U} \varphi_U(s). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $\tilde{\varphi} \iota_{\mathcal{F}} = \iota_{\mathcal{G}} \varphi$ , thus  $\tilde{\varphi}$  makes the diagram (5) commutative. We claim that  $\tilde{\varphi}$  is the unique morphism making the diagram (5) commutative. Indeed, if  $\tilde{\psi}: \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{G}}$  is another morphism making the diagram commute, then  $\tilde{\psi} \iota_{\mathcal{F}} = \iota_{\mathcal{G}} \varphi = \tilde{\varphi} \iota_{\mathcal{F}}$  implies  $\tilde{\psi}_x \iota_{\mathcal{F},x} = \tilde{\varphi}_x \iota_{\mathcal{F},x}$  for all  $x \in X$ . Since  $\iota_{\mathcal{F},x}$  is a bijection, it follows that  $\tilde{\varphi}_x = \tilde{\psi}_x$  for all  $x \in X$ . Therefore  $\tilde{\varphi} = \tilde{\psi}$  by Proposition (1.3).

If we assume in addition that  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf, then the morphism of sheaves  $\iota_{\mathcal{G}}: \mathcal{G} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{G}}$ , which is bijective on stalks, is an isomorphism by Proposition (1.3). Thus we can define  $\tilde{\varphi}' = \iota_{\mathcal{G}}^{-1} \tilde{\varphi}$  and it is easily seen that  $\tilde{\varphi}'$  is the unique morphism such that  $\tilde{\varphi}' \iota_{\mathcal{F}} = \varphi$ . Finally, the uniqueness of  $(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \iota_{\mathcal{F}})$  is a formal consequence from the universal mapping property.  $\square$

### 1.7.2 Second Construction

**Example 1.12.** Let  $X = \{a, b, c, d\}$  and equip  $X$  with the topology generated by open set  $U = \{a, b, c\}$ ,  $U' = \{b, c, d\}$ ,  $V = \{b\}$ , and  $V' = \{c\}$ . Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$  such that  $\mathcal{F}(X) = \emptyset$  and such that there exists sections  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  and  $s' \in \mathcal{F}(U')$  which satisfies

$$\begin{aligned} s|_{U \cap U'} &= s|_{V \cup V'} \neq s'|_{V \cup V'} = s'|_{U \cap U'} \\ s|_V &= s'|_V \\ s|_{V'} &= s'|_{V'}. \end{aligned}$$

Then  $(\{U, s\})$  and  $(\{U', s'\})$  are locally compatible but do not glue to a global section in  $\mathcal{F}_0(X)$ .

### 1.7.3 Sheafification is left adjoint to the forgetful functor

**Lemma 1.1.** Let  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  be presheaves on  $X$ . Then there is a bijection

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sh}(X)}(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \mathcal{G}) \longleftrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Psh}(X)}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \quad (6)$$

which is functorial in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$ . Thus the sheafification functor from  $\mathbf{Psh}(X)$  to  $\mathbf{Sh}(X)$  is the left adjoint to the forgetful functor from  $\mathbf{Sh}(X)$  to  $\mathbf{Psh}(X)$ . In particular, the sheafification functor preserves all colimits whereas the forgetful functor preserves all limits.



*Proof.* If  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ , then there exists a unique morphism  $\tilde{\varphi}: \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  such that  $\tilde{\varphi}'\iota_{\mathcal{F}} = \varphi$ . Conversely, if  $\tilde{\varphi}: \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ , then we *define*  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  by  $\varphi := \tilde{\varphi}'\iota_{\mathcal{F}}$ . Functoriality in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  is an easy exercise.  $\square$

Note that the bijection (6) restricts to a bijection

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sh}(X)}(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \mathcal{G}) \longleftrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sh}(X)}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}),$$

which is again functorial in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$ . Thus, viewing the sheafification/forgetful functors as functors from  $\mathbf{Sh}(X)$  to itself, we see that sheafification preserves all colimits and the forgetful functor preserves all limits. In particular, if  $D$  is any diagram in  $\mathbf{Sh}(X)$ , then  $\lim(D)$  is a sheaf!

#### 1.7.4 Sheafification of a presheaf of functions

**Proposition 1.5.** *Let  $E$  be a set and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf of functions on  $X$  with values in  $E$ . Define a sheaf  $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$  on  $X$  by*

$$\hat{\mathcal{F}}(U) = \{f: U \rightarrow E \mid \text{there exists an open covering } \{U_i\}_{i \in I} \text{ of } U \text{ such that } f|_{U_i} \in \mathcal{F}(U_i) \text{ for all } i \in I\}.$$

*for all open sets  $U \subseteq X$  with the restriction maps of  $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$  being the usual ones. Then  $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$  (equipped with the inclusion map  $\iota: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \hat{\mathcal{F}}$ ) is the sheafification of  $\mathcal{F}$ .*

*Proof.* We just need to show that  $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$  satisfies the universal mapping property. Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a sheaf on  $X$  and let  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  be a morphism. Let  $U \subseteq X$  be open and let  $f \in \hat{\mathcal{F}}(U)$ . Choose an open covering  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $U$  such that  $f|_{U_i} \in \mathcal{F}(U_i)$  for all  $i \in I$ . Then  $\varphi_{U_i}(f|_{U_i}) \in \mathcal{G}(U_i)$  for all  $i \in I$ , furthermore we have

$$\varphi_{U_i}(f|_{U_i})|_{U_{ij}} = \varphi_{U_{ij}}(f|_{U_{ij}}) = \varphi_{U_j}(f|_{U_j})|_{U_{ij}}$$

for all  $i, j \in I$ . Thus since  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf, there exists a unique  $\tilde{\varphi}(f) \in \mathcal{G}(U)$  such that  $\tilde{\varphi}(f)|_{U_i} = \varphi_{U_i}(f|_{U_i})$  for all  $i \in I$ . This construction does not depend on the choice of an open covering  $\{U_i\}$  of  $U$  since  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf. In particular, we have a well defined map  $f \mapsto \tilde{\varphi}(f)$  from  $\hat{\mathcal{F}}(U)$  to  $\mathcal{G}(U)$ . Furthermore, it is easy to see that  $\tilde{\varphi}$  is the unique morphism which satisfies  $\tilde{\varphi} \circ \iota = \varphi$ .  $\square$

Let's construct an explicit isomorphism from  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  to  $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$ . Let  $([U^x, f^x]_x)_{x \in U} \in \tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U)$ . For each  $x \in U$ , choose an open neighborhood  $V^x$  of  $x$  together with a section  $g^x \in \mathcal{F}(V^x)$  such that  $V^x \subseteq U$  and  $[f^y]_y = [g^x]_y$  for all  $y \in V^x$ . For each  $y \in V^x$ , choose an open neighborhood  $W^{x,y}$  of  $y$  such that  $W^{x,y} \subseteq U^y \cap V^x$  and  $f^y|_{W^{x,y}} = g^x|_{W^{x,y}}$ . Define a function  $g: U \rightarrow E$  by setting  $g(x) = g^x(x)$  for all  $x \in U$ . Note that the function  $g$  is independent of our choice of the triple  $(W^{x,y}, V^x, g^x)$  for if  $(\tilde{W}^{x,y}, \tilde{V}^x, \tilde{g}^x)$  were another such triple, then we'd have  $\tilde{g}^x(x) = f^x(x) = g^x(x)$ . Observe that  $\{W^{x,y}\}$  forms an open cover of  $U$  as we vary  $x \in X$  and  $y \in V^x$ . Moreover, we have  $g|_{W^{x,y}} = g^x|_{W^{x,y}}$  since

$$\begin{aligned} g(z) &= g^z(z) \\ &= f^z(z) \\ &= g^x(z) \end{aligned}$$

for all  $z \in W^{x,y}$ . Therefore  $g|_{W^{x,y}} = f^y|_{W^{x,y}} \in \mathcal{F}(W^{x,y})$  for all  $x \in U$  and  $y \in V^x$ . It follows that  $g \in \hat{\mathcal{F}}(U)$ . Therefore we obtain map from  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}(U) \rightarrow \hat{\mathcal{F}}(U)$  given by  $([f^x]_x)_{x \in U} \mapsto g$ . It is straightforward to check that this map induces an isomorphism  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}} \cong \hat{\mathcal{F}}$  of sheaves on  $X$ .

**Definition 1.5.** Let  $E$  be a set and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be the constant presheaf with values in  $E$ . We denote by  $E_X$  to be the sheaf of locally constant functions with value  $E$  defined by

$$E_X(U) = \{f: U \rightarrow E \mid f \text{ is locally constant}\}.$$

for all open sets  $U$  of  $X$ . This is the sheafification of the presheaf of constant functions with values in  $E$ . The sheaf  $E_X$  is called the **constant sheaf** with values in  $E$ .

#### 1.7.5 Constant Sheaf

**Definition 1.6.** Let  $X$  be a topological space and let  $E$  be a set. The **constant sheaf** on  $X$  associated to  $E$ , denoted  $\underline{E}$ , is the sheafification of the presheaf  $\mathcal{E}$  on  $X$  defined by  $\mathcal{E}(U) = E$  for all open subsets  $U \subseteq X$ .

It may seem as though  $\mathcal{E}$  is already a sheaf. Indeed, if  $U$  is a nonempty set Note that

$$\mathcal{E}(U) = \begin{cases} E & \text{if } U \neq \emptyset \\ \emptyset & \text{if } U = \emptyset \end{cases}$$

for all open  $U \subseteq X$  with restriction maps being the identity map. the presheaf  $\mathcal{E}'$  on  $X$  defined by  $\mathcal{E}'(U) = E$  for all open subsets  $U \subseteq X$  is in fact a sheaf, so it is crucial that in the definition of  $\mathcal{E}$  we have  $\mathcal{E}(\emptyset) = \emptyset$ . One can show that if  $U$  is a connected open subset of  $X$ , then we have  $\underline{E}(U) = E$ . More generally, if  $U = \bigcup_i U_i$  is a decomposition of  $U$  into its maximal connected components, then the sheaf axioms imply

$$\underline{E}(U) = \prod_i \underline{E}(U_i) = \prod_i E.$$

## 1.8 Direct and Inverse Images of Sheaves

Throughout this subsection, let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a continuous map, let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a presheaf on  $Y$ , let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$ , let  $y \in Y$  and let  $x = f(y)$ .

### 1.8.1 Direct Image

We define  $f_*\mathcal{G}$  to be the presheaf on  $X$  whose values on opens  $U \subseteq X$  is given by

$$f_*\mathcal{G}(U) = \mathcal{G}(f^{-1}(U)),$$

and whose restriction maps are given by the restriction maps of  $\mathcal{G}$ . We call  $f_*\mathcal{G}$  the **direct image of  $\mathcal{G}$  along  $f$** . If  $\varphi: \mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}'$  is a morphism of presheaves on  $Y$ , then we obtain a morphism  $f_*(\varphi): f_*\mathcal{G} \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{G}'$  of presheaves on  $X$  by defining  $f_*(\varphi)_U = \varphi_{f^{-1}(U)}$ . It is straightforward to check that we obtain a functor

$$f_*: \mathbf{Psh}(Y) \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh}(X),$$

called the **direct image functor along  $f$** . Note that if  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf on  $Y$ , then  $f_*\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf on  $X$ . Indeed, this follows from the sheaf property of  $\mathcal{G}$  together with the fact that if  $\{U_i\}$  is an open covering of  $U$ , then  $\{f^{-1}(U_i)\}$  is an open covering of  $f^{-1}(U)$ . Thus, the direct image functor restricts to a functor

$$f_*: \mathbf{Sh}(Y) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(X).$$

Define  $\pi = \pi_{\mathcal{G},y}$  to be the map  $\pi: (f_*\mathcal{G})_x \rightarrow \mathcal{G}_y$  given by

$$\pi([U, t]_x) = [f^{-1}(U), t]_y$$

where  $t \in f_*\mathcal{G}(U)$ . Note that this map is well-defined since if  $t' \in f_*\mathcal{G}(U')$  was another representative of  $[t]_x$ , then there'd exist  $U'' \subseteq U' \cap U$  such that  $t|_{f^{-1}U} = t'' = t'|_{f^{-1}U'}$ , but this would also mean that  $t \in \mathcal{G}(f^{-1}(U'))$  and  $t' \in \mathcal{G}(f^{-1}(U'))$  represent the same germ  $[t]_y = [t'']_y = [t']_y$  in  $\mathcal{G}_y$  since  $f^{-1}(U'') \subseteq f^{-1}(U') \cap f^{-1}(U)$ .

**Example 1.13.** Let  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  be a ring homomorphism between commutative rings  $A$  and  $B$ . The ring homomorphism  $\varphi$  induces a morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of affine schemes  $X = \text{Spec } A$  and  $Y = \text{Spec } B$ . The underlying map of topological spaces  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is defined by  $f(\mathfrak{q}) = \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  for all primes  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  and the morphism of sheaves  $f^b: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_Y$  on  $X$  is defined by  $f^b_{D(s)} = \varphi_s$  for all principal opens  $D(s) \subseteq X$ . In particular, given  $s \in A$ , the ring homomorphism  $\varphi_s: A_s \rightarrow B_s$  is defined by

$$\varphi_s(a/s^m) = \varphi(a)/s^m$$

for all  $a \in A$  and  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ . If  $\mathfrak{q}$  is a prime of  $B$  and  $\mathfrak{p} = f(\mathfrak{q})$ , then the homomorphism of local rings  $f^{\#}_{\mathfrak{q}}: \mathcal{O}_{X,\mathfrak{p}} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y,\mathfrak{q}}$  is defined by  $f^{\#}_{\mathfrak{q}} = \rho_{\mathfrak{q}} \circ \varphi_{\mathfrak{p}}$  where  $\varphi_{\mathfrak{p}}: A_{\mathfrak{p}} \rightarrow B_{\mathfrak{p}}$  is defined by

$$\varphi_{\mathfrak{p}}(a/s) = \varphi(a)/s$$

for all  $a \in A$  and  $s \in A \setminus \mathfrak{p}$  and where  $\rho_{\mathfrak{q}}: B_{\mathfrak{p}} \rightarrow B_{\mathfrak{q}}$  is the canonical localization map. We also have the extension of residue fields  $\iota_{\mathfrak{q}}: \kappa(\mathfrak{p}) \rightarrow \kappa(\mathfrak{q})$  where  $\kappa(\mathfrak{p}) = A_{\mathfrak{p}}/\mathfrak{p}A_{\mathfrak{p}}$  and  $\kappa(\mathfrak{q}) = B_{\mathfrak{q}}/\mathfrak{q}B_{\mathfrak{q}}$ . Now suppose that  $N$  is a  $B$ -module. This gives rise to an  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -module  $\tilde{N}$  which is defined on the open subset  $D(b) \subseteq Y$  by  $\tilde{N}(D(b)) = N_b$ . What does the direct image of  $\tilde{N}$  along  $f$  look like? Well for an open subset  $D(a) \subseteq X$  we have  $f^{-1}(D(a)) = D(\varphi(a))$ , thus  $f_*\tilde{N}(D(a)) = N_{\varphi(a)}$ . In particular, if we let  $N_{\varphi}$  denote  $N$  viewed as an  $A$ -module, then  $f_*\tilde{N} = \tilde{N}_{\varphi}$ .

**Proposition 1.6.** *If  $f$  is an open embedding, then  $\pi: (f_*\mathcal{G})_x \rightarrow \mathcal{G}_y$  is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{\pi} = \tilde{\pi}_{\mathcal{G},y}: \mathcal{G}_y \rightarrow (f_*\mathcal{G})_x$  be given by

$$\tilde{\pi}[V, t]_y = [f(V), t]_x$$

where  $t \in \mathcal{G}(V)$ . Note that this map makes sense because  $f^{-1}(f(V)) = V$  as  $f$  is an open embedding. This map is clearly the inverse to  $\pi$ .  $\square$

### 1.8.2 Inverse Image

**Definition 1.7.** We define a presheaf  $f^+\mathcal{F}$  on  $Y$ , called the **pre-pullback of  $\mathcal{F}$  by  $f$**  by setting

$$f^+\mathcal{F}(V) = \operatorname{colim}_{U \in \mathbf{N}(f(V))} \mathcal{F}(U).$$

where  $V \subseteq Y$  is open, and letting the restriction maps be the ones induced from  $\mathcal{F}$ . More concretely, we have

$$f^+\mathcal{F}(V) = \{(U, s) \mid U \text{ is an open neighborhood of } f(V) \text{ in } X \text{ and } s \in \mathcal{F}(U)\} / \sim,$$

where two pairs  $(U, s)$  and  $(U', s')$  are equivalent if there exists  $U'' \subseteq X$  open such that  $f(V) \subseteq U'' \subseteq U \cap U'$  and  $s|_{U''} = s'|_{U''}$ . The equivalence class corresponding to  $(U, s)$  will be denoted  $[U, s]_{f(V)}$ , or even more simply by  $[s]_{f(V)}$  when it is clear from context that  $s$  is a section over  $U$ . Note that  $[s]_{f(V)}$  is a section that lives over  $V$  whereas  $s$  is a section that lives over  $U$ . If  $V' \subseteq Y$  is open such that  $V' \subseteq V$ , then

$$[s]_{f(V)}|_{V'} = [s]_{f(V')}.$$

This makes sense because  $f(V') \subseteq f(V) \subseteq U$ . The sheafification of  $f^+\mathcal{F}$  is denoted  $f^{-1}\mathcal{F}$ . We call  $f^{-1}\mathcal{F}$  the **pullback of  $\mathcal{F}$  by  $f$** . The construction of  $f^+\mathcal{F}$  and hence of  $f^{-1}\mathcal{F}$  is functorial in  $\mathcal{F}$ ; hence we obtain a functor  $f^{-1}: \mathbf{Psh}(X) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(Y)$  which restricts to a functor  $f^{-1}: \mathbf{Sh}(X) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(Y)$ . Finally, if  $X$  and  $Y$  are  $R$ -ringed spaces and  $\mathcal{F}$  is an  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -module, then we define

$$f^*\mathcal{F} = f^{-1}\mathcal{F} \otimes_{f^{-1}\mathcal{O}_X} \mathcal{O}_Y.$$

In particular, given an open subset  $V \subseteq Y$  and an open subset  $U \subseteq X$ , set  $B_V = \mathcal{O}_Y(V)$ , set  $A_U = \mathcal{O}_X(U)$ , and set  $M_U = \mathcal{F}(U)$ . Then  $f^*\mathcal{F}$  is the sheafification of the presheaf

$$V \mapsto \operatorname{colim}_{U \supseteq f(V)} M_U \otimes_{A_U} B_V.$$

In the context of rings, we will have  $V = D(t)$  for some  $t \in B$ . Then an open  $U = D(s)$  contains  $f(D(t))$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{p} \in f(D(t))$  meaning  $\mathfrak{p} = \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  where  $t \notin \mathfrak{q}$ , then  $\mathfrak{p} \in D(s)$  meaning  $s \notin \mathfrak{p}$ . For instance, if  $t = \varphi(s)$  say, then we can't have  $s \in \mathfrak{p}$ .

*Remark 6.* Suppose  $t \in B$ . What does it mean to say  $\mathfrak{p} \in f(D(t))$ ? It means there exists  $\mathfrak{q} \nmid \mathfrak{p}$  such that  $t \notin \mathfrak{q}$ . In particular, if  $\mathfrak{q}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{q}_2$  both lie over  $\mathfrak{p}$  and  $t \in \mathfrak{q}_1$  but  $t \notin \mathfrak{q}_2$ , then  $\mathfrak{p} \in f(D(t))$  even though  $\mathfrak{q}_1 \notin D(t)$ .

**Proposition 1.7.** Suppose  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  is an open continuous map and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a presheaf on  $Y$ . Define a presheaf  $f^*\mathcal{G}$  on  $X$  by setting  $f^*\mathcal{G}(U) = \mathcal{G}(f(U))$  for all open  $U \subseteq X$  and letting the restriction maps on  $f^*\mathcal{G}$  be the ones induced from  $\mathcal{G}$ . Then we have isomorphisms

$$f^+\mathcal{G} \simeq f^*\mathcal{G} \simeq f^{-1}\mathcal{G},$$

all of which are natural in  $\mathcal{G}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $[t]_{f(U)} = [V, t]_{f(U)}$  be a germ at  $U \subseteq X$  where  $t$  is a section over  $V \supseteq f(U)$ . We define  $\rho: f^+\mathcal{G} \rightarrow f^*\mathcal{G}$  by

$$\rho([t]_{f(U)}) = t|_{f(U)}.$$

Similarly, let  $t_0$  be a section over  $f(U)$ . We define  $\iota: f^*\mathcal{G} \rightarrow f^+\mathcal{G}$  by

$$\iota(t_0) = [t_0]_{f(U)}.$$

It is straightforward to check that  $\rho$  and  $\iota$  are both morphisms of presheaves and that they are inverse to each other. Furthermore,  $\rho_{\mathcal{G}} = \rho$  and  $\iota_{\mathcal{G}} = \iota$  are clearly both natural in  $\mathcal{G}$ .  $\square$

If  $f$  is the inclusion of a subspace  $X$  of  $Y$ , we also write  $\mathcal{G}|_X$  instead of  $f^{-1}\mathcal{G}$ . Moreover, if  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf, then  $f^+\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf and hence  $f^+\mathcal{G} = f^{-1}\mathcal{G}$ . In particular, if  $f$  is the inclusion of an open subspace  $U = X$  of  $Y$ , then for every sheaf  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $Y$  and  $U' \subseteq U$  open, we have  $\mathcal{G}|_{U'}(U') = \mathcal{G}(U')$ .

**Proposition 1.8.** Let  $x \in X$  and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a presheaf on  $Y$ . Then  $(f^{-1}\mathcal{G})_x \cong \mathcal{G}_{f(x)}$ .

*Proof.* It suffices to show that  $f^+\mathcal{G}_x \cong \mathcal{G}_{f(x)}$  by Proposition (1.4). Define  $\lambda_{\mathcal{G},x}: (f^+\mathcal{G})_x \rightarrow \mathcal{G}_{f(x)}$  as follows: let  $[[t]_{f(U)}]_x = [U, [V, t]_{f(U)}]_x$  be an element in  $(f^+\mathcal{G})_x$ . We set

$$\lambda_{\mathcal{G},x}([t]_{f(U)}]_x) = [t]_{f(x)}.$$

It is straightforward to check that  $\lambda_{\mathcal{G},x}$  is well-defined. The inverse map is defined by

$$\lambda_{\mathcal{G},x}^{-1}([t]_{f(x)}) = [[t]_{f(f^{-1}(U))}]_x.$$

$\square$

**Example 1.14.** Let  $\phi: A \rightarrow B$  be a ring homomorphism and let  $M$  be an  $A$ -module. Let  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ , let  $Y = \operatorname{Spec} B$ , and let  $f = {}^a\phi$ . Recall that the

**Proposition 1.9.** *Let  $A \subseteq B$  be a finite extension of integral domains such that  $L/K$  is separable where  $K$  is the fraction field of  $A$  and  $L$  is the fraction field of  $B$ . Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be the corresponding morphism of affine schemes where  $Y = \operatorname{Spec} B$  and  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ . Let  $t \in B$  and let  $s = N_{B/A}(t) \in A$ . Then*

$$U := D(s) \subseteq f(D(t)) := f(V).$$

*We have equality if and only if  $t$  belongs to every prime  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  that lies over a prime  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$  which contains  $s$ . In particular, we always have  $f(D(s)) = D(s)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{p} \in D(s)$ , so  $s \notin \mathfrak{p}$ . Since  $A \rightarrow B$  is an integral extension, the map  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is surjective, so there exists a prime  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  which lies over  $\mathfrak{p}$ . We cannot have  $t \in \mathfrak{q}$ , otherwise this would imply  $s \in \mathfrak{p}$  since  $N_{B/A}(\mathfrak{q}) \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . Thus  $t \notin \mathfrak{q}$  which means  $\mathfrak{q} \in D(t)$ . It follows that  $\mathfrak{p} \in f(D(t))$ , and since  $\mathfrak{p}$  was arbitrary, we see that  $D(s) \subseteq f(D(t))$ . We may not get the reverse inequality. Indeed, suppose  $\mathfrak{q}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{q}_2$  are two distinct primes of  $B$  that lie over a common prime  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$ , and suppose  $t \in \mathfrak{q}_1$  but  $t \notin \mathfrak{q}_2$ . Then  $\mathfrak{p} \in f(D(t))$  since  $f(\mathfrak{q}_2) = \mathfrak{p}$  and  $t \notin \mathfrak{q}_2$ , however  $\mathfrak{p} \notin D(s)$  since  $t \in \mathfrak{q}_1$  and  $s \in N_{B/A}(\mathfrak{q}_1) \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . On the other hand, if  $t$  belongs to every prime  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  which lies over a prime  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$  which contains  $s$ , then we will get equality.  $\square$

**Example 1.15.** Keep the same notation as in the proposition above. Let us describe the morphism of presheaves  $f^+\mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y$  on  $Y$ . First, on the open subsets  $V \subseteq Y$  of the form  $V = D(s)$  where  $s \in A \subseteq B$ , we have

$$(f^+\mathcal{O}_X)(V) = A_s \rightarrow B_s = \mathcal{O}_Y(V),$$

where  $A_s \rightarrow B_s$  is the localization map given by  $a/s^n \mapsto a/s^n$ . Now suppose  $V = D(t)$  where  $t \in B$  but  $t \notin A$  and set  $s = N_{B/A}(t)$ . Furthermore suppose that  $t$  belongs to every prime  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  which lies over a prime  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$ . Then we have

$$(f^+\mathcal{O}_X)(V) = A_s \rightarrow B_t = \mathcal{O}_Y(V),$$

where  $A_s \rightarrow B_t$  is the localization map given by  $a/s^n \mapsto a/s^n$  where this map makes sense because  $s$  is a unit in  $B_t$ . Finally, suppose for every prime  $\mathfrak{p}$  which contains  $s$ , there exists a prime  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  that lies over  $\mathfrak{p}$  such that  $t \notin \mathfrak{q}$ . Then  $f(V) = X$  and so in this case we have

$$(f^+\mathcal{O}_X)(V) = A \rightarrow B_t = \mathcal{O}_Y(V),$$

where  $A \rightarrow B_t$  is the localization map given by  $a \mapsto a/1$ .

### 1.8.3 Inverse-Direct Image Adjointness

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$  and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a presheaf on  $Y$ . Given a morphism  $\varphi: f^+\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  of presheaves on  $Y$ , we define a morphism  $\varphi^\flat: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{G}$  of presheaves on  $X$  as follows: let  $U \subseteq X$  be open and let  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ . We set

$$(\varphi^\flat)s = \varphi([s]_{ff^{-1}U}), \tag{7}$$

where we denoted  $ff^{-1}U = f(f^{-1}(U))$  as well as  $(\varphi^\flat)s = (\varphi_U^\flat)(s)$  and  $\varphi([s]_{ff^{-1}U}) = \varphi_{f^{-1}U}([s]_{ff^{-1}U})$  in order to suppress notation. This gives rise to a map

$$(-)^\flat: \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbf{Psh} Y}(f^+\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbf{Psh} X}(\mathcal{F}, f_*\mathcal{G}).$$

The idea behind our notation is that one thinks of (7) as applying the “associative law” by pushing the parenthesis forward (which matches up with the idea that  $(-)^\flat$  takes the morphism  $\varphi$  of presheaves on  $Y$  and pushes it forward to a morphism  $\varphi^\flat$  of presheaves on  $X$ ). Applying the associative law in this case has the effect of removing  $\flat$  in the superscript and introducing  $ff^{-1}U$  in the subscript. We now want to define an inverse to  $(-)^\flat$  which we will denote by

$$(-)^\sharp: \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbf{Psh} X}(\mathcal{F}, f_*\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbf{Psh} Y}(f^+\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}).$$

Given a morphism  $\psi: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{G}$  of presheaves on  $X$ , we define a morphism  $\psi^\sharp: f^+\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  of presheaves on  $Y$  as follows: let  $V \subseteq Y$  and  $U \subseteq X$  be open sets such that  $f(V) \subseteq U$  and let  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ . We set

$$\psi^\sharp([s]_{fV}) = (\psi s)|_V \tag{8}$$

where we denoted  $\psi s = \psi(s)$  as well as  $fV = f(V)$  and  $\psi^\sharp = \psi_V^\sharp$  in order to suppress notation. Note that  $\psi s$  lives in  $f_*\mathcal{G}(U) = \mathcal{G}(f^{-1}(U))$ , so restricting this section to  $V \subseteq f^{-1}(U)$  is meaningful, however keep in mind that we can’t bring  $|_V$  inside the parenthesis since  $\psi$  and  $s$  are associative with  $X$  (not  $Y$ ). Again, the idea behind here is that one thinks of (8) as applying the “associative law” by pulling the parenthesis back (which matches up with the idea

that  $(-)^{\#}$  takes the morphism  $\psi$  on  $X$  and pulls it back to a morphism  $\psi^{\#}$  on  $Y$ ). The associative law in this case has the effect of removing  $\#$  in the superscript and replacing the  $_{fV}$  with  $|_V$ . One of the main benefits that we get with our notation is that it is very easy to see that  $(-)^{\flat}$  and  $(-)^{\#}$  are inverse to each other. For instance, given  $U$ ,  $V$ ,  $\varphi$ ,  $\psi$ , and  $s$  as above, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\varphi^{\flat})^{\#}([s]_{fV}) &= ((\varphi^{\flat})s)|_V \\ &= (\varphi([s]_{ff^{-1}U}))|_V \\ &= \varphi([s]_{ff^{-1}U})|_V \\ &= \varphi([s]_{fV}), \end{aligned}$$

where the last part follows from the fact that  $\varphi$  is a morphism of presheaves on  $Y$  (so we could bring the  $|_V$  inside the parenthesis) and  $[s]_{ff^{-1}U}|_V = [s]_{fV}$  since  $f^{-1}U \supseteq V$ . Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ((\psi^{\#})^{\flat})s &= \psi^{\#}([s]_{ff^{-1}U}) \\ &= (\psi s)|_{f^{-1}U} \\ &= \psi s, \end{aligned}$$

where the last part follows from the fact that  $\psi s$  lives over  $f^{-1}U$ . It is straightforward to check that  $(-)^{\flat}$  and  $(-)^{\#}$  are natural in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$ . We therefore have

**Proposition 1.10.** *Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$  and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a presheaf on  $Y$ . Then there is a bijection*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Psh} Y}(f^+ \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) & \longleftrightarrow & \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Psh} X}(\mathcal{F}, f_* \mathcal{G}) \\ \varphi & \rightarrow & \varphi^{\flat} \\ \psi^{\#} & \leftarrow & \psi \end{array}$$

which is functorial in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$ . Moreover, if  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf, then this restricts to a bijection

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sh} Y}(f^+ \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \longleftrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sh} X}(\mathcal{F}, f_* \mathcal{G})$$

which is functorial in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$ . In particular, the pullback functor  $f^{-1}: \mathbf{Psh} X \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh} Y$  is left adjoint to the pushforward functor  $f_*: \mathbf{Sh} Y \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh} X$ , and hence  $f^{-1}$  preserves colimits while  $f_*$  preserves limits.

*Remark 7.* We will almost never use the concrete description of  $f^{-1}\mathcal{G}$  in the sequel. Very often we are given  $f$ ,  $\mathcal{F}$ , and  $\mathcal{G}$ , and a morphism of sheaves  $f^{\flat}: \mathcal{G} \rightarrow f_* \mathcal{F}$ . Then usually it is sufficient to understand for each  $x \in X$  the map

$$f_x^{\#}: \mathcal{G}_{f(x)} \rightarrow (f^{-1}\mathcal{G})_x \cong \mathcal{F}_x,$$

induced by  $f^{\#}: f^{-1}\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  on stalks.

#### 1.8.4 Proper Direct Image

Let  $X$  be a topological space and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf of abelian groups on  $X$ . Given an open subset  $U \subseteq X$  and a section  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ , we define the **support** of  $s$  to be the set

$$\mathrm{Supp}(s) = \{x \in X \mid s_x \neq 0\}.$$

The support of  $s$  is a closed subset of  $U$ . To see this, we show that its complement  $\mathrm{Supp}(s)^c = \{x \in X \mid s_x = 0\}$  is open. If  $x \in \mathrm{Supp}(s)^c$ , then there exists an open neighborhood  $U'$  of  $x$  contained in  $U$  such that  $s|_{U'} = 0$ . However this means that if  $y \in U'$ , then  $s_y = 0$  also. In other words,  $U'$  is an open neighborhood of  $x$  which is contained in  $\mathrm{Supp}(s)^c$ , hence  $\mathrm{Supp}(s)^c$  is open.

**Example 1.16.** Let  $X = \mathrm{Spec} A$  where  $A$  is a commutative ring and let  $a \in A$ . Then for any prime  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$ , we have  $a = 0$  in  $A_{\mathfrak{p}}$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{p}$  doesn't contain  $0 : a = \mathrm{Ann}(a)$ . In other words,

$$\mathrm{Supp}(a) = V(0 : a) = \{\mathfrak{p} \in \mathrm{Spec} A \mid \mathfrak{p} \supseteq 0 : a\}.$$

More generally, if  $M$  is an  $A$ -module and  $u \in M$ , then  $\mathrm{Supp}(u) = V(\mathrm{Ann}(u))$ . In general, if  $M$  is finitely generated then  $\mathrm{Supp} M = V(\mathrm{Ann} M)$ .

**Definition 1.8.** Let  $X$  be a topological space, let  $W \subseteq X$  be a locally closed subspace, and denote  $j: W \rightarrow X$  to be the inclusion map. For a sheaf  $\mathcal{G}$  of abelian groups on  $W$ , we define a sheaf  $j_! \mathcal{G}$  on  $X$  by

$$j_! \mathcal{G}(U) := \{s \in \mathcal{G}(W \cap U) \mid \mathrm{Supp}(s) \text{ is closed in } U\},$$

and we call it the **proper direct image** of  $\mathcal{G}$ .

**Example 1.17.** Let  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  where  $A$  is a commutative ring, let  $s \in A$ , and let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be an ideal of  $A$ . Set

$$W = \operatorname{Spec}(A_s/\mathfrak{a}_s) = D(s) \cap V(\mathfrak{a}) = \{\mathfrak{p} \in X \mid s \notin \mathfrak{p} \text{ and } \mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}\}.$$

Then  $W$  is locally closed in  $X$ . The map  $j: W \rightarrow X$  corresponds to the ring map  $\varphi: A \rightarrow A_s/\mathfrak{a}_s := B$ . Now let  $\mathcal{N} = \widetilde{N}$  where  $N$  is a  $B$ -module. Recall that  $j_*\mathcal{N} = \widetilde{N_\varphi}$  where  $N_\varphi$  denotes  $N$  viewed as an  $A$ -module. We now wish to compute  $j_!\mathcal{N}$ . To this end, first note that

$$\begin{aligned} j_!\mathcal{N}(X) &= \{v \in N \mid j(V(\operatorname{Ann}_B(v))) \text{ is closed in } X\} \\ &= \{v \in N \mid j(V(\operatorname{Ann}_B(v))) = V(\operatorname{Ann}_A(v))\} \end{aligned}$$

observe that for  $U = D(r)$  in  $X$ , we have

$$j_!\mathcal{N}(U) = \{v \in N_{\varphi(r)} \mid V(\operatorname{Ann}(v)) \text{ is closed in } X\}.$$

We have

$$\operatorname{Ann}_A(v)_S = \operatorname{Ann}_{A_S}(v)$$

Indeed, if  $x/s \in \operatorname{Ann}_A(v)_S$  where  $x \in \operatorname{Ann}_A(v)$ , then obviously  $(x/s)v = 0$  implies  $x/s \in \operatorname{Ann}_{A_S}(v)$ . Conversely, suppose  $x/s \in \operatorname{Ann}_{A_S}(v)$ . Thus we have  $(x/s) = xv/s = 0$ . However all we can conclude at this point is that  $s^k x \in \operatorname{Ann}_A(v)$  for some  $k$ . But then  $x/s = (s^k x)/s^{k+1} \in \operatorname{Ann}_A(v)_S$ . Alternatively:

$$\operatorname{Hom}_A(R/v, R)$$

$$(a + bv)(c + dv) = ac + (ad + bc)v$$

We form

$$R \oplus \langle v \rangle$$

ring

Let  $V$  be an open subspace of  $X$ , let  $j: V \rightarrow X$  be the inclusion map, and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a presheaf of abelian groups on  $V$ . We define a presheaf  $j_!^p \mathcal{G}$  of abelian groups on  $X$  by

$$(j_!^p \mathcal{G})(U) = \begin{cases} \mathcal{G}(U) & \text{if } U \subseteq V \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

Note that if  $V$  is a proper open subset of  $X$ , then  $j_!^p \mathcal{G}$  will almost always fail to be a sheaf for the simple reason that  $(j_!^p \mathcal{G})(X) = 0$ . On the other hand, if  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf then it is straightforward to check that  $j_!^p \mathcal{G}$  is separated.

**Proposition 1.11.** *With the notation as above, assume that  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sheaf. There is a functorial isomorphism*

$$(j_!^p \mathcal{G})^\# \xrightarrow{\sim} j_! \mathcal{G},$$

where  $(-)^\#$  denotes the sheafification functor. Furthermore, the functor  $j_!$  is left adjoint to  $j^{-1}$ .

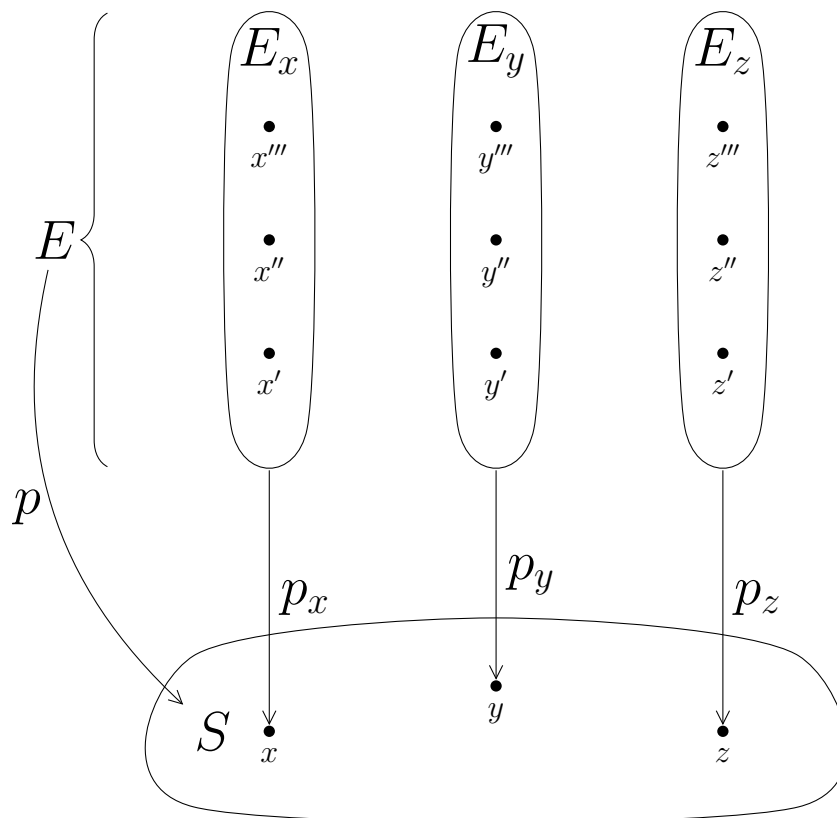
## 1.9 Sheaves and Etale Spaces

### 1.9.1 Bundles

**Definition 1.9.** The **slice category**  $\mathbf{C}/c$  of a category  $\mathbf{C}$  over an object  $c \in \mathbf{C}$  is the category whose objects are morphisms  $f: d \rightarrow c$  and whose morphisms from  $f: d \rightarrow c$  to  $f': d' \rightarrow c$  are the morphisms  $g: d \rightarrow d'$  such that  $f' \circ g = f$ :

<u>Objects</u>	<u>Morphisms</u>
$d \xrightarrow{f} c$	$\begin{array}{ccc} d & \xrightarrow{g} & d' \\ & \searrow f & \swarrow f' \\ & c & \end{array}$
object $(d, f)$	morphism $g$

**Example 1.18.** Let  $S$  be a set. An object  $(E, p) \in \mathbf{Set}/S$  can be pictured like this:



Let's take a moment to reflect on this image, because it will serve as a nice visualization tool for other categories. For each element  $s \in S$ , there is an associated set  $E_s$ , which is just the inverse image of  $s$  under  $p$ , i.e.  $p^{-1}(s) = E_s$ .  $E_s$  is called the **fiber** of  $p$  over  $s$ . Notice that for any distinct  $s, s' \in S$ ,  $E_s \cap E_{s'} = \emptyset$ , and that  $\bigcup_s E_s = E$ . We also have functions  $p_s$ , which is just the restriction of  $p$  to  $E_s$ . The commutativity condition for morphisms in the slice category tells us that a morphism  $f : (E, p) \rightarrow (E', p')$  satisfies  $f(E_s) \subseteq E'_s$  for all  $s \in S$ . The whole structure is called a **bundle** of sets over the **base space**  $S$ , with  $E$  being called the **total space** and  $p$  being called the **projection**.

### 1.9.2 Etale Spaces

**Definition 1.10.** Let  $E$  and  $X$  be topological spaces. A **local homeomorphism** is a continuous map  $\pi : E \rightarrow X$  with the additional property that for each point  $e \in E$  there exists an open neighborhood  $U_e$  in  $E$  such that  $\pi(U_e)$  is open in  $X$ , and  $\pi$  restricts to a homeomorphism  $\pi|_{U_e} : U_e \rightarrow \pi(U_e)$ .

Intuitively, a local homeomorphism preserves “local structure”. For example,  $B$  is locally compact if and only if  $\pi(B)$  is.

**Proposition 1.12.** Let  $\pi : E \rightarrow X$  be a local homeomorphism, then  $\pi$  is an open map.

*Proof.* Let  $U$  be open in  $E$ , we need to show that  $\pi(U)$  is open in  $X$ . For each  $e \in U$ , choose an open neighborhood  $U_e$  of  $e$  such that  $\pi(U_e)$  is open in  $X$  and  $\pi$  restricts to a homeomorphism  $\pi|_{U_e} : U_e \rightarrow \pi(U_e)$ . Then  $U \cap U_e$  is open in  $U_e$ , and since homeomorphisms are open maps,  $\pi|_{U_e}(U \cap U_e)$  is open in  $\pi(U_e)$  in the subspace topology. Since  $\pi(U_e)$  is open in  $X$ ,  $\pi(U \cap U_e)$  is open in  $X$  too. Finally, since

$$\bigcup_{e \in U} \pi(U \cap U_e) = \pi(U),$$

$\pi(U)$  is open in  $X$ . □

**Example 1.19.** If  $X$  is a topological space and  $Y$  is a discrete space, then the projection  $Y \times X \rightarrow X$  is a local homeomorphism. On the other hand, the projection map  $\mathbb{R} \times X \rightarrow X$  is never a local homeomorphism, because no product neighborhood is projected homeomorphically into  $X$ . For much the same reason, a nontrivial vector bundle is never a locally homeomorphism either.

**Definition 1.11.** An **etale space** over  $X$  is an object  $(E, \pi) \in \mathbf{Top}/X$  such that  $\pi$  is a local homeomorphism. We denote by  $\mathbf{Etale}(X)$  to be the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Top}/X$  whose objects are etale spaces over  $X$  and whose morphisms being the same as in  $\mathbf{Top}/X$ .

### 1.9.3 An equivalence of categories

We start with the main theorem:

**Theorem 1.2.** *For any topological space  $X$  there is a pair of adjoint functors*

$$\mathbf{Top}/X \xrightleftharpoons[\Lambda]{\Gamma} \mathbf{Set}^{O(X)^{op}}$$

where  $\Gamma$  assigns to each object in  $(E, \pi) \in \mathbf{Top}/X$ , the sheaf of all sections  $\mathcal{F}_\pi$  of  $\pi$ , while its left adjoint  $\Lambda$  assigns to each presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$ , the etale space  $(E_\mathcal{F}, \pi_\mathcal{F})$ . There are natural transformations

$$\eta_\mathcal{F} : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \Gamma \Lambda \mathcal{F} \quad \epsilon_E : \Lambda \Gamma E \rightarrow E$$

for a presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  and an object  $(E, \pi) \in \mathbf{Top}/X$ , which are unit and counit making  $\Lambda$  a left adjoint for  $\Gamma$ . If  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf,  $\eta_\mathcal{F}$  is an isomorphism, while if  $(E, \pi)$  is etale,  $\epsilon_E$  is an isomorphism.

### 1.9.4 From $\mathbf{Top}/X$ to $\mathbf{Sh}(X)$

Given an object  $(E, \pi) \in \mathbf{Top}/X$ , we can associate a sheaf  $\mathcal{F}_\pi$  as follows: for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ , we define

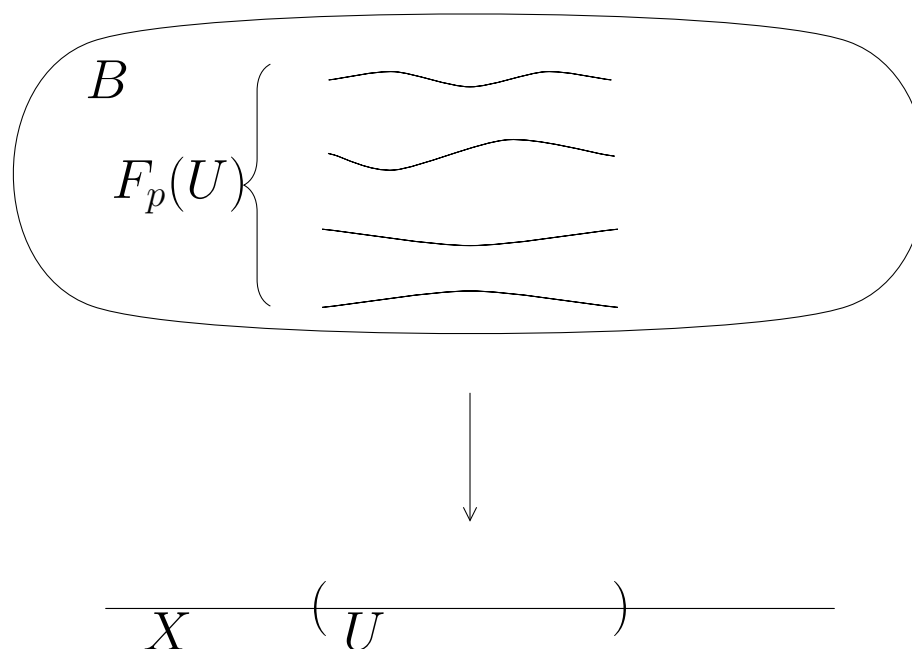
$$\mathcal{F}_\pi(U) := \{s : U \rightarrow E \mid s \text{ is continuous and } \pi|_U \circ s = \text{id}_U\}.$$

For all inclusions of open sets  $U \subseteq V$ , we use the obvious restriction maps: if  $s \in \mathcal{F}_\pi(V)$  then  $s|_U \in \mathcal{F}_\pi(U)$ . We claim that  $\mathcal{F}_\pi$  is a sheaf (and not just a presheaf).

Indeed, let  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an open covering of an open subset  $U$  of  $X$ , and let  $s_i \in \mathcal{F}_\pi(U_i)$  such that  $s_i|_{U_{ij}} = s_j|_{U_{ij}}$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . We can construct an  $s \in \mathcal{F}_\pi(U)$  such that  $s|_{U_i} = s_i$  as follows: if  $x \in U$ , choose some  $U_i$  that has  $x \in U_i$ , and set  $s(x) = s_i(x)$ . We need to check that this is well-defined (i.e. independent of the choice of neighborhood of  $x$ ). Suppose  $x \in U_j$  for some  $j \neq i$ . Then because  $s_i|_{U_{ij}} = s_j|_{U_{ij}}$ , we have  $s(x) = s_j(x) = s_i(x)$ . Thus, this construction is well-defined. Moreover,  $s$  is continuous since if  $V$  is an open subset of  $E$ , then

$$s^{-1}(V) = \bigcup_{i \in I} s_i^{-1}(V)$$

is open in  $X$ . Finally, uniqueness of  $s$  is guaranteed since  $\mathcal{F}_\pi$  is a presheaf of functions. We call  $\mathcal{F}_\pi$  the **sheaf of sections of  $\pi$** .



Let  $f : (E, \pi) \rightarrow (E', \pi')$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Top}/X$ . Then for each open subset  $U$  of  $X$ , we define  $f_U : \mathcal{F}_\pi(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{\pi'}(U)$  to be the function that maps a section  $s \in \mathcal{F}_\pi(U)$  to  $f \circ s$ . The maps  $f_U$  are the components of a natural transformation from  $\mathcal{F}_\pi \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{\pi'}$ . Thus, we have constructed a functor  $\Gamma : \mathbf{Top}/X \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(X)$ .



### 1.9.5 From $\mathbf{Psh}(X)$ to $\mathbf{Etale}(X)$

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf on  $X$ . Define

$$E_{\mathcal{F}} := \coprod_{x \in X} \mathcal{F}_x = \bigcup_{x \in X} \{(x, s_0) \mid s_0 \in \mathcal{F}_x\}.$$

and let  $\pi_{\mathcal{F}} : E_{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow X$  be the obvious projection map (i.e.  $(x, s) \mapsto x$ ). For each open subset  $U$  of  $X$  and section  $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ , let  $[U, s] = \{(x, s_x) \mid x \in U\}$ . Let  $\tau$  be the topology on  $E_{\mathcal{F}}$  with the collection of all  $[U, s]$  as a subbasis. We claim that the collection of all  $[U, s]$  is actually a basis for this topology. Indeed, let  $[U, s], [V, t] \in \mathcal{B}$  and suppose  $(x_0, s_{x_0}) \in [U, s] \cap [V, t]$ . Then  $x_0 \in U \cap V$  and  $s_{x_0} = t_{x_0}$ . This implies that there exists a neighborhood  $U_0$  of  $x$  such that  $U_0 \subseteq U \cap V$  and  $s|_{U_0} = t|_{U_0}$ . Hence  $s_x = t_x$  for all  $x \in U_0$ . In particular,  $[U_0, s|_{U_0}] \subseteq [U, s] \cap [V, t]$ .

Finally, we want to show that  $\pi_{\mathcal{F}} : E_{\mathcal{F}} \rightarrow X$  is a local homeomorphism with respect to this topology. To see why, note that  $\pi_{\mathcal{F}}$  maps basis elements to basis elements (i.e.  $[U, s] \mapsto U$ ). Thus, it must be an open mapping. Also, if  $(x, s_0) \in E_{\mathcal{F}}$ , then after choosing a representative of  $s_0$ , say  $(U, s)$ , we see that  $(x, s_0) \in [U, s]$  and  $\pi|_{[U, s]} : [U, s] \rightarrow U$  is a homeomorphism. Indeed,  $\pi|_{[U, s]}$  is an open mapping and a bijection, hence its inverse must be continuous.

### 1.9.6 co-unit

Let  $p : B \rightarrow X$  be any local homeomorphism,  $F_p$  its sheaf of sections, and  $p_{F_p} : B_{F_p} \rightarrow X$  the associated sheaf of germs. Define a map  $k : B \rightarrow B_{F_p}$  as follow: If  $b \in B$ , there exist a local section  $s$  of  $p$  through  $b$ , defined on an open set  $V$ , i.e.  $b \in s(V)$  (we proved this earlier). Let  $k(b) = (f(b), [s]_{f(b)})$  be the germ of  $s$  at  $f(b)$ . The definition of  $k(b)$  does not depend on which section through  $b$  is chosen (we proved this earlier too). This gives us the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{k} & B_{F_p} \\ & \searrow p & \swarrow p_{F_p} \\ & X & \end{array}$$

And  $k$  is a  $\mathbf{Etale}(X)$ -arrow from  $p$  to  $p_{F_p}$ , in fact, it is an iso.

### 1.9.7 unit

Define  $\tau_U : F(U) \rightarrow F_{F_p}(U)$  by putting, for  $s \in F(U)$ ,  $\tau_U(s) = s_U$ , where  $s_U : U \rightarrow A_F$  is defined by putting  $s_U(x) = (x, [s]_x)$  for all  $x \in U$ ...

## 2 Ringed Spaces

### 2.1 Definition of a Ringed Space and a Locally Ringed Space

Throughout the rest of this article, let  $R$  be a commutative ring and let  $\alpha \in \widehat{\mathbb{N}}_0 = \mathbb{N} \cup \{0, \infty, \omega\}$ . Ringed spaces formalize the idea of giving a geometric object by specifying its underlying topological space and the “functions” on all open subsets of this space.

**Definition 2.1.**

1. An  **$R$ -ringed space** is a pair  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ , where  $X$  is a topological space and where  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is a sheaf of commutative  $R$ -algebras on  $X$ . The sheaf of rings  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is called the **structure sheaf** of  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ . If  $R = \mathbb{Z}$ , then we simplify our notation and write “ringed space” instead of “ $\mathbb{Z}$ -ringed space”.
2. A **locally  $R$ -ringed space** is an  $R$ -ringed space  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  such that the stalk  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  is a local ring for all  $x \in X$ . We then denote by  $\mathfrak{m}_{X,x}$  (or simply  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  if  $X$  is understood from context) the maximal ideal of  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  and by  $\kappa_{X,x} := \mathcal{O}_{X,x}/\mathfrak{m}_{X,x}$  (or simply  $\kappa_x$  if  $X$  is understood from context) its residue field. If  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(U)$ , then its image in  $\kappa_x$  is denoted  $s(x)$ . Note that if  $U$  is a fixed open subset of  $X$ , then it is not necessarily true that every element in  $\kappa_x$  can be expressed as  $s(x)$  for some  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(U)$ . On the other hand, it is the case that every element in  $\kappa_x$  as  $t(x)$  for some  $t \in \mathcal{O}_X(V)$  for some open neighborhood  $V$  of  $x$  (perhaps  $V$  needs to be smaller than  $U$ ).

Usually we will denote a (locally)  $R$ -ringed space  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  simply by  $X$ . Also if we write “let  $X$  be a (locally)  $R$ -ringed space”, then it will be understood that its structure sheaf is denoted  $\mathcal{O}_X$  (unless otherwise specified of course). Sometimes we may write “let  $(X, \mathcal{O})$  be a (locally)  $R$ -ringed space”, and in this case the structure sheaf of  $X$  is denoted  $\mathcal{O}$ .

**Example 2.1.** Let  $X$  be an open subset of a finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space. We denote by  $\mathcal{C}_X^\alpha$  the sheaf of  $C^\alpha$  functions: For all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ , we have

$$\mathcal{C}_X^\alpha(U) = \{f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \mid f \text{ is } C^\alpha\}.$$

Then  $\mathcal{C}_X^\alpha$  is a sheaf of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras. The same argument as for sheaves of continuous functions yields the following observation: For all  $x \in X$  the stalk  $\mathcal{C}_{X,x}^\alpha$  is a local ring. In particular  $(X, \mathcal{C}_X^\alpha)$  is a locally  $\mathbb{R}$ -ringed space.

Another example comes from Algebraic Geometry:

**Example 2.2.** Let  $k$  be an algebraically closed field and let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  be an irreducible affine algebraic set. The space  $X$  is equipped with the Zariski topology. Recall that a function  $\varphi : U \rightarrow k$  from an open subset  $U$  of  $X$  to the field  $k$  is called **regular** at the point  $x_0 \in X$  if there exists an open neighborhood  $U_0$  of  $x_0$  such that  $U_0 \subseteq U$  and there are polynomials  $f, g \in k[T_1, \dots, T_n]$  with  $g(x) \neq 0$  and  $\varphi(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$  for all  $x \in U_0$ . With this in mind, we define the structure sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X$  of  $X$  as follows: for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ , we define

$$\mathcal{O}_X(U) = \{\varphi : U \rightarrow k \mid \varphi \text{ is regular}\}.$$

**Proposition 2.1.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a locally  $R$ -ringed space and let  $u \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  such that  $u_x \notin \mathfrak{m}_x$  for each  $x \in X$ . Then  $u$  is a unit in  $\mathcal{O}(X)$ . In other words,  $u$  being a unit is a local property (it can be checked locally, just like how a continuous function can be checked locally).

*Proof.* First note that  $u_x \notin \mathfrak{m}_x$  is equivalent to saying  $u_x$  is a unit in  $\mathcal{O}_x$  since  $\mathcal{O}_x$  is a local ring. Therefore if  $u_x \notin \mathfrak{m}_x$  for all  $x \in X$ , then  $u$  is locally a unit, meaning there exists an open covering  $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$  such that  $u|_{U_i}$  is a unit in  $\mathcal{O}(U_i)$  for each  $i$ . Denote the inverse of  $u|_{U_i}$  in  $\mathcal{O}(U_i)$  by  $v_i \in \mathcal{O}(U_i)$ , so  $(u|_{U_i})v_i = 1$  in  $\mathcal{O}(U_i)$ . Since the restriction maps are algebra homomorphisms we have

$$\begin{aligned} (u|_{U_{ij}})(v_i|_{U_{ij}}) &= ((u|_{U_i})v_i)|_{U_{ij}} \\ &= 1|_{U_{ij}} \\ &= ((u|_{U_j})v_j)|_{U_{ij}} \\ &= (u|_{U_{ij}})(v_j|_{U_{ij}}) \end{aligned}$$

for all  $i, j$ . Since inverses are unique, it follows that  $v_i|_{U_{ij}} = v_j|_{U_{ij}}$  for all  $i, j$ . Thus there exists a unique  $v \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  such that  $v|_{U_i} = v_i$  for all  $i$ . But then locally we have  $uv - 1 = 0$ , so the sheaf condition again implies  $uv - 1 = 0$ . Thus  $u$  is a (global) unit.  $\square$

## 2.2 Morphisms of (Locally) Ringed Spaces

**Definition 2.2.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be  $R$ -ringed spaces.

1. A **morphism of  $R$ -ringed spaces**  $X \rightarrow Y$  is a pair  $(f, f^\flat)$ , where  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a continuous map of the underlying topological spaces and where  $f^\flat : \mathcal{O}_Y \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_X$  is a homomorphism of sheaves of  $R$ -algebras on  $Y$ . The datum of  $f^\flat$  is equivalent to the datum of a homomorphism of sheaves of  $R$ -algebras  $f^\# : f^{-1}\mathcal{O}_Y \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X$  on  $X$  by Proposition (1.10). In particular, usually we simply write  $f$  instead of  $(f, f^\#)$  or  $(f, f^\flat)$ .
2. Suppose  $X$  and  $Y$  are locally ringed spaces. For each  $x \in X$ , we obtain a homomorphism of  $R$ -algebras  $f_x : \mathcal{O}_{Y,f(x)} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  which is defined by

$$f_x([t]_{f(x)}) = [f^\flat(t)]_x$$

for all  $[t]_{f(x)} \in \mathcal{O}_{Y,f(x)}$ . We say  $f$  is a **morphism of locally  $R$ -ringed spaces** if each  $f_x$  is **local**, meaning

$$f_x(\mathfrak{m}_{f(x)}) \subseteq \mathfrak{m}_x.$$

In particular, this implies  $f_x$  induces a nonzero homomorphism of residue fields  $\iota_x : \kappa_{Y,f(x)} \rightarrow \kappa_{X,x}$  where

$$\iota_x(t(f(x))) = f^\flat(t)(x)$$

where  $t(f(x)) \in \kappa_{Y,f(x)}$ . The map  $\iota_x$  is necessarily an injective map: it realizes  $\kappa_{Y,f(x)}$  as a field extension of  $\kappa_{X,x}$ .

Notice that if  $f_x$  wasn't local, then  $\iota_x : \kappa_Y(f(x)) \rightarrow \kappa_X(x)$  would just be the zero map. Thus the local condition on  $f_x$  allows to identify  $\kappa_Y(f(x))$  with the subfield  $\iota_x\kappa_Y(f(x))$  of  $\kappa_X(x)$ . Recall that if  $t \in \mathcal{O}_Y(V)$  is a section, then we can view it as a function whose value at  $y \in V$  is given by  $t(y) \in \kappa_Y(y)$  (if  $y \neq y'$ , then  $\kappa_Y(y)$  may not be the same field as  $\kappa_Y(y')$ , so  $t$  really takes values in different fields), where  $t(y)$  is the image of  $t$  under the composite map

$$\mathcal{O}_Y(V) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y,y} \rightarrow \kappa_Y(y).$$

Intuitively, the section  $f^\flat(t) \in \mathcal{O}_X(f^{-1}(V))$  is equal to  $f^*(t)$  as functions, meaning

$$f^\flat(t)(x) = t(f(x)) = f^*(t)(x) \quad (9)$$

for all  $x \in f^{-1}(V)$ . However we need to be careful, because  $f^\flat(t)(x) \in \kappa_X(x)$  and  $f^*(t)(x) \in \kappa_Y(f(x))$  belong to different fields in general. The key is that  $f_x$  being a local homomorphism allows us to identify  $\kappa_Y(f(x))$  with the subfield  $\iota_x \kappa_Y(f(x))$  of  $\kappa_X(x)$ . With this identification in mind (for each  $x \in X$ ) we can make sense of the identity.

In general there exist locally ringed spaces and morphisms of ringed spaces between them that are not morphisms of *locally* ringed spaces. For spaces with functions of  $C^\alpha$  functions such as the premanifolds defined below, we will see that every morphism of ringed spaces is automatically a morphism of locally ringed spaces.

*Remark 8.* The composition of morphisms of (locally)  $R$ -ringed spaces is defined in the obvious way using the compatibility of direct images with composition (i.e.  $(g \circ f)_* = g_* \circ f_*$ ). We obtain the category of (locally)  $R$ -ringed spaces.

In general,  $f^\flat$  (or  $f^\#$ ) is an additional datum for a morphism. For instance it might happen that  $f$  is the identity but  $f^\flat$  is not an isomorphism of sheaves. We will usually encounter the simpler case that the structure sheaf is a sheaf of functions on open subsets of  $X$  and that  $f^\flat$  is given by composition with  $f$ . The following special case and its globalization is the main example.

**Example 2.3.** Let  $X \subseteq V$  and  $Y \subseteq W$  be open subsets of finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces  $V$  and  $W$ . Every  $C^\alpha$  map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  defines by composition a morphism of locally  $\mathbb{R}$ -ringed spaces  $(f, f^\flat) : (X, \mathcal{C}_X^\alpha) \rightarrow (Y, \mathcal{C}_Y^\alpha)$  by

$$\begin{aligned} f_U^\flat : \mathcal{C}_Y^\alpha(U) &\longrightarrow f_*(\mathcal{C}_X^\alpha)(U) = \mathcal{C}_X^\alpha(f^{-1}(U)) \\ t &\longmapsto t \circ f \end{aligned}$$

for  $U \subseteq Y$  open.

The induced map on stalks  $f_x : \mathcal{C}_{Y,f(x)}^\alpha \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{X,x}^\alpha$  is then also given by composing an  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued  $C^\alpha$  function  $t$ , defined in some neighborhood of  $f(x)$ , with  $f$ , which yields an  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued  $C^\alpha$  function  $t \circ f$  defined in some neighborhood of  $x$ . Conversely, let  $(f, f^\flat) : (X, \mathcal{C}_X^\alpha) \rightarrow (Y, \mathcal{C}_Y^\alpha)$  be any morphism of  $\mathbb{R}$ -ringed spaces. We claim:

1.  $(f, f^\flat)$  is automatically a morphism of *locally*  $\mathbb{R}$ -ringed spaces.
2. We have  $f^\flat = f^*$ .

To show 1, let  $x \in X$ , set  $\varphi = f_x$ , set  $B = \mathcal{C}_{X,x}^\alpha$ , and set  $A = \mathcal{C}_{Y,f(x)}^\alpha$ . Then  $\varphi : A \rightarrow B$  is a homomorphism of local  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras such that  $A/\mathfrak{m}_A = \mathbb{R}$  and  $B/\mathfrak{m}_B = \mathbb{R}$ . We claim that  $\varphi$  is automatically local, or equivalently that  $\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{m}_B)$  is a maximal ideal of  $A$ . Indeed,  $\varphi$  induces an injective homomorphism of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras

$$A/\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{m}_B) \hookrightarrow B/\mathfrak{m}_B = \mathbb{R},$$

and as a homomorphism of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras, it is automatically surjective (indeed 1 maps to 1), hence  $A/\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{m}_B) \cong \mathbb{R}$  is a field and hence  $\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{m}_B)$  is the maximal ideal of  $A$ .

Let us show 2. Let  $V$  be an open set of  $Y$  and let  $x \in f^{-1}(V)$ . Consider the commutative diagram of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra homomorphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}_Y^\alpha(V) & \xrightarrow{f_V^\flat} & \mathcal{C}_X^\alpha(f^{-1}(V)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & \begin{array}{ccc} t & \longmapsto & f_V^\flat(t) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ [V, t]_{f(x)} & \longmapsto & [f^{-1}(V), f_V^\flat(t)]_x \end{array} & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{C}_{Y,f(x)}^\alpha & \xrightarrow{f_x} & \mathcal{C}_{X,x}^\alpha \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & \begin{array}{ccc} [V, t]_{f(x)} & \longmapsto & [f^{-1}(V), f_V^\flat(t)]_x \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ t(f(x)) & & f_V^\flat(t)(x) \end{array} & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{R} & & \mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

The evaluation maps are surjective. Hence there exists a homomorphism of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras  $\iota: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  making the lower rectangle commutative if and only if one has  $f_x(\ker(\text{ev}_{f(x)})) \subseteq \ker(\text{ev}_x)$ , but this latter condition is satisfied because  $f_x$  is local by 1. Moreover, as a homomorphism of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras, one must have  $\iota = \text{id}_{\mathbb{R}}$ . Therefore we find  $f_V^\flat(t)(x) = t(f(x)) = f_V^*(t)(x)$ , which shows 2.

*Remark 9.* A morphism  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  of  $R$ -ringed spaces is an isomorphism in the category of  $R$ -ringed spaces if and only if  $f$  is a homeomorphism and  $f_x: \mathcal{O}_{Y,f(x)} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  is an isomorphism of  $R$ -algebras for all  $x \in X$ . Indeed,  $(f, f^\flat)$  is an isomorphism if and only if  $f$  is a homeomorphism and  $f^\flat$  is an isomorphism of sheaves of rings. We claim that if  $f$  is a homeomorphism, then  $f^\flat$  is an isomorphism if and only if  $f_x$  is an isomorphism for all  $x \in X$ . To see this, note that since  $f$  is a homeomorphism, we have  $f_x = \pi_{\mathcal{O}_{X,x}} \circ f_x^\flat$ , where  $\pi_{\mathcal{O}_{X,x}}$  is the isomorphism constructed in Proposition (1.6).

### 2.2.1 Open embedding

Let  $X$  be a locally  $R$ -ringed space and let  $U \subseteq X$  be an open set. Then  $(U, \mathcal{O}_{X|U})$  is a locally  $R$ -ringed space, where  $\mathcal{O}_{X|U}$  is defined by

$$\mathcal{O}_{X|U}(U') = \mathcal{O}_X(U')$$

for all open subsets  $U'$  of  $U$  and where the restriction maps are the ones included by  $\mathcal{O}_X$ . Such a locally ringed  $R$ -space is called an **open subspace** of  $X$ . There is an  $\iota: U \rightarrow X$  of locally  $R$ -ringed spaces, where the continuous map  $\iota: U \rightarrow X$  is the inclusion of the underlying topological spaces and where  $\iota^\flat: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \iota_*\mathcal{O}_{X|U}$  is given by the restriction maps  $\mathcal{O}_X(V) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(U \cap V)$  for all open subsets  $V$  of  $X$ . Thus

$$\iota_V^\flat(s) = s|_{U \cap V}$$

for all  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(V)$ . Notice that  $\iota^\sharp: \iota^{-1}\mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X|U}$  is the identity. In particular  $\iota_x$  is the identity for all  $x \in U$ . Given any morphism  $f: X \rightarrow Y$ , we denote by  $f|_U: U \rightarrow Y$  to be the composition  $f \circ \iota$  of morphisms of locally  $R$ -ringed spaces.

**Definition 2.3.** Let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  and  $i: Z \rightarrow X$  be morphisms of locally ringed  $R$ -spaces.

1. We say  $i$  is an **open embedding** if  $i(Z)$  is an open subset of  $X$  and  $i$  induces an isomorphism  $Z \cong i(Z)$  of locally ringed  $R$ -spaces.
2. We say  $f$  is a **local isomorphism** if there exists an open cover  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $X$  such that  $f|_{U_i}: U_i \rightarrow Y$  is an open embedding for all  $i \in I$ . In other words,  $V_i := f(U_i)$  is an open subspace of  $Y$  and  $f|_{U_i}: U_i \rightarrow V_i$  is an isomorphism of locally ringed  $R$ -spaces for each  $i \in I$ . Note that  $f$  is a local isomorphism if and only if  $f$  is a local homeomorphism and  $f_x: \mathcal{O}_{Y,f(x)} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  is an isomorphism for all  $x \in X$ .

**Definition 2.4.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of locally ringed spaces. We say  $f$  is an **open immersion** if  $f$  is a homeomorphism of  $Y$  onto an open subset of  $X$  and the map  $f^{-1}\mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y$  is an isomorphism.

### 2.2.2 Closed Immersions

**Definition 2.5.** Let  $i: Z \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of locally ringed spaces. We say that  $i$  is a **closed immersion** if

1. The map of topological spaces  $i: Z \rightarrow X$  is a homeomorphism of  $Z$  onto a closed subset of  $X$ .
2. The morphism of sheaves  $i^\flat: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow i_*\mathcal{O}_Z$  is surjective (meaning for each  $z \in Z$ , the map  $\iota_z: \mathcal{O}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Z,z}$  is surjective, where  $x = i(z)$ ).
3. The  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -ideal  $\mathcal{I} = \ker(i^\flat)$  is locally generated by sections.

**Proposition 2.2.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. The following are equivalent:

1.  $f$  is a closed immersion.
2. there is an affine open covering  $\{U_i\}$  of  $X$  where  $U_i = \text{Spec } A_i$  such that  $f^{-1}(U_i) = \text{Spec}(A_i/\mathfrak{a}_i)$  for some ideal  $\mathfrak{a}_i$  of  $A_i$ .

**Proposition 2.3.** The property of being a closed immersion is stable under base change.

*Proof.* Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  and  $g: X' \rightarrow X$  be morphisms of schemes such that  $f$  is a closed immersion. We want to show that  $\pi_1: X' \times_X Y \rightarrow X'$  is a closed immersion. Since  $f$  is a closed immersion, there exists an open covering  $\{U_i\}$  of  $X$  such that  $U_i = \text{Spec } A_i$  and  $V_i := f^{-1}(U_i) = \text{Spec}(A_i/\mathfrak{a}_i)$  for some ideal  $\mathfrak{a}_i$  of  $A_i$  for each  $i$ . Cover  $X'$  by open affines

$U'_j = \text{Spec } A'_j$  such that  $g(U'_j) \subseteq U_{i(j)} = U_i$  where of course  $i$  depends on  $j$ . Note that

$$\begin{aligned}\pi_1^{-1}(U'_j) &= U'_j \times_X Y \\ &= U'_j \times_{U_i} V_i \\ &= \text{Spec}((A'_j \otimes_{A_i} (A_i/\mathfrak{a}_i))) \\ &= \text{Spec}(A'_j/\mathfrak{a}_i A'_j).\end{aligned}$$

In particular we see that  $\pi_1^{-1}(U'_j) \rightarrow U'_j$  is a closed immersion, hence  $X' \times_X Y \rightarrow X'$  is a closed immersion.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.1.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be an immersion of schemes. If  $f(Y) \subseteq X$  is a closed subset, then  $f$  is a closed immersion.*

*Proof.* Suppose that  $f(Y)$  is closed. By definition there exists an open subscheme  $U \subseteq X$  such that  $f$  is the composition of the closed immersion  $i: Y \rightarrow U$  and the open immersion  $j: U \rightarrow X$ . Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}_U$ -ideal associated to the closed immersion  $i$  (i.e.  $\mathcal{I} = \ker(\mathcal{O}_U \rightarrow i_*\mathcal{O}_Y)$ ). Note that

$$\mathcal{I}|_{U \setminus i(Y)} = \mathcal{O}_{U \setminus i(Y)} = \mathcal{O}_{X \setminus i(Y)}|_{U \setminus i(Y)}.$$

Thus we may glue  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{O}_{X \setminus i(Y)}$  to form an  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -ideal  $\mathcal{J}$ . Since every point of  $X$  has a neighborhood where  $\mathcal{J}$  is quasi-coherent, we see that  $\mathcal{J}$  is quasi-coherent (in particular locally generated by sections). By construction  $\mathcal{O}_X/\mathcal{J}$  is supported on  $U$  and equal to  $\mathcal{O}_U/\mathcal{I}$ . Thus we see that the closed subspaces associated to  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{J}$  are canonically isomorphic. In particular the closed subspace of  $U$  associated to  $\mathcal{I}$  is isomorphic to the closed subspace of  $X$ . Since  $Y \rightarrow U$  is identified with the closed subspace associated to  $\mathcal{I}$ , we conclude that  $Y \rightarrow U \rightarrow X$  is a closed immersion.  $\square$

## 2.3 Gluing Ringed Spaces

Let  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  be locally  $R$ -ringed spaces, let  $X_{1,2}$  be a nonempty open subset of  $X_1$  and let  $X_{2,1}$  be a nonempty open subset of  $X_2$ , and let  $f: X_{1,2} \rightarrow X_{2,1}$  be an isomorphism of locally  $R$ -ringed spaces. We construct a locally  $R$ -ringed space  $X$ , obtained by gluing  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  using  $f$  as follows:

- The underlying set  $X$  is given by

$$X = X_1 \coprod X_2 / \sim$$

where  $X_1 \coprod X_2$  is the disjoint union of  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  and where  $\sim$  is the equivalence relation defined by  $x \sim f(x)$  for all  $x \in X_{1,2}$ . We give  $X$  the structure of a topological space using the quotient topology with respect to  $\sim$ . Thus a set  $U \subseteq X$  is open if and only if  $U \cap U_1 \subseteq U_1$  and  $U \cap U_2 \subseteq U_2$  are both open subsets of  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  respectively, where  $U_1 = i_1(X_1)$  and  $U_2 = i_2(X_2)$  with  $i_1: X_1 \rightarrow X$  and  $i_2: X_2 \rightarrow X$  being the obvious inclusion maps.

- We give  $X$  the structure of a locally  $R$ -ringed space by defining the structure sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X$  by

$$\mathcal{O}_X(U) = \{(s_1, s_2) \mid s_1 \in \mathcal{O}_{X_1}(U \cap X_1), s_2 \in \mathcal{O}_{X_2}(U \cap X_2), \text{ and } f^b(s_2)|_{U \cap X_{2,1}} = s_1|_{U \cap X_{1,2}}\}$$

for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ .

Let's go over specific examples of this construction:

**Example 2.4.** Let  $X_1 = X_2 = \mathbb{A}^1$  and let  $U_1 = U_2 = \mathbb{A}^1 \setminus \{0\}$ .

- Let  $f: U_1 \rightarrow U_2$  be the isomorphism  $x \mapsto \frac{1}{x}$ . The space  $X$  can be thought of as  $\mathbb{A}^1 \cup \{\infty\}$ . Of course the affine line  $X_1 = \mathbb{A}^1 \subset X$  sits in  $X$ . The complement  $X \setminus X_1$  is a single point that corresponds to the zero point in  $X_2 \cong \mathbb{A}^1$  and hence to “ $\infty = \frac{1}{0}$ ” in the coordinate of  $X_1$ . In the case  $K = \mathbb{C}$ , the space  $X$  is just the Riemann sphere  $\mathbb{C}_\infty$ .
- Let  $f: U_1 \rightarrow U_2$  be the identity map. Then the space  $X$  obtained by gluing along  $f$  is “the affine line with the zero point doubled”. Obviously this is a somewhat weird place. Speaking in classical terms, if we have a sequence of points tending to the zero, this sequence would have two possible limits, namely the two zero points. Usually we want to exclude such spaces from the objects we consider. In the theory of manifolds, this is simply done by requiring that a manifold satisfies the so-called **Hausdorff property**. This is obviously not satisfied for our space  $X$ .

**Example 2.5.** Let  $X$  be the complex affine curve

$$X = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{C}^2 \mid y^2 = (x-1)(x-2)(x-3)(x-4)\}.$$

We can “compactify”  $X$  by adding two points at infinity, corresponding to the limit as  $x \rightarrow \infty$  and the two possible values for  $y$ . To construct this space rigorously, we construct a prevariety as follows:

If we make the coordinate change  $\tilde{x} = 1/x$ , the equation of the curve becomes

$$y^2 \tilde{x}^4 = (1 - \tilde{x})(1 - 2\tilde{x})(1 - 3\tilde{x})(1 - 4\tilde{x}).$$

If we make an additional coordinate change  $\tilde{y} = \frac{y}{x^2}$ , then this becomes

$$\tilde{y}^2 = (1 - \tilde{x})(1 - 2\tilde{x})(1 - 3\tilde{x})(1 - 4\tilde{x}).$$

In these coordinates, we can add our two points at infinity, as they now correspond to  $\tilde{x} = 0$  (and therefore  $\tilde{y} = \pm 1$ ).

Summarizing, our “compactified curve” is just the prevariety obtained by gluing the two affine varieties

$$X = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{C}^2 \mid y^2 = (x-1)(x-2)(x-3)(x-4)\} \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{X} = \{(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) \in \mathbb{C}^2 \mid \tilde{y}^2 = (1-\tilde{x})(1-2\tilde{x})(1-3\tilde{x})(1-4\tilde{x})\}$$

along the isomorphism

$$\begin{aligned} f : U \rightarrow \tilde{U}, \quad (x, y) &\mapsto (\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) = \left(\frac{1}{x}, \frac{y}{x^2}\right) \\ f^{-1} : \tilde{U} \rightarrow U, \quad (\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) &\mapsto (x, y) = \left(\frac{1}{\tilde{x}}, \frac{\tilde{y}}{\tilde{x}^2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

where  $U = \{x \neq 0\} \subset X$  and  $\tilde{U} = \{\tilde{x} \neq 0\} \subset \tilde{X}$ .

## 2.4 $\mathcal{O}_X$ -modules

**Definition 2.6.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space.

1. Let  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  be two presheaves on  $X$ . We define the product presheaf  $\mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{G}$  on  $X$  with respect to  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  by setting

$$(\mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{G})(U) = \mathcal{F}(U) \times \mathcal{G}(U)$$

for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$  where the restriction maps are the products of the restriction maps for  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$ . Clearly this is a sheaf if  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  are sheaves.

2. An  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -**module** is a sheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  equipped with two morphisms of sheaves

$$\mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{O}_X \times \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$$

called addition and scalar-multiplication respectively, such that for each open subset  $U$  of  $X$ , addition and scalar-multiplication by  $\mathcal{O}_X(U)$  gives  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  the structure of an  $\mathcal{O}_X(U)$ -module.

3. Let  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{G}$  be two  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -modules and let  $\varphi : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  be a morphism of sheaves. We say  $\varphi$  is an  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -**module homomorphism** if  $\varphi_U$  is an  $\mathcal{O}_X(U)$ -module homomorphism for each open subset  $U$  of  $X$ . The composition of two  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -module homomorphisms is again an  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -module homomorphism. We obtain a category of  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -modules and  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -module homomorphisms which we denote by  $\mathbf{Mod}_{\mathcal{O}_X}$ .

4. Assume that  $X$  is a locally ringed space. Let  $x \in X$  and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -module. Note that the  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -module structure on  $\mathcal{F}$  induces an  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$ -module structure on  $\mathcal{F}_x$ . The **fiber** of  $\mathcal{F}$  at  $x$ , denoted  $\mathcal{F}(x)$ , is the  $\kappa(x)$ -vector space

$$\mathcal{F}(x) := \mathcal{F}_x / \mathfrak{m}_x \mathcal{F}_x = \mathcal{F}_x \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{X,x}} \kappa(x).$$

If  $s$  is a section of  $\mathcal{F}$  over an open neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$ , we denote by  $s(x)$  the image of the germ  $[s]_x \in \mathcal{F}_x$  in  $\mathcal{F}(x)$ .

**Definition 2.7.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be an  $\mathcal{O}$ -module.

1. We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is **generated by its global sections at  $x \in X$**  if the canonical homomorphism

$$\mathcal{O}_x \otimes_{\mathcal{O}(X)} \mathcal{M}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_x$$

of  $\mathcal{O}_x$ -modules is surjective. In other words,  $\mathcal{M}$  is generated by its global sections at  $x$  if for each  $v \in \mathcal{M}_x$  there exists  $u_1, \dots, u_n \in \mathcal{M}(X)$ , an open neighborhood  $x \in U \subseteq X$ , and  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  such that

$$v = (a_1 u_1 + \dots + a_n u_n)_x. \quad (10)$$

If the map  $\mathcal{O}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_x$  were surjective, then one can go further and say  $v = u_x$  for some  $u \in \mathcal{M}(X)$ . However  $\mathcal{O}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_x$  is usually not surjective in algebraic geometry (though it is in differential geometry).

2. We say that  $\mathcal{M}$  is **generated by its global sections** if it is generated by its global sections at every  $x \in X$ . More generally, we say  $\mathcal{M}$  is generated by  $\{u_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \subseteq \mathcal{M}(X)$  if for each  $x$  we may choose the  $u_i$  in (10) to be in  $\{u_\lambda\}$ . Equivalently,  $\mathcal{M}$  is generated by  $\{u_\lambda\}$  if there exists a surjective homomorphism  $\mathcal{O}^\Lambda \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  given by mapping  $e_\lambda \mapsto u_\lambda$  for all  $\lambda \in \Lambda$ .
3. We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is **locally generated by sections** if for every  $x \in X$  there exists an open neighborhood  $x \in U^x \subseteq X$  such that  $\mathcal{M}_{U^x}$  is globally generated as an  $\mathcal{O}_{U^x}$ -module. In particular, this means that if  $y \in U^x$  and  $v \in \mathcal{M}_y$ , then there exists an open neighborhood  $y \in U \subseteq U^x$  such that

$$v = (a_1 u_1^x + \dots + a_n u_n^x)_y$$

for some  $u_1^x, \dots, u_n^x \in \mathcal{M}(U^x)$  and some  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ .

**Example 2.6.** Consider the open immersion  $\iota: U = (0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R} = X$  and the abelian sheaf  $\iota_! \mathbb{Z}$ . Then for any open interval  $V = (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$ , we will have  $(\iota_! \mathbb{Z})(V) = 0$  and  $(\iota_! \mathbb{Z})_{\varepsilon/2} = \mathbb{Z}$ . Therefore  $\iota_! \mathbb{Z}$  is not generated by global sections nor is it even locally generated by sections.

**Definition 2.8.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be an  $\mathcal{O}$ -module.

1. We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is of **finite type** if for every  $x \in X$  there exists an open neighborhood  $x \in U^x \subseteq X$  such that  $\mathcal{M}_{U^x}$  is generated by finitely many sections. Equivalently, for every  $x$  there exists an open neighborhood  $x \in U \subseteq X$  and an  $n \geq 0$  (which depends on  $U^x$ ) such that there exists a surjection  $\mathcal{O}_{U^x}^n \twoheadrightarrow \mathcal{M}_{U^x}$ . If we let  $u_1^x, \dots, u_n^x \in \mathcal{M}(U^x)$  be the images of the standard basis elements  $e_1, \dots, e_n$ , then this says that for each  $y \in U^x$  and  $\nu \in \mathcal{M}_y$  there exists an open neighborhood  $y \in U \subseteq U^x$  such that

$$\nu = (a_1 u_1^x + \dots + a_n u_n^x)_y$$

for some  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ .

2. We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is of **finite presentation** if for every  $x \in X$  there exists an open neighborhood  $x \in U \subseteq X$  and natural numbers  $n, m \geq 0$  (which depend on  $U$ ) such that  $\mathcal{M}_U$  can be presented as

$$\mathcal{O}_U^m \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_U^n \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_U \longrightarrow 0 \quad (11)$$

In other words, (13) is a short exact sequence of  $\mathcal{O}_U$ -modules.

3. We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is of **quasi-coherent** if for every  $x \in X$  there exists an open neighborhood  $x \in U \subseteq X$  and index sets  $I, J$  (which depend on  $U$ ) such that  $\mathcal{M}_U$  can be presented as

$$\mathcal{O}_U^J \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_U^I \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_U \longrightarrow 0 \quad (12)$$

In particular, for every  $x \in X$  there exists an open neighborhood  $x \in U \subseteq X$  such that  $\mathcal{M}_U$  is generated by global sections and for a suitable choice of these sections the kernel of the associated surjection is also generated by global sections. The category of quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -modules is denoted  $\text{QCoh}_{\mathcal{O}}$ . Note that for general ringed spaces  $X$ , this category may not be abelian (for instance, infinite direct sums of quasi-coherent modules need not be quasi-coherent).

4. We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is **coherent** if it is of finite type and for every open  $U \subseteq X$  and for every finite collection  $u_1, \dots, u_n \in \mathcal{M}(U)$  the kernel of the associated map  $\mathcal{O}_U^n \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_U$  is of finite type. The category of coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -modules is denoted  $\text{Coh}_{\mathcal{O}}$ . In contrast to  $\text{QCoh}_{\mathcal{O}}$ , one can show that  $\text{Coh}_{\mathcal{O}}$  is always an abelian category (for every ringed space  $X$ ).
5. We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is **finitely generated** if it is quasi-coherent and for every  $x \in X$  we may choose  $\mathcal{F}^x$  in (13) to be  $\mathcal{F}^x = \mathcal{O}_{U^x}^n$ . We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is **coherent** if it is finitely generated, and if for every open subset  $U$  over  $X$ , and for every homomorphism  $\varphi: \mathcal{O}_U^n \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_U$ , the kernel  $\ker \varphi$  is finitely generated. The notion of finitely generated (respectively coherent) sheaf is of local nature on  $X$ .

**Example 2.7.** Suppose that  $X$  is a point. In this case, sheaves on  $X$  are just  $R$ -modules. What does the definition of coherent mean? It is closely related to the notion of noetherian, but it is not the same. For instance, the ring  $R = \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots]$  is coherent as a module over itself but it is not noetherian as a module over itself. The key is that if  $r_1, \dots, r_n \in R$ , then the kernel of the associated map  $R^n \rightarrow R$  will be finitely generated since  $r_1, \dots, r_n$  can be viewed as polynomials in  $\mathbb{C}[x_1, \dots, x_N]$  for some  $N$ .

**Lemma 2.2.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be an  $\mathcal{O}$ -module. Furthermore, assume that  $\mathcal{O}$  is a coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -module. Then  $\mathcal{M}$  is coherent if and only if it is of finite presentation.

**Definition 2.9.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be an  $\mathcal{O}$ -module. We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is **finitely generated** if for every  $x \in X$  there exists an open neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$ , an integer  $n \geq 1$ , and a surjective  $\mathcal{O}_U$ -module homomorphism  $\mathcal{O}_U^n \twoheadrightarrow \mathcal{M}_U$ . We obtain a category of  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -modules and  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -module homomorphisms which we denote by  $\mathbf{Mod}_{\mathcal{O}_X}$ . We say  $\mathcal{M}$  is **coherent** if it is finitely generated, and if for every open subset  $U$  over  $X$ , and for every homomorphism  $\varphi: \mathcal{O}_U^n \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_U$ , the kernel  $\ker \varphi$  is finitely generated. The notion of finitely generated (respectively coherent) sheaf is of local nature on  $X$ .

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be the free  $\mathcal{O}$ -module with generators  $\{e_\lambda\}$ . Assume that  $\varphi: \mathcal{F} \twoheadrightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is surjective and set  $u_\lambda = \varphi(e_\lambda) \in \mathcal{M}(X)$  for each  $\lambda \in \Lambda$ . This means in particular that if  $u \in \mathcal{M}(U)$  then there exists an open covering  $\bigcup_i U_i = U$  such that

$$u|_{U_i} = a_{i,1} u_{\lambda_{i,1}} + \dots + a_{i,n_i} u_{\lambda_{i,n_i}}$$

where  $a_{i,1}, \dots, a_{i,n_i} \in \mathcal{O}(U_i)$  and where  $\lambda_{i,1}, \dots, \lambda_{i,n_i} \in \Lambda$ . Clearly this implies  $\mathcal{M}$  is generated by  $\{u_\lambda\}$ .

**Lemma 2.3.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -module. Then  $\mathcal{M}$  is of finite presentation and hence quasi-coherent.



*Proof.* Pick a point  $x \in X$ . Since  $\mathcal{M}$  is coherent, there exists an open neighborhood  $x \in U \subseteq X$  together with sections  $u_1, \dots, u_n \in \mathcal{M}(U)$  such that the morphism  $\varphi: \mathcal{O}_U^n \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  given by  $e_i \mapsto u_i$  is surjective. Furthermore, there exists an open neighborhood  $x \in V \subseteq U$  and sections  $v_1, \dots, v_m \in \mathcal{O}_V^n$  which generate the kernel of  $\varphi$ . In particular, over  $V$  we get the presentation

$$\mathcal{O}_V^m \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_V^n \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_V \longrightarrow 0 \quad (13)$$

as desired.  $\square$

### 2.4.1 Quasi-coherent sheaves on an affine scheme

We now classify the quasi-coherent sheaves on an affine scheme. Let  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  be an affine scheme. Let  $M$  be an  $A$ -module. We define an  $\mathcal{O}$ -module  $\widetilde{M}$  to be the one whose value on a principal open  $D(s) \subseteq X$  is given by  $\widetilde{M}(D(s)) = M_s$  and whose restriction maps are the localization maps.

## 3 Sheaves of Modules

**Definition 3.1.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an  $\mathcal{O}$ -module.

1. We define the **tensor algebra** of  $\mathcal{F}$  to be the sheaf of noncommutative graded  $\mathcal{O}$ -algebras

$$T(\mathcal{F}) = T_{\mathcal{O}}(\mathcal{F}) = \bigoplus_{n \geq 0} T^n(\mathcal{F}).$$

Here  $T^0(\mathcal{F}) = \mathcal{O}$ ,  $T^1(\mathcal{F}) = \mathcal{F}$ , and for  $n \geq 2$  we have  $T^n(\mathcal{F}) = \mathcal{F}^{\otimes n}$  where the tensor product is over  $\mathcal{O}$ . Thus  $T^n(\mathcal{F})(U)$  consists of all finite sums of the form

$$\sum_i u_{1,i} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{i,n} = \sum_i \mathbf{u}_i$$

where  $u_{1,i}, \dots, u_{n,i} \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  for all  $i$  and where we used the notation  $\mathbf{u}_i := u_{1,i} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{i,n}$ . If  $\mathbf{u} \in T^m(\mathcal{F})(U)$  and  $\mathbf{v} \in T^n(\mathcal{F})(U)$  where  $\mathbf{u} = u_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes u_m$  and  $\mathbf{v} = v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_n$  are elementary tensors, then we set

$$\mathbf{u}\mathbf{v} = u_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes u_m \otimes v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_n \in T^{m+n}(\mathcal{F})(U).$$

This gives  $T(\mathcal{F})(U)$  the structure of a graded  $\mathcal{O}(U)$ -algebra.

2. We define  $\wedge(\mathcal{F})$  to be the quotient of  $T(\mathcal{F})$  by the two sided ideal  $\mathcal{I}$  of  $T(\mathcal{F})$  where  $\mathcal{I}$  is generated by local sections  $u \otimes u$  of  $T^2(\mathcal{F})$  where  $u$  is a local section of  $\mathcal{F}$ . Note that  $\wedge(\mathcal{F})$  inherits the structure of graded  $\mathcal{O}$ -module from the grading on  $T(\mathcal{F})$ . We denote the coset  $\overline{\mathbf{u}}$  in  $\wedge^n(\mathcal{F})(U)$  by

$$\overline{\mathbf{u}} = \wedge(\mathbf{u}) = u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge u_n,$$

where in this notation we have  $\wedge(\mathbf{u}) = 0$  if  $u_i = u_j$  for some  $i < j$ . Notice that we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= (u + v)(u + v) \\ &= u^2 + uv + vu + v^2 \\ &= uv + vu \end{aligned}$$

implies  $uv = -vu$ . In particular,  $\wedge(\mathcal{F})$  is a graded-commutative  $\mathcal{O}$ -algebra.

3. We define  $\operatorname{Sym}(\mathcal{F})$  to be the quotient of  $T(\mathcal{F})$  by the two sided ideal  $\mathcal{J}$  of  $T(\mathcal{F})$  where  $\mathcal{J}$  is generated by local sections  $u \otimes v - v \otimes u$  of  $T^2(\mathcal{F})$  where  $u, v$  are local sections of  $\mathcal{F}$ . Note that  $\operatorname{Sym}(\mathcal{F})$  inherits the structure of graded  $\mathcal{O}$ -module from the grading on  $T(\mathcal{F})$ . We denote the coset  $\overline{\mathbf{u}}$  in  $\operatorname{Sym}^n(\mathcal{F})(U)$  by

$$\overline{\mathbf{u}} = u_1 \cdots u_n$$

where in this notation we have  $uv = vu$ . In particular,  $\operatorname{Sym}(\mathcal{F})$  is a commutative  $\mathcal{O}$ -algebra.

**Lemma 3.1.** *With the notation above,  $\wedge^n \mathcal{F}$  and  $\operatorname{Sym}^n(\mathcal{F})$  are sheaves.*

*Proof.* It suffices to show that  $\wedge^n \mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf since a similar works for  $\operatorname{Sym}^n(\mathcal{F})$ . Let  $\{U_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$  be an open cover of  $U$  and let  $\omega_\lambda \in \wedge^n \mathcal{F}(U_\lambda)$  where  $\omega_\lambda|_{U_{\lambda\mu}} = \omega_\mu|_{U_{\lambda\mu}}$  for all  $\lambda, \mu$ . To show that  $\wedge^n \mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf, we need to find a unique  $\omega \in \wedge^n \mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $\omega|_{U_\lambda} = \omega_\lambda$  for all  $\lambda$ . Note that the restriction maps  $\wedge^n \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \wedge^n \mathcal{F}(U_\lambda)$  are all injective.

Thus we only need to show existence of  $\omega$  since uniqueness is already satisfied. If  $\omega_\lambda = 0$  for each  $\lambda$ , then  $\omega = 0$  is the unique element in  $\wedge^n \mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $\omega|_{U_\lambda} = \omega_\lambda$ . Thus assume that  $\omega_\lambda \neq 0$  for some  $\lambda$ . Write

$$\omega_\lambda = \sum_{i=1}^{k_\lambda} u_{1,\lambda,i} \wedge \cdots \wedge u_{n,\lambda,i} = \sum_{i=1}^{k_\lambda} \mathbf{u}_{\lambda,i},$$

Now if  $U_{\lambda\mu} \neq \emptyset$ , then  $\omega_\lambda|_{U_{\lambda\mu}} = \omega_\mu|_{U_{\lambda\mu}}$  implies  $k_\lambda = k = k_\mu$  and (perhaps after reordering) implies  $\mathbf{u}_{\lambda,i} = \mathbf{u}_{\mu,i}$  which further implies (perhaps after reordering)  $u_{j,\lambda,i} = u_{j,\mu,i}$ . In other words, for each  $i, j$  we have a compatible sequence  $(u_{j,\lambda,i})_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$  where  $u_{j,\lambda,i} \in \mathcal{F}(U_\lambda)$ . Thus there exists a unique  $u_{j,i} \in \mathcal{F}(U)$  such that  $u_{j,i}|_{U_\lambda} = u_{j,\lambda,i}$  for all  $\lambda$ . Then clearly  $\omega = \sum \mathbf{u}_i = \sum u_{1,i} \wedge \cdots \wedge u_{k,i}$  is the unique element such that  $\omega|_{U_\lambda} = \omega_\lambda$ .  $\square$

## 4 Sheaf Cohomology

### 4.1 The zeroth Čech cohomology group of a covering

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a presheaf of sets on  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_i \rightarrow U\}_{i \in I}$  be a covering of  $\mathcal{C}$ . We set  $\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}) = H^0(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F})$  to be the equalizer:

$$H^0(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) = \left\{ (s_i) \in \prod_i \mathcal{F}(U_i) \mid s_i|_{U_i \times_U U_j} = s_j|_{U_i \times_U U_j} \text{ for all } i, j \in I \right\}$$

This is called the **zeroth Čech cohomology** over  $U$  with respect to the covering  $\mathcal{U}$ . Note there is a canonical map  $\mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow H^0(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F})$  given by  $s \mapsto (s)_{i \in I}$ . A morphism of coverings  $\mathcal{V} \rightarrow \mathcal{U}$  induces commutative diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_i & \longrightarrow & U_{\alpha(i)} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ V_i \times_V V_j & \longrightarrow & U_{\alpha(i)} \times_U U_{\alpha(j)} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V_j & \longrightarrow & U_{\alpha(j)} \end{array} \quad (14)$$

which in turn induces a map  $H^0(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow H^0(\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{F})$  compatible with  $\mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}(V)$ . By construction, a presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf if and only if for every covering  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $\mathcal{C}$  the natural map  $\mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow H^0(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F})$  is bijective.

### 4.2 Čech cohomology

Let  $X$  be a topological space, let  $R$  be a commutative ring, let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a sheaf of  $R$ -modules on  $X$ , and let  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an open covering of  $X$ . For any integer  $k \geq 0$  and for any sequence of indices  $i_0, \dots, i_k \in I$  we set  $U_{i_0 \dots i_k} = U_{i_0} \cap \cdots \cap U_{i_k}$ . We construct a cochain  $R$ -complex, denoted  $C(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F})$  and called the **Čech cochain complex** (with respect to  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$ ) as follows: the component in cohomological degree  $k$  of the underlying graded module of  $C = C(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F})$  is given by

$$C^k = \prod_{(i_0, \dots, i_k) \in I^{k+1}} \mathcal{F}(U_{i_0 \dots i_k}).$$

Elements in  $C$  are called **cochains**. If  $f \in C^k$ , then we write  $|f| = k$  and say  $f$  is a  $k$ -**cochain**. We say a  $k$ -cochain  $f$  is **alternating** if

1.  $f_{i_0 \dots i_k} = 0$  whenever two indices are equal,
2.  $f_{\sigma(i_0), \dots, \sigma(i_k)} = \text{sign}(\sigma) f_{i_0, \dots, i_k}$  if  $\sigma$  is a permutation of the set  $\{0, \dots, k\}$

We denote by  $C'$  to be the graded  $R$ -submodule of  $C$  given by the set of all alternating elements of  $C$ . The differential  $\delta$  of  $C$  is defined by

$$(\delta f)_{i_0, \dots, i_{k+1}} = \sum_{j=0}^{k+1} (-1)^j f_{i_0, \dots, \widehat{i_j}, \dots, i_{k+1}}|_{U_{i_0, \dots, i_{k+1}}} \quad (15)$$

for all  $f \in C^k$ . We often simplify notation and drop the  $|_{U_{i_0, \dots, i_k}}$  in (15) when context makes it clear that we are taking the alternating sum in  $\mathcal{F}(U_{i_0, \dots, i_k})$ . With this notation simplification understood, we can write (15) instead as:

$$(\delta f)_{i_0, \dots, i_{k+1}} = \sum_{j=0}^{k+1} (-1)^j f_{i_0, \dots, \widehat{i_j}, \dots, i_{k+1}}.$$

For instance, if  $f \in C^0$ ,  $g \in C^1$ , and  $h \in C^2$ , then we have

$$\begin{aligned}(\delta f)_{i_0, i_1} &= f_{i_1} - f_{i_0} \\(\delta g)_{i_0, i_1, i_2} &= g_{i_1, i_2} - g_{i_0, i_2} + g_{i_0, i_1} \\(\delta h)_{i_0, i_1, i_2, i_3} &= h_{i_1, i_2, i_3} - h_{i_0, i_2, i_3} + h_{i_0, i_1, i_3} - h_{i_0, i_1, i_2}.\end{aligned}$$

It is straightforward to check that  $\delta^2 = 0$  and that if  $f$  is alternating, then  $\delta f$  is alternating.

**Proposition 4.1.** *The canonical inclusion map  $\iota: C' \rightarrow C$  is a homotopy equivalence. In particular it induces an isomorphism  $H(C') \simeq H(C)$ .*

*Proof.* We give  $I$  the structure of a total order. Define  $\pi: C \rightarrow C'$  by setting

$$(\pi f)_{i_0, \dots, i_k} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if any two indices } i_0, \dots, i_k \text{ are equal} \\ \text{sign}(\sigma) f_{i_0, \dots, i_k} & \text{if all indices are distinct and } i_{\sigma(0)} < \dots < i_{\sigma(k)} \end{cases}$$

One checks that  $\pi$  is the homotopy inverse to the inclusion map.  $\square$

**Definition 4.1.** We set  $H(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) = H(C(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}))$  and call this the **Čech cohomology** of  $\mathcal{U}$  in  $\mathcal{F}$ . Since  $\mathcal{F}$  is a sheaf, we have  $H^0(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) = \mathcal{F}(X)$ .

**Example 4.1.** Let  $X = \text{Proj } R[t_1, t_2]$  and let  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_1, U_2\}$  where  $U_i = D_+(t_i)$ . Let us set  $t = t_2/t_1$ . Then the Čech cochain complex looks like:

$$0 \longrightarrow R[t] \oplus R[1/t] \xrightarrow{\delta} R[t, 1/t] \longrightarrow 0 \quad (16)$$

where  $\delta(f, g) = f - g$ . It is straightforward to check that

$$H^k(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{O}) = \begin{cases} R & \text{if } k = 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } k \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

**Example 4.2.** Let  $A = \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle y^2 - x^3 - x \rangle$  and let  $A' = \mathbb{k}[x', z']/\langle z' - x'^3 - x'z'^2 \rangle$ . We have an isomorphism  $\sigma: A'_z \rightarrow A_y$  defined by  $\sigma x' = x/y$  and  $\sigma z' = 1/y$ . In particular, we may glue the affine schemes  $X = \text{Spec } A$  and  $X' = \text{Spec } A'$  along the affine opens  $U = D(y)$  and  $U' = D(z')$  to obtain the elliptic curve  $E = V_+(x_1^2 x_2 - x_0^3 - x_0 x_2^2) \subseteq \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^2$ . We can further use this open covering to calculate Čech cohomology of  $\mathcal{U} = \{U, U'\}$  in  $\mathcal{O} = \mathcal{O}_E$ . In this case, the Čech cochain complex looks like:

$$0 \longrightarrow A \oplus A' \xrightarrow{\delta} A_y \longrightarrow 0 \quad (17)$$

where  $\delta$  is given by  $\delta(f, g) = f - \sigma g$ . It is straightforward to check that

$$H^k(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{O}) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{k} & \text{if } k = 0 \\ \mathbb{k} & \text{if } k = 1 \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

where  $x^2/y$  is a representative of a nonzero class in  $H^1(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{O})$ .

**Definition 4.2.** We say a covering  $\mathcal{V} = \{V_j\}_{j \in J}$  of  $X$  is a **refinement** of another covering  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  if there exists a map  $\alpha: J \rightarrow I$  such that  $V_j \subseteq U_{\alpha(j)}$  for every  $j \in J$ .

A morphism of coverings  $\mathcal{V} \rightarrow \mathcal{U}$  of  $X$  induces commutative diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_i & \longrightarrow & U_{\alpha(i)} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ V_i \times_V V_j & \longrightarrow & U_{\alpha(i)} \times_U U_{\alpha(j)} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V_j & \longrightarrow & U_{\alpha(j)} \end{array} \quad (18)$$

which induces a morphism of cochain complexes  $\alpha: C(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow C(\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{F})$  and this in turn induces a morphism of graded  $R$ -modules  $\bar{\alpha}: H(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow H(\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{F})$ .

**Proposition 4.2.** *The homomorphism  $\bar{\alpha}$  depends on the coverings  $\mathcal{V}$  and  $\mathcal{U}$  (it does not depend on the choice of  $\alpha$ ).*

*Proof.* If  $\alpha'$  is another choice, then one shows that  $\alpha$  is homotopic to  $\alpha'$ , hence  $\bar{\alpha} = \bar{\alpha}'$ .  $\square$

**Definition 4.3.** With the notation as above, we set

$$H(X, \mathcal{F}) := \varinjlim H(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}),$$

where the limit is taken as graded modules and where  $\mathcal{U}$  runs through the classes of open coverings of  $X$ . We call  $H(X, \mathcal{F})$  the **Čech cohomology** of  $\mathcal{F}$ .

In the next theorem, we compare the cohomology of a covering  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  with that of  $X$ . Let  $\mathcal{V} = \{V_j\}_{j \in J}$  be another covering of  $X$ . For any  $\mathbf{i} = i_0, \dots, i_k \in I^{k+1}$ , we set  $U_{\mathbf{i}} = U_{i_0, \dots, i_k}$  and we let  $\mathcal{V}_{\mathbf{i}}$  denote the covering  $\{U_{\mathbf{i}} \cap V_j\}_{j \in J}$  of  $U_{\mathbf{i}}$ .

**Theorem 4.1.** (*Leray acyclicity theorem*) Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a sheaf on a topological space  $X$ . Let  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a covering of  $X$ . Suppose that there exists a family of coverings  $(\mathcal{V}^\lambda)_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$  which is cofinal in the family of all coverings of  $X$  such that

$$H^{\geq 1}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathbf{i}}^\lambda, \mathcal{F}|_{U_{\mathbf{i}}}) = 0$$

for every  $\lambda \in \Lambda$ ,  $\mathbf{i} \in I^{n+1}$ , and  $n \geq 0$ . Then the canonical graded homomorphism

$$H^{\geq 0}(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow H^{\geq 0}(X, \mathcal{F})$$

is an isomorphism.

**Proposition 4.3.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space, let  $\mathcal{U}$  be a cover of  $X$ , and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be an  $\mathcal{O}$ -module. If either  $U_i = X$  for some  $i \in I$  or  $\mathcal{M}$  is injective, then

$$H^k = H^k(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{M}) = \begin{cases} \mathcal{M}(X) & \text{if } k = 0 \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

*Proof.* It is clear that we always have  $H^0 = \mathcal{M}(X)$  since  $\mathcal{M}$  is a sheaf. Now assume that  $U_i = X$  for some  $i \in I$ . Let  $C = C(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{M})$  and let  $f \in C^k$  be a  $k$ -cocycle where  $k > 0$ . Set  $\tilde{f} \in C^{k-1}$  to be the  $(k-1)$ -cocycle defined by  $\tilde{f}_{i_1, \dots, i_k} = f_{X, i_1, \dots, i_k}$ . Then on  $X \cap U_{i_1, \dots, i_k}$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\delta \tilde{f})_{i_0, i_1, \dots, i_k} &= \sum_{j=0}^k (-1)^j \tilde{f}_{i_0, \dots, \widehat{i}_j, \dots, i_{k+1}} \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^k (-1)^j f_{X, i_0, \dots, \widehat{i}_j, \dots, i_{k+1}} \\ &= f_{i_0, \dots, i_k}, \end{aligned}$$

where the last equality follows from the fact that  $f$  is a  $k$ -cocycle. Thus  $f$  is a  $k$ -coboundary and since  $f$  was arbitrary, it follows that  $H^k = 0$ . Finally, assume that  $\mathcal{M}$  is injective.  $\square$

#### 4.2.1 Čech Cohomology on a Separated Scheme

**Lemma 4.2.** Let  $X = \text{Spec } A$  be an affine scheme and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -module. Then for any finite covering  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $X$  by principal open subsets  $U_i = D(t_i)$  we have  $H^{\geq 0}(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) = 0$ .

#### 4.2.2 Cohomology of Projective Schemes

**Lemma 4.3.** Let  $A$  be a ring, let  $B = A[\mathbf{t}] = A[t_0, \dots, t_d]$ , and let  $X = \text{Proj } B$ . Then for any  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  we have

1.  $H^0(X, \mathcal{O}(n)) = B_n$
2.  $H^k(X, \mathcal{O}(n)) = 0$  if  $k \neq 0, d$
3.  $H^d(X, \mathcal{O}(n)) \simeq H^0(X, \mathcal{O}(-n-d-1)^\vee)$  where  $\vee$  means dual as an  $A$ -module. In particular,  $H^d(X, \mathcal{O}(n)) = 0$  if  $n \geq -d$ .

**Theorem 4.4.** Let  $A$  be a noetherian ring, let  $X$  be a projective scheme over  $A$ , and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a coherent sheaf on  $X$ .

1. The  $A$ -module  $H^k(X, \mathcal{F})$  is finitely generated for all  $k \geq 0$ .
2. There exists an integer  $N$  (which depends on  $\mathcal{F}$ ) such that  $n \geq N$  implies  $H^{\geq 1}(X, \mathcal{F}(n)) = 0$ .

### 4.3 Sheaf Cohomology

Throughout this section, let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  be a ringed space. We set  $R = \mathcal{O}_X(X)$ . Note that if  $K$  is a commutative ring such that  $X$  is  $K$ -ringed, then  $R$  is a  $K$ -algebra. Consider the functor  $\Gamma(X, -)$  from the category of  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -modules

to the category of  $R$ -modules, given by  $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \Gamma(X, \mathcal{F}) := \mathcal{F}(X)$ . Note that  $\Gamma(X, -)$  is left exact. This means that if

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_3$$

is an exact sequence of  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -modules, then

$$0 \rightarrow \Gamma(X, \mathcal{F}_1) \rightarrow \Gamma(X, \mathcal{F}_2) \rightarrow \Gamma(X, \mathcal{F}_3)$$

is an exact sequence of  $R$ -modules.

## 4.4 Cohomology of Constant Sheaves

### 4.4.1 Singular Cohomology

In this section we define singular cohomology and show that it vanishes on contractible spaces.

**Definition 4.4.** Let  $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$  and set  $[n] := \{0, \dots, n\}$ . Let  $e_i \in \mathbb{R}^{[n]} = \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  be the  $i$ th standard unit vector for  $i = 0, \dots, n$ .

1. The  $n$ -dimensional standard simplex is

$$\Delta^n := \Delta[n] := \left\{ (t_0, \dots, t_n) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \sum_{i=0}^n t_i = 1 \text{ and } t_i \geq 0 \text{ for all } i \right\}.$$

Then  $\Delta^0 = \{1\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ . We identify

$$\Delta^1 = \{(t_0, t_1) \mid 0 \leq t_0 = 1 - t_1 \leq 1\} \rightarrow [0, 1],$$

via the map  $(t_0, t_1) \mapsto t_1$ .  $\Delta^2$  is an equilateral triangle,  $\Delta^3$  is a tetrahedron.

2. Every weakly increasing map  $\alpha: [m] \rightarrow [n]$  induces an affine map

$$\Delta(\alpha): \Delta[m] \rightarrow \Delta[n], \quad \sum_{i=0}^m t_i e_i \mapsto \sum_{i=0}^m t_i e_{\alpha(i)}.$$

Then  $\Delta(\alpha \circ \beta) = \Delta(\alpha) \circ \Delta(\beta)$  and  $\Delta(\text{id}) = \text{id}$ .

3. For  $0 \leq i \leq n$  let  $\delta_i^n: [n-1] \rightarrow [n]$  be the weakly increasing injective map that misses the value  $i$ . Then  $\delta_j^{n+1} \circ \delta_i^n = \delta_i^{n+1} \circ \delta_{j-1}^n$  for  $i < j$ . Set

$$d_i^n := \Delta(\delta_i^n): \Delta[n-1] \rightarrow \Delta[n].$$

This maps  $\Delta[n-1]$  injectively on the “ $i$ th face of  $\Delta[n]$ ”. For instance

$$d_0^1(1) = (0, 1) \in \Delta^1 \quad d_1^1(1) = (1, 0) \in \Delta^1.$$

By functoriality one has

$$d_j^{n+1} \circ d_i^n = d_i^{n+1} \circ d_{j-1}^n$$

for  $i < j$ .

A continuous map  $\sigma: \Delta^n \rightarrow X$  is called a **singular  $n$ -simplex in  $X$** . The set  $n$ -simplices in  $X$  is denoted by  $\Sigma_n(X)$  and the free abelian group with basis the set of singular  $n$ -simplices in  $X$  is denoted  $S_n(X) := \mathbb{Z}[\Sigma_n(X)]$ . Elements in  $S_n(X)$  are called **singular  $n$ -chains** and they take the form

**Definition 4.5.** Let  $X$  be a topological space,  $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$ .

1. A continuous map  $\sigma: \Delta^n \rightarrow X$  is called a **singular  $n$ -simplex in  $X$** . The set  $n$ -simplices in  $X$  is denoted by  $\Sigma_n(X)$  and the free abelian group with basis the set of singular  $n$ -simplices in  $X$  is denoted  $S_n(X) := \mathbb{Z}[\Sigma_n(X)]$ . Elements in  $S_n(X)$  are called **singular  $n$ -chains** and they take the form  $\sum_i n_i \sigma_i$  for  $n_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . The  $i$ th **face** of  $\sigma$  is  $\sigma \circ d_i^n$  (an  $(n-1)$ -simplex).
2. Set  $S_n(X) := \mathbb{Z}[\Sigma_n(X)]$ , i.e. the free abelian group with basis the set of singular  $n$ -simplices in  $X$ . An element  $x \in S_n(X)$  is called a **singular  $n$ -chain**. We think of  $x$  as a formal finite linear combination  $x = \sum n_\sigma \sigma$ , where the sum is taken over all  $\sigma \in \Sigma_n(X)$  and where  $n_\sigma \in \mathbb{Z}$  equals 0 for all but finitely many  $\sigma \in \Sigma_n(X)$ .
3. Let  $G$  be an abelian group. A **singular  $n$ -cochain with values in  $G$**  is a map  $\Sigma_n(X) \rightarrow G$ . Equivalently, it is a group homomorphism  $S_n(X) \rightarrow G$ . We denote the group of singular  $n$ -cochains with values in  $G$  by  $S^n(X, G) = \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(S_n(X), G)$ .
4. Define boundary operators for all  $q \in \mathbb{Z}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_q: S_q(X) &\rightarrow S_{q-1}(X) & \sigma &\mapsto \sum_{i=0}^q (-1)^i (\sigma \circ d_i^q) \\ \partial^q: S^q(X, G) &\rightarrow S^{q+1}(X, G) & \varphi &\mapsto (-1)^{q+1} (\varphi \circ \partial_{q+1}). \end{aligned}$$

Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be topological spaces and let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be a continuous map. Then we obtain an induced homomorphism of groups  $f_*: S_n(X) \rightarrow S_n(Y)$ , given by  $f_*(\sum n_\sigma \sigma) = \sum n_\sigma (f \circ \sigma)$ .

**Example 4.3.**

1. One can identify  $\Sigma_0(X) = X$  (as a set),  $S_0(X) = \mathbb{Z}^{(X)}$  and

$$S^0(X, G) = \{\varphi: X \rightarrow G \text{ map}\}.$$

2. Associating to  $\sigma \in \Sigma_1(X)$  the path  $\gamma_\sigma: [0, 1] \rightarrow X$ , given by  $\gamma_\sigma(t) = \sigma(t, 1-t)$ , yields an identification of  $\Sigma_1(X)$  and the set of paths in  $X$ . Hence  $\varphi \in S^1(X, G)$  is a map that attaches to each path in  $X$  an element in  $G$ . For  $\sigma \in \Sigma_1(X)$ , considered as a path  $\gamma_\sigma: [0, 1] \rightarrow X$ , one has

$$\partial_1(\sigma) = \sigma(1) - \sigma(0) \in S_0(X).$$

For  $\varphi \in S^0(X, G)$  considered as a map  $X \rightarrow G$  one has

$$\partial^0(\varphi)(\sigma) = -\varphi(\partial_1(\sigma)) = \varphi(\sigma(0)) - \varphi(\sigma(1))$$

for a path  $\sigma$  in  $X$ . In particular,

$$\text{Ker}(\partial^0) = \{\varphi: X \rightarrow G \mid \varphi(x) = \varphi(y) \text{ if } x \text{ and } y \text{ are path-connected.}\}$$

**Definition 4.6.** Let  $R$  be a commutative ring.

1. We also define  $H_n^{\text{sing}}(X, R)$  by replacing  $S_n(X)$  by the free  $R$ -modules  $S_n(X, R) := R^{(\Sigma_n(X))}$  with basis the set of singular  $n$ -simplices in  $X$ . Then  $(S(X), \partial)$  is an  $R$ -complex.

#### 4.4.2 Sheaf of Locally Constant $R$ -valued Functions

We now compare singular cohomology with values in a commutative ring  $R$  and sheaf cohomology of the sheaf of locally constant  $R$ -valued functions.

**Theorem 4.5.** Let  $X$  be a locally contractible space. Then for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , there is an isomorphism of  $R$ -modules:

$$H^n(X, R_X) \cong H_{\text{sing}}^n(X, R)$$

*Proof.* For  $V \subseteq U \subseteq X$  open we have  $\Sigma_n(V) \subseteq \Sigma_n(U)$  and we define a surjective map

$$S^n(U, R) \rightarrow S^n(V, R), \quad \varphi \mapsto \varphi|_{\Sigma_n(V)}.$$

Let  $\mathcal{S}_R^n$  be the sheafification of the presheaf of abelian groups  $U \mapsto S^n(U, R)$ . The one easily checks that for  $U \subseteq X$  open one has

$$\mathcal{S}_R^n(U) = S^n(U, R) / S^n(U, R)_0, \tag{19}$$

where

$$S^n(U, R)_0 = \{\varphi \in S^n(U, R) \mid \exists \text{ covering } \{V_i\} \text{ of } U \text{ with } \varphi|_{\Sigma_n(V_i)} = 0 \text{ for all } i\}.$$

As  $S^n(U, R) \rightarrow S^n(V, R)$  is surjective for  $V \subseteq U$ , (19) shows in particular that the sheaves  $\mathcal{S}_R^n$  are flabby.

The map  $\partial^n$  yield morphisms of sheaves of abelian groups  $\partial^n: \mathcal{S}_R^n \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_R^{n+1}$  and we obtain a complex

$$\cdots \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{S}_R^0 \xrightarrow{\partial^0} \mathcal{S}_R^1 \xrightarrow{\partial^1} \mathcal{S}_R^2 \xrightarrow{\partial^2} \cdots$$

of  $\mathbb{Z}_X$ -modules. As  $X$  is locally path connected, a map  $X \rightarrow R$  is locally constant if and only if it is constant on path-connected components. Hence the complex shows that  $\text{Ker}(\partial^0) = R_X$ .

Moreover the complex is exact in all degrees  $> 0$ . Let  $x \in X$ . By hypothesis on  $X$  we can compute stalks of presheaves in a point  $x$  by taking colimits only over open contractible neighborhoods of  $x$ .  $\square$

## 4.5 Cohomology as Derived Functor

Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a ringed space and set  $A = \mathcal{O}(A)$ . Consider the global section functor  $\Gamma: \text{Mod}_{\mathcal{O}} \rightarrow \text{Mod}_A$  which sends an  $\mathcal{O}$ -module  $\mathcal{F}$  to its global sections  $\mathcal{O}(X)$ . This functor is an additive left exact functor of abelian categories. Furthermore,  $\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{O}}$  is a Grothendieck abelian category, thus  $\Gamma$  admits a right derived functor which we denote by

$$R\Gamma(X, -): D(X) \rightarrow D(A).$$

## Part II

# Algebraic Geometry

Throughout these notes, let  $K$  be a field and let  $\overline{K}$  be an algebraic closure of  $K$ . Unless otherwise specified, we let  $n$  be a positive integer. In this case, we often write  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  to denote a point in  $K^n$  whenever context is clear. Similarly we often write  $K[\mathbf{T}] = K[T_1, \dots, T_n]$  to denote a polynomial ring in the variables  $\mathbf{T} = T_1, \dots, T_n$  with coefficients in  $K$  whenever context is clear.

## 5 Affine Algebraic Sets

In this section, we will define **affine algebraic sets**. Before we do this, we first introduce the following notation: Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a set of polynomials in  $K[\mathbf{T}]$ . We denote by  $V_K(\mathcal{P})$  to be the set of common zeros of the polynomials in  $\mathcal{P}$ :

$$V_K(\mathcal{P}) = \{\mathbf{x} \in K^n \mid f(\mathbf{x}) = 0 \text{ for all } f \in \mathcal{P}\}.$$

If the underlying field  $K$  is understood from context, then we will simplify our notation and write  $V(\mathcal{P})$  instead of  $V_K(\mathcal{P})$ . If  $\mathcal{Q}$  is another set of polynomials in  $K[\mathbf{T}]$  such that  $\mathcal{P} \subseteq \mathcal{Q}$ , then we have  $V(\mathcal{P}) \supseteq V(\mathcal{Q})$ . In other words,  $V$  is **inclusion-reversing**. Now let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be the ideal generated by  $\mathcal{P}$ . Recall that  $K[\mathbf{T}]$  is a Noetherian ring, and thus  $\mathfrak{a}$  is finitely generated as an ideal, say  $\mathfrak{a} = \langle f_1, \dots, f_m \rangle$ . Observe that

$$V(\mathfrak{a}) = V(\mathcal{P}) = V(f_1, \dots, f_m),$$

where we denote  $V(f_1, \dots, f_m) = V(\{f_1, \dots, f_m\})$ . Indeed, it suffices to show that  $V(\mathfrak{a}) \supseteq V(f_1, \dots, f_m)$  since the reverse inclusion follows from the fact that  $V$  is inclusion-reversing. Given  $\mathbf{x} \in V(f_1, \dots, f_m)$ , then  $f_i(\mathbf{x}) = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \sum_{i=1}^m g_i f_i \right) (\mathbf{x}) &= \sum_{i=1}^m g_i(\mathbf{x}) f_i(\mathbf{x}) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m g_i(\mathbf{x}) \cdot 0 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

for all  $\sum_{i=1}^m g_i f_i \in \mathfrak{a}$ . Thus we have  $V(\mathfrak{a}) \supseteq V(f_1, \dots, f_m)$ .

### 5.0.1 Maximal ideals defined by points

Let  $\mathbf{x} \in K^n$  and let  $\text{ev}_{\mathbf{x}}: K[\mathbf{T}] \rightarrow K$  be the unique  $K$ -algebra homomorphism given by  $\text{ev}_{\mathbf{x}}(T_i) = x_i$  for all  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Denote by  $\mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}}$  to be the kernel of  $\text{ev}_{\mathbf{x}}$ :

$$\mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}} = \{f \in K[\mathbf{T}] \mid f(\mathbf{x}) = 0\}.$$

Then  $\mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}}$  is a maximal ideal of  $K[\mathbf{T}]$  since  $K[\mathbf{T}]/\mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}} \cong K$ . Now let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be another ideal of  $K[\mathbf{T}]$ . Then observe that  $\mathbf{x} \in V(\mathfrak{a})$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}$ . In particular, we can express  $V(\mathfrak{a})$  in terms of the maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}}$  as follows:

$$V(\mathfrak{a}) = \{\mathbf{x} \in K^n \mid \mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}\}$$

We will use this reformulation many times throughout this article.

## 5.1 The Zariski Topology

We are almost ready to define algebraic sets, but first we need to prove the following lemma:

**Lemma 5.1.** *The following relations hold:*

1.  $V(0) = K^n$  and  $V(1) = \emptyset$ .

2. For two ideals  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{b}$ , we have

$$V(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}) = V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) = V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b}).$$

3. For every family  $\{\mathfrak{a}_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$  of ideals, we have

$$V\left(\bigcup_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \mathfrak{a}_\lambda\right) = V\left(\sum_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \mathfrak{a}_\lambda\right) = \bigcap_{\lambda \in \Lambda} V(\mathfrak{a}_\lambda).$$

*Proof.* 1. We have  $V(0) = K^n$  since  $\mathfrak{m}_x \supseteq \langle 0 \rangle$  for all  $x \in K^n$ . Similarly we have  $V(1) = \emptyset$  since  $\mathfrak{m}_x \not\supseteq \langle 1 \rangle$  for all  $x \in K^n$ .

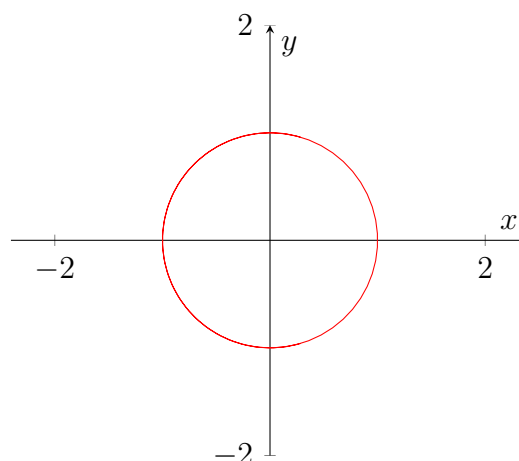
2. Since  $\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{b}$ , it follows that  $V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) \supseteq V(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}) \supseteq V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b})$  from the inclusion-reversing property of  $V$ . It remains to show that  $V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) \subseteq V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b})$ . To do this, we just need to show that  $\mathfrak{m}_x \supseteq \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}$  implies either  $\mathfrak{m}_x \supseteq \mathfrak{a}$  or  $\mathfrak{m}_x \supseteq \mathfrak{b}$  for all  $x \in K^n$ . But this follows from the fact that  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  is a prime ideal.

3. That  $V\left(\bigcup_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \mathfrak{a}_\lambda\right) = V\left(\sum_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \mathfrak{a}_\lambda\right)$  follows from the fact that  $\sum_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \mathfrak{a}_\lambda$  is the ideal generated by  $\bigcup_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \mathfrak{a}_\lambda$ . That  $V\left(\sum_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \mathfrak{a}_\lambda\right) = \bigcap_{\lambda \in \Lambda} V(\mathfrak{a}_\lambda)$  follows from the fact that  $\mathfrak{m}_x \supseteq \sum_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \mathfrak{a}_\lambda$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{m}_x \supseteq \mathfrak{a}_\lambda$  for all  $\lambda \in \Lambda$  and for all  $x \in K^n$ . □

*Remark 10.* It is very important to pay close attention to what is actually used in proofs. For example, in the proof of the second statement of this lemma, we only used the fact that  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  is a prime ideal (even though it is a maximal ideal). This gives us an idea for how we can generalize things. In particular, we will be replacing maximal ideals of the form  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  with arbitrary prime ideals. Keep this in mind!

This lemma implies that there is a unique topology on  $K^n$  for which the closed subsets are exactly those of the form  $V(\mathfrak{a})$  where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal of  $K[\mathbf{T}]$ . We call this topology the **Zariski topology** and write  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$  to mean the set  $K^n$  equipped with the Zariski topology. We call  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$  an  **$n$ -dimensional affine space**. Closed subspaces of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$  are called **affine algebraic sets**. In particular, note that singletons are closed since  $\{x\} = V(\mathfrak{m}_x)$ .

**Example 5.1.** The unit circle in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  can be described as the variety  $V(x^2 + y^2 - 1)$  and can be pictured below:



There is a nice parametrization of the unit circle which we now describe: Suppose  $L$  is a line which passes through the point  $(-1, 0)$  and such that  $L$  is not the tangent line to the unit circle at the point  $(-1, 0)$ . Then  $L = V(y - m(x + 1))$ , where  $m$  is the slope of the line, and  $L$  passes through a point  $(x, y) \neq (-1, 0)$  on the unit circle. Since  $(x, y)$  lies on the line  $L$  and the unit circle, we get the relations

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 - 1 &= 0, \\ y - m(x + 1) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Using the second relation, we have  $y = m(x + 1)$ . Plugging in  $m(x + 1)$  for  $y$  in the first relation, we get

$$m^2 = \frac{(1 - x)^2}{(1 + x)^2} = \frac{1 - x}{1 + x}.$$

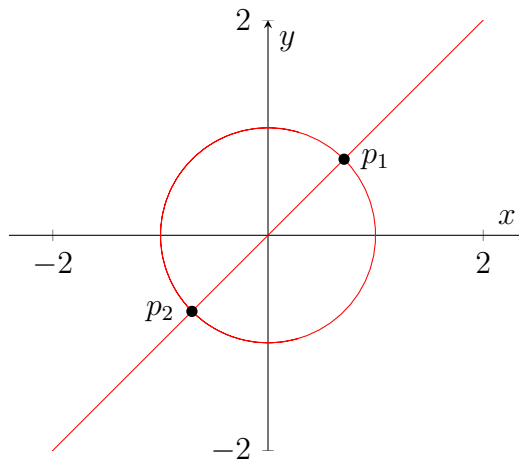


Now we solve for  $x$  in terms of  $m$ , to get the following parametrization:

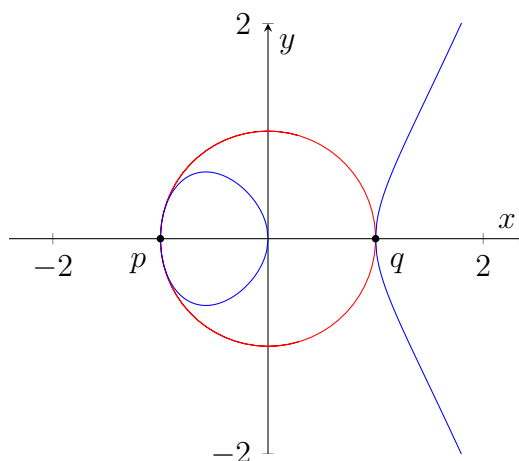
$$x = \frac{1 - m^2}{1 + m^2},$$

$$y = \frac{2m}{1 + m^2}.$$

Now suppose we throw in the polynomial  $y - x$ . What does the affine variety  $V(x^2 + y^2 - 1, y - x)$  look like? The affine variety  $V(x^2 + y^2 - 1, y - x)$  consists of the points  $(r_1, r_2)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  such that  $r_1^2 + r_2^2 - 1 = 0$  and  $r_2 - r_1 = 0$ . There are two such points  $p_1$  and  $p_2$ , and they correspond to two intersection points of the unit circle with the line  $y = x$  as pictured below:



**Example 5.2.** Let  $X = V_K(x^2 + y^2 - 1) = V(f)$  and let  $Y = V_K(y^2 - x^3 + x) = V(g)$ . If  $K = \mathbb{R}$ , then we can see that  $X$  intersects  $Y$  at the points  $p = (-1, 0)$  and  $q = (1, 0)$  as pictured below



Let  $A = \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle f \rangle$  be the coordinate ring for  $X$  and let  $B = \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle g \rangle$  be the coordinate ring for  $Y$ . Then the coordinate ring of  $X \cap Y$  is given by  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B = \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle f, g \rangle$ . The point  $p = (-1, 0)$  corresponds to the maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{m} = \langle x + 1, y \rangle$  of  $\mathbb{k}[x, y]$ , thus the local ring of  $A$  at  $p$  is given by

$$A_p = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{m}} / \langle y^2 - u(x + 1) \rangle_{\mathfrak{m}}$$

where  $u = 1 - x$  (this is a unit in  $A_p$ ). Similarly, the local ring of  $B$  at  $p$  is given by

$$B_p = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{m}} / \langle y^2 + ux(x + 1) \rangle_{\mathfrak{m}}$$

Then a calculation shows that

$$A_p \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B_p = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{m}} / \langle y^2 - u(x + 1), y^2 + ux(x + 1) \rangle_{\mathfrak{m}} = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{m}} / \langle y^2, (x + 1)^2 \rangle.$$

Clearly we have  $\dim_{\mathbb{k}}(A_p \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B_p) = 4$ . Thus  $X$  and  $Y$  intersect at the point  $p$  with multiplicity 4. Next, the point  $q = (1, 0)$  corresponds to the maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{n} = \langle x - 1, y \rangle$  of  $\mathbb{k}[x, y]$ , thus the local ring of  $A$  at  $q$  is given by

$$A_q = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{n}} / \langle y^2 - \tilde{u}(1 - x) \rangle_{\mathfrak{n}}$$

where  $\tilde{u} = 1 + x$  (this is a unit in  $A_q$ ). Similarly, the local ring of  $B$  at  $q$  is given by

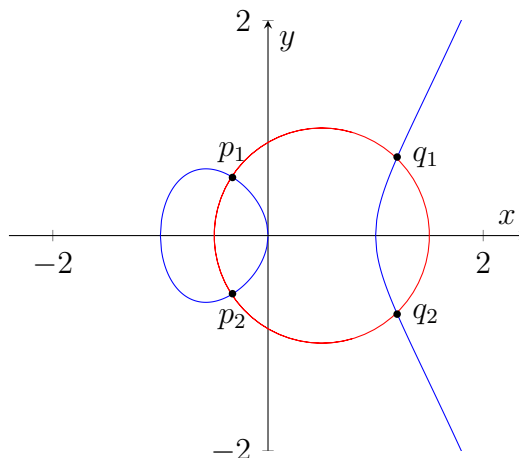
$$B_q = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{n}} / \langle y^2 + \tilde{u}x(1 - x) \rangle_{\mathfrak{n}}$$

Then a calculation shows that

$$A_q \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B_q = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{n}} / \langle y^2 - \tilde{u}(1-x), y^2 + \tilde{v}(1-x) \rangle_{\mathfrak{n}} = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{n}} / \langle y^2, x-1 \rangle.$$

Clearly we have  $\dim_{\mathbb{k}}(A_q \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B_q) = 2$ . Thus  $X$  and  $Y$  intersect at the point  $q$  with multiplicity 4.

Now suppose we perturb  $f$  a bit; say  $X_t = V_{\mathbb{k}}((x+t)^2 + y^2 - 1) = V(f_t)$  where  $t \in K$ . For instance, if  $K = \mathbb{R}$ , then we can picture  $X_{1/2}$  intersecting  $Y$  as below:

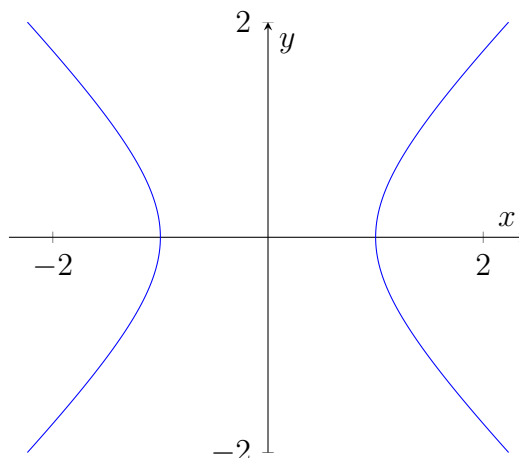


Thus the point  $p$  splits into two points  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  and one can check that  $X$  and  $Y$  intersect at both  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  with multiplicity 2.

**Example 5.3.** Let  $X = V_{\mathbb{k}}(f) \subseteq \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^{m+n}$  where

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^2 - \sum_{j=1}^n y_j^2 - 1 = \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{y}\|^2 - 1,$$

$\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$  and  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$ . If  $\mathbb{k} = \mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{k} = \mathbb{C}$ , then we write  $X_e$  to denote  $X$  equipped with the Euclidean topology. If  $\mathbb{k} = \mathbb{R}$  and  $m, n > 1$ , then we claim that  $X_e$  is path-connected. Indeed, suppose  $(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$  and  $(\mathbf{a}', \mathbf{b}')$  are two points of  $X_e$ . The idea is that there exists  $(g, h) \in \mathrm{SO}(m) \times \mathrm{SO}(n)$  and  $\lambda, \mu > 0$  such that  $g\mathbf{a} = \lambda\mathbf{a}'$  and  $h\mathbf{b} = \mu\mathbf{b}'$ . Since  $\mathrm{SO}(m)$  and  $\mathrm{SO}(n)$  are path-connected, we can find a path from  $(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$  to  $(g\mathbf{a}, h\mathbf{b}) = (\lambda\mathbf{a}', \mu\mathbf{b}')$ . Then since  $\mathbb{R}_{>0}^2$  is path-connected, we can find a path from  $(\lambda\mathbf{a}', \mu\mathbf{b}')$  to  $(\mathbf{a}', \mathbf{b}')$ . Note that if  $m = 1$ , then this argument no longer works since  $\mathrm{SO}(1) = \{\pm 1\}$  is not path-connected, and indeed  $X$  will not be path-connected in this case (if  $\mathbb{k} = \mathbb{C}$ , then  $X$  is path-connected since  $X$  is the unit sphere in  $\mathbb{C}^{m+n}$ ). If  $f = x^2 - y^2 - 1$ , then  $X_e$  is the hyperbola pictured below:



In particular  $X_e$  is not connected. On the other hand, if we just consider  $X$  with the Zariski topology, denoted  $X_z$ , then  $X_z$  is connected since it is irreducible (as  $f$  is irreducible). The problem is that the Zariski topology is not fine enough to detect that  $X$  is disconnected in the Euclidean topology.

## 5.2 Hilbert's Nullstellensatz

Let  $R$  be a ring. It is often advantageous to characterize the ideals of  $R$  in terms of some underlying geometric space. For instance, if  $R$  is a ring of functions on some space, then oftentimes the ideals of  $R$  can be described in terms of certain subspaces of that space. Let's us consider two examples of this:

**Example 5.4.** Let  $C(\mathbb{R})$  be the ring of continuous functions  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . We want to understand what the ideals of  $C(\mathbb{R})$  look like. First let's start with the maximal ideals. For each  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , we define  $\mathfrak{m}_x = \{f \in C(\mathbb{R}) \mid f(x) = 0\}$ . It is easy to check that  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  is a maximal ideal of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ . Thus we can describe a bunch of maximal ideals of  $C(\mathbb{R})$  in terms points of  $\mathbb{R}$ . This gives us a nice geometric way of describing some of the maximal ideals of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ , but the question remains: does this describe all of the maximal ideals of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ ? The answer is no. Indeed, let  $I$  be the set of all  $f \in C(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $f$  vanishes outside some compact set. It is easy to check that  $I$  is an ideal of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ , and hence can be extended to a maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{m}$  of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ , but  $\mathfrak{m}$  is not of the form  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  for any  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  since we can always find an  $f \in \mathfrak{m}$  such that  $f(x) \neq 0$ . The takeaway here is that even the maximal ideals of  $C(\mathbb{R})$  are complicated, and the space  $\mathbb{R}$  doesn't do a good enough job at characterizing these maximal ideals. One would need to extend  $\mathbb{R}$  to a much larger space (like the hyperreals  ${}^*\mathbb{R}$ ) in order to characterize the maximal ideals of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ .

**Example 5.5.** Let  $X$  be a compact Hausdorff space and let  $C(X)$  be the ring of continuous functions  $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Again, we can characterize many of the maximal ideals of  $C(X)$  in terms of the points of  $X$ , namely for each  $x \in X$  we set  $\mathfrak{m}_x = \{f \in C(X) \mid f(x) = 0\}$ . In this case, it turns out that all of the maximal ideals of  $C(X)$  are of the form  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  for some  $x \in X$ . Indeed, let  $\mathfrak{m}$  be a maximal ideal of  $C(X)$  and assume for a contradiction that  $\mathfrak{m} \neq \mathfrak{m}_x$  for any  $x \in X$ . Then for each  $x \in X$ , we can find an  $f_x \in \mathfrak{m}$  such that  $f_x(x) \neq 0$ . For each  $x \in X$ , choose an open neighborhood  $U_x$  of  $x$  such that  $f_x(y) \neq 0$  for all  $y \in U_x$ . The collection  $\{U_x \mid x \in X\}$  is an open cover of  $X$ . Since  $X$  is compact, there exists a finite subcollection of  $\{U_x\}$  which covers  $X$ , say  $\{U_{x_1}, \dots, U_{x_n}\}$ . Now define

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^n f_{x_i}.$$

Clearly  $f \in \mathfrak{m}$  since  $\mathfrak{m}$  is closed under addition. However note that  $f(y) \neq 0$  for all  $y \in X$ , thus  $1/f$  exists, or in other words,  $f$  is a unit. This is a contradiction. We've just shown that the maximal ideals of  $C(X)$  are in one-to-one correspondence with the points of  $X$ . Thus the space  $X$  does a nice job at describing the maximal ideals of  $C(X)$ . On the other hand, there is still much more work to be done if we want to characterize *all* ideals of  $C(X)$  in terms of subspaces of  $X$ .

Now we consider the ring  $K[\mathbf{t}] = K[t_1, \dots, t_n]$  where  $K$  is an algebraically closed field. We can interpret  $K[\mathbf{t}]$  as the ring of functions on  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ . We also know some nice subspaces of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ , namely the affine algebraic subspaces of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$  (which also happen to be the *closed* subspaces of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$  in the Zariski topology). Every such affine algebraic subspace has the form  $V(\mathfrak{a})$  for some ideal  $\mathfrak{a}$  of  $K[\mathbf{t}]$ . Thus we can characterize the affine algebraic subspaces of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$  in terms of the ideals of  $K[\mathbf{t}]$ . However we really want to go backwards: can we characterize the ideals of  $K[\mathbf{t}]$  in terms of the affine algebraic subspaces of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ ? Hilbert Nullstellensatz tells us that we can almost do this; in particular we can characterize the *radical* ideals of  $K[\mathbf{t}]$  in terms of the affine algebraic subspaces of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ . In other words, there is a one-to-one correspondence:

$$\{\text{radical ideals of } K[\mathbf{t}]\} \leftrightarrow \{\text{affine algebraic subspaces of } \mathbb{A}^n(K)\}.$$

Thus the space  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$  gives a nice characterization of the radical ideals of  $K[\mathbf{t}]$ . With this motivation out of the way, we now are ready to state Hilbert's Nullstellensatz in a more general setting:

**Theorem 5.2.** (*Hilbert's Nullstellensatz*) *Let  $K$  be a field and let  $A$  be a finitely generated  $K$ -algebra. Then  $A$  is **Jacobson**, that is, for every prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$ , we have*

$$\mathfrak{p} = \bigcap_{\substack{\mathfrak{m} \supset \mathfrak{p} \\ \mathfrak{m} \text{ is maximal}}} \mathfrak{m}.$$

Moreover, if  $\mathfrak{m}$  is a maximal ideal of  $A$ , then the field extension  $K \subseteq A/\mathfrak{m}$  is finite.

We shall not prove this result here since a proof is best left for a course in Commutative Algebra (see my Algebra notes for such a proof). Instead, we will focus on the consequences of this theorem in regards to algebraic geometry. First let us consider some consequences when working over the algebraically closed field  $\overline{K}$ :

**Proposition 5.1.** *Let  $\mathfrak{m}$  be a maximal ideal of  $\overline{K}[\mathbf{T}]$ . Then there exists an  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{A}^n(\overline{K})$  such that  $\mathfrak{m} = \mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}}$ .*

*Proof.* Observe that  $\overline{K}[\mathbf{T}]$  is a finitely generated  $\overline{K}$ -algebra, thus from the Nullstellensatz, we see that  $\overline{K} \hookrightarrow \overline{K}[\mathbf{T}]/\mathfrak{m}$  is a finite extension of fields; hence  $\overline{K}[\mathbf{T}]/\mathfrak{m} \cong \overline{K}$  since  $\overline{K}$  is algebraically closed. Now let  $x_i$  be the image of  $T_i$  by the homomorphism  $\overline{K}[\mathbf{T}] \rightarrow \overline{K}[\mathbf{T}]/\mathfrak{m} \cong \overline{K}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{m}$  is a maximal ideal which contains the maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}} = \langle T_1 - x_1, \dots, T_n - x_n \rangle$ . Therefore both are equal.  $\square$

The proposition above tells us that the set of all points  $\mathbf{x}$  in  $\mathbb{A}^n(\overline{K})$  are in one-to-one correspondence with the set of all maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{m}$  of  $\overline{K}[\mathbf{T}]$ . Note that we really do need  $\overline{K}$  to be algebraically closed for this to hold. For instance,  $\langle T^2 + 1 \rangle$  is a maximal ideal of  $\mathbb{R}[T]$  since  $\mathbb{R}[T]/\langle T^2 + 1 \rangle \cong \mathbb{C}$ , however  $\langle T^2 + 1 \rangle$  does not come from a point

in  $\mathbb{R}$  since  $T^2 + 1$  doesn't even vanish on  $\mathbb{R}$ . Thus there are more maximal ideals in  $\mathbb{R}[T]$  than just the ones which correspond to points in  $\mathbb{R}$  (there are more maximal ideals in  $\mathbb{R}[T]$  than just those of the form  $\mathfrak{m}_x = \langle T - x \rangle$  where  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ). On the other hand, the Nullstellensatz guarantees that for all maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{m}$  of  $\mathbb{R}[T]$ , we will have either  $\mathbb{R}[T]/\mathfrak{m} \cong \mathbb{C}$  or  $\mathbb{R}[T]/\mathfrak{m} \cong \mathbb{R}$ . In the second case, we will have  $\mathfrak{m} = \mathfrak{m}_x$  for some  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , and in the first case, we will have  $\mathfrak{m} = \mathfrak{m}_{z,\bar{z}} = \langle (T - z)(T - \bar{z}) \rangle$  where  $z$  is a complex number in the upper-half plane ( $\text{Im}(z) > 0$ ).

### 5.3 The Correspondence Between Radical Ideals and Affine Algebraic Sets

Now we shall focus on the consequences of Hilbert's Nullstellensatz when working over  $K$  (not necessarily algebraically closed). To do this, we introduce the following notation: let  $Z$  be a subset of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ . We denote by  $I_K(Z)$  to be the set of all functions which vanish on  $Z$ :

$$I_K(Z) = \{f \in K[\mathbf{T}] \mid f(\mathbf{x}) = 0 \text{ for all } \mathbf{x} \in Z\}.$$

If the underlying field  $K$  is understood from context, then we will simplify our notation and write  $I(Z)$  instead of  $I_K(Z)$ . It is easy to see that  $I(Z)$  is an ideal of  $K[\mathbf{T}]$ , thus it is also called the ideal of functions which vanish on  $Z$ . Furthermore, since  $f(\mathbf{x}) = 0$  if and only if  $f \in \mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}}$ , we have

$$I(Z) = \bigcap_{\mathbf{x} \in Z} \mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}}.$$

Now let  $A$  be a finitely generated  $K$ -algebra and let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be an ideal of  $A$ . Then we have

$$\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}} = \bigcap_{\substack{\mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{p} \subseteq A \\ \mathfrak{p} \text{ prime ideal}}} \mathfrak{p} = \bigcap_{\substack{\mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{m} \subseteq A \\ \mathfrak{m} \text{ maximal ideal}}} \mathfrak{m}.$$

Indeed, the first equality holds in arbitrary commutative rings and the second equality follows from Hilbert's Nullstellensatz. We shall use this fact to prove the following proposition:

**Proposition 5.2.** *Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be an ideal of  $\overline{K}[\mathbf{T}]$  and let  $Z \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(\overline{K})$  be a subset. Then*

1.  $IV(\mathfrak{a}) = \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$
2.  $VI(Z) = \overline{Z}$  where  $\overline{Z}$  is the closure of  $Z$  in  $\mathbb{A}^n(\overline{K})$ .

*Proof.* 1 We have

$$\begin{aligned} IV(\mathfrak{a}) &= \bigcap_{\mathbf{x} \in V(\mathfrak{a})} \mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}} \\ &= \bigcap_{\substack{\mathfrak{m} \supseteq \mathfrak{a} \\ \text{maximal ideal}}} \mathfrak{m} \\ &= \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}. \end{aligned}$$

2. This is a simple assertion for which we do not need the Nullstellensatz. On the one hand we have  $Z \subseteq VI(Z)$  and  $VI(Z)$  is closed. This shows  $VI(Z) \supseteq \overline{Z}$ . On the other hand let  $V(\mathfrak{a}) \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(\overline{K})$  be a closed subset that contains  $Z$ . Then we have  $f(\mathbf{x}) = 0$  for all  $\mathbf{x} \in Z$  and  $f \in \mathfrak{a}$ . This shows  $\mathfrak{a} \subseteq I(Z)$  and hence  $VI(Z) \subseteq V(\mathfrak{a})$ . □

### 5.4 Changing the Underlying Field

Let  $L/K$  be an extension of fields and let  $V$  be an affine algebraic subset of  $\mathbb{A}^n(L)$ . We say  $V$  is **defined over  $K$**  if  $I_L(V)$  can be generated by polynomials in  $K[\mathbf{T}]$ , or equivalently, if  $I_L(V) = I_K(V)L[\mathbf{T}]$ . The set of  **$K$ -rational points** of  $V$  is the set

$$V(K) = V \cap \mathbb{A}^n(K).$$

Now assume that  $L/K$  is a Galois extension and let  $G = \text{Gal}(L/K)$ . There is a natural action of  $G$  on  $\mathbb{A}^n(L)$  by

$$\sigma(\mathbf{x}) = \sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n) = (\sigma(x_1), \dots, \sigma(x_n))$$

for all  $\sigma \in G$  and  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{A}^n(L)$ . If  $f \in K[\mathbf{T}]$  and  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{A}^n(L)$ , then for any  $\sigma \in G$ , we have

$$\sigma(f(\mathbf{x})) = f(\sigma(\mathbf{x})).$$

In particular, if  $V$  is defined over  $K$ , then the action of  $G$  on  $\mathbb{A}^n(L)$  induces an action on  $V$ , and clearly

$$V(K) = \{\mathbf{x} \in V \mid \sigma(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x} \text{ for all } \sigma \in G\}.$$

**Example 5.6.** Consider  $L = \overline{\mathbb{Q}}$  and  $K = \mathbb{Q}$ . Let  $n \geq 3$  and let  $V = V_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}(T_1^n + T_2^n - 1)$ . Clearly  $V$  is defined over  $\mathbb{Q}$ . Fermat's last theorem, proven by Andrew Wiles in 1995, states that

$$V(\mathbb{Q}) = \begin{cases} \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\} & \text{if } n \text{ is odd.} \\ \{(\pm 1, 0), (0, \pm 1)\} & \text{if } n \text{ is even.} \end{cases}$$

On the other hand,  $V(\overline{\mathbb{Q}})$  has infinitely many points. Let us try to describe these points using a fixed embedding  $\overline{\mathbb{Q}} \subseteq \mathbb{C}$ . For each  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ , let  $z = re^{i\theta}$  be its polar representation where  $r > 0$  and  $\theta \in (-\pi, \pi]$ . We set  $z^{1/n} = r^{1/n}e^{i\theta/n}$ . We also set  $\zeta_n = e^{2\pi i/n}$ . In particular, given  $\alpha \in \overline{\mathbb{Q}} \subseteq \mathbb{C}$ , we have

$$V(\overline{\mathbb{Q}}) = \begin{cases} (\alpha, \zeta_n^k(1 - \alpha^n)^{1/n}) & 1 \leq k \leq n \text{ if } 1 - \alpha^n \neq 0 \\ (\alpha, 0) & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

## 5.5 Morphisms of Affine Algebraic Sets

Having defined affine algebraic sets, we now wish to define morphisms between them.

**Definition 5.1.** Let  $X = V(I)$  be an affine algebraic subset of  $\mathbb{A}^m(K)$ , let  $Y = V(J)$  be an affine algebraic subset of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ , and let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be a function. Then there exists functions  $f_1, \dots, f_n: \mathbb{A}^m(K) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1(K)$  such that for each  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$  in  $X$ , we have

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = (f_1(\mathbf{x}), \dots, f_n(\mathbf{x})) = (y_1, \dots, y_n) = \mathbf{y}$$

where  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_n) \in Y$ . We call the  $n$ -tuple  $(f_1, \dots, f_n)$  a **representation** of  $f$ . The  $f_j$  are called the **components** of this representation. Note that this representation need not be unique: there may exist a different  $n$ -tuple of functions  $(\tilde{f}_1, \dots, \tilde{f}_n)$  which represents  $f$  as well. We say  $(f_1, \dots, f_n)$  is a **polynomial representation** of  $f$  if each component function is a polynomial in  $K[\mathbf{x}] = K[x_1, \dots, x_m]$ . We say  $f$  is a **morphism** if there exists a polynomial representation of  $f$ . We say  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  is an **isomorphism** if there exists a morphism  $g: Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $f \circ g = 1_Y$  and  $g \circ f = 1_X$ . The set of all morphisms from  $X$  to  $Y$  is denoted  $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$ .

*Remark 11.* To say that  $f$  is a morphism from  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}_K^m$  to  $Y \subseteq \mathbb{A}_K^n$  represented by  $(f_1, \dots, f_n)$  means that  $(f_1(x), \dots, f_n(x))$  must satisfy the defining equations of  $Y$  for all points  $x \in X$ .

### 5.5.1 Examples of morphisms

**Example 5.7.** Let  $X = \mathbb{A}^1(K)$ , let  $Y = V(y_2^2 - y_1)$ , and let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be defined by  $f(x) = (x^2, x) = \mathbf{y}$  for all  $x \in X$ . Then  $f$  is a morphism since it is represented by the polynomials  $f_1 = x^2$  and  $f_2 = x$  in  $K[x]$  and since it lands in  $Y$ : for all  $x \in X$  we have  $f(x) \in Y$  since  $(x)^2 - x^2 = 0$ . Now define  $g: Y \rightarrow X$  by  $g(\mathbf{y}) = y_2$  for all  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, y_2)$  in  $Y$ . Then  $g$  is a morphism since it is represented by the polynomial  $g = y_2$  and since it clearly lands in  $X$ . Moreover, observe that for all  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, y_2)$  in  $Y$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (f \circ g)(\mathbf{y}) &= f(y_2) \\ &= (y_2^2, y_2) \\ &= (y_1, y_2) \\ &= \mathbf{y}, \end{aligned}$$

where we used the fact that  $\mathbf{y} \in Y$  to get from the second line to the third line. A similar calculation shows  $(g \circ f)(x) = x$  for all  $x \in X$ . It follows that  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism with  $g: Y \rightarrow X$  being its inverse.

**Example 5.8.** Let  $X = V(x_2 - x_1^2, x_3 - x_1^3) = V(p_1, p_2)$ , let  $Y = V(y_2 - y_1 - y_1^2) = V(q)$ , and let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be defined by  $f(\mathbf{x}) = (x_1x_2, x_1^2x_2^2 + x_3) = \mathbf{y}$  for all  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, x_3) \in X$ . Then  $f$  is represented by the polynomials  $f_1 = x_1x_2$  and  $f_2 = x_1^2x_2^2 + x_3$ , thus to see if  $f$  is a morphism, we just need to check that  $f$  lands in  $Y$ . To see this, we must check that the polynomial  $q = y_2 - y_1 - y_1^2$  vanishes at  $\mathbf{y} = f(\mathbf{x})$ : we have

$$\begin{aligned} q(\mathbf{y}) &= y_2 - y_1 - y_1^2 \\ &= x_1^2x_2^2 + x_3 - x_1x_2 - (x_1x_2)^2 \\ &= x_3 - x_1x_2 \\ &= x_3 - x_1^3 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

where we used the fact that  $\mathbf{x} \in X$  to get from the third line to the fifth line. Thus  $f$  is in fact a morphism of affine algebraic sets. Note that the morphism  $f$  induces a homomorphism of  $K$ -algebras  $f^*: K[\mathbf{y}]/\langle q \rangle \rightarrow K[\mathbf{x}]/\langle p_1, p_2 \rangle$  where  $f^*$  is the unique  $K$ -algebra homomorphism such that  $f^*(y_1) = f_1$  and  $f^*(y_2) = f_2$ , that is,

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(y_1) &= x_1x_2 \\ f^*(y_2) &= x_1^2x_2^2 + x_3. \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.9.** Let  $X = \mathbb{A}^1(K)$ , let  $Y = V(T_2'^2 - T_1')$ , and let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be defined by  $f(x) = (x^2, x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Then  $f$  is a morphism since it is represented by the polynomials  $f_1 = T$  and  $f_2 = T^2$  and since it lands in  $Y$ : for all  $x \in X$  we have  $f(x) \in Y$  since  $(x)^2 - x^2 = 0$ . Now define  $g: Y \rightarrow X$  by  $g(y) = g(y_1, y_2) = y_2$  for all  $y = (y_1, y_2)$  in  $Y$ . Then  $g$  is a morphism since it is represented by the polynomial  $g = T_2'$  and since it clearly lands in  $X$ . Moreover, observe that for all  $y = (y_1, y_2)$  in  $Y$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (f \circ g)(y) &= f(g(y)) \\ &= f(y_2) \\ &= (y_2^2, y_2) \\ &= (y_1, y_2) \\ &= y \\ &= 1_Y(y). \end{aligned}$$

where we used the fact that  $y \in Y$  to get from the third line to the fourth line. Similarly, for all  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (g \circ f)(x) &= g(f(x)) \\ &= g(x^2, x) \\ &= x \\ &= 1_X(x). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism of affine algebraic sets.

**Example 5.10.** Let  $X = V(T_2 - T_1^2, T_3 - T_1^3) = V(p_1, p_2)$ , let  $Y = V(T_2' - T_1' - T_1'^2) = V(q)$ , and let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be defined by

$$f(x) = (x_1x_2, x_1^2x_2^2 + x_3) = (y_1, y_2)$$

for all  $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$  in  $X$ . Then  $f$  is represented by the polynomials  $f_1 = T_1T_2$  and  $f_2 = T_1^2T_2^2 + T_3$ , thus to see if  $f$  is a morphism, we only need to check that  $f$  lands in  $Y$ . To see this, we must check that the polynomial  $q = T_2' - T_1' - T_1'^2$  vanishes at  $y = (y_1, y_2)$ : we have

$$\begin{aligned} q(y) &= y_2 - y_1 - y_1^2 \\ &= x_1^2x_2^2 + x_3 - x_1x_2 - (x_1x_2)^2 \\ &= x_3 - x_1x_2 \\ &= x_3 - x_1^3 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

where we used  $p_1(x) = 0 = p_2(x)$  to get from the third line to the fifth line. Thus  $f$  is in fact a morphism of affine algebraic sets. Note that the morphism  $f$  induces a homomorphism

$$f^*: K[T_1', T_2'] / \langle T_2' - T_1' - T_1'^2 \rangle \rightarrow K[T_1, T_2, T_3] / \langle T_2 - T_1^2, T_3 - T_1^3 \rangle$$

of  $K$ -algebras, where  $f^*$  is the unique  $K$ -algebra homomorphism such that

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(T_1') &= T_1T_2 \\ f^*(T_2') &= T_1^2T_2^2 + T_3. \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.11.** The map  $\mathbb{A}^1(K) \rightarrow V(T_2^2 - T_1^2(T_1 + 1))$ , given by  $x \mapsto (x^2 - 1, x(x^2 - 1))$ , is a morphism of affine algebraic sets. For  $\text{char}(K) \neq 2$ , it is not bijective: 1 and  $-1$  are both mapped to the origin  $(0, 0)$ . In  $\text{char}(K) = 2$ , it is bijective but not an isomorphism.

**Example 5.12.** Let  $X = V(1 - T_1T_2)$ , let  $Y = \mathbb{A}^1(K)$ , and let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be defined by  $f(x) = x_1$  for all  $x = (x_1, x_2)$  in  $X$ . Then  $f(X) = \mathbb{A}^1(K) \setminus \{0\}$  is not an algebraic set. This shows that the image of an algebraic set is not necessarily an algebraic set.

**Example 5.13.** Let  $f = x^2 + 4x + 1$ . By completing the square, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} f &= x^2 + 4x + 1 \\ &= (x + 2)^2 - 3 \\ &= \tilde{x}^2 - 3 \\ &= \tilde{f}, \end{aligned}$$

where we set  $\tilde{x} = x + 2$  and  $\tilde{f} = \tilde{x}^2 - 3$ . Now set  $V = V_{\mathbb{R}}(f)$  and set  $\tilde{V} = V_{\mathbb{R}}(\tilde{f})$ . Thus we have

$$V = \{-2 - \sqrt{3}, -2 + \sqrt{3}\} \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{V} = \{-\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{3}\}.$$

Clearly we have a morphism  $V \rightarrow \tilde{V}$  given by  $x \mapsto x + 2 := \tilde{x}$  and similarly a morphism  $\tilde{V} \rightarrow V$  given by  $\tilde{x} \mapsto \tilde{x} - 2 := x$ . These maps are inverse to each other, so  $V \cong \tilde{V}$ .

The notion of an affine algebraic set is still not satisfactory. We list three problems:

- Open subsets of affine algebraic sets do not carry the structure of an affine algebraic set in a natural way. In particular, we cannot glue affine algebraic sets along open subsets (although this is a “natural operation” for geometric objects).
- Intersections of affine algebraic sets in  $\mathbb{A}^n(k)$  are closed and hence again affine algebraic sets. But we cannot distinguish between  $V(X) \cap V(Y) \subset \mathbb{A}^2(k)$  and  $V(Y) \cap V(X^2 - Y) \subset \mathbb{A}^2(k)$  although the geometric situation seems to be different.
- Affine algebraic sets seem not to help in studying solutions of polynomial equations in more general rings than algebraically closed fields.

### 5.5.2 Parametrization of Affine Varieties

**Definition 5.2.** Let  $K$  be a field. A **rational function** in  $t_1, \dots, t_m$  with coefficients in  $K$  is a quotient  $f/g$  of two polynomials  $f, g \in K[t_1, \dots, t_m]$ , where  $g$  is not the zero polynomial. Furthermore, two rational functions  $f/g$  and  $f'/g'$  are equal provided that  $g'f = gf'$  in  $K[t_1, \dots, t_m]$ . Finally, the set of all rational functions in  $t_1, \dots, t_m$  with coefficients in  $K$  is denoted  $K(t_1, \dots, t_m)$ .

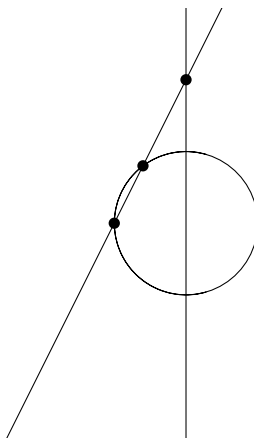
Now suppose that we are given a variety  $X = V(f_1, \dots, f_s) \subseteq K^n$ . Then a **rational parametric representation** of  $V$  consists of rational functions  $r_1, \dots, r_n \in K(t_1, \dots, t_m)$  such that the points given by

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= r_1(t_1, \dots, t_m), \\ x_2 &= r_2(t_1, \dots, t_m), \\ &\vdots \\ x_n &= r_n(t_1, \dots, t_m) \end{aligned}$$

lie in  $X$ . We also require that  $X$  be the “smallest” variety containing these points.

A parametrization may not cover all points of  $V$  as we will see in the next example:

**Example 5.14.** The unit circle in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  can be described as the variety  $\mathbf{V}(x^2 + y^2 - 1)$ :



There is a nice rational parametric representation of the unit circle which we now describe: Suppose  $L$  is a line which passes through the point  $(-1, 0)$  and such that  $L$  is not the tangent line to the unit circle at the point  $(-1, 0)$ . Then  $L = \mathbf{V}(y - t(x + 1))$ , where  $t$  is the slope of the line, and  $L$  passes through a point  $(x, y) \neq (-1, 0)$  on the unit circle. Since  $(x, y)$  lies on the line  $L$  and the unit circle, we get the relations

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 - 1 &= 0, \\ y - t(x + 1) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Using the second relation, we have  $y = t(x + 1)$ . Plugging in  $t(x + 1)$  for  $y$  in the first relation, we get

$$t^2 = \frac{(1 - x)^2}{(1 + x)^2} = \frac{1 - x}{1 + x}.$$

Now we solve for  $x$  in terms of  $t$ , to get the following rational parametric representation of the unit circle:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2}, \\ y &= \frac{2t}{1 + t^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Notice that this parametrization does not cover the point  $(-1, 0)$ . Here's an interesting application using this parametrization:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{-1}^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} &= \int_{(-1,0)}^{(1,0)} \frac{dx}{y} \\ &= \int_{\infty}^0 \frac{2}{1+t^2} dt \\ &= \pi.\end{aligned}$$

where we used the fact that  $dx = (4t/(1+t^2)^2)dt$ .

In many situations, we have a parametrization of a variety  $V$ , where  $r_1, \dots, r_n$  are polynomials rather than rational functions. This is what we call a **polynomial parametric representation** of  $V$ . By contrast, the original defining equations  $f_1 = \dots = f_s = 0$  of  $V$  are called an **implicit representation** of  $V$ .

**Example 5.15.** A **Bézier Cubic** is given parametrically by the equations

$$x = (1-t)^3x_0 + 3t(1-t)^2x_1 + 3t^2(1-t)x_2 + t^3x_3 \quad y = (1-t)^3y_0 + 3t(1-t)^2y_1 + 3t^2(1-t)y_2 + t^3y_3 \quad (20)$$

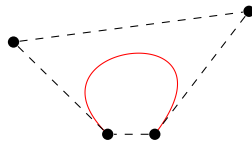
for  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ , where  $x_0, y_0, x_1, y_1, x_2, y_2, x_3, y_3$  are constants. If we evaluate the above formulas at  $t = 0$  and  $t = 1$ , then we obtain

$$(x(0), y(0)) = (x_0, y_0) \quad (x(1), y(1)) = (x_3, y_3)$$

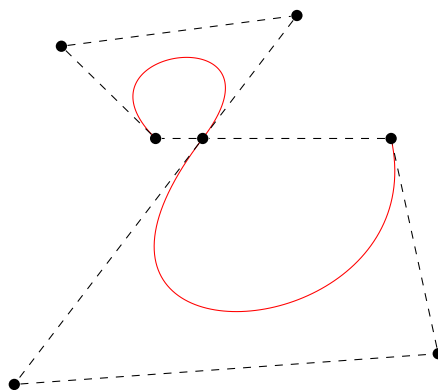
As  $t$  varies from 0 to 1, equations (20) describe a curve starting at  $(x_0, y_0)$  and ending at  $(x_3, y_3)$ . Now let's calculate the tangent vector to equations (20) when  $t = 0$  and  $t = 1$ :

$$(\dot{x}(0), \dot{y}(0)) = 3(x_1 - x_0, y_1 - y_0) \quad (\dot{x}(1), \dot{y}(1)) = 3(x_3 - x_2, y_3 - y_2)$$

Since  $(x_1 - x_0, y_1 - y_0) = (x_1, y_1) - (x_0, y_0)$ , it follows that  $(\dot{x}(0), \dot{y}(0))$  is three times the vector from  $(x_0, y_0)$  to  $(x_1, y_1)$ . Hence, by placing  $(x_1, y_1)$ , we can control the tangent direction at the beginning of the curve. In a similar way, the placement of  $(x_2, y_2)$  controls the tangent direction at the end of the curve. The points  $(x_0, y_0)$ ,  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$ , and  $(x_3, y_3)$  are called **control points** of the Bézier cubic. They are usually labeled  $P_0, P_1, P_2$ , and  $P_3$ , and the convex quadrilateral they determine is called the **control polygon**. Here is a picture of a Bézier cubic together with its control polygon:



How do we connect two Bézier cubics together? Here's how: suppose we have another Bézier cubic specified by points  $P'_0, P'_1, P'_2$ , and  $P'_3$ . Then we need to make sure  $P_3$  is identified with  $P'_0$  and we also need to make sure that the tangent lines are identified at those points:  $P_3 - P_2 = c(P'_1 - P'_0)$  where  $c$  is some constant. Here's an example of two Bézier cubics connected together:



**Example 5.16.** We parametrize all solutions of the linear equations

$$\begin{aligned}x + 2y - 2z + w &= -1, \\ x + y + z - w &= 2.\end{aligned}$$



First, we put the coefficient matrix into reduced row echelon form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -2 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 4 & -3 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & 2 & -3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

From the reduced row echelon form, we obtain the parametrization:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= -4s + 3t - 7, \\ y &= 3s - 2t + 3, \\ z &= s, \\ w &= t. \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.17.** Consider the system of equations given by

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \cos t \\ y &= \cos 2t \end{aligned} \tag{21}$$

From trigonometry we know that  $\cos 2t = 2\cos^2 t - 1$ , so  $2x^2 - y - 1 = 0$ . The variety  $V = \mathbf{V}(2x^2 - y - 1)$  is the parabola, so we see that (21) gives a parametrizes part of the parabola. Since  $\cos t \in [-1, 1]$ , we see that (21) parametrizes all points in  $V$  whose  $x$ -coordinate is in the interval  $[-1, 1]$ .

**Example 5.18.** Given  $f \in K[x]$ , a parametrization of  $\mathbf{V}(y - f(x))$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x &= t, \\ y &= f(t). \end{aligned}$$

### 5.5.3 Morphisms are continuous with respect to the Zariski topology

We now want to show that morphisms are continuous with respect to the Zariski topology. We first need a lemma:

**Lemma 5.3.** *Let  $Y$  be an affine algebraic subset of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$  and let  $f: \mathbb{A}^m(K) \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism. Then  $f$  is continuous with respect to the Zariski topology.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $Y = V(p_1, \dots, p_r)$  and let  $Z$  be a closed subset of  $Y$ . Then  $Z$  has the form

$$Z = V(p_1, \dots, p_r) \cap V(q_1, \dots, q_s) = V(p_1, \dots, p_r, q_1, \dots, q_s).$$

where  $V(q_1, \dots, q_s)$  is another closed subset of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ . In particular,

$$f^{-1}(Z) = V(p_1 \circ f, \dots, p_r \circ f, q_1 \circ f, \dots, q_s \circ f)$$

is a closed subset of  $\mathbb{A}^m(K)$ . □

**Proposition 5.3.** *Let  $X$  be an affine algebraic subset of  $\mathbb{A}^m(K)$ , let  $Y$  be an affine algebraic subset of  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ , and let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism. Then  $f$  is continuous with respect to the Zariski topology.*

*Proof.* Lift  $f$  to a morphism  $\tilde{f}: \mathbb{A}^m(K) \rightarrow Y$  such that  $\tilde{f}|_X = f$  (choosing a lift of  $f$  is equivalent to choosing a polynomial representation  $(f_1, \dots, f_n)$  of  $f$ ). By Lemma (5.3),  $\tilde{f}$  is continuous. Therefore its restriction  $\tilde{f}|_X = f$  must be continuous also. □

**Example 5.19.** Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  be an affine algebraic sets and let  $\pi_i: \mathbb{A}^n(k) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1(k)$  be the projection to the  $i$ th coordinate map (i.e.  $\pi_i(y_1, \dots, y_i, \dots, y_n) = y_i$ ). Then  $\pi_i|_X$  is continuous with respect to the Zariski topology. Let us show this directly: let  $\{z_1, \dots, z_n\}$  be a closed subset of  $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$  where the  $z_j$  are distinct points in  $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$  (every closed subset in  $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$  is just a finite set of points). Then

$$\pi_i|_X^{-1}(\{z_1, \dots, z_n\}) = X \cap \left( \bigcap_{j=1}^n V(\pi_i - z_j) \right).$$

Thus the inverse image a closed subset in  $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$  is a closed subset in  $X$ .

### 5.5.4 Maps which are continuous with respect to the Zariski topology are not necessarily morphisms

A continuous map with respect to the Zariski topology does not have to be a morphism. Indeed, consider the complex conjugation map  $\bar{\cdot} : \mathbb{A}^1(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1(\mathbb{C})$ . This map is continuous with respect to the Zariski topology. To see why, let  $V(p_1, \dots, p_r)$  be a closed subset of  $\mathbb{A}^1(\mathbb{C})$ . Then the inverse image of  $V(p_1, \dots, p_r)$  under  $\bar{\cdot}$  is the closed subset  $V(\bar{p}_1, \dots, \bar{p}_r)$ , where if  $p_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} a_{n_j} z^{n_j}$ , then  $\bar{p}_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} \bar{a}_{n_j} z^{n_j}$ . On the other hand,  $\bar{\cdot}$  does not have a polynomial representation: the only root of  $\bar{\cdot}$  is  $z = 0$ , but  $\bar{\cdot} \neq T^m$  for any  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ .

More generally, if  $L/K$  galois extension with galois group  $G = \text{Gal}(L/K)$ . Then for all  $g \in G$  the map  $g \cdot : \mathbb{A}^1(L) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1(L)$ , given by  $x \mapsto g \cdot x$ , is Zariski continuous because the inverse image of a closed subset  $V(p_1, \dots, p_r)$  of  $\mathbb{A}^1(L)$  under  $g \cdot$  is the closed subset  $V(g \cdot p_1, \dots, g \cdot p_r)$ , where if  $p_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} a_{n_j} z^{n_j}$ , then  $g \cdot p_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} (g \cdot a_{n_j}) z^{n_j}$ . On the other hand,  $g \cdot$  does not have a polynomial representation: the only root of  $g \cdot$  is  $z = 0$ , but  $g \cdot \neq T^m$  for any  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ . Note that  $g \cdot$  gives rise to a  $K$ -algebra homomorphism  $\Gamma(g \cdot) : L[T] \rightarrow L[T]$  (and not an  $L$ -algebra homomorphism).

*Remark 12.* One may wonder why we restrict our morphisms between affine algebraic sets in the first place. Why do we not consider  $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$  to be the set of all Zariski-continuous maps? The point is that the category of affine algebraic sets are naturally thought of as being objects in the category of locally ringed spaces (we will define what these are later on) rather than just in the category of topological spaces.

## 5.6 Affine Algebraic Sets as Reduced Finitely-Generated $K$ -Algebras

We make the following definitions.

**Definition 5.3.** Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(K)$  be an affine algebraic set.

1. The **affine coordinate ring** of  $X$ , denoted  $\Gamma(X)$ , is the  $K$ -algebra

$$\Gamma(X) := K[\mathbf{T}]/I(X).$$

Notice that  $\text{Hom}(X, \mathbb{A}^1(K))$  has the structure of a  $K$ -algebra in the natural way, where addition and multiplication are defined pointwise, and that  $\Gamma(X) \cong \text{Hom}(X, \mathbb{A}^1(K))$  as  $K$ -algebras. Thus  $\text{Hom}(X, \mathbb{A}^1(K))$  is an equivalent description of  $\Gamma(X)$  which we shall often use.

2. Let  $\mathbf{x} \in X$ . We denote by  $\mathfrak{m}_{X,\mathbf{x}}$  to be the maximal ideal of  $\Gamma(X)$  given by

$$\mathfrak{m}_{X,\mathbf{x}} = \{f \in \Gamma(X) \mid f(\mathbf{x}) = 0\}.$$

Often we simplify our notation (when context is clear) and write  $\mathfrak{m}_{\mathbf{x}}$  instead of  $\mathfrak{m}_{X,\mathbf{x}}$ .

3. Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be an ideal of  $\Gamma(X)$ . We denote by  $V_X(\mathfrak{a})$  to be the subset of  $X$  given by

$$V_X(\mathfrak{a}) = \{\mathbf{x} \in X \mid f(\mathbf{x}) = 0 \text{ for all } f \in \mathfrak{a}\}.$$

Let  $\tilde{\mathfrak{a}}$  be an ideal of  $K[\mathbf{T}]$  which lifts the ideal  $\mathfrak{a}$  with respect to the surjective map  $\pi : K[\mathbf{T}] \rightarrow \Gamma(X)$ . Then observe that  $V_X(\mathfrak{a}) = X \cap V(\tilde{\mathfrak{a}})$ . In particular, the  $V_X(\mathfrak{a})$  (as  $\mathfrak{a}$  ranges) are the closed sets in the subspace topology  $X$  in  $\mathbb{A}^n(K)$ . We again call this subspace topology the **Zariski topology** of  $X$ . Often it is clear from context that we are working in  $X$ , so we will often simplify our notation and write  $V(\mathfrak{a})$  instead of  $V_X(\mathfrak{a})$ .

4. For each  $f \in \Gamma(X)$ , we denote by  $D_X(f)$  to be the subset of  $X$  given by

$$D_X(f) = \{\mathbf{x} \in X \mid f(\mathbf{x}) \neq 0\}.$$

These are principal open subsets of  $X$ , which we call the **principal open subsets** of  $X$ . Again we often simplify our notation by writing  $D(f)$  instead of  $D_X(f)$ .

**Lemma 5.4.** Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(K)$  be an affine algebraic set. The open sets  $D(f)$ , for  $f \in \Gamma(X)$ , form a basis of the topology (i.e. finite intersections of principal open subsets are again principal open subsets and for every open subset  $U \subseteq X$  there exist  $f_i \in \Gamma(X)$  with  $U = \bigcup_i D(f_i)$ ).

*Proof.* Clearly we have  $D(f) \cap D(g) = D(fg)$  for  $f, g \in \Gamma(X)$ . It remains to show that every open subset  $U$  is a union of principal open subsets. We write  $U = X \setminus V(\mathfrak{a})$  for some ideal  $\mathfrak{a}$ . For generators  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  of this ideal we find  $V(\mathfrak{a}) = \bigcap_{i=1}^n V(f_i)$ , and hence  $U = \bigcup_{i=1}^n D(f_i)$ .  $\square$

*Remark 13.* Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism of affine algebraic sets. Then  $f$  is continuous with respect to the Zariski topology. Indeed, if  $D(g)$  is a basic open set in  $Y$ , then  $f^{-1}(D(g)) = D(f^*g)$ .

**Proposition 5.4.** Let  $X$  be an affine algebraic set. The affine coordinate ring  $\Gamma(X)$  is a reduced finitely generated  $k$ -algebra. Moreover,  $X$  is irreducible if and only if  $\Gamma(X)$  is an integral domain.

*Proof.* As  $\Gamma(X) = k[T_1, \dots, T_n]/I(X)$ , it is a finitely generated  $k$ -algebra. As  $I(X) = \sqrt{I(X)}$ , we find that  $\Gamma(X)$  is reduced. Also,  $X$  is irreducible if and only if  $I(X)$  is prime if and only if  $\Gamma(X)$  is an integral domain.  $\square$

**Proposition 5.5.** *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism between affine algebraic sets. Then*

1.  $f(X)$  is dense in  $Y$  if and only if  $f^* : \Gamma(Y) \rightarrow \Gamma(X)$  is injective.
2.  $f(X) \subset Y$  is a closed subvariety and  $f : X \rightarrow f(X)$  is an isomorphism if and only if  $f^* : \Gamma(Y) \rightarrow \Gamma(X)$  is surjective.

*Proof.*

1. First assume that  $f(X)$  is dense in  $Y$ . Suppose that  $f^*h = f^*g$  where  $g, h \in \Gamma(Y)$ . Then for all  $x \in X$ , we have  $h(f(x)) = g(f(x))$ . Or in other words, we have  $(h - g)(y) = 0$  for all  $y \in f(X)$ . Since  $f(X)$  is dense in  $Y$  and  $h - g$  is continuous, we must therefore have  $(h - g)(y) = 0$  for all  $y \in Y$ . Thus,  $h = g$ , which shows that  $f^*$  is injective. Conversely, assume that  $f^*$  is injective. Suppose  $f(X)$  is not dense in  $Y$ . Denote  $Z := \overline{f(X)}$  and pick  $y \in Y$  such that  $y \notin Z$ . Then  $Z \subset Y$  implies  $I(Z) \supset I(Y)$ . Thus, we can find an  $g \in I(Z)$  such that  $g \notin I(Y)$ . This means  $g(z) = 0$  for all  $z \in Z$  and there exists  $y \in Y$  such that  $g(y) \neq 0$ . But  $f^*$  is injective,  $f^*g = f^*0$  implies  $g = 0$ , which is a contradiction.  $\square$

*Remark 14.* We say  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is **dominant** if  $f(X)$  is dense in  $Y$ .

### 5.6.1 Equivalence of Categories Between Affine Algebraic Sets and Reduced Finitely Generated $k$ -Algebras

Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism of affine algebraic sets. The map

$$\Gamma(f) : \text{Hom}(Y, \mathbb{A}^1(k)) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(X, \mathbb{A}^1(k)),$$

given by  $g \mapsto f^*g := g \circ f$ , defines a homomorphism of  $k$ -algebras. We obtain a functor

$$\Gamma : (\text{affine algebraic sets})^{\text{opp}} \rightarrow (\text{reduced finitely generated } k\text{-algebras}).$$

**Proposition 5.6.** *The functor  $\Gamma$  induces an equivalence of categories. By restriction one obtains an equivalence of categories*

$$\Gamma : (\text{irreducible affine algebraic sets})^{\text{opp}} \rightarrow (\text{integral finitely generated } k\text{-algebras}).$$

*Proof.* A functor induces an equivalence of categories if and only if it is fully faithful and essentially surjective. We first show that  $\Gamma$  is fully faithful, i.e. that for affine algebraic sets  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^m(k)$  and  $Y \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$ , the map  $\Gamma : \text{Hom}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(\Gamma(Y), \Gamma(X))$  is bijective. We define an inverse map. If  $\varphi : \Gamma(Y) \rightarrow \Gamma(X)$  is given, there exists a  $k$ -algebra homomorphism  $\tilde{\varphi}$  that makes the following diagram commutative

$$\begin{array}{ccc} k[T'_1, \dots, T'_m] & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\varphi}} & k[T_1, \dots, T_n] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Gamma(Y) & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & \Gamma(X) \end{array}$$

We define  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  by

$$f(x) := (\tilde{\varphi}(T'_1)(x), \dots, \tilde{\varphi}(T'_m)(x))$$

and obtain the desired inverse homomorphism.

It remains to show that the functor is essentially surjective, i.e. that for every reduced finitely generated  $k$ -algebra  $A$  there exists an affine algebraic set  $X$  such that  $A \cong \Gamma(X)$ . By hypothesis,  $A$  is isomorphic to  $k[T_1, \dots, T_n]/\mathfrak{a}$ , where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal in  $k[T_1, \dots, T_n]$  with  $\mathfrak{a} = \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$ . If we set  $X = V(\mathfrak{a}) \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$ , we have

$$\Gamma(X) = k[T_1, \dots, T_n]/I(V(\mathfrak{a})) = k[T_1, \dots, T_n]/\mathfrak{a}.$$

$\square$

*Remark 15.* Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^m(k)$  and  $Y \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  be affine algebraic sets and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  whose components are  $f_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, m$ . Write the affine coordinate rings of  $X$  and  $Y$  as  $\Gamma(X) = K[T_1, \dots, T_m]/I(X)$  and  $\Gamma(Y) = K[T'_1, \dots, T'_n]/I(Y)$ . Then  $\Gamma(f)(T_i) := T_i \circ f = f_i$  for all  $i = 1, \dots, m$ . Indeed, for all points  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma(f)(T_i)(x) &= T_i(f(x)) \\ &= T_i(f_1(x), \dots, f_i(x), \dots, f_n(x)) \\ &= f_i(x). \end{aligned}$$

Using the bijective correspondence between points of affine algebraic sets  $X$  and maximal ideals of  $\Gamma(X)$ , we also have the following description of morphisms.

**Proposition 5.7.** *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism of affine algebraic sets and let  $\Gamma(f) : \Gamma(Y) \rightarrow \Gamma(X)$  be the corresponding homomorphism of the affine coordinate rings. Then  $\Gamma(f)^{-1}(\mathfrak{m}_x) = \mathfrak{m}_{f(x)}$  for all  $x \in X$ .*

*Proof.* This follows from  $g(f(x)) = \Gamma(f)(g)(x)$  for all  $g \in \Gamma(Y) = \text{Hom}(Y, \mathbb{A}^1(k))$ .  $\square$

## 5.7 Affine Algebraic Sets as Spaces with Functions

We will now define the notion of a **space with functions**. For us this will be the prototype of a “geometric object”. It is a special case of a so-called ringed space on which the notion of a scheme will be based on.

**Definition 5.4.**

1. A **space with functions over  $K$**  is a topological space  $X$  together with a family  $\mathcal{O}_X$  of  $K$ -subalgebras  $\mathcal{O}_X(U) \subseteq \text{Map}(U, K)$  for every open subset  $U \subseteq X$  that satisfy the following properties:
  - (a) If  $U' \subseteq U \subseteq X$  are open and  $f \in \mathcal{O}_X(U)$ , then the restriction  $f|_{U'} \in \text{Map}(U', K)$  is an element of  $\mathcal{O}_X(U')$ .
  - (b) Given an open covering  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of an open subset  $U$  of  $X$  and elements  $f_i \in \mathcal{O}_X(U_i)$  such that

$$f_i|_{U_i \cap U_j} = f_j|_{U_i \cap U_j}$$

for all  $i, j \in I$ , then there exists a unique function  $f \in \mathcal{O}_X(U)$  such that  $f|_{U_i} = f_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .

2. A **morphism**  $g : (X, \mathcal{O}_X) \rightarrow (Y, \mathcal{O}_Y)$  of spaces with functions is a continuous map  $g : X \rightarrow Y$  such that for all open subsets  $V$  of  $Y$  and functions  $f \in \mathcal{O}_Y(V)$ , the function  $g^*f := f \circ g|_{g^{-1}(V)} : g^{-1}(V) \rightarrow K$  lies in  $\mathcal{O}_X(g^{-1}(V))$ .

Clearly spaces with functions over  $K$  form a category.

**Definition 5.5.** Let  $X$  be a space with functions and let  $U$  be an open subset of  $X$ . We denote by  $(U, \mathcal{O}_{X|U})$  the space  $U$  with functions

$$\mathcal{O}_{X|U}(V) = \mathcal{O}_X(V)$$

for  $V \subseteq U$  open.

### 5.7.1 The Space with Functions of an Irreducible Affine Algebraic Set

Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  be an irreducible affine algebraic set. It is endowed with the Zariski topology and we want to define for every open subset  $U \subseteq X$  a  $k$ -algebra of functions  $\mathcal{O}_X(U)$  such that  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  is a space with functions.

As  $X$  is irreducible, the  $k$ -algebra  $\Gamma(X)$  is a domain, and by definition all the sets  $\mathcal{O}_X(U)$  will be  $k$ -subalgebras of its field of fractions.

**Definition 5.6.** The field of fractions  $K(X) := \text{Frac}(\Gamma(X))$  is called the **function field** of  $X$ .

If we consider  $\Gamma(X)$  as the set of morphisms  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1(k)$ , elements of the function field  $f/g$ , where  $f, g \in \Gamma(X)$  and  $g \neq 0$ , usually do not define functions on  $X$  because the denominator may have zeros on  $X$ , but certainly  $f/g$  defines a function  $D(g) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1(k)$ <sup>1</sup> We will use functions of this kind to make  $X$  into a space with functions.

**Lemma 5.5.** *Let  $X$  be an irreducible affine algebraic set and let  $f_1/g_1$  and  $f_2/g_2$  be elements of  $K(X)$ . Then  $f_1/g_1 = f_2/g_2$  in  $K(X)$  if and only if there exists a non-empty open subset  $U \subseteq D(g_1g_2)$  with*

$$\frac{f_1(x)}{g_1(x)} = \frac{f_2(x)}{g_2(x)}$$

for all  $x \in U$ . Then  $f_1/g_1 = f_2/g_2$  in  $K(X)$ .

*Proof.* First suppose  $f_1/g_1 = f_2/g_2$  in  $K(X)$ . This means  $f_1g_2 = f_2g_1$  in  $\Gamma(X)$ . In particular,

$$\frac{f_1(x)}{g_1(x)} = \frac{f_2(x)}{g_2(x)}$$

for all  $x \in D(g_1g_2)$ . Conversely, let  $U \subseteq D(g_1g_2)$  be a non-empty open subset such that

$$\frac{f_1(x)}{g_1(x)} = \frac{f_2(x)}{g_2(x)}$$

<sup>1</sup>It might be even defined on a bigger open subset of  $X$  as there exist representations of the fraction with different denominators.

for all  $x \in U$ . Then the open subset  $U$  lies in the closed subset  $V(f_1g_2 - f_2g_1)$ . As  $U$  is dense in  $X$ , this implies  $V(f_1g_2 - f_2g_1) = X$ , and hence  $f_1g_2 = f_2g_1$  because  $\Gamma(X)$  is reduced.  $\square$

*Proof.* We have  $(f_1g_2 - f_2g_1)(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in U$ . Therefore the open subset  $U$  lies in the closed subset  $V(f_1g_2 - f_2g_1)$ . As  $U$  is dense in  $X$ , this implies  $V(f_1g_2 - f_2g_1) = X$ , and hence  $f_1g_2 = f_2g_1$  because  $\Gamma(X)$  is reduced.  $\square$

**Definition 5.7.** Let  $X$  be an irreducible affine algebraic set and let  $U \subseteq X$  be open. We denote by  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  the maximal ideal of  $\Gamma(X)$  corresponding to  $x \in X$  and by  $\Gamma(X)_{\mathfrak{m}_x}$  the localization of the affine coordinate ring with respect to  $\mathfrak{m}_x$ . We define

$$\mathcal{O}_X(U) = \bigcap_{x \in U} \Gamma(X)_{\mathfrak{m}_x} \subset K(X).$$

The localization  $\Gamma(X)_{\mathfrak{m}_x}$  can be described in this situation as the union

$$\Gamma(X)_{\mathfrak{m}_x} = \bigcup_{f \in \Gamma(X) \setminus \mathfrak{m}_x} \Gamma(X)_f \subset K(X).$$

*Remark 16.* Note that

$$\Gamma(X)_{\mathfrak{m}_x} = \left\{ \frac{f}{g} \mid f, g \in \Gamma(X) \text{ and } g(x) \neq 0 \right\}.$$

Indeed,  $g(x) \neq 0$  is equivalent to  $g \notin \mathfrak{m}_x$ . It may be tempting to think that

$$\mathcal{O}_X(U) = \left\{ \frac{f}{g} \mid f, g \in \Gamma(X) \text{ and } g(x) \neq 0 \text{ for all } x \in U \right\},$$

but this is not necessarily the case. For instance, let  $X \subset \mathbb{A}^4$  be the variety defined by the equation  $T_1T_4 = T_2T_3$ . Then  $T_1/T_2 \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(T_2))$  and  $T_3/T_4 \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(T_4))$  and by the equation of  $X$ , these two functions coincide where they are both defined;

$$\frac{T_1}{T_2} \Big|_{D(T_2T_4)} = \frac{T_3}{T_4} \Big|_{D(T_2T_4)}$$

So this gives rise to a regular function on  $D(T_2) \cup D(T_4)$ , but there is no representation of this function as a quotient of two polynomials in  $K[T_1, T_2, T_3, T_4]$  that works on all of  $D(T_2) \cup D(T_4)$ ; we have to use different representations at different points. On the other hand, it is true that

$$\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{A}^n(K)}(U) = \left\{ \frac{f}{g} \mid f, g \in K[\mathbf{T}] \text{ and } g(\mathbf{x}) \neq 0 \text{ for all } \mathbf{x} \in U \right\}.$$

For instance, let  $X = \mathbb{A}^2(k)$  and  $U = \mathbb{A}^2(k) \setminus \{0\}$ . Suppose  $f \in \mathcal{O}_X(U)$  and  $x \in U$ . Since  $f \in \mathcal{O}_{X,p}$ , we can write

$$f|_{D(g_1)} = \frac{f_1}{g_1},$$

where  $g_1(x) \neq 0$ . We may assume  $f_1$  and  $g_1$  share no common factors. If  $g_1$  is not a constant, then there exists another point  $y \in U$  such that  $g_1(y) = 0$ . Since  $f \in \mathcal{O}_{X,y}$ , we must be able to write

$$f|_{D(g_2)} = \frac{f_2}{g_2},$$

where  $g_2(y) \neq 0$ . This implies

$$\frac{f_1}{f_2} \Big|_{D(g_1g_2)} = f = \frac{f_2}{g_2} \Big|_{D(g_1g_2)}.$$

Thus,  $f_1/g_1 = f_2/g_2$  in  $K(X)$ . But the only way we can have  $f_1/g_1 = f_2/g_2$  is if  $g_1 = hf_1$  and  $g_2 = hf_2$ , where  $h \in k[T_1, T_2]$ .<sup>a</sup> But this implies  $g_2(y) = h(y)f_2(y) = 0$ , which is a contradiction.

<sup>a</sup>This is related to the fact that  $\langle g_1, g_2 \rangle$  has depth 2.

To consider  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  as a space with functions, we first have to explain how to identify elements  $f \in \mathcal{O}_X(U)$  with functions  $U \rightarrow k$ . Given  $x \in U$ , the element  $f$  is by definition in  $\Gamma(X)_{\mathfrak{m}_x}$  and we may write  $f = g/h$  where  $g, h \in \Gamma(X)$  and  $h \notin \mathfrak{m}_x$ . But then  $h(x) \neq 0$  and we may set  $f(x) := g(x)/h(x) \in k$ . The value of  $f(x)$  is well defined and Lemma (5.5) implies that this construction defines an injective map  $\mathcal{O}_X(U) \rightarrow \text{Map}(U, k)$ .

If  $V \subseteq U \subseteq X$  are open subsets we have  $\mathcal{O}_X(U) \subseteq \mathcal{O}_X(V)$  by definition and this inclusion corresponds via the identification with maps  $U \rightarrow k$  resp.  $V \rightarrow k$  to the restriction of functions.

To show that  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  is a space with functions, we still have to show that we may glue functions together. But this follows immediately from the definition of  $\mathcal{O}_X(U)$  as subsets of the function field  $K(X)$ . We call  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  the

**space of functions associated with  $X$ .** Functions on principal open subsets  $D(f)$  can be explicitly described as follows.

**Proposition 5.8.** *Let  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  be the space with functions associated to the irreducible affine algebraic set  $X$  and let  $f \in \Gamma(X)$ . Then there is an equality*

$$\mathcal{O}_X(D(f)) = \Gamma(X)_f$$

(as subsets of  $K(X)$ ). In particular  $\mathcal{O}_X(X) = \Gamma(X)$  (taking  $f = 1$ ).

*Proof.* Clearly we have  $\Gamma(X)_f \subset \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$ . Let  $g \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$ . If we can show that  $f^n g = h$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $h \in \Gamma(X)$ , then  $g = h/f^n$  would show that  $g \in \Gamma(X)_f$ . To do this, we will work with ideals, because our argument will use Nullstellensatz which is a theorem about ideals. So set

$$\mathfrak{a} = \{g \in \Gamma(X) \mid qg \in \Gamma(X)\}.$$

Obviously  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal of  $\Gamma(X)$  and we have to show that  $f \in \text{rad} \mathfrak{a}$ . By Hilbert's Nullstellensatz we have  $\text{rad} \mathfrak{a} = I(V(\mathfrak{a}))$ . Therefore it suffices to show  $f(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in V(\mathfrak{a})$ . Let  $x \in X$  be a point with  $f(x) \neq 0$ , i.e.  $x \in D(f)$ . As  $g \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$ , we find  $g_1, g_2 \in \Gamma(X)$  with  $g_2 \notin \mathfrak{m}_x$  and  $g = g_1/g_2$ . Thus  $g_2 \in \mathfrak{a}$  and as  $g_2(x) \neq 0$  we have  $x \notin V(\mathfrak{a})$ .  $\square$

*Remark 17.*

1. Note that we needed to use Nullstellensatz here. In fact, the statement is false if the ground field is not algebraically closed, as you can see from the example of the function  $\frac{1}{x^2+1}$  that is regular on all of  $\mathbb{A}^1(\mathbb{R})$ , but not polynomial.
2. The proposition shows that we could have defined  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  also in another way, namely by setting

$$\mathcal{O}_X(D(f)) = \Gamma(X)_f \text{ for } f \in \Gamma(X).$$

As the  $D(f)$  for  $f \in \Gamma(X)$  form a basis of the topology, the axiom of gluing implies that at most one such space with functions can exist. It would remain to show the existence of such a space (i.e. that for  $f, g \in \Gamma(X)$  with  $D(f) = D(g)$  we have  $\Gamma(X)_f = \Gamma(X)_g$  and that gluing of functions is possible). This is more or less the same as the proof of Proposition (5.8). The way we chose is more comfortable in our situation. For affine schemes we will use the other approach.

*Remark 18.* If  $A$  is an integral finitely generated  $k$ -algebra we may construct the space with functions  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  of “the” corresponding irreducible affine algebraic set directly without choosing generators of  $A$ . Namely, we obtain  $X$  as the set of maximal ideals in  $A$ . Closed subsets of  $X$  are sets of the form

$$V(\mathfrak{a}) = \{\mathfrak{m} \subset A \text{ maximal} \mid \mathfrak{m} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}\},$$

where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal in  $A$ . For an open subset  $U \subseteq X$  we finally define

$$\mathcal{O}_X(U) = \bigcap_{\mathfrak{m} \in U} A_{\mathfrak{m}} \subset \text{Frac}(A).$$

This defines a space with functions  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  which coincides the space with functions of the irreducible affine algebraic set  $X$  corresponding in  $A$ . This approach is the point of departure for the definition of schemes.

### 5.7.2 The Functor from the Category of Irreducible Affine Algebraic Sets to the Category of Spaces with Functions

**Proposition 5.9.** *Let  $X, Y$  be irreducible affine algebraic sets and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  a map. The following assertions are equivalent.*

1. *The map  $f$  is a morphism of affine algebraic sets.*
2. *If  $g \in \Gamma(Y)$ , then  $g \circ f \in \Gamma(X)$ .*
3. *The map  $f$  is a morphism of spaces with functions, i.e.  $f$  is continuous and if  $U \subseteq Y$  open and  $g \in \mathcal{O}_Y(U)$ , then  $g \circ f \in \mathcal{O}_X(f^{-1}(U))$ .*

*Proof.* The equivalence of (1) and (2) has already been proved in Proposition (5.6). Moreover, it is clear that (2) is implied by (3) by taking  $U = Y$ . Let us show that (2) implies (3). Let  $f^* : \Gamma(Y) \rightarrow \Gamma(X)$  be the homomorphism



$h \mapsto h \circ f$ . For  $g \in \Gamma(Y)$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} f^{-1}(D(g)) &= \{x \in X \mid f(x) \in D(g)\} \\ &= \{x \in X \mid g(f(x)) \neq 0\} \\ &= D(f^*(g)). \end{aligned}$$

As the principal open subsets form a basis of the topology, this shows that  $f$  is continuous. The homomorphism  $f^*$  induces a homomorphism of the localizations  $\Gamma(Y)_g \rightarrow \Gamma(X)_{f^*(g)}$ . By definition of  $f^*$  this is the map  $\mathcal{O}_Y(D(g)) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(D(f^*(g)))$ , given by  $h \mapsto h \circ f$ . This shows the claim if  $U$  is principal open. As we can obtain functions on arbitrary open subsets of  $Y$  by gluing functions on principal open subsets, this proves (3).  $\square$

Altogether we obtain

**Theorem 5.6.** *The above construction  $X \mapsto (X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  defines a fully faithful functor*

$$(\text{Irreducible affine algebraic sets}) \mapsto (\text{Spaces with functions over } k).$$

## 6 Prevarieties

We have seen that we can embed the category of irreducible affine algebraic sets into the category of spaces with functions. Of course we do not obtain all spaces with functions in this way. We will now define prevarieties as those connected spaces with functions that can be glued together from finitely many spaces with functions attached to irreducible affine algebraic sets.

### 6.1 Definition of Prevarieties

We call a space with functions  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  **connected**, if the underlying topological space  $X$  is connected.

**Definition 6.1.**

1. An **affine variety** is a space with functions that is isomorphic to a space with functions associated to an irreducible affine algebraic set.
2. A **prevariety** is a connected space with functions  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  with the property that there exists a finite covering  $X = \bigcup_{i=1}^n U_i$  such that the space with functions  $(U_i, \mathcal{O}_{X|U_i})$  is an affine variety for all  $i = 1, \dots, n$ .
3. A **morphism** of prevarieties is a morphism of spaces with functions.

**Corollary 1.** *The following categories are equivalent.*

1. *The opposed category of finitely generated  $k$ -algebras without zero divisors.*
2. *The category of irreducible affine algebraic sets.*
3. *The category of affine varieties.*

We define an **open affine covering of a prevariety**  $X$  to be a family of open subspaces with functions  $U_i \subseteq X$  that are affine varieties such that  $X = \bigcup_i U_i$ .

**Proposition 6.1.** *Let  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  be a prevariety. The topological space  $X$  is Noetherian (in particular quasi-compact) and irreducible.*

*Proof.* The first assertion follows from the fact that  $X$  has a finite covering of Noetherian spaces, which implies that  $X$  is Noetherian. The second assertion follows from the fact that  $X$  is connected and has a finite covering of irreducible spaces, which implies  $X$  is irreducible.  $\square$

#### 6.1.1 Open Subprevarieties

We are now able to endow open subsets of affine varieties, and more general of prevarieties with the structure of a prevariety. Note that in general open subprevarieties of affine varieties are not affine.

**Lemma 6.1.** *Let  $X$  be an affine variety and let  $f \in \Gamma(X)$ . and let  $D(f) \subseteq X$  be the corresponding principal open subset. Let  $\Gamma(X)_f$  be the localization of  $\Gamma(X)$  by  $f$  and let  $(Y, \mathcal{O}_Y)$  be the affine variety corresponding to this integral finitely generated  $k$ -algebra. Then  $(D(f), \mathcal{O}_{X|D(f)})$  and  $(Y, \mathcal{O}_Y)$  are isomorphic spaces with functions. In particular,  $(D(f), \mathcal{O}_{X|D(f)})$  is an affine variety.*

*Proof.* By Proposition (5.8) we have  $\mathcal{O}_X(D(f)) = \Gamma(X)_f$ . As two affine varieties are isomorphic if and only if their coordinate rings are isomorphic, it suffices to show that  $(D(f), \mathcal{O}_{X|D(f)})$  is an affine variety.

Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  and  $\mathfrak{a} = I(X) \subseteq k[T_1, \dots, T_n]$  be the corresponding radical ideal. We consider  $k[T_1, \dots, T_n]$  as a subring of  $k[T_1, \dots, T_n, T_{n+1}]$  and denote by  $\mathfrak{a}' \subseteq k[T_1, \dots, T_n, T_{n+1}]$  the ideal generated by  $\mathfrak{a}$  and the polynomial  $fT_{n+1} - 1$ . Then the affine coordinate ring of  $Y$  is  $\Gamma(Y) = \Gamma(X)_f \cong k[T_1, \dots, T_n, T_{n+1}]/\mathfrak{a}'$ , and we can identify  $Y$  with  $V(\mathfrak{a}') \subseteq \mathbb{A}^{n+1}(k)$ .

The projection  $\mathbb{A}^{n+1}(k) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  to the first  $n$  coordinates induces a bijective map

$$j : Y = \{(x, x_{n+1}) \in X \times \mathbb{A}^1(k) \mid x_{n+1}f(x) = 1\} \rightarrow D(f) = \{x \in X \mid f(x) \neq 0\}.$$

We will show that  $j$  is an isomorphism of spaces with functions. As a restriction of a continuous map,  $j$  is continuous. It is also open, because for  $\frac{g}{f^N} \in \Gamma(Y)$ , with  $g \in \Gamma(X)$ , we have

$$j\left(D\left(\frac{g}{f^N}\right)\right) = j(D(gf)) = D(gf).$$

Thus  $j$  is a homeomorphism.

It remains to show that for all  $g \in \Gamma(X)$  the map  $\mathcal{O}_X(D(fg)) \rightarrow \Gamma(Y)_g$ , given by  $s \mapsto s \circ j$ , is an isomorphism. But we have

$$\mathcal{O}_X(D(fg)) = \Gamma(X)_{fg} = \Gamma(Y)_g$$

and this identification corresponds to the composition with  $j$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 6.2.** *Let  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  be a prevariety and let  $U \subseteq X$  be a non-empty open subset. Then  $(U, \mathcal{O}_{X|U})$  is prevariety and the inclusion  $U \hookrightarrow X$  is a morphism of prevarieties.*

*Proof.* As  $X$  is irreducible,  $U$  is connected. The previous lemma shows that  $U$  can be covered by open affine subsets of  $X$ . As  $X$  is Noetherian,  $U$  is quasi-compact. Thus a finite covering suffices.  $\square$

### 6.1.2 Function Field of a Prevariety

Let  $X$  be a prevariety. If  $U, V \subseteq X$  are non-empty open affine subvarieties, then  $U \cap V$  is open in  $U$  and non-empty. We have

$$\mathcal{O}_X(U) \subseteq \mathcal{O}_X(U \cap V) \subseteq K(U)$$

by the definition of functions on  $U$ , and therefore  $\text{Frac}(\mathcal{O}_X(U \cap V)) = K(U)$ . The same argument for  $V$  shows  $K(U) = K(V)$ . Thus the function field of a non-empty open affine subvariety  $U$  of  $X$  does not depend on  $U$  and we denote it by  $K(X)$ .

**Definition 6.2.** The field  $K(X)$  is called the **function field** of  $X$ .

*Remark 19.* Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism of affine varieties. As the corresponding homomorphism  $\Gamma(Y) \rightarrow \Gamma(X)$  between the affine coordinate rings is not injective in general, it does not induce a homomorphism of function fields  $K(Y) \rightarrow K(X)$ . Thus  $K(X)$  is not functorial in  $X$ . But if  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism of prevarieties whose image contains a non-empty open (and hence dense) subset,  $f$  induces a homomorphism  $K(Y) \rightarrow K(X)$ . Such morphisms will be called **dominant**.

**Proposition 6.3.** *Let  $X$  be a prevariety and  $U \subseteq X$  a non-empty open subset. Then  $\mathcal{O}_X(U)$  is a  $k$ -subalgebra of the function field  $K(X)$ . If  $U' \subseteq U$  is another open subset, the restriction map  $\mathcal{O}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(U')$  is the inclusion of subalgebras of  $K(X)$ . If  $U, V \subseteq X$  are arbitrary open subsets, then  $\mathcal{O}_X(U \cup V) = \mathcal{O}_X(U) \cap \mathcal{O}_X(V)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1(k)$  be an element of  $\mathcal{O}_X(U)$ . Then its vanishing set  $f^{-1}(0) \subseteq U$  is closed because  $f$  is continuous and  $\{0\} \subseteq \mathbb{A}^1(k)$  is closed. Therefore if the restriction of  $f$  to  $U'$  is zero, then  $f$  is zero because  $U'$  is dense in  $U$ . This shows that restriction maps are injective. The axiom of gluing implies therefore  $\mathcal{O}_X(U \cup V) = \mathcal{O}_X(U) \cap \mathcal{O}_X(V)$  for all open subsets  $U, V \subseteq X$ .  $\square$

### 6.1.3 Closed Subprevarieties

Let  $X$  be a prevariety and let  $Z \subseteq X$  be an irreducible closed subset. We want to define on  $Z$  the structure of a prevariety. For this we have to define functions on open subsets of  $Z$ . We define:

$$\mathcal{O}'_Z(U) = \{f \in \text{Map}(U, k) \mid \text{for all } x \in U, \text{ there exists } V \subseteq U \text{ open and } g \in \mathcal{O}_X(V) \text{ such that } f|_{U \cap V} = g|_{U \cap V}\}.$$

The definition shows that  $(Z, \mathcal{O}'_Z)$  is a space with functions and that  $\mathcal{O}'_X = \mathcal{O}_X$ . Once we have shown the following lemma, we will always write  $\mathcal{O}_Z$  (instead of  $\mathcal{O}'_Z$ ).

*Remark 20.*  $\mathcal{O}'_Z$  is the sheafification of the sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_{X|Z}$ .

**Lemma 6.2.** *Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  be an irreducible affine algebraic set and let  $Z \subseteq X$  be an irreducible closed subset. Then the space with functions  $(Z, \mathcal{O}_Z)$  associated to the affine algebraic set  $Z$  and the above defined space with functions  $(Z, \mathcal{O}'_Z)$  coincide.*



*Proof.* In both case  $Z$  is endowed with the topology induced by  $X$ . As the inclusion  $Z \rightarrow X$  is a morphism of affine algebraic sets it induces a morphism  $(Z, \mathcal{O}_Z) \rightarrow (X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ . The definition of  $\mathcal{O}'_Z$  shows that  $\mathcal{O}'_Z(U) \subseteq \mathcal{O}_Z(U)$  for all open subsets  $U \subseteq Z$ .

Conversely, let  $f \in \mathcal{O}_Z(U)$ . For  $x \in U$  there exists  $h \in \Gamma(Z)$  with  $x \in D(h) \subseteq U$ . The restriction  $f|_{D(h)} \in \mathcal{O}_Z(D(h)) = \Gamma(Z)_h$  has the form  $f = g/h^n$  where  $n \geq 0$  and  $g \in \Gamma(Z)$ . We lift  $g$  and  $h$  to elements in  $\tilde{g}, \tilde{h} \in \Gamma(X)$ , set  $V := D(\tilde{h}) \subseteq X$ , and obtain  $x \in V$ ,  $\tilde{g}/\tilde{h}^n \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(\tilde{h}))$  and  $f|_{U \cap V} = \frac{\tilde{g}}{\tilde{h}^n}|_{U \cap V}$ .  $\square$

As a corollary of the lemme we obtain:

**Proposition 6.4.** *Let  $X$  be a prevariety and let  $Z \subseteq X$  be an irreducible closed subset. Let  $\mathcal{O}_Z$  be the system of functions defined above. Then  $(Z, \mathcal{O}_Z)$  is a prevariety.*

## 6.2 Gluing Prevarieties

The most general way to construct prevarieties is to take some affine varieties and patch them together:

**Example 6.1.** Let  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  be prevarieties,  $U_1 \subset X_1$  and  $U_2 \subset X_2$  be non-empty open subsets, and let  $f : (U_1, \mathcal{O}_{X_1}|_{U_1}) \rightarrow (U_2, \mathcal{O}_{X_2}|_{U_2})$  be an isomorphism. Then we can define a prevariety  $X$ , obtained by **gluing**  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  along  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  via the isomorphism  $f$ :

- As a set, the space  $X$  is just the disjoint union  $X_1 \cup X_2$  modulo the equivalence relation  $x \sim f(x)$  for all  $x \in U_1$ .
- As a topological space, we endow  $X$  with the so-called **quotient topology** induced by the above equivalence relation, i.e. we say that a subset  $U \subset X$  is open if  $U \cap X_1 \subset X_1$  is open in  $X_1$  and  $U \cap X_2 \subset X_2$  is open in  $X_2$ .
- As a ringed space, we define the structure sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X$  by

$$\mathcal{O}_X(U) = \{(s_1, s_2) \mid s_1 \in \mathcal{O}_{X_1}(U \cap X_1), s_2 \in \mathcal{O}_{X_2}(U \cap X_2), \text{ and } s_1 = s_2 \text{ on the overlap (i.e. } f^*(s_2|_{U \cap U_2}) = s_1|_{U \cap U_1})\}$$

**Example 6.2.** Let  $X_1 = X_2 = \mathbb{A}^1(k)$  and let  $U_1 = U_2 = \mathbb{A}^1 \setminus \{0\}$ .

- Let  $f : U_1 \rightarrow U_2$  be the isomorphism  $t \mapsto \frac{1}{t} := t'$ . The space  $X$  can be thought of as  $\mathbb{A}^1 \cup \{\infty\}$ . Of course the affine line  $X_1 = \mathbb{A}^1 \subset X$  sits in  $X$ . The complement  $X \setminus X_1$  is a single point that corresponds to the zero point in  $X_2 \cong \mathbb{A}^1$  and hence to “ $\infty = \frac{1}{0}$ ” in the coordinate of  $X_1$ . In the case  $k = \mathbb{C}$ , the space  $X$  is just the Riemann sphere  $\mathbb{C}_\infty$ . Let us show that  $\mathcal{O}_X(X) \cong k$ . Let  $(s_1, s_2) \in \mathcal{O}_X(X)$ . Then since  $s_1 \in \mathcal{O}_{X_1}(X \cap X_1) = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{A}^1(k)}(\mathbb{A}^1(k))$ , we have  $s_1 = a_n T^n + a_{n-1} T^{n-1} + \dots + a_0$ . Similarly, since  $s_2 \in \mathcal{O}_{X_2}(X \cap X_2) = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{A}^1(k)}(\mathbb{A}^1(k))$ , we have  $s_2 = b_m T'^m + b_{m-1} T'^{m-1} + \dots + b_0$ . Now

$$f^*(s_2|_{U_2}) = b_m T^{-m} + b_{m-1} T^{1-m} + \dots + b_0|_{U_1} = a_n T^n + a_{n-1} T^{n-1} + \dots + a_0|_{U_2}.$$

The only way this happens is if  $a_0 = b_0$  and  $a_i = b_j = 0$  for all  $i, j > 0$ . Thus,  $(s_1, s_2) = (a_0, a_0)$ .

- Let  $f : U_1 \rightarrow U_2$  be the identity map. Then the space  $X$  obtained by gluing along  $f$  is “the affine line with the zero point doubled”. Obviously this is a somewhat weird place. Speaking in classical terms, if we have a sequence of points tending to the zero, this sequence would have two possible limits, namely the two zero points. Usually we want to exclude such spaces from the objects we consider. In the theory of manifolds, this is simply done by requiring that a manifold satisfies the so-called **Hausdorff property**. This is obviously not satisfied for our space  $X$ . Let us show that  $\mathcal{O}_X(X) \cong k[T]$ . Let  $(s_1, s_2) \in \mathcal{O}_X(X)$ . Then since  $s_1 \in \mathcal{O}_{X_1}(X \cap X_1) = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{A}^1(k)}(\mathbb{A}^1(k))$ , we have  $s_1 = a_n T^n + a_{n-1} T^{n-1} + \dots + a_0$ . Similarly, since  $s_2 \in \mathcal{O}_{X_2}(X \cap X_2) = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{A}^1(k)}(\mathbb{A}^1(k))$ , we have  $s_2 = b_m T'^m + b_{m-1} T'^{m-1} + \dots + b_0$ . Now

$$f^*(s_2|_{U_2}) = b_m T^m + b_{m-1} T^{m-1} + \dots + b_0|_{U_1} = a_n T^n + a_{n-1} T^{n-1} + \dots + a_0|_{U_2}.$$

The only way this happens is if  $m = n$  and  $a_i = b_i$  for all  $i = 0, \dots, n$ .

**Example 6.3.** Let  $X$  be the complex affine curve

$$X = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{C}^2 \mid y^2 = (x-1)(x-2)(x-3)(x-4)\}.$$

We can “compactify”  $X$  by adding two points at infinity, corresponding to the limit as  $x \rightarrow \infty$  and the two possible values for  $y$ . To construct this space rigorously, we construct a prevariety as follows:

If we make the coordinate change  $\tilde{x} = \frac{1}{x}$ , the equation of the curve becomes

$$y^2 \tilde{x}^4 = (1 - \tilde{x})(1 - 2\tilde{x})(1 - 3\tilde{x})(1 - 4\tilde{x}).$$

If we make an additional coordinate change  $\tilde{y} = \frac{y}{x^2}$ , then this becomes

$$\tilde{y}^2 = (1 - \tilde{x})(1 - 2\tilde{x})(1 - 3\tilde{x})(1 - 4\tilde{x}).$$

In these coordinates, we can add our two points at infinity, as they now correspond to  $\tilde{x} = 0$  (and therefore  $\tilde{y} = \pm 1$ ).

Summarizing, our “compactified curve” is just the prevariety obtained by gluing the two affine varieties

$$X = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{C}^2 \mid y^2 = (x-1)(x-2)(x-3)(x-4)\} \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{X} = \{(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) \in \mathbb{C}^2 \mid \tilde{y}^2 = (1-\tilde{x})(1-2\tilde{x})(1-3\tilde{x})(1-4\tilde{x})\}$$

along the isomorphism

$$\begin{aligned} f : U &\rightarrow \tilde{U}, & (x, y) &\mapsto (\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) = \left(\frac{1}{x}, \frac{y}{x^4}\right) \\ f^{-1} : \tilde{U} &\rightarrow U, & (\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) &\mapsto (x, y) = \left(\frac{1}{\tilde{x}}, \frac{\tilde{y}}{\tilde{x}^4}\right) \end{aligned}$$

where  $U = \{x \neq 0\} \subset X$  and  $\tilde{U} = \{\tilde{x} \neq 0\} \subset \tilde{X}$ .

## 7 Projective Varieties

By far the most important example of prevarieties are projective space  $\mathbb{P}^n(K)$  and subvarieties of  $\mathbb{P}^n(K)$ , called (quasi-)projective varieties.

### 7.1 Homogeneous Polynomials

To describe the functions on projective space we start with some remarks on homogeneous polynomials. Throughout this subsection, let  $R$  be a ring. To clean our notation in what follows, we often write  $R[\mathbf{X}]$  to denote  $R[X_0, \dots, X_n]$ . A monomial in  $R[\mathbf{X}]$  is denoted by  $\mathbf{X}^\alpha = X_0^{\alpha_0} \cdots X_n^{\alpha_n}$  where  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^n$ . We also denote  $|\alpha| = \sum_{i=0}^n \alpha_i$ . The vector  $(1, \dots, 1)$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^n$  is denoted  $\mathbf{1}$ , thus  $X_0 \cdots X_n = \mathbf{X}^{\mathbf{1}}$ . A point in  $R^{n+1}$  is denoted by  $\mathbf{x} = (x_0, \dots, x_n)$ . We will frequently use this notation whenever context is clear.

**Definition 7.1.** A polynomial  $f \in R[X_0, \dots, X_n]$  is called **homogeneous** of degree  $d \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$  if  $f$  is the sum of monomials of degree  $d$ .

**Lemma 7.1.** Assume  $R$  is an integral domain with infinitely many elements and let  $f \in R[\mathbf{X}]$  be a nonzero polynomial. Then  $f$  is homogeneous of degree  $d$  if and only if

$$f(\lambda \mathbf{x}) = \lambda^d f(\mathbf{x}) \tag{22}$$

for all  $\mathbf{x} \in R^{n+1}$  and  $\lambda \in R \setminus \{0\}$ .

*Proof.* One direction is obvious, so we will only prove the other direction. We will prove the other direction by induction on the number of terms of a polynomial. For the base case, let  $f$  be a monomial in  $R[\mathbf{X}]$ , say  $f = c\mathbf{X}^\alpha$  where  $c \neq 0$  and assume that  $f$  satisfies (22) for all  $\mathbf{x} \in R^{n+1}$  and  $\lambda \in R \setminus \{0\}$ . Clearly  $f$  is homogeneous, but we still need to show that it has degree  $d$ .

Let  $K$  be the fraction field of  $R$ . Since  $K$  has infinitely many elements and since  $f \neq 0$ , there exists a point  $\mathbf{a} \in D(\mathbf{X}^{\mathbf{1}}) \cap D(f)$ . By clearing the denominators of  $\mathbf{a}$  if necessary, we may assume that  $\mathbf{a} \in R$ . Then for all  $\lambda \in R \setminus \{0\}$ , we have

$$\lambda^d \mathbf{a}^\alpha = \lambda^d f(\mathbf{a}) = f(\lambda \mathbf{a}) = \lambda^{|\alpha|} \mathbf{a}^\alpha.$$

Since  $R$  is a domain and  $\mathbf{a}^\alpha \neq 0$ , it follows that  $\lambda^d = \lambda^{|\alpha|}$  for all  $\lambda \in R \setminus \{0\}$ . Assume without loss of generality that  $d \geq |\alpha|$  and set  $r = d - |\alpha|$ . If  $r > 0$ , then  $T^r - 1$  has infinitely many solutions in  $R$  (in fact every nonzero element of  $R$  is a solution). This is a contradiction since  $T^r - 1$  can have at most  $r$  solutions in  $R$ . Thus  $r = 0$ , which implies  $|\alpha| = d$ ; hence  $f$  has degree  $d$ .

For the induction step, assume that we have proven the statement for all polynomials with  $k$  terms, where  $k \geq 1$ . Let  $f$  be a polynomial with  $k+1$  terms such that  $f$  satisfies (22) for all  $\mathbf{x} \in R^{n+1}$  and  $\lambda \in R \setminus \{0\}$ . Write  $f$  as

$$f = c\mathbf{X}^\alpha + g,$$

where  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^{n+1}$ , where  $c \in R \setminus \{0\}$ , and where  $g$  is a nonzero polynomial in  $R[\mathbf{X}]$  such that  $\mathbf{X}^\alpha \nmid g$ . Let  $K$  be the fraction field of  $R$  and let  $\mathbf{a} \in K^{n+1}$  be a point such that  $\mathbf{a}^\alpha \neq 0$  and  $g(\mathbf{a}) = 0$ . Note that such a point exists since  $V(g) \cap V(\mathbf{X}^\alpha) \neq \emptyset$ . Indeed, otherwise we'd have  $V(g) \subseteq V(\mathbf{X}^\alpha)$  which would imply  $\mathbf{X}^\alpha \mid g$ , a contradiction. By clearing the denominators if necessary, we may assume that  $\mathbf{a} \in R^{n+1}$ . In particular, for all  $\lambda \in R \setminus \{0\}$ , we have

$$\lambda^d \mathbf{a}^\alpha = \lambda^d f(\mathbf{a}) = f(\lambda \mathbf{a}) = \lambda^\alpha \mathbf{a}^\alpha.$$

Arguing as before, this implies  $|\alpha| = d$ . Now observe that for all  $\mathbf{x} \in R^{n+1}$  and  $\lambda \in R \setminus \{0\}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} g(\lambda \mathbf{x}) &= f(\lambda \mathbf{x}) - c(\lambda \mathbf{X})^\alpha \\ &= \lambda^d f(\mathbf{x}) - c\lambda^{|\alpha|} \mathbf{x}^\alpha \\ &= \lambda^d f(\mathbf{x}) - c\lambda^d \mathbf{x}^\alpha \\ &= \lambda^d (f(\mathbf{x}) - c\mathbf{x}^\alpha) \\ &= \lambda^d g(\mathbf{x}). \end{aligned}$$

Thus by induction, we see that  $g$  must be homogeneous of degree  $d$ ; hence  $f$  is homogeneous of degree  $d$ .  $\square$

### 7.1.1 Dehomogenization and Homogenization

To simplify notation in what follows, we write  $\mathbf{X} = X_0, \dots, X_n$  and  $\mathbf{X}_i = X_{i,0}, \dots, \widehat{X}_{i,i}, \dots, X_{i,n}$  for each  $0 \leq i \leq n$ . Intuitively, we think of the variable  $X_{j,i}$  as being the fraction  $X_j/X_i$ . For each  $0 \leq i \leq n$  and  $d \geq 0$ , we define  $D_i^d: R[\mathbf{X}]_d \rightarrow R[\mathbf{X}_i]_{\leq d}$ , called **dehomogenization**, by

$$D_i^d(f)(\mathbf{X}_i) = D_i^d(f(\mathbf{X})) = f(X_{i,0}, \dots, X_{i,i-1}, 1, X_{i,i+1}, \dots, X_{i,n})$$

for all  $f \in R[\mathbf{X}]_d$ . Essentially  $D_i^d$  takes a polynomial  $f(\mathbf{X})$ , divides it by  $X_i^d$ , and then makes the substitution  $X_{j,i} = X_j/X_i$  for each  $j \neq i$ . For instance, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X_0^2 X_2 + X_1^3 + X_1 X_2^2 &\mapsto \frac{X_0^2 X_2 + X_1^3 + X_1 X_2^2}{X_1^3} \\ &\mapsto \left(\frac{X_0}{X_1}\right)^2 \left(\frac{X_2}{X_1}\right) + 1 + \left(\frac{X_2}{X_1}\right)^2 \\ &\mapsto X_{0,1}^2 X_{2,1} + 1 + X_{2,1}^2 \\ &= D_1^3(X_0^2 X_2 + X_1^3 + X_1 X_2^2) \end{aligned}$$

We also define  $H_i^d: R[\mathbf{X}_i]_{\leq d} \rightarrow R[\mathbf{X}]_d$ , called **homogenization**, by

$$H_i^d(g)(\mathbf{X}) = H_i^d(g(\mathbf{X}_i)) = \sum_{k=0}^d X_i^{d-k} g_k(X_0, \dots, \widehat{X}_i, \dots, X_n)$$

for all  $g \in R[\mathbf{X}_i]_{\leq d}$  where  $g_k$  is the homogeneous component of  $g$  of degree  $k$ . Essentially  $H_i^d$  takes a polynomial  $g(\mathbf{X}_i)$ , multiplies it homogeneous component in degree  $k$  by  $X_i^{d-k}$ , and then makes the substitution  $X_{j,i} = X_j$  for each  $j \neq i$ . For instance, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X_{0,1}^2 X_{2,1} + X_{2,1}^2 + 1 &\mapsto X_{0,1}^2 X_{2,1} + X_1 X_{2,1}^2 + X_1^3 \\ &\mapsto X_0^2 X_2 + X_1 X_2^2 + X_1^3 \\ &= H_1^3(X_{0,1}^2 X_{2,1} + X_{2,1}^2 + 1) \end{aligned}$$

**Lemma 7.2.**  $D_i^d$  is an  $R$ -linear isomorphism with  $H_i^d$  being its inverse.

*Proof.* Clearly  $D_i^d$  is  $R$ -linear (it is just an evaluation map). Furthermore we have, if  $f \in R[\mathbf{X}]$ , then we have

$$\begin{aligned} H_i^d(D_i^d(f))(\mathbf{X}) &= H_i^d(D_i^d(f)(\mathbf{X}_i)) \\ &= H_i^d(f(X_{i,0}, \dots, X_{i,i-1}, 1, X_{i,i+1}, \dots, X_{i,n})) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^d X_i^{d-k} f_k(X_0, \dots, \widehat{X}_i, \dots, X_n) \\ &= f(\mathbf{X}). \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

For  $f \in R[\mathbf{X}]_d$  and  $g \in R[\mathbf{X}]_e$ , the product  $fg$  is homogeneous of degree  $d+e$  and we have

$$D_i^d(f)D_i^e(g) = D_i^{d+e}(fg). \quad (23)$$

If  $R = K$  is a field, we will extend homogenization and dehomogenization to fields of fractions as follows: let  $\mathcal{F}$  be the subset of  $K(\mathbf{X})$  that consists of those elements  $f/g$ , where  $f, g \in K[\mathbf{X}]$  are homogeneous polynomials of the same degree. It is easy to check that  $\mathcal{F}$  is a subfield of  $K(\mathbf{X})$ . By (23), we have a well defined isomorphism of  $K$ -extensions

$$D_i: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow K(\mathbf{X}_i), \quad (24)$$

given by  $f/g \mapsto D_i(f)/D_i(g)$ . For instance, we have

$$\begin{aligned} D_1\left(\frac{X_1^3}{X_2^3 + X_1X_0^2}\right) &= \frac{D_1(X_1^3)}{D_1(X_2^3 + X_1X_0^2)} \\ &= \frac{1}{X_{2,1}^3 + X_{0,1}^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Often, we will identify  $K(\mathbf{X}_i)$  with the subring  $K(\mathbf{X}/X_i) = K(X_0/X_i, \dots, X_n/X_i)$  of the field  $K(\mathbf{X})$ .

## 7.2 Definition of the Projective Space $\mathbb{P}^n(K)$

The projective space  $\mathbb{P}^n(K)$  is an extremely important prevariety within algebraic geometry. Many prevarieties of interest are subprevarieties of the projective space. Moreover, the projective space is the correct environment for projective geometry which remedies the “defect” of affine geometry of missing points at infinity. As a set, we define

$$\mathbb{P}^n(K) := \{\text{lines through the origin in } K^{n+1}\} = (K^{n+1} \setminus \{0\})/K^\times.$$

Here a line through the origin is per definition a 1-dimensional  $k$ -subspace and we denote by  $(K^{n+1} \setminus \{0\})/K^\times$  the set of equivalence classes in  $K^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$  with respect to the equivalence relation:

$$(x_0, \dots, x_n) \sim (x'_0, \dots, x'_n) \text{ if and only if there exists } \lambda \in K^\times \text{ such that } x_i = \lambda x'_i \text{ for all } 0 \leq i \leq n.$$

The equivalence class of a point  $\mathbf{x} = (x_0, \dots, x_n)$  is denoted by  $[\mathbf{x}] = [x_0 : \dots : x_n]$ . We call the  $x_i$  the **homogeneous coordinates** of  $\mathbb{P}^n(K)$ . For each  $0 \leq i \leq n$  we set

$$U_i := \{[\mathbf{x}] \in \mathbb{P}^n(K) \mid x_i \neq 0\}$$

This subset is well-defined and the union of the  $U_i$  is all of  $\mathbb{P}^n(K)$ . Note that for each  $i$  we have a bijection  $\varphi_i: U_i \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^n(K)$  which is defined by

$$\varphi_i([\mathbf{x}]) = \varphi_i([x_0 : \dots : x_n]) = \left(\frac{x_0}{x_i}, \dots, \frac{\widehat{x_i}}{x_i}, \dots, \frac{x_n}{x_i}\right) = \widehat{\mathbf{x}}_i/x_i$$

for all  $[\mathbf{x}] \in U_i$ . Using this bijection, we endow  $U_i$  with the structure of a space with functions, isomorphic to  $(\mathbb{A}^n(K), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{A}^n(K)})$ , which we denote by  $(U_i, \mathcal{O}_{U_i})$ . We want to define on  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  the structure of a space with functions  $(\mathbb{P}^n(k), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)})$  such that  $U_i$  becomes an open subset of  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  and such that  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}|_{U_i} = \mathcal{O}_{U_i}$  for all  $i = 0, \dots, n$ . As  $\bigcup_i U_i = \mathbb{P}^n(k)$ , there's at most one way to do this:

We define the topology on  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  by calling a subset  $U \subseteq \mathbb{P}^n(k)$  open if  $U \cap U_i$  is open in  $U_i$  for all  $i$ . This defines a topology on  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  as for all  $i \neq j$  the set  $U_i \cap U_j = D(T_j) \subseteq U_i$  is open (we use here on  $U_i \cong \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  the coordinates  $T_0, \dots, \widehat{T_i}, \dots, T_n$ ). With this definition,  $\{U_i\}_{i \in \{0, \dots, n\}}$  becomes an open covering of  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$ .

We still have to define functions on open subsets  $U \subseteq \mathbb{P}^n(k)$ . For this, we set

$$\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}(U) = \{f \in \text{Map}(U, k) \mid f|_{U \cap U_i} \in \mathcal{O}_{U_i}(U \cap U_i) \text{ for all } i = 0, \dots, n\}.$$

It is clear that this defines the structure of a space with functions on  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$ , although we still have to see that  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}|_{U_i} = \mathcal{O}_{U_i}$  for all  $i$ . This follows from the following description of the  $k$ -algebras  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}(U)$  using the inverse isomorphism of the function field  $k(T_0, \dots, \widehat{T_i}, \dots, T_n)$  of  $U_i$  with the subfield  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $k(X_0, \dots, X_n)$ .

**Proposition 7.1.** *Let  $U \subseteq \mathbb{P}^n(K)$  be open. Then*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}(U) = \{f : U \rightarrow k \mid \forall x \in U, \exists x \in V \subseteq U \text{ open and } g, h \in k[X_0, \dots, X_n] \\ \text{homogeneous of same degree such that } h(v) \neq 0 \text{ and } f(v) = g(v)/h(v) \text{ for all } v \in V\}. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* Let  $f \in \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}(U)$ . As  $f|_{U \cap U_i} \in \mathcal{O}_{U_i}(U \cap U_i)$ , the function  $f$  has locally the form  $\widetilde{g}/\widetilde{h}$  where  $\widetilde{g}, \widetilde{h} \in k[T_0, \dots, \widehat{T_i}, \dots, T_n]$ . Applying the inverse of (24) yields the desired form of  $f$ .

Conversely, let  $f$  be an element of the right hand side. We fix  $i \in \{0, \dots, n\}$ . Thus locally on  $U \cap U_i$  the function  $f$  has the form  $g/h$  where  $g, h \in k[X_0, \dots, X_n]_d$  for some  $d$ . Once more applying the isomorphism (24) we obtain that  $f$  has locally the form  $\widetilde{g}/\widetilde{h}$  where  $\widetilde{g}, \widetilde{h} \in k[T_0, \dots, \widehat{T_i}, \dots, T_n]$ . This shows  $f|_{U \cap U_i} \in \mathcal{O}_{U_i}(U \cap U_i)$ .  $\square$

**Example 7.1.** Consider  $\mathbb{P}^2(k)$  and

$$f|_{U \cap U_1} = \frac{T_2^2 + 1}{T_0 + 1}.$$

Then the inverse of (24) yields

$$\frac{X_2^2 + X_1^2}{X_0^2 + X_1^2}$$

**Corollary 2.** Let  $i \in \{0, \dots, n\}$ . The bijection  $U_i \cong \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  induces an isomorphism

$$(U_i, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}|_{U_i}) \cong \mathbb{A}^n(k).$$

of spaces with functions. The space with functions  $(\mathbb{P}^n(k), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)})$  is a prevariety.

*Proof.* The first assertion follows from the proof of Proposition (7.1). This shows that  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  is a space with functions that has a finite open covering by affine varieties. Moreover,  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  is irreducible since it is connected and is covered by finitely many irreducible open subsets.  $\square$

The function field  $K(\mathbb{P}^n(k))$  of  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  is by its very definition the function field  $K(U_i) = k\left(\frac{X_0}{X_i}, \dots, \frac{X_n}{X_i}\right)$  of  $U_i$ . Using the isomorphism  $\Phi_i$ , we usually describe  $K(\mathbb{P}^n(k))$  as the field

$$K(\mathbb{P}^n(k)) = \{f/g \mid f, g \in k[X_0, \dots, X_n] \text{ homogeneous of the same degree}\}.$$

For  $0 \leq i, j \leq n$  the identification of  $K(U_i) \cong K(U_j)$  is then given by  $\Phi_j \circ \Phi_i^{-1}$ . This can be described explicitly

$$K(U_i) = k\left(\frac{X_0}{X_i}, \dots, \frac{X_n}{X_i}\right) \mapsto k\left(\frac{X_0}{X_j}, \dots, \frac{X_n}{X_j}\right) = K(U_j), \quad \frac{X_\ell}{X_i} \mapsto \frac{X_\ell}{X_i} \frac{X_i}{X_j} = \frac{X_\ell}{X_j}.$$

We use these explicit descriptions to prove the following result.

**Proposition 7.2.** The only global functions on  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  are the constant functions, i.e.  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}(\mathbb{P}^n(k)) = k$ . In particular,  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  is not an affine variety for  $n \geq 1$ .

*Proof.* By Proposition (6.3) we have

$$\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}(\mathbb{P}^n(k)) = \bigcap_{0 \leq i \leq n} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}(U_i) = \bigcap_{0 \leq i \leq n} k\left[\frac{X_0}{X_i}, \dots, \frac{X_n}{X_i}\right] = k,$$

where the intersection is taken in  $K(\mathbb{P}^n(k))$ . The last assertion follows because if  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  were affine, its set of points would be in bijection to the set of maximal ideals in the ring  $k = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^n(k)}(\mathbb{P}^n(k))$ . This implies that  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  consists of only one point, so  $n = 0$ .  $\square$

### 7.2.1 Gluing $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$ With $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$ to Make $\mathbb{P}^1(k)$

We now want to describe how we can glue  $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$  with  $\mathbb{A}^1(k)$  to make  $\mathbb{P}^1(k)$  in explicit detail. First we start with the rings  $k[S]$  and  $k[T]$

Let  $X_0$  and  $X_1$  be the homogeneous coordinates of  $\mathbb{P}^1(k)$  and denote  $T := \frac{X_1}{X_0}$  and  $S := \frac{X_0}{X_1}$ .

## 7.3 Projective Varieties

**Definition 7.2.** A prevariety is called a **projective variety** if it is isomorphic to a closed subprevariety of a projective space  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$ .

As in the affine case, we speak of projective varieties rather than prevarieties. Similarly, we will talk about subvarieties of projective space, instead of subprevarieties. For  $[\mathbf{x}] \in \mathbb{P}^n(k)$  and  $f \in k[\mathbf{X}]$  the value  $f([\mathbf{x}])$  obviously depends on the choice of the representative of  $[\mathbf{x}]$  and we cannot consider  $f$  as a function on  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$ . But if  $f$  is homogeneous, at least the question whether the value is zero or nonzero is independent of the choice of a representative.

Let  $\mathbf{f} = f_1, \dots, f_m$  be a finite collection of homogeneous polynomials in  $k[\mathbf{X}]$ . We define

$$V_+(\mathbf{f}) = \{[\mathbf{x}] \in \mathbb{P}^n(k) \mid f_i(\mathbf{x}) = 0 \text{ for all } i = 1, \dots, m\}.$$

$$V_+(f_1, \dots, f_m) = \{(x_0 : \dots : x_n) \in \mathbb{P}^n(k) \mid f_i(x_0 : \dots : x_n) = 0 \text{ for all } i = 1, \dots, m\}.$$

Subsets of the form  $V_+(f_1, \dots, f_m)$  are closed. More precisely we have  $i = 0, \dots, n$ :

$$V_+(f_1, \dots, f_m) \cap U_i = V(\Phi_i(f_1), \dots, \Phi_i(f_m)),$$

where  $\Phi_i$  denotes as usual dehomogenization with respect to  $X_i$ . We will see that all closed subsets of the projective space are of this form. To do this we consider the map

$$f : \mathbb{A}^{n+1}(k) \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^n(k), \quad (x_0, \dots, x_n) \mapsto (x_0 : \dots : x_n).$$

As for all  $i$  its restriction  $f|_{f^{-1}(U_i)} : f^{-1}(U_i) \rightarrow U_i$  is a morphism of prevarieties, this holds for  $f$ . If  $Z \subseteq \mathbb{P}^n(k)$  is a closed subset,  $f^{-1}(Z)$  is a closed subset of  $\mathbb{A}^{n+1}(k) \setminus \{0\}$  and we denote by  $C(Z)$  its closure in  $\mathbb{A}^{n+1}(k)$ . Affine

algebraic sets  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^{n+1}(k)$  are called **affine cones** if for all  $x \in X$  we have  $\lambda x \in X$  for all  $\lambda \in k^\times$ . Clearly  $C(Z)$  is an affine cone in  $\mathbb{A}^{n+1}(k)$ . It is called the **affine cone of  $Z$** .

**Proposition 7.3.** *Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^{n+1}(k)$  be an affine algebraic set such that  $X \neq \{0\}$ . Then the following assertions are equivalent.*

1.  $X$  is an affine cone.
2.  $I(X)$  is generated by homogeneous polynomials.
3. There exists a closed subset  $Z \subset \mathbb{P}^n(k)$  such that  $X = C(Z)$ .

If in this case  $I(X)$  is generated by homogeneous polynomials  $f_1, \dots, f_m \in k[X_0, \dots, X_n]$ , then  $Z = V_+(f_1, \dots, f_m)$ .

### 7.3.1 Segre Embedding

Consider  $\mathbb{P}^n(k)$  with homogeneous coordinates  $X_0, \dots, X_n$  and  $\mathbb{P}^m(k)$  with homogeneous coordinates  $Y_0, \dots, Y_m$ . We want to find an easy description of the product  $\mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k)$ .

Let  $\mathbb{P}^N(k) = \mathbb{P}^{(n+1)(m+1)-1}$  be projective space with homogeneous coordinates  $Z_{i,j}$  where  $0 \leq i \leq n$  and  $0 \leq j \leq m$ . There is an obviously well-defined set-theoretic map  $f : \mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^N(k)$  given by  $z_{i,j} = x_i y_j$ .

**Lemma 7.3.** *Let  $f : \mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^N(k)$  be the set-theoretic map as above. Then:*

1. The image  $X = f(\mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k))$  is a projective variety in  $\mathbb{P}^N(k)$ , with ideal generated by the homogeneous polynomials  $Z_{i,j}Z_{i',j'} - Z_{i,j'}Z_{i',j}$  for all  $0 \leq i, i' \leq n$  and  $0 \leq j, j' \leq m$ .
2. The map  $f : \mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k) \rightarrow X$  is an isomorphism. In particular,  $\mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k)$  is a projective variety.
3. The closed subsets of  $\mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k)$  are exactly those subsets that can be written as the zero locus of polynomials in  $k[X_0, \dots, X_n, Y_0, \dots, Y_m]$  that are bihomogeneous in the  $X_i$  and  $Y_i$ .

*Proof.*

1. It is obvious that the points of  $f(\mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k))$  satisfy the given equations. Conversely, let  $z$  be a point in  $\mathbb{P}^N(k)$  with coordinates  $z_{i,j}$  that satisfy the given equations. At least one of these coordinates must be non-zero; we can assume without loss of generality that it is  $z_{0,0}$ . Let us pass to affine coordinates by setting  $z_{0,0} = 1$ . Then we have  $z_{i,j} = z_{i,0}z_{0,j}$ ; so by setting  $x_i = z_{i,0}$  and  $y_j = z_{0,j}$  we obtain a point  $(x, y)$  in  $\mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k)$  that is mapped to  $z$  by  $f$ .
2. Continuing the above notation, let  $z \in f(\mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k))$  be a point with  $z_{0,0} = 1$ . If  $f(x, y) = z$ , it follows that  $x_0 \neq 0$  and  $y_0 \neq 0$ , so we can assume  $x_0 = 1$  and  $y_0 = 1$  as the  $x_i$  and  $y_j$  are only determined up to a common scalar. But then it follows that  $x_i = z_{i,0}$  and  $y_j = z_{0,j}$ , i.e.  $f$  is bijective. The same calculation shows that  $f$  and  $f^{-1}$  are given (locally in affine coordinates) by polynomial maps; so  $f$  is an isomorphism.
3. It follows by the isomorphism of (2) that any closed subset of  $\mathbb{P}^n(k) \times \mathbb{P}^m(k)$  is the zero locus of homogeneous polynomials in the  $Z_{i,j}$ , i.e. of bihomogeneous polynomials in the  $X_i$  and  $Y_j$  (of the same degree). Conversely, a zero locus of bihomogeneous polynomials can always be rewritten as a zero locus of bihomogeneous polynomials of the same degree in the  $X_i$  and  $Y_j$ . But such a polynomial is obviously a polynomial in the  $Z_{i,j}$ , so it determines an algebraic set in  $X \cong \mathbb{P}^n \times \mathbb{P}^m$ .

□

**Example 7.2.** Consider the case where  $n = 1$  and  $m = 2$ . Then Segre embedding  $f : \mathbb{P}^1(k) \times \mathbb{P}^2(k) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^5(k)$  is given by

$$([x_0 : x_1], [y_0 : y_1 : y_2]) \mapsto [x_0 y_0 : x_0 y_1 : x_0 y_2 : x_1 y_0 : x_1 y_1 : x_1 y_2] := [z_{00} : z_{01} : z_{02} : z_{10} : z_{11} : z_{12}].$$

By Lemma (7.3), the vanishing ideal of  $f(\mathbb{P}^1(k) \times \mathbb{P}^2(k))$  is given by

$$\langle Z_{00}Z_{11} - Z_{01}Z_{10}, Z_{00}Z_{12} - Z_{02}Z_{10}, Z_{01}Z_{12} - Z_{02}Z_{11} \rangle.$$

We can view this as the ideal generated by the  $2 \times 2$  minors of the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} Z_{00} & Z_{01} & Z_{02} \\ Z_{10} & Z_{11} & Z_{12} \end{pmatrix}.$$

This is an example of a **determinantal variety**.



## 7.4 A Quartic Curve

In this subsection, we go over an example of a quartic curve which will demonstrate many of the concepts introduced above. Let  $A = \mathbb{Z}[x, y]/\langle f(x, y) \rangle$  where

$$f = (y - x^2 + 5x - 5)(y + x^2 - 5x + 5) - 1 \quad (25)$$

Note that from the expression of  $f$  in (25) we see that  $u = y - x^2 + 5x - 5$  and  $v = y + x^2 - 5x + 5$  are units in  $A$ . Here we are describing  $A$  as a quotient of a polynomial ring, but we can also describe it as a finite module extension over a polynomial ring. Namely, we can write it as  $A = \mathbb{Z}[y][\sqrt{g(x)}]$  where

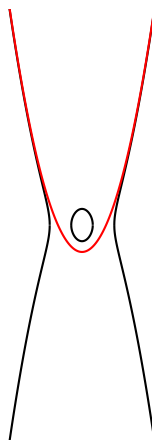
$$f = y^2 - (x - 1)(x - 2)(x - 3)(x - 4) = y^2 - g(x). \quad (26)$$

The expression of  $f$  in (26) is nice because we can read off information like the discriminant of  $A$  over  $\mathbb{Z}[y]$ . Basically from (26) we can read off useful information of  $A$  viewed as a finite module extension, whereas from (25) we can read off useful information of  $A$  viewed as a quotient. Both expressions give rise to the same ring  $A$  at the end of the day.

Next we set  $X = \text{Spec } A$ . To get an idea of what  $X$  looks like, we first look at its  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued points

$$\begin{aligned} X(\mathbb{R}) &:= \text{Hom}(\text{Spec } \mathbb{R}, X) \\ &\simeq \text{Hom}(A, \mathbb{R}) \\ &\simeq \{\mathbf{r} = (r_1, r_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid f(\mathbf{r}) = 0\}. \end{aligned}$$

We can visualize the  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued points of  $X$  in the picture below:



The thick black curve is  $X(\mathbb{R}) = V_{\mathbb{R}}(f)$  whereas the thick red curve is  $V_{\mathbb{R}}(u)$ . Notice that  $V_{\mathbb{R}}(u)$  and  $X(\mathbb{R})$  do not intersect: this is because  $u$  is a unit in  $A$  (and hence a unit in  $\mathbb{R} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} A$ ). The point is that  $u(\mathfrak{p}) := u \bmod \mathfrak{p} \neq 0$  for all  $\mathfrak{p} \in X$ . Note that the closed points of  $X(\mathbb{R})$  have the form  $\mathfrak{p}_{a,b} = \langle x - a, y - b \rangle$  where  $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  such that  $f(a, b) = 0$ . There's also the generic point  $\eta \in X(\mathbb{R})$  corresponding to the 0 ideal.

Now let  $p(x) = x^2 - 5x + 5$ , so  $u = y - p$  and  $v = y + p$ . The existence of  $u$  and  $v$  tells us that  $A$  is not antilocal (if you look at the curves  $V_{\mathbb{R}}(u)$  and  $V_{\mathbb{R}}(f)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , you'll see that they just barely miss each other), however we can still ask: how far away is  $A$  from being antilocal? If we add  $u$  and  $v$  together, we obtain  $u + v = 2y$ , which is not a unit in  $A$  since the line  $V_{\mathbb{R}}(y)$  intersects the curve  $V_{\mathbb{R}}(f)$  at four points (you could also see this by plugging in  $y = 0$  in (25) above). More generally, we have

$$\begin{aligned} y^2 - p^2 - 1 \\ mu + nv = (m + n)y + (n - m)(x^2 - 5x + 5). \\ K[u, v, y]/\langle uv - 1 \rangle \\ K[u, v, y]/\langle uv - 1, mu + nv \rangle \end{aligned}$$

In particular, we have  $n(v - u) = 2n(x^2 - 5x + 5) = 2np$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{Z}u &= \mathbb{Z}(y - p) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbb{Z}v \\ \mathbb{Z}(u + v) &= 2\mathbb{Z}y \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbb{Z}(v - u) = 2\mathbb{Z}p. \end{aligned}$$

If particular, all combinations of the form

$$m(u + v) + n(v - u) = 2my + 2np$$

where  $m, n \neq 0$  gives us a new unit. Indeed, in this case if both  $u$  and  $v$  vanish, then both  $y$  and  $p$  vanishes too, and the function  $f$  takes value  $-1$  here (as can be seen in the expression (25)). For instance, the function

$$2(u + v) + (v - u) = 4y + 2p = 4y + 2x^2 - 10x + 10$$

$$f = (y - p)(y + p) - 1$$

$$f = uv - 1$$

$$p = x^2 - 5x + 5$$

$$u + v = 2y$$

$$v - u = 2p$$

$$y = \frac{u + v}{2}$$

$$p = \frac{v - u}{2}$$

$$u = y - p$$

$$v = y + p$$

$$y^2 = p^2 + 1$$

$$2u + v = 3y - p = 3y - x^2 + 5x - 5$$

$$5u + v = 6y - 4p = 6y - 4x^2 + 20x - 20$$

$$2(y - p) + (y + p) = 3y - p$$

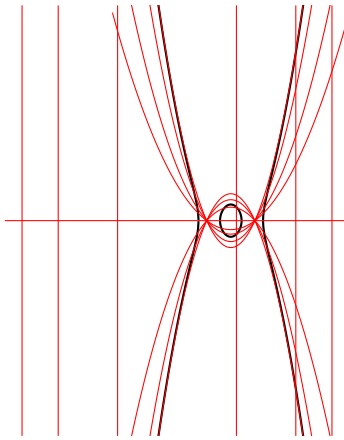
$$2(y - p) + y + p = 3y$$

$$y = \frac{m - n}{m + n}(x^2 - 5x + 5)$$

On the other hand, we have  $y^2 = (x - 1)(x - 2)(x - 3)(x - 4)$ . In particular,  $y = \sqrt{24} \approx 4.89$ .

$$2n(x^2 - 5x + 5)$$

is another unit of  $A$ . If you graph the zero set of this function, you'll see that it gets closer to the curve  $V(f)$ , but it still doesn't quite intersect it.



$$mu + v = (m + 1)y + (1 - m)(x^2 - 5x + 5)$$

$$y = \frac{m - 1}{m + 1}(x^2 - 5x + 5)$$

## 8 Irreducible Spaces

### 8.1 Connected Spaces

Let  $X$  be a topological space. We say  $X$  is **connected** if it is impossible to write  $X$  as a union of two non-empty disjoint open subsets of  $X$ : if  $X = U \cup V$  where  $U$  and  $V$  are open subsets of  $X$  and  $U \cap V = \emptyset$ , then either  $U = \emptyset$  or  $V = \emptyset$ . If  $X$  is not connected, then we say it is **disconnected**. A subspace  $C \subseteq X$  is said to be connected if it is connected in the subspace topology. Set  $\mathcal{C} = (\mathcal{C}, \subseteq)$  to be the poset whose underlying set is

$$\mathcal{C} = \{C \subseteq X \mid C \text{ is connected}\},$$

and whose partial order is the inclusion map. The maximal elements of  $\mathcal{C}$  are called **connected components** of  $X$ . Note that the emptyset  $\emptyset$  and singletons  $\{x\}$  belong to  $\mathcal{C}$ . Also note that if  $C_1, C_2$  are two distinct maximal elements



in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then they are necessarily closed (since if  $C$  is connected, then  $\overline{C}$  is connected), and they must be disjoint (since if  $C_1 \cap C_2 \neq \emptyset$ , then  $C_1 \cup C_2$  is connected). In particular, if  $(C_i)$  is a chain in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then their union  $\bigcup_i C_i$  is an upper bound of this chain in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Thus Zorn's lemma implies that every connected subset is contained in a connected component of  $X$ . In particular, every point of  $X$  is contained in a connected component. This shows that  $X$  is the union of its connected components.

Note that  $X$  being connected is equivalent to saying that it is impossible to write  $X$  as a union of two proper disjoint closed subsets of  $X$ . Indeed, if  $X = U \cup V$  where  $U$  and  $V$  are two proper open subsets of  $X$  which are disjoint from one another, then  $U = V^c$  and  $V = U^c$  are also two proper closed subsets of  $X$  which are disjoint from one another. If we relax this condition a bit, then we get the concept of irreducible spaces: we say  $X$  is **irreducible** if cannot be expressed as the union of two proper closed subsets of  $X$ : if  $X = E \cup F$  where  $E$  and  $F$  are closed subsets of  $X$ , then either  $E = X$  or  $F = X$ . If  $X$  is not irreducible, then we say  $X$  is **reducible**. A subspace  $D \subseteq X$  is said to be irreducible if it is irreducible in the subspace topology. Set  $\mathcal{D} = (\mathcal{D}, \subseteq)$  to be the poset whose underlying set is

$$\mathcal{D} = \{D \subseteq X \mid D \text{ is irreducible}\},$$

and whose partial order is the inclusion map. The maximal elements of  $\mathcal{D}$  are called **irreducible components** of  $X$ . Note that the emptyset  $\emptyset$  and singletons  $\{x\}$  belong to  $\mathcal{D}$ . Also note that if  $D_1, D_2$  are two distinct maximal elements in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then they are necessarily closed (since if  $D$  is irreducible, then  $\overline{D}$  is irreducible), and they must be disjoint (since if  $D_1 \cap D_2 \neq \emptyset$ , then  $D_1 \cup D_2$  is irreducible). In particular, if  $(D_i)$  is a chain in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then their union  $\bigcup_i D_i$  is an upper bound of this chain in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Thus Zorn's lemma implies that every irreducible subset is contained in a irreducible component of  $X$ . In particular, every point of  $X$  is contained in an irreducible component. This shows that  $X$  is the union of its irreducible components.

Clearly  $\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathcal{C}$  (every irreducible subset of  $X$  is connected), however for many spaces this is a strict inclusion. For instance, if  $X$  is Hausdorff and contains at least two distinct points, then it is *always* reducible. Indeed, pick two points  $x, y \in X$  together with two neighborhoods  $U_x, U_y$  of  $x$  and  $y$  respectively such that  $U_x \cap U_y = \emptyset$ . Then  $X = U_x^c \cup U_y^c$  expresses  $X$  as a union of two proper closed subsets of  $X$ . Irreducible spaces show up a lot in algebraic geometry (for instance, the Zariski topology of an affine algebraic variety is irreducible). The open subsets of irreducible property are *very* large in the sense of the following proposition:

**Proposition 8.1.** *Assume  $X$  is not empty. The following assertions are equivalent.*

1.  $X$  is irreducible.
2. Any two non-empty open subsets of  $X$  have a non-empty intersection.
3. Every non-empty open subset is dense in  $X$ .
4. Every non-empty open subset is connected.
5. Every non-empty open subset is irreducible.

*Proof.*

(1  $\implies$  2): Let  $U$  and  $V$  be open subsets of  $X$  such that  $U \cap V = \emptyset$ . Then  $X = U^c \cup V^c$  implies either  $U^c = X$  or  $V^c = X$  which implies either  $U = \emptyset$  or  $V = \emptyset$ .

(2  $\implies$  3): Let  $U$  be a non-empty open subset of  $X$ . Then  $U$  and  $\overline{U}^c$  are disjoint open subsets of  $X$ . Since  $U$  is non-empty, we must have  $\overline{U}^c = \emptyset$ , which implies  $\overline{U} = X$ .

(2  $\implies$  4): Let  $U$  be a non-empty open subset of  $X$ . Assume that  $U$  is not connected: write  $U = (U_1 \cap U) \cup (U_2 \cap U)$  where  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  are open subsets in  $X$  and  $U_1 \cap U \neq \emptyset$  and  $U_2 \cap U \neq \emptyset$ . This is a contradiction since  $U_1 \cap U$  and  $U_2 \cap U$  are non-empty open subset of  $X$  which have non-empty intersection.

(3  $\implies$  5): Let  $U$  be a non-empty open subset of  $X$ . We show that every non-empty open subset  $V$  of  $U$  is dense in  $U$  (this shows that  $U$  is irreducible). Now  $V$  is also open in  $X$  and therefore dense in  $X$ . But then  $V$  is certainly dense in  $U$ .

(5  $\implies$  1): Obvious. □

**Corollary 3.** *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a continuous map of topological spaces. If  $Z \subseteq X$  is an irreducible subspace, its image  $f(Z)$  is irreducible.*

*Proof.* If  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  are non-empty open subsets of  $f(Z)$ , their preimages in  $Z$  have a non-empty intersection. This shows that  $U_1 \cap U_2 \neq \emptyset$ . □

**Lemma 8.1.** *Let  $X$  be a topological space. A subspace  $Y \subseteq X$  is irreducible if and only if its closure  $\overline{Y}$  is irreducible.*

*Proof.* A subset  $Z$  of  $X$  is irreducible if and only if for any two open subsets  $U$  and  $V$  of  $X$  with  $Z \cap U \neq \emptyset$  and  $Z \cap V \neq \emptyset$  we have  $Z \cap (U \cap V) \neq \emptyset$ . This implies the lemma because an open subset meets  $Y$  if and only if it meets  $\overline{Y}$ . Indeed, one direction is trivial. For the other direction, we prove the contrapositive:  $U \cap Y = \emptyset$  implies  $U \cap \overline{Y} = \emptyset$ . If  $U \cap Y = \emptyset$ , then  $X \setminus U$  is a closed subset of  $X$  which contains  $Y$ . Therefore,  $X \setminus U$  must contain  $\overline{Y}$ , as  $\overline{Y}$  is the smallest closed subset of  $X$  which contains  $Y$ . This implies that  $U \cap \overline{Y} = \emptyset$ .  $\square$

If  $U$  is an open subset of  $X$  and if  $Z$  is an irreducible closed subset of  $X$ , then  $Z \cap U$  is open in  $Z$  and hence an irreducible closed subset of  $U$  whose closure in  $X$  is  $Z$ . Together with Lemma (8.1), this shows that there are mutually inverse bijective maps

$$\{Y \subseteq U \mid Y \text{ is irreducible and closed}\} \leftrightarrow \{Z \subseteq X \mid Z \text{ is irreducible and closed with } Z \cap U \neq \emptyset\}$$

where  $Y \mapsto \overline{Y}$  and  $Z \mapsto Z \cap U$ .

**Definition 8.1.** A maximal irreducible subset of a topological space  $X$  is called an **irreducible component** of  $X$ .

Let  $X$  be a topological space. Lemma (8.1) shows that every irreducible component is closed. The set of irreducible subsets of  $X$  is ordered inductively, as for every chain of irreducible subsets their union is again irreducible. Thus Zorn's lemma implies that every irreducible subset is contained in an irreducible component of  $X$ . In particular, every point of  $X$  is contained in an irreducible component. This shows that  $X$  is the union of its irreducible components.

## 8.2 Irreducible Affine Algebraic Sets

**Proposition 8.2.** *Let  $Z \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  be a closed subset. Then  $Z$  is irreducible if and only if  $I(Z)$  is a prime ideal. In particular  $\mathbb{A}^n(k)$  is irreducible.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $I(Z)$  is a prime ideal and suppose  $Z = Z_1 \cup Z_2$  where  $Z_1, Z_2$  are closed subsets of  $Z$ . Then  $I(Z) = I(Z_1) \cap I(Z_2)$  and since  $I(Z)$  is prime, we must either have  $I(Z) \supset I(Z_1)$  or  $I(Z) \supset I(Z_2)$ . Without loss of generality, assume  $I(Z) \supset I(Z_1)$ . Now we apply  $V$  to both sides to get  $Z \subset Z_1$ . Thus  $Z$  is irreducible.

Conversely, suppose  $Z$  is irreducible and suppose  $fg \in I(Z)$ . Then  $\langle fg \rangle \subset I(Z)$ , and after applying  $V$  to both sides, we obtain

$$V\langle fg \rangle = V(f) \cup V(g) \supset Z.$$

Since  $Z$  is irreducible, either  $V(f) \supset Z$  or  $V(g) \supset Z$ . Without loss of generality, say  $V(f) \supset Z$ . Applying  $I$  to both sides, we obtain

$$f \in I(V(f)) \subset I(Z),$$

so  $I(Z)$  is prime.  $\square$

*Remark 21.* Note that the Nullstellensatz was not used in this proof.

## 9 Quasi-Compact and Noetherian Topological Spaces

**Definition 9.1.** A topological space  $X$  is called **quasi-compact** if every open covering of  $X$  has a finite subcovering.

**Definition 9.2.** A topological space  $X$  is called **Noetherian** if every descending chain

$$X \supseteq Z_1 \supseteq Z_2 \supseteq \cdots$$

of closed subsets of  $X$  becomes stationary, i.e. we have  $Z_\lambda = Z_{\lambda+1} = Z_{\lambda+2} = \cdots$  for some  $\lambda \geq 1$ .

**Proposition 9.1.** *Let  $X$  be a topological space. The following are equivalent:*

1.  $X$  is Noetherian.
2. Every non-empty set of closed subsets of  $X$  has a minimal element.
3. Every non-empty set of open subsets of  $X$  has a maximal element.

*Proof.* The equivalence of (2) and (3) is trivial. Let us show that (1) is equivalent to (2). First assume that  $X$  is Noetherian and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a non-empty family closed subsets of  $X$ . Assume that  $\mathcal{F}$  has no minimal element. Since  $\mathcal{F}$  is nonempty, there exists  $Z_0 \in \mathcal{F}$ . Since  $\mathcal{F}$  has no minimal element, there exists  $Z_1 \in \mathcal{F}$  such that  $Z_0 \supset Z_1$ . Again since  $\mathcal{F}$  has no minimal element, there exists  $Z_2 \in \mathcal{F}$  such that  $Z_0 \supset Z_1 \supset Z_2$ . Continuing in this way, we obtain a descending chain of closed subsets of  $X$

$$Z_0 \supset Z_1 \supset Z_2 \supset \cdots,$$

which does not become stationary.

Conversely, suppose that every non-empty set of closed subsets of  $X$  has a minimal element. Let

$$X \supseteq Z_1 \supseteq Z_2 \supseteq \cdots \quad (27)$$

be a descending chain of closed subsets. Then the  $\{Z_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a non-empty family of closed subsets of  $X$ , and hence must have a minimal element. This implies that the chain (27) becomes stationary.  $\square$

**Lemma 9.1.** *Let  $X$  be a topological space that has a finite covering  $X = \bigcup_{i=1}^r X_i$  by Noetherian subspaces. Then  $X$  is itself Noetherian.*

*Proof.* Let

$$X \supseteq Z_1 \supseteq Z_2 \supseteq \cdots$$

be a descending chain of closed subsets of  $X$ . Then for each  $i$ , we obtain a descending chain of closed subsets of  $X_i$ :

$$X_i \supseteq Z_1 \cap X_i \supseteq Z_2 \cap X_i \supseteq \cdots$$

Since  $X_i$  is Noetherian, this chain must terminate, say at  $Z_{\lambda_i} \cap X_i$ . Let  $\lambda = \max_i(\lambda_i)$ . Then for any  $\mu \geq \lambda$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z_\mu &= X \cap Z_\mu \\ &= \left( \bigcup_{i=1}^r X_i \right) \cap Z_\mu \\ &= \bigcup_{i=1}^r (X_i \cap Z_\mu) \\ &= \bigcup_{i=1}^r (X_i \cap Z_{\mu+1}) \\ &= \left( \bigcup_{i=1}^r X_i \right) \cap Z_{\mu+1} \\ &= Z_{\mu+1}. \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

**Lemma 9.2.** *Let  $X$  be a Noetherian topological space. Then*

1. *Every subspace of  $X$  is Noetherian.*
2. *Every open subset of  $X$  is quasi-compact (in particular,  $X$  is quasi-compact).*
3. *Every closed subset  $Z \subseteq X$  has only finitely many irreducible components.*

*Proof.*

1. Let  $Z$  be a subspace of  $X$  and suppose

$$Z \supseteq Z \cap Z_1 \supseteq Z \cap Z_2 \supseteq \cdots$$

is a descending chain of closed subsets of  $Z$ . Then

$$X \supseteq Z_1 \supseteq Z_2 \supseteq \cdots$$

is a descending chain of closed subsets of  $X$ . Since  $X$  is Noetherian, we must have  $Z_\mu = Z_{\mu+1}$  for all  $\mu \geq \lambda$  for some  $\lambda \geq 1$ . In particular, this implies  $Z \cap Z_\mu = Z \cap Z_{\mu+1}$  for all  $\mu \geq \lambda$  for some  $\lambda \geq 1$ .

2. By (1), it suffices to show that  $X$  is quasi-compact. Let  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an open cover of  $X$  and let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the set of those open subsets of  $X$  that are finite unions of the subsets of  $U_i$ . As  $X$  is Noetherian,  $\mathcal{U}$  has a maximal element  $V$ . Clearly  $V = X$ , otherwise there existed an  $U_i$  such that  $V$  is properly contained in  $V \cup U_i \in \mathcal{U}$ . This shows that  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  has a finite subcovering.
3. It suffices to show that every Noetherian space  $X$  can be written as a finite union of irreducible subsets. If the set  $\mathcal{M}$  of closed subsets of  $X$  that cannot be written as a finite union of irreducible subsets were non-empty, there existed a minimal element  $Z \in \mathcal{M}$ . The set  $Z$  is not irreducible and thus is the union of two proper closed subsets which do not lie in  $\mathcal{M}$ . This leads to a contradiction.

$\square$

**Proposition 9.2.** *Let  $X \subseteq \mathbb{A}^n(k)$  be any subspace. Then  $X$  is Noetherian.*

*Proof.* By Lemma (9.2) it suffices to show that  $\mathbb{A}^n(k)$  is Noetherian. But descending chains of closed subsets of  $\mathbb{A}^n(k)$  correspond to ascending chains of radical ideals of  $k[T_1, \dots, T_n]$ . As  $k[T_1, \dots, T_n]$  is Noetherian by Hilbert's basis theorem, this proves the proposition.  $\square$

## 10 Dimension

**Definition 10.1.** Let  $X$  be a (non-empty) irreducible topological space.

1. Let  $\text{Chain}(X)$  denote the set of all **chains of irreducible closed subsets** of  $X$ , that is,

$$\text{Chain}(X) := \{\varphi = (\emptyset \neq X_0 \subset X_1 \subset \cdots \subset X_n \subset X) \mid X_i \text{ is irreducible closed subset of } X\}.$$

2. If  $\varphi = (\emptyset \neq X_0 \subset X_1 \subset \cdots \subset X_n \subset X) \in \text{Chain}(X)$ , then  $\mathbf{length}(\varphi) := n$ .
3. The **dimension** of  $X$  is defined as  $\dim(X) = \sup\{\mathbf{length}(\varphi) \mid \varphi \in \text{Chain}(X)\}$ .
4. If  $X$  is any Noetherian topological space, then the dimension of  $X$  is defined to be the supremum of the dimensions of its irreducible components.
5. A space of dimension 1 is called a **curve** and a space of dimension 2 is called a **surface**.

**Example 10.1.** Let  $X = V(T_1T_3, T_2T_3)$ ,  $X_1 = V(T_3)$ , and  $X_2 = V(T_1, T_2)$ . Then  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the irreducible components of  $X$ . One can show that a maximal chain of irreducible closed subsets of  $X_1$  is given by

$$\varphi_1 = (V(T_1, T_2, T_3) \subset V(T_1, T_3) \subset V(T_3)),$$

and thus  $\dim(X_1) = 2$ . Similarly one can show that  $\dim(X_2) = 1$ . Therefore  $\dim(X) = 2$ .

## 11 Spec $A$ as a topological space

We start with the following basic definition. Let  $A$  be a ring. The **prime spectrum** of  $A$  is the set

$$\text{Spec } A := \{\mathfrak{p} \mid \mathfrak{p} \text{ is a prime ideal of } A\}.$$

We will now endow  $\text{Spec } A$  with the structure of a topological space. For every subset  $S$  of  $A$ , we denote by  $V(S)$  to be the set of prime ideals of  $A$  which contain  $S$ . Similarly we denote by  $D(S)$  to be the complement of  $V(S)$  in  $\text{Spec } A$ . In other words,  $D(S)$  consists of the set of all prime ideals of  $A$  which do not contain  $S$ . Notice that if  $\mathfrak{a}$  is the ideal generated by  $S$ , then we have  $V(S) = V(\mathfrak{a}) = V(\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}})$ . In other words, every set of the form  $V(S)$  (respectively  $D(S)$ ) can be expressed as  $V(\mathfrak{b})$  (respectively  $D(\mathfrak{b})$ ) where  $\mathfrak{b}$  is a radical ideal of  $A$ . For any  $a \in A$ , we write  $V(a)$  (respectively  $D(a)$ ) instead of  $V(\{a\}) = V(\langle a \rangle)$  (respectively  $D(\{a\}) = D(\langle a \rangle)$ ) in order to simplify notation.

**Proposition 11.1.** *The following statements hold.*

1. We have  $V(0) = \text{Spec } A$  and  $V(1) = \emptyset$ . Equivalently, we have  $D(0) = \emptyset$  and  $D(1) = \text{Spec } A$ .
2. For two ideals  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{b}$ , we have

$$V(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}) = V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) = V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b}).$$

Equivalently, we have

$$D(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}) = D(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) = D(\mathfrak{a}) \cap D(\mathfrak{b}).$$

3. For every family  $\{\mathfrak{a}_i\}_{i \in I}$  of ideals of  $A$ , we have

$$V\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = V\left(\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} V(\mathfrak{a}_i).$$

Equivalently, we have

$$D\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = D\left(\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = \bigcup_{i \in I} D(\mathfrak{a}_i).$$

*Proof.* The first statement is trivial. For the second statement, observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{p} \in V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) &\iff \mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b} \\ &\iff \mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a} \text{ or } \mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{b} && \text{since } \mathfrak{p} \text{ is prime} \\ &\iff \mathfrak{p} \in V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b}). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) = V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b})$ . In particular, since  $V$  is inclusion-reversing, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) &\supseteq V(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}) \\ &\supseteq V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b}) \\ &= V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}). \end{aligned}$$

For the last statement, note that

$$V\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = V\left(\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right)$$

since  $\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i$  is the ideal generated by  $\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i$ , and we have

$$V\left(\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} V(\mathfrak{a}_i)$$

since  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .  $\square$

It follows from the proposition above that the collection  $\{D(\mathfrak{a}) \mid \mathfrak{a} \text{ is an ideal of } A\}$  forms a topology on  $\text{Spec } A$ , which we call the **Zariski topology**. We view  $\text{Spec } A$  as a topological space equipped with this topology (and not just as a mere set). Later on we will endow  $\text{Spec } A$  with even more structure by equipping it with a sheaf of rings (defined in terms of  $A$ ) and this will give  $\text{Spec } A$  the structure of a locally ringed space, but for now let us focus on  $\text{Spec } A$  viewed as a topological space. The closed subsets of  $\text{Spec } A$  are of the form  $V(\mathfrak{a})$  and the open subsets of  $\text{Spec } A$  are of the form  $D(\mathfrak{a})$  where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal of  $A$  (and in fact  $\mathfrak{a}$  can be chosen to be a radical ideal). Open sets of the form  $D(a)$  where  $a \in A$  are given a special name: they are called **principal opens**.

**Proposition 11.2.** *The following statements hold:*

1. *The collection  $\{D(a) \mid a \in A\}$  is a basis for  $\text{Spec } A$ .*
2. *The principal open sets are quasi-compact. In particular,  $\text{Spec } A$  is quasi-compact.*
3. *Let  $U$  be an open subset of  $\text{Spec } A$ . Then  $U$  is quasi-compact if and only if it can be expressed in the form  $U = D(\mathfrak{a})$  where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a finitely generated ideal of  $A$ .*

*Proof.* 1. First note that  $\{D(a) \mid a \in A\}$  covers  $\text{Spec } A$  since  $D(1) = \text{Spec } A$ . Next, let  $D(\mathfrak{a})$  and  $D(\mathfrak{b})$  be two open subsets of  $\text{Spec } A$  and let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be a prime ideal of  $A$  such that  $\mathfrak{p} \in D(\mathfrak{a}) \cap D(\mathfrak{b}) = D(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b})$ . Then  $\mathfrak{p} \not\supseteq \mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}$ , so there exists an  $a \in \mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}$  such that  $a \notin \mathfrak{p}$ , or equivalently  $\mathfrak{p} \in D(a)$ . Since  $D$  is inclusion-preserving, we see that  $\mathfrak{p} \in D(a) \subseteq D(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b})$ . It follows that  $\{D(a) \mid a \in A\}$  is a basis for  $\text{Spec } A$ .

2. Let  $x \in A$  and let  $\{y_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a collection of elements of  $A$  such that  $D(x) \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} D(y_i)$ , or equivalently, such that  $V(x) \supseteq V(\langle y_i \mid i \in I \rangle)$ . Applying  $I$  to both sides gives us  $x \in \sqrt{\langle x \rangle} \subseteq \sqrt{\langle y_i \mid i \in I \rangle}$ . Hence there exists  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $x^n \in \langle y_i \mid i \in I \rangle$  which implies there exists  $y_{i_1}, \dots, y_{i_k} \in \{y_i\}_{i \in I}$ , and  $a_{i_1}, \dots, a_{i_k} \in A$  such that

$$x^n = a_{i_1}y_{i_1} + \dots + a_{i_k}y_{i_k}.$$

In particular, we see that  $V(x) \supseteq V(y_{i_1}, \dots, y_{i_k})$  or equivalently that  $D(x) \subseteq D(y_{i_1}) \cup \dots \cup D(y_{i_k})$ . It follows that  $D(x)$  is quasi-compact.

3. Suppose  $U = D(\mathfrak{a})$  where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a finitely generated ideal of  $A$ , say  $\mathfrak{a} = \langle x_1, \dots, x_n \rangle$ . Then since  $D(x_1, \dots, x_n) = D(x_1) \cup \dots \cup D(x_n)$ , we see that  $U$  is a finite union of quasi-compact spaces. It follows that  $U$  is quasi-compact. Conversely, suppose that  $U$  is quasi-compact. Write  $U = D(\mathfrak{b})$  where  $\mathfrak{b} = \langle b_i \mid i \in I \rangle$ . Then  $\{D(b_i)\}_{i \in I}$  covers  $U$  since  $U = D(\mathfrak{b}) = \bigcup_{i \in I} D(b_i)$ . Since  $U$  is quasi-compact, there exists a finite subcovering of  $\{D(b_i)\}_{i \in I}$  which covers  $U$ , say  $\{D(b_{i_1}), \dots, D(b_{i_n})\}$ . In particular, if we set  $\mathfrak{a} = \langle b_{i_1}, \dots, b_{i_n} \rangle$ , then we see that  $U = D(b_{i_1}) \cup \dots \cup D(b_{i_n}) = D(\mathfrak{a})$ , where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is finitely generated.  $\square$

Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be the category whose objects are radical ideals of  $A$  and whose morphisms are containment and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the category whose objects are closed subsets of  $\text{Spec } A$  and whose morphisms are inclusions. Then we can interpret  $V: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $D: \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  as covariant functors. It turns out that there is a covariant functor  $I: \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  which is left adjoint to  $V$ , which we define as follows: for every subset  $Z$  of  $\text{Spec } A$ , we set

$$I(Z) := \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in Z} \mathfrak{p}.$$

Note that  $I(Z) = I(\overline{Z})$ , so it is natural to view  $I$  as a functor from  $\mathcal{D}$  to  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $I$  being left adjoint to  $V$  means

$$I(Z) \supseteq \mathfrak{a} \iff Z \subseteq V(\mathfrak{a}).$$

This follows from the fact that  $\text{VI}(Z) = \overline{Z}$  and  $\text{IV}(\mathfrak{a}) = \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$ . On the other hand, note that

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a} &= \left( \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in \text{Spec } A} \mathfrak{p} \right) : \mathfrak{a} \\ &= \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in \text{Spec } A} (\mathfrak{p} : \mathfrak{a}) \\ &= \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in \text{D}(\mathfrak{a})} \mathfrak{p} \\ &= \text{ID}(\mathfrak{a}).\end{aligned}\quad \text{since } \mathfrak{p} : \mathfrak{a} = \begin{cases} \mathfrak{p} & \text{if } \mathfrak{p} \not\supseteq \mathfrak{a} \\ A & \text{if } \mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a} \end{cases}$$

Let  $\mathfrak{a}_1 = \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}$ . Then

$$\sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}_1 = \sqrt{0} :$$

Therefore  $\text{D}(\text{ID}(\mathfrak{a})) = \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}$ . We have  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}$  if and only if

$$\text{ID}(\mathfrak{a}) = \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{DI}(Z) = \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in Z} \text{D}(\mathfrak{p}).$$

**Proposition 11.3.** *Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  an ideal in  $A$  and let  $Y$  a subset of  $\text{Spec } A$ . We have*

1.  $\sqrt{\text{I}(Y)} = \text{I}(Y)$ .
2.  $\text{IV}(\mathfrak{a}) = \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$ .
3.  $\text{VI}(Y) = \overline{Y}$ .
4.  $\text{ID}(\mathfrak{a}) = \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}$ .
5.  $\text{DI}(Y) = \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in Y} \text{D}(\mathfrak{p})$ .
6. *The maps*

$$\{\text{ideals } \mathfrak{a} \text{ of } A \text{ with } \mathfrak{a} = \text{rad}(\mathfrak{a})\} \xrightleftharpoons[\text{I}]{\text{V}} \{\text{closed subsets } Y \text{ of } \text{Spec } A\}$$

*are mutually inverse bijections.*

*Proof.* 1. The relation  $\mathfrak{a} = \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$  means that  $f^n \in \mathfrak{a}$  implies  $f \in \mathfrak{a}$  for all  $f \in A$ . This certainly holds for prime ideals and therefore for arbitrary intersections of prime ideals as well.

2. This follows from the fact that the radical of an ideal equals the intersection of all prime ideals containing it.

3. Let  $\mathfrak{b}$  be an ideal of  $A$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\text{V}(\mathfrak{b}) \supseteq Y &\iff \text{IV}(\mathfrak{b}) \subseteq \text{I}(Y) \\ &\iff \sqrt{\mathfrak{b}} \subseteq \text{I}(Y) \\ &\iff \text{V}(\sqrt{\mathfrak{b}}) \supseteq \text{VI}(Y) \\ &\iff \text{V}(\mathfrak{b}) \supseteq \text{VI}(Y).\end{aligned}$$

Therefore  $\text{VI}(Y)$  is the smallest closed subset of  $\text{Spec } A$  which contains  $Y$ .

4. We first show that  $\sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a} \subseteq \text{ID}(\mathfrak{a})$ . Let  $x \in \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}$  and assume (to obtain a contradiction) that  $x \notin \text{ID}(\mathfrak{a})$ . Since  $x \notin \text{ID}(\mathfrak{a})$ , there exists a prime  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$  such that  $\mathfrak{p} \not\supseteq \mathfrak{a}$  and  $x \notin \mathfrak{p}$ . Since  $x \in \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}$ , we have  $x\mathfrak{a} \subseteq \sqrt{0} \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . In particular, either  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}$  or  $x \in \mathfrak{p}$ . This is a contradiction. Thus we have  $\sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a} \subseteq \text{ID}(\mathfrak{a})$ .

Now we will show that  $\sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a} \supseteq \text{ID}(\mathfrak{a})$ . Let  $x \in \text{ID}(\mathfrak{a})$  (so  $x$  belongs to every prime ideal which does not contain  $\mathfrak{a}$ ) and assume (to obtain a contradiction) that  $x \notin \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}$ . Since  $x \notin \sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a}$ , there exists  $a \in \mathfrak{a}$  such that  $ax \notin \sqrt{0}$ . In particular,  $\{(ax)^n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  forms a multiplicative set, and so we can localize at  $ax$ . Let  $\mathfrak{q}$  be a prime ideal in  $A_{ax}$  and let  $\mathfrak{p} := \iota_{ax}^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$ , where  $\iota_{ax}: A \rightarrow A_{ax}$  is the canonical ring homomorphism. Then  $\mathfrak{p}$  is a prime ideal in  $A$  which does not contain  $ax$ . This implies that  $\mathfrak{p}$  does not contain  $\mathfrak{a}$  nor  $x$  (if it did, then it'd certainly contain  $ax$ ). This is a contradiction. Thus we have  $\sqrt{0} : \mathfrak{a} \supseteq \text{ID}(\mathfrak{a})$ .

5. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{DI}(Y) &= \mathrm{D} \left( \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in Y} \mathfrak{p} \right) \\ &= \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in Y} \mathrm{D}(\mathfrak{p}) \end{aligned}$$

6. This follows from part 2. □

## 11.1 Properties of $\mathrm{Spec} A$

**Example 11.1.** Let  $A = K[x, y]$ ,  $\mathfrak{a} = \langle x^2, y^2 \rangle$ , and  $\mathfrak{b} = \langle x^2, xy, y^2 \rangle$ . Even though  $\mathfrak{a} \subset \mathfrak{b}$  (where the inclusion is strict), we have  $V(\mathfrak{a}) = V(\mathfrak{b})$ , since  $\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}} = \sqrt{\mathfrak{b}}$ .

**Proposition 11.4.** *Let  $A$  be a ring. A subset  $Y$  of  $\mathrm{Spec} A$  is irreducible if and only if  $\mathfrak{p} := I(Y)$  is a prime ideal. In this case  $\{\mathfrak{p}\}$  is dense in  $\overline{Y}$ .*

*Proof.* Assume that  $Y$  is irreducible. Let  $f, g \in A$  with  $fg \in \mathfrak{p}$ . Then

$$Y \subseteq V(fg) = V(f) \cup V(g).$$

As  $Y$  is irreducible, either  $Y \subseteq V(f)$  or  $Y \subseteq V(g)$  which implies  $f \in \mathfrak{p}$  or  $g \in \mathfrak{p}$ .

Conversely let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be a prime. Then by Proposition (11.3),

$$\overline{Y} = V(\mathfrak{p}) = V(I(\{\mathfrak{p}\})) = \overline{\{\mathfrak{p}\}}.$$

Therefore  $\overline{Y}$  is the closure of the irreducible set  $\{\mathfrak{p}\}$  and therefore irreducible. This implies that the dense subset  $Y$  is also irreducible. □

Note that for arbitrary irreducible subsets  $Y$  the prime ideal  $I(Y)$  is not necessarily a point in  $Y$ . But this is clearly true if  $Y$  is closed, or more generally, if  $Y$  is locally closed.

**Corollary 4.** *The map  $\mathfrak{p} \mapsto V(\mathfrak{p}) = \overline{\{\mathfrak{p}\}}$  is a bijection from  $\mathrm{Spec} A$  onto the set of closed irreducible subsets of  $\mathrm{Spec} A$ . Via this bijection, the minimal prime ideals of  $A$  correspond to the irreducible components of  $\mathrm{Spec} A$ .*

**Definition 11.1.** Let  $X$  be an arbitrary topological space.

1. A point  $x \in X$  is called **closed** if the set  $\{x\}$  is closed,
2. We say that a point  $\eta \in X$  is a **generic point** if  $\overline{\{\eta\}} = X$ .
3. We say  $x$  and  $x'$  be two points of  $X$ . We say that  $x$  is a **generization** or that  $x'$  is a **specialization** of  $x$  if  $x' \in \overline{\{x\}}$ .
4. A point  $x \in X$  is called a **maximal point** if its closure  $\overline{\{x\}}$  is an irreducible component of  $X$ .

Thus a point  $\eta \in X$  is generic if and only if it is a generization of every point of  $X$ . As the closure of an irreducible set is again irreducible, the existence of a generic point implies that  $X$  is irreducible.

**Example 11.2.** If  $X = \mathrm{Spec} A$  is the spectrum of a ring, the notions introduced in Definition (11.1) have the following algebraic meaning.

1. A point  $x \in X$  is closed if and only if  $\mathfrak{p}_x$  is a maximal ideal.
2. A point  $\eta \in X$  is a generic point of  $X$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{p}_\eta$  is the unique minimal prime ideal. This exists if and only if the nilradical of  $A$  is a prime ideal.
3. A point  $x$  is a generization of a point  $x'$  (in other words,  $x'$  is a specialization of  $x$ ) if and only if  $\mathfrak{p}_x \subseteq \mathfrak{p}_{x'}$ .
4. A point  $x \in X$  is a maximal point if and only if  $\mathfrak{p}_x$  is a minimal prime ideal.

## 11.2 The Functor $A \mapsto \operatorname{Spec} A$

We will now show that  $A \mapsto \operatorname{Spec} A$  defines a contravariant functor from the category of rings to the category of topological spaces. Let  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  be a homomorphism of rings. If  $\mathfrak{q}$  is a prime ideal of  $B$ , then  $\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  is a prime ideal of  $A$ . Therefore we obtain a map  ${}^a\varphi = \operatorname{Spec} \varphi$  from  $\operatorname{Spec} B$  to  $\operatorname{Spec} A$  given by

$${}^a\varphi(\mathfrak{q}) = \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$$

for all  $\mathfrak{q} \in \operatorname{Spec} B$ . The following proposition will show that  ${}^a\varphi$  is a continuous map.

**Proposition 11.5.** *Let  $S$  be a subset of  $A$  and let  $\mathfrak{b}$  be an ideal of  $B$ . Then*

1. *We have  $({}^a\varphi)^{-1}(V(S)) = V(\varphi(S))$  and  $({}^a\varphi)^{-1}(D(S)) = D(\varphi(S))$ . In particular,  ${}^a\varphi$  is continuous.*
2. *We have  $\overline{{}^a\varphi(V(\mathfrak{b}))} = V(\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{b}))$ .*
3. *Assume that  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  is an integral extension. Then  ${}^a\varphi(V(\mathfrak{b})) = V(\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{b}))$ . In particular,  ${}^a\varphi$  is a closed map in this case.*

*Proof.* 1. Let  $\mathfrak{q}$  be a prime ideal of  $B$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{q} \in ({}^a\varphi)^{-1}(V(S)) &\iff ({}^a\varphi)(\mathfrak{q}) \in V(S) \\ &\iff \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q}) \in V(S) \\ &\iff \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q}) \supseteq S \\ &\iff \mathfrak{q} \supseteq \varphi(S) \\ &\iff \mathfrak{q} \in V(\varphi(S)). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $({}^a\varphi)^{-1}(V(S)) = V(\varphi(S))$ . Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ({}^a\varphi)^{-1}(D(S)) &= ({}^a\varphi)^{-1}((V(S))^c) \\ &= (({}^a\varphi)^{-1}(V(S)))^c \\ &= (V(\varphi(S)))^c \\ &= D(\varphi(S)). \end{aligned}$$

2. By Proposition (11.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{{}^a\varphi(V(\mathfrak{b}))} &= \operatorname{VI}({}^a\varphi(V(\mathfrak{b}))) \\ &= \operatorname{VI}(\{{}^a\varphi(\mathfrak{q}) \mid \mathfrak{q} \in V(\mathfrak{b})\}) \\ &= \operatorname{VI}(\{\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q}) \mid \mathfrak{q} \in V(\mathfrak{b})\}) \\ &= V\left(\bigcap_{\mathfrak{q} \in V(\mathfrak{b})} \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})\right) \\ &= V\left(\varphi^{-1}\left(\bigcap_{\mathfrak{q} \in V(\mathfrak{b})} \mathfrak{q}\right)\right) \\ &= V(\varphi^{-1}(\sqrt{\mathfrak{b}})) \\ &= V(\sqrt{\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{b})}) \\ &= V(\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{b})) \end{aligned}$$

3. We want to show  ${}^a\varphi(V(\mathfrak{b})) = V(\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{b}))$ . Let

□

The proposition shows in particular that  ${}^a\varphi$  is continuous. As  ${}^a(\psi \circ \varphi) = {}^a\varphi \circ {}^a\psi$  for any ring homomorphism  $\psi: B \rightarrow C$ , we obtain a contravariant functor  $A \mapsto \operatorname{Spec} A$  from the category of rings to the category of topological spaces.

**Corollary 5.** *The map  ${}^a\varphi$  is dominant (i.e. its image is dense in  $\operatorname{Spec} A$ ) if and only if every element of  $\ker \varphi$  is nilpotent.*

*Proof.* We apply (??) to (2)  $\mathfrak{b} = 0$ .

□



**Proposition 11.6.** *Let  $A$  be a ring.*

1. *Let  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  be a surjective homomorphism of rings with kernel  $\mathfrak{a}$ . Then  ${}^a\varphi$  induces a homeomorphism of  ${}^a\varphi: \operatorname{Spec} B \rightarrow V(\mathfrak{a})$  from  $\operatorname{Spec} B$  onto the closed subset  $V(\mathfrak{a})$  of  $\operatorname{Spec} A$ .*
2. *Let  $S$  be a multiplicative subset of  $A$  and let  $\varphi: A \rightarrow S^{-1}A =: B$  be the canonical homomorphism. Then  ${}^a\varphi$  induces a homeomorphism  ${}^a\varphi: \operatorname{Spec} A_S \rightarrow \{\mathfrak{p} \in \operatorname{Spec} A \mid \mathfrak{p} \cap S = \emptyset\}$  from  $\operatorname{Spec} A_S$  onto the subspace of  $\operatorname{Spec} A$  consisting of prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$  such that  $\mathfrak{p} \cap S = \emptyset$ .*

*Proof.* 1. We first check that  ${}^a\varphi$  lands in  $V(\mathfrak{a})$ . Let  $\mathfrak{q}$  be a prime ideal of  $B$ . The  $\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  is a prime ideal of  $A$  which contains  $\mathfrak{a}$ . It follows that  ${}^a\varphi$  lands in  $V(\mathfrak{a})$ . Let us now show that  ${}^a\varphi$  is a bijection. Let  $\mathfrak{q}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}'$  be two distinct prime ideals of  $B$ . Then  $\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q}') \neq \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  since  $\varphi$  is surjective. Thus  ${}^a\varphi$  is injective. To see that  ${}^a\varphi$  is surjective, let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be a prime ideal of  $A$  which contains  $\mathfrak{a}$ . We claim that  $\varphi(\mathfrak{p})$  is a prime ideal of  $B$  and that  $\mathfrak{p} = \varphi^{-1}(\varphi(\mathfrak{p}))$  which will establish  ${}^a\varphi$  being surjective.

First, to see that  $\varphi(\mathfrak{p})$  is a prime ideal of  $B$ , let  $\varphi(a), \varphi(a') \in \varphi(\mathfrak{p})$  and  $\varphi(a') \notin \varphi(\mathfrak{p})$  where  $a, a' \in A$  (every element in  $B$  can be expressed in the form  $\varphi(a)$  for some  $a \in A$  since  $\varphi$  is surjective). Then  $a' \notin \mathfrak{p}$  and there exists  $x \in \mathfrak{p}$  such that  $\varphi(a)\varphi(a') = \varphi(x)$ , or in other words, such that  $aa' - x \in \mathfrak{a}$ . Since  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}$ , this implies  $aa' \in \mathfrak{p}$ , and since  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime and  $a' \notin \mathfrak{p}$ , this implies  $a \in \mathfrak{p}$ . Thus  $\varphi(a) \in \varphi(\mathfrak{p})$ . It follows that  $\varphi(\mathfrak{p})$  is prime. Next we will show that  $\varphi^{-1}(\varphi(\mathfrak{p})) = \mathfrak{p}$ . Clearly we have  $\varphi^{-1}(\varphi(\mathfrak{p})) \supseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . For the reverse inclusion, let  $a \in \varphi^{-1}(\varphi(\mathfrak{p}))$ , so  $\varphi(a) \in \varphi(\mathfrak{p})$ , which means  $\varphi(a) = \varphi(x)$  for some  $x \in \mathfrak{p}$ . It follows that  $a - x \in \mathfrak{a}$ . Since  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}$  and  $x \in \mathfrak{p}$ , it follows that  $a \in \mathfrak{p}$ . Thus we have the reverse inclusion  $\varphi^{-1}(\varphi(\mathfrak{p})) \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ .

Thus  ${}^a\varphi$  is a continuous bijection. To see that it is a homeomorphism, we need to show that  ${}^a\varphi$  maps closed sets to closed sets. To see this, note that a prime ideal  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  contains an ideal  $\mathfrak{b}$  of  $B$  if and only if the prime ideal  $\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  of  $A$  contains the ideal  $\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{b})$  of  $A$ . In particular, we have

$${}^a\varphi(V(\mathfrak{b})) = V(\varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{b})) \cap V(\mathfrak{a}).$$

Therefore  ${}^a\varphi$  is a homeomorphism onto its image.

2. Left as an exercise. □

**Corollary 6.** *Let  $A_{\text{red}}$  be the reduced ring of  $A$  obtained by quotienting out all nilpotent elements in  $A$ , and let  $\pi: A \rightarrow A_{\text{red}}$  be the quotient homomorphism. The  ${}^a\pi$  induces a homeomorphism  $\operatorname{Spec} A \cong \operatorname{Spec} A_{\text{red}}$ .*

*Proof.* Recall that the set of all nilpotent elements of  $A$  is given by  $\sqrt{0}$ . In particular, since  $V(\sqrt{0}) = V(0) = \operatorname{Spec} A$ , the corollary follows immediately from Proposition (11.6). □

Let  $\mathfrak{p}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}$  be prime ideals of  $A$ . Proposition (11.6) shows that the passage from  $A$  to  $A_{\mathfrak{p}}$  cuts out all prime ideals except those contained in  $\mathfrak{p}$ . The passage from  $A$  to  $A/\mathfrak{q}$  cuts out all prime ideals except those containing  $\mathfrak{q}$ . Hence, if  $\mathfrak{q} \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ , then by localizing with respect to  $\mathfrak{p}$  and then taking the quotient modulo  $\mathfrak{q}$  (in either order as these operations commute) we obtain a ring whose prime ideals are those prime ideals of  $A$  that lie between  $\mathfrak{q}$  and  $\mathfrak{p}$ . For  $\mathfrak{q} = \mathfrak{p}$ , we obtain the field

$$\kappa(\mathfrak{p}) := A_{\mathfrak{p}}/\mathfrak{p}A_{\mathfrak{p}} = \operatorname{Frac}(A/\mathfrak{p}),$$

which is called the **residue field** at  $\mathfrak{p}$ .

## 12 Spectrum of a Ring as a Locally Ringed Space

Let  $A$  be a ring. We will now endow the topological space  $\operatorname{Spec} A$  with the structure of a locally ringed space and obtain a functor  $A \mapsto \operatorname{Spec} A$  from the category of rings to the category of locally ringed spaces which we will show to be fully faithful.

### 12.1 Structure Sheaf on $\operatorname{Spec} A$

We set  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ . Recall that the principal open sets  $D(f)$  for  $f \in A$  form a basis of the topology of  $X$ . We will define a presheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X$  on this basis and then prove that the sheaf axioms are satisfied. The basic idea is this: looking back at the analogy with prevarieties, we certainly want to have  $\mathcal{O}_X(X) = A$ . More generally, for  $f \in A$ , we consider the localization  $A_f$  of  $A$ . Denote by  $\iota_f: A \rightarrow A_f$  the canonical ring homomorphism  $a \mapsto a/1$ . By Proposition (11.6),  ${}^a\iota_f$  is a homeomorphism of  $\operatorname{Spec} A_f$  onto  $D(f)$ . So it seems reasonable to set  $\mathcal{O}_X(D(f)) = A_f$ . Let us check that this is a sensible definition: we must check that  $A_f = A_g$  whenever  $D(f) = D(g)$ , define restriction maps, and check that the sheaf axioms are satisfied.

For  $f, g \in A$ , we have  $D(f) \subseteq D(g)$  if and only if there exists an integer  $n \geq 1$  such that  $f^n \in \langle g \rangle$  or, equivalently,  $g/1 \in (A_f)^\times$ . In this case we obtain a unique ring homomorphism  $\rho_{f,g}: A_g \rightarrow A_f$  such that  $\rho_{f,g} \circ \iota_g = \iota_f$  by the

universal mapping property of localization. Whenever  $D(f) \subseteq D(g) \subseteq D(h)$ , we have  $\rho_{f,g} \circ \rho_{g,h} = \rho_{f,h}$ . In particular, if  $D(f) = D(g)$ , then  $\rho_{f,g}$  is an isomorphism, which we use to identify  $A_g$  and  $A_f$ . Therefore we can define

$$\mathcal{O}_X(D(f)) := A_f$$

and obtain a presheaf of rings on the basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{D(f) \mid f \in A\}$  for the topological space  $\text{Spec } A$ . The restriction maps are the ring homomorphism  $\rho_{f,g}$ .

**Theorem 12.1.** *Let  $X = \text{Spec } A$  and let  $M$  be an  $A$ -module. Then  $\widetilde{M}$  is a sheaf. Let  $D(s)$  be a principal open set and let  $\{D(s_i)\}_{i \in I}$  be an open covering over  $D(f)$ . We have to show the following two properties:*

1. *Let  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$  be such that  $s|_{D(f_i)} = 0$  for all  $i \in I$ . Then  $s = 0$ .*
2. *For  $i \in I$ , let  $s_i \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f_i))$  be such that  $s_i|_{D(f_i f_j)} = s_j|_{D(f_i f_j)}$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . Then there exists  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$  such that  $s|_{D(f_i)} = s_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .*

As  $D(f)$  is quasi-compact, we can assume that  $I$  is finite. Restricting the presheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X$  to  $D(f)$  and replacing  $A$  by  $A_f$  if necessary, we may assume that  $f = 1$  and hence  $D(f) = X$  to ease the notation. The relation  $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} D(f_i)$  is equivalent to  $\langle f_i \mid i \in I \rangle = A$  (indeed  $\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}} = A$  implies  $\mathfrak{a} = A$ ). As  $D(f_i) = D(f_i^n)$  for all integers  $n \geq 1$  there exists elements  $b_i \in A$  (depending on  $n$ ) such that

$$\sum_{i \in I} b_i f_i^n = 1. \quad (28)$$

*Proof of 1:* let  $s = a \in A$  be such that the image of  $a$  in  $A_{f_i}$  is zero for all  $i \in I$ . As  $I$  is finite, there exists an integer  $n \geq 1$ , independent of  $i$ , such that  $f_i^n a = 0$ . By (30),

$$a = \left( \sum_{i \in I} b_i f_i^n \right) a = 0.$$

*Proof of 2:* as  $I$  is finite, we can write  $s_i = a_i / f_i^n$  for some  $n$  independent of  $i$ . By hypothesis, the images of  $a_i / f_i^n$  and of  $a_j / f_j^n$  in  $A_{f_i f_j}$  are equal for all  $i, j \in I$ . Therefore there exists an integer  $m \geq 1$  (which again we can choose independent of  $i$  and  $j$ ) such that

$$(f_i f_j)^m (f_j^n a_i - f_i^n a_j) = 0.$$

Replacing  $a_i$  by  $f_i^m a_i$  and  $n$  by  $n + m$  (which does not change  $s_i$ ), we see that  $f_j^n a_i = f_i^n a_j$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . We set

$$s := \sum_{j \in I} b_j a_j \in A,$$

where the  $b_j$  are the elements in (30). Then

$$\begin{aligned} f_i^n s &= f_i^n \left( \sum_{j \in I} b_j a_j \right) \\ &= \sum_{j \in I} b_j (f_i^n a_j) \\ &= \sum_{j \in I} b_j (f_j^n a_i) \\ &= \left( \sum_{j \in I} b_j f_j^n \right) a_i \\ &= a_i. \end{aligned}$$

This means that the image of  $s$  in  $A_{f_i}$  is  $s_i$ .

*Proof.* To simplify notation, we write  $\mathcal{O} = \mathcal{O}_X$ . □

We denote the sheaf of rings on  $X$  associated to  $\mathcal{O}_X$  again by  $\mathcal{O}_X$ . For all points  $x \in X = \text{Spec } A$ , we have

$$\mathcal{O}_{X,x} = \text{colim}_{D(f) \ni x} \mathcal{O}_X(D(f)) = \text{colim}_{f \notin \mathfrak{p}_x} A_f = A_{\mathfrak{p}_x}.$$

In particular,  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  is a locally ringed space. We will often simply write  $\text{Spec } A$  instead of  $(\text{Spec } A, \mathcal{O}_{\text{Spec } A})$ .

*Proof.* Let  $D(f)$  be a principal open set and let  $\{D(f_i)\}_{i \in I}$  be an open covering over  $D(f)$ . We have to show the following two properties:

1. Let  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$  be such that  $s|_{D(f_i)} = 0$  for all  $i \in I$ . Then  $s = 0$ .
2. For  $i \in I$ , let  $s_i \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f_i))$  be such that  $s_i|_{D(f_i f_j)} = s_j|_{D(f_i f_j)}$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . Then there exists  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$  such that  $s|_{D(f_i)} = s_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .

As  $D(f)$  is quasi-compact, we can assume that  $I$  is finite. Restricting the presheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X$  to  $D(f)$  and replacing  $A$  by  $A_f$  if necessary, we may assume that  $f = 1$  and hence  $D(f) = X$  to ease the notation. The relation  $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} D(f_i)$  is equivalent to  $\langle f_i \mid i \in I \rangle = A$  (indeed  $\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}} = A$  implies  $\mathfrak{a} = A$ ). As  $D(f_i) = D(f_i^n)$  for all integers  $n \geq 1$  there exists elements  $b_i \in A$  (depending on  $n$ ) such that

$$\sum_{i \in I} b_i f_i^n = 1. \quad (29)$$

Proof of 1: let  $s = a \in A$  be such that the image of  $a$  in  $A_{f_i}$  is zero for all  $i \in I$ . As  $I$  is finite, there exists an integer  $n \geq 1$ , independent of  $i$ , such that  $f_i^n a = 0$ . By (30),

$$a = \left( \sum_{i \in I} b_i f_i^n \right) a = 0.$$

Proof of 2: as  $I$  is finite, we can write  $s_i = a_i / f_i^n$  for some  $n$  independent of  $i$ . By hypothesis, the images of  $a_i / f_i^n$  and of  $a_j / f_j^n$  in  $A_{f_i f_j}$  are equal for all  $i, j \in I$ . Therefore there exists an integer  $m \geq 1$  (which again we can choose independent of  $i$  and  $j$ ) such that

$$(f_i f_j)^m (f_j^n a_i - f_i^n a_j) = 0.$$

Replacing  $a_i$  by  $f_i^m a_i$  and  $n$  by  $n + m$  (which does not change  $s_i$ ), we see that  $f_j^n a_i = f_i^n a_j$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . We set

$$s := \sum_{j \in I} b_j a_j \in A,$$

where the  $b_j$  are the elements in (30). Then

$$\begin{aligned} f_i^n s &= f_i^n \left( \sum_{j \in I} b_j a_j \right) \\ &= \sum_{j \in I} b_j (f_i^n a_j) \\ &= \sum_{j \in I} b_j (f_j^n a_i) \\ &= \left( \sum_{j \in I} b_j f_j^n \right) a_i \\ &= a_i. \end{aligned}$$

This means that the image of  $s$  in  $A_{f_i}$  is  $s_i$ . □

**Theorem 12.2.** *The presheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is a sheaf.*

We denote the sheaf of rings on  $X$  associated to  $\mathcal{O}_X$  again by  $\mathcal{O}_X$ . For all points  $x \in X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ , we have

$$\mathcal{O}_{X,x} = \operatorname{colim}_{D(f) \ni x} \mathcal{O}_X(D(f)) = \operatorname{colim}_{f \notin \mathfrak{p}_x} A_f = A_{\mathfrak{p}_x}.$$

In particular,  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  is a locally ringed space. We will often simply write  $\operatorname{Spec} A$  instead of  $(\operatorname{Spec} A, \mathcal{O}_{\operatorname{Spec} A})$ .

*Proof.* Let  $D(f)$  be a principal open set and let  $\{D(f_i)\}_{i \in I}$  be an open covering over  $D(f)$ . We have to show the following two properties:

1. Let  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$  be such that  $s|_{D(f_i)} = 0$  for all  $i \in I$ . Then  $s = 0$ .
2. For  $i \in I$ , let  $s_i \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f_i))$  be such that  $s_i|_{D(f_i f_j)} = s_j|_{D(f_i f_j)}$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . Then there exists  $s \in \mathcal{O}_X(D(f))$  such that  $s|_{D(f_i)} = s_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .

As  $D(f)$  is quasi-compact, we can assume that  $I$  is finite. Restricting the presheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X$  to  $D(f)$  and replacing  $A$  by  $A_f$  if necessary, we may assume that  $f = 1$  and hence  $D(f) = X$  to ease the notation. The relation  $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} D(f_i)$  is equivalent to  $\langle f_i \mid i \in I \rangle = A$  (indeed  $\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}} = A$  implies  $\mathfrak{a} = A$ ). As  $D(f_i) = D(f_i^n)$  for all integers  $n \geq 1$  there exists elements  $b_i \in A$  (depending on  $n$ ) such that

$$\sum_{i \in I} b_i f_i^n = 1. \quad (30)$$

Proof of 1: let  $s = a \in A$  be such that the image of  $a$  in  $A_{f_i}$  is zero for all  $i \in I$ . As  $I$  is finite, there exists an integer  $n \geq 1$ , independent of  $i$ , such that  $f_i^n a = 0$ . By (30),

$$a = \left( \sum_{i \in I} b_i f_i^n \right) a = 0.$$

Proof of 2: as  $I$  is finite, we can write  $s_i = a_i / f_i^n$  for some  $n$  independent of  $i$ . By hypothesis, the images of  $a_i / f_i^n$  and of  $a_j / f_j^n$  in  $A_{f_i f_j}$  are equal for all  $i, j \in I$ . Therefore there exists an integer  $m \geq 1$  (which again we can choose independent of  $i$  and  $j$ ) such that

$$(f_i f_j)^m (f_j^n a_i - f_i^n a_j) = 0.$$

Replacing  $a_i$  by  $f_i^m a_i$  and  $n$  by  $n + m$  (which does not change  $s_i$ ), we see that  $f_j^n a_i = f_i^n a_j$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . We set

$$s := \sum_{j \in I} b_j a_j \in A,$$

where the  $b_j$  are the elements in (30). Then

$$\begin{aligned} f_i^n s &= f_i^n \left( \sum_{j \in I} b_j a_j \right) \\ &= \sum_{j \in I} b_j (f_i^n a_j) \\ &= \sum_{j \in I} b_j (f_j^n a_i) \\ &= \left( \sum_{j \in I} b_j f_j^n \right) a_i \\ &= a_i. \end{aligned}$$

This means that the image of  $s$  in  $A_{f_i}$  is  $s_i$ . □

*Remark 22.* We have just proved that the sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{i \in I} A_{f_i} \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{i, j \in I} A_{f_i f_j}$$

is exact.

## 12.2 Viewing Spec and $\Gamma$ as Functors

**Definition 12.1.** A locally ringed space  $X$  is called an **affine scheme**, if there exists a commutative ring  $A$  such that  $X$  is isomorphic to  $\text{Spec } A$  as locally ringed spaces. A **morphism** of affine schemes is a morphism of locally ringed spaces. We obtain the category of affine schemes which we denote by **Aff**.

Recall that **Ring** denotes the category of commutative rings and ring homomorphisms. We view  $\text{Spec}$  as a contravariant functor from **Ring** to **Aff** which takes a ring  $A$  to the affine scheme  $\text{Spec } A = X$  and which takes a ring homomorphism  $\phi: A \rightarrow B$  to the morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of locally ringed spaces where  $Y = \text{Spec } B$ , where the underlying continuous map  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is defined by  $f(\mathfrak{q}) = \phi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  for all primes  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$ , and where the morphism of sheaves  $f^\flat: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow f_* \mathcal{O}_Y$  is defined as follows: given a principal open subset  $D(s)$  of  $X$  (where  $s \in A$ ), we define

$$f_{D(s)}^\flat: \mathcal{O}_X(D(s)) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y(D(\phi(s)))$$

to be the map  $\phi_s: A_s \rightarrow B_{\phi(s)}$  where  $\phi_s$  is the localization of  $\phi$  with respect to the multiplicative set  $\{s^n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ . In other words, we have

$$f_{D(s)}^\flat(\alpha) = f_{D(s)}^\flat(a/s^n) = \phi(a)/\phi(s)^n := \phi(\alpha)$$

for all  $\alpha = a/s^n \in A_s$ . As the principal open subsets form a basis of the topology, this defines a homomorphism  $f^\flat: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow f_* \mathcal{O}_Y$  of sheaves of rings. For instance, if  $U = D(s_1, s_2) = D(s_1) \cup D(s_2)$ , then  $f^{-1}(U) = D(\phi(s_1), \phi(s_2))$  and  $f_U^\flat$  is the map

$$\mathcal{O}_X(U) := A_{s_1} \times_{A_{s_1 s_2}} A_{s_2} \xrightarrow{f_U^\flat} B_{\phi(s_1)} \times_{B_{\phi(s_1 s_2)}} B_{\phi(s_2)} := \mathcal{O}_Y(f^{-1}(U))$$

given by  $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \mapsto (\phi(\alpha_1), \phi(\alpha_2))$ . Finally, let  $\mathfrak{q} = y \in Y$  and denote  $x = \mathfrak{p} = f(\mathfrak{q}) = \phi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$ . Then the homomorphism  $f_y^\#: \mathcal{O}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y,y}$  corresponds to the local ring homomorphism  $\phi_{\mathfrak{q}}: A_{\mathfrak{p}} \rightarrow B_{\mathfrak{q}}$ , and as  $\phi_{\mathfrak{q}}$  is local, we get an embedding of residue fields  $\iota_{\mathfrak{q}}: \kappa(\mathfrak{p}) \rightarrow \kappa(\mathfrak{q})$ .

Conversely, we view  $\Gamma$  as a contravariant functor from **Aff** to **Ring** which takes the affine scheme  $X$  to the commutative ring  $\mathcal{O}_X(X) := A$  and which takes a morphism of affine schemes  $(f, f^\flat): X \rightarrow Y$  to the homomorphism of rings  $\phi: B \rightarrow A$  where  $B := \mathcal{O}_Y(Y)$  and where  $\phi = f_Y^\flat$ .

**Theorem 12.3.** *The functors  $\text{Spec}$  and  $\Gamma$  define an anti-equivalence between the category of rings and the category of affine schemes.*

*Proof.* The functor  $\text{Spec}$  is by definition essentially surjective. Moreover,  $\Gamma \circ \text{Spec}$  is clearly isomorphic to  $1_{\mathbf{Ring}}$ . Therefore it suffices to show that for any two rings  $A$  and  $B$ , the maps

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ring}}(A, B) \xrightleftharpoons[\Gamma]{\text{Spec}} \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Aff}}(\text{Spec } B, \text{Spec } A)$$

are mutually inverse bijections. Let  $f: \text{Spec } B \rightarrow \text{Spec } A$  be a morphism of affine schemes and set  $\phi = \Gamma(f)$ . We have to show that  ${}^a\phi = f$ . If  $\mathfrak{q}_y$  is a prime ideal of  $B$  corresponding to a point  $y \in Y = \text{Spec } B$ , then  $f_y^\#$  is the unique ring homomorphism which makes the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{\phi} & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A_{\mathfrak{p}_{f(y)}} & \xrightarrow{f_y^\#} & B_{\mathfrak{q}_y} \end{array}$$

commutative. This shows that  $\phi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q}_y) \subseteq \mathfrak{p}_{f(y)}$ . As  $f_y^\#$  is local, we have equality. This shows that  ${}^a\phi = f$  as continuous maps. Now the definitions of  ${}^a\phi^\#$  shows that  ${}^a\phi_y^\#$  makes the diagram above commutative as well and hence  ${}^a\phi_y^\# = f_y^\#$  for all  $y \in Y$ . This proves  ${}^a\phi^\# = f^\#$ .  $\square$

## 13 Schemes

### 13.1 Definition of Schemes

**Definition 13.1.** A **scheme** is a locally ringed space  $X = (X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  which admits an open covering  $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$  such that all locally ringed spaces  $U_i = (U_i, \mathcal{O}_{X|U_i})$  are affine schemes. A **morphism** of schemes is a morphism of locally ringed spaces. We obtain a category of schemes which we will denote by **Sch**.

*Remark 23.* To simplify notation in what follows, we denote a scheme  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  simply by  $X$ . If we write “let  $X$  be a scheme”, then it is understood that the corresponding structure sheaf of  $X$  is denoted  $\mathcal{O}_X$ .

**Definition 13.2.** Fix a scheme  $S$ . The category of **schemes over  $S$**  (or  **$S$ -schemes**), denoted **Sch $_S$**  is the category whose objects are morphisms  $X \rightarrow S$  of schemes, and whose morphisms from  $X \rightarrow S$  to  $Y \rightarrow S$  are the morphisms  $X \rightarrow Y$  of schemes with the property that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y \\ & \searrow & \swarrow \\ & S & \end{array}$$

The morphism  $X \rightarrow S$  is called the **structural morphism** of the  $S$ -scheme  $X$  (and often is silently omitted from the notation). The scheme  $S$  is also sometimes called the **base scheme**. In the case that  $S = \text{Spec } R$  is an affine scheme, one also speaks about  **$R$ -schemes** or **schemes over  $R$**  instead. For  $S$ -schemes  $X$  and  $Y$  we denote the set of morphisms  $Y \rightarrow X$  in the category of  $S$ -schemes by  $\text{Hom}_S(Y, X)$  (or by  $\text{Hom}_R(Y, X)$  if  $S = \text{Spec } R$  is affine).

### 13.2 Open subschemes

Let  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  be a continuous map and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a sheaf on  $Y$ . Recall that there is a morphism  $f^\diamond: \mathcal{G} \rightarrow f_*(f^{-1}\mathcal{G})$  which is defined as follows: for all  $V \subseteq Y$  open, set  $U = f^{-1}(V)$  and define

$$f_V^\diamond(t) = [V, t]_{f(U)}$$

for all  $t \in \mathcal{G}(V)$ . Notice that this map makes sense because  $V \subseteq f(U)$ . Furthermore it is easy to check that the  $f_V^\diamond$  ranging over all  $V \subseteq Y$  open constitute a morphism  $f^\diamond: \mathcal{G} \rightarrow f_*(f^{-1}\mathcal{G})$  of sheaves on  $Y$ . Let us see what this morphism looks like in the case where  $X$  is a scheme and where  $\iota: U \rightarrow X$  is the inclusion map from an open set  $U \subseteq X$  to  $X$ . First of all, recall that we define a sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_{X|U}$  on  $U$  by  $\mathcal{O}_{X|U} := \iota^{-1}\mathcal{O}_X$  where  $\iota^{-1}\mathcal{O}_X$  is the sheafification of  $\iota^+\mathcal{O}_X$ . Since  $\iota$  is an open map, we have

$$\iota^+\mathcal{O}_X(U') = \mathcal{O}_X(U')$$

for all  $U' \subseteq U$  open. In particular,  $\iota^+ \mathcal{O}_X$  is already a sheaf. Thus  $\mathcal{O}_{X|U} = \iota^{-1} \mathcal{O}_X = \iota^+ \mathcal{O}_X$ , and it is very easy to describe what the sections in  $\mathcal{O}_{X|U}(U')$  look like (namely  $\mathcal{O}_{X|U}(U') = \mathcal{O}_X(U')$ ). Also note that for every  $V \subseteq X$  open, we have

$$\iota_* \mathcal{O}_{X|U}(V) = \mathcal{O}_{X|U}(U \cap V) = \mathcal{O}_X(U \cap V).$$

Taking this altogether, we see that

$$\iota_*(\iota^{-1} \mathcal{O}_X)(V) = \iota_* \mathcal{O}_{X|U}(V) = \mathcal{O}_X(U \cap V)$$

for all  $V \subseteq X$  open, and the corresponding morphism  $\iota^\diamond: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \iota_* \mathcal{O}_{X|U}$  has a simple description: it is given by

$$\iota_V^\diamond(t) = t|_{U \cap V}$$

for all  $V \subseteq X$  open and for all  $t \in \mathcal{O}_X(V)$ .

**Proposition 13.1.** *Let  $X$  be a scheme and let  $U$  be an open subset of  $X$ . The locally ringed space  $U = (U, \mathcal{O}_{X|U})$  is a scheme. We call  $U$  an **open subscheme** of  $X$ . If  $U$  is an affine scheme, then  $U$  is called an **affine open subscheme**. The affine open subschemes of  $X$  form a basis of the topology. If  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  is an affine scheme, then  $D(f) = (D(f), \mathcal{O}_{X|D(f)})$  is an affine scheme with coordinate ring  $A_f$ . Subschemes of this form are called **principally open**.*

*Proof.* We first work locally: suppose  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  is an affine scheme and that  $U \subseteq X$  is an open subset, thus  $U = D(\mathfrak{a})$  for some ideal  $\mathfrak{a}$  of  $A$ . We want to show that  $U = (U, \mathcal{O}_{X|U})$  is a scheme. Observe that

$$U = D(\mathfrak{a}) = \bigcup_{t \in \mathfrak{a}} D(t) = \bigcup_{t \in \mathfrak{a}} \operatorname{Spec} A_t.$$

Thus  $U$  can be covered by affine schemes and this implies  $U$  is a scheme.

Next we work globally: suppose  $X$  is an arbitrary scheme and suppose  $U \subseteq X$  is an open subset. We want to show  $U = (U, \mathcal{O}_{X|U})$  is a scheme. Let  $\bigcup_i U_i = X$  be an open covering of  $X$  by affine schemes  $U_i = \operatorname{Spec} A_i$ . Then  $\bigcup_i U \cap U_i = U$  is an open covering of  $U$  by schemes  $U \cap U_i$ . It follows that  $U$  itself is a scheme. Indeed, let  $\bigcup_j V_{i,j} = U \cap U_i$  be an open covering of  $U \cap U_i$  by affine schemes  $V_{i,j}$ . Then  $\bigcup_{i,j} V_{i,j} = U$  is an open covering of  $U$  by affine schemes.  $\square$

*Remark 24.* If  $U \subseteq X$  is open, then we think of it as an open subscheme of  $X$ . Whenever we speak about a morphism of schemes from  $U$  to  $X$ , then we are just talking about the morphism  $(\iota, \iota^\diamond)$  where  $\iota$  is the inclusion map and where  $\iota^\diamond$  was defined above.

### 13.3 Morphisms to Affine Schemes

Morphisms of an arbitrary scheme (or even an arbitrary locally ringed space) into an affine scheme are easy to understand, as the following proposition shows:

**Proposition 13.2.** *Let  $Y$  be a locally ringed space, let  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  be an affine scheme, and let  $B = \Gamma(Y, \mathcal{O}_Y)$ . Then the natural map*

$$\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sch}}(Y, X) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ring}}(A, B)$$

*given by  $f \mapsto f_Y^\flat$  is a bijection.*

*Proof.* We will only prove this in the case where  $Y$  is a scheme. Let  $Y = \bigcup_i V_i$  be an affine open covering and set  $B_i = \Gamma(V_i, \mathcal{O}_Y)$ . For all  $V_i$  the natural map

$$\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sch}}(V_i, X) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ring}}(A, B_i)$$

given by  $f|_{V_i} \mapsto f_{V_i}^\flat$  is a bijection by Theorem (12.3). For an affine open  $V_{i,j} \subseteq V_i \cap V_j$  where  $V_{i,j} = \operatorname{Spec} B_{i,j}$ , the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \operatorname{Hom}(V_i, X) & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{Hom}(A, B_i) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \operatorname{Hom}(V_{i,j}, X) & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{Hom}(A, B_{i,j}) \end{array}$$

is commutative, since  $\Gamma(-)$  is functorial. The assertion now follows from the following general proposition about gluing of morphisms.  $\square$

**Proposition 13.3.** *(Gluing of morphisms) Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be locally ringed spaces. For every  $V \subseteq Y$  open, let  $\operatorname{Hom}(V, X)$  be the set of morphisms  $V \rightarrow X$  of locally ringed spaces. Then  $V \mapsto \operatorname{Hom}(V, X)$  is a sheaf of sets on  $Y$ .*



### 13.4 Morphisms to Projective Space

**Proposition 13.4.** *Let  $(B, \mathfrak{n})$  be a local  $R$ -algebra where  $R$  is a ring and let  $Y = \operatorname{Spec} B$ . Then*

$$\operatorname{Hom}_R(Y, \mathbb{P}_R^n) \simeq \mathbb{P}^n(Y) \simeq \{\mathbf{b} = (b_0, \dots, b_n) \in B^{n+1} \mid b_i \text{ is a unit for some } i\} / \sim,$$

where  $\sim$  is an equivalence relation defined by  $\mathbf{b} \sim \mathbf{b}'$  if  $\mathbf{b} = u\mathbf{b}' = (ub'_0, \dots, ub'_n)$  where  $u \in B^\times$ . We denote by  $[\mathbf{b}] = [b_0 : \dots : b_n]$  to be the equivalence class with  $\mathbf{b}$  as a particular representative.

*Proof.* Write  $\mathbb{P}_R^n = \operatorname{Proj} R[x_0, \dots, x_n] = \operatorname{Proj} R[\mathbf{x}]$ . Let  $f: Y \rightarrow \mathbb{P}_R^n$  be a morphism of  $R$ -schemes and suppose that  $f(\mathfrak{n}) \in U_i = D_+(x_i)$ . The preimage  $f^{-1}(U_i)$  is an open subset of  $Y$  containing  $\mathfrak{n}$ . Since  $\mathfrak{n}$  is in the closure of every point of  $Y$ , we must in fact have  $f^{-1}(U_i) = Y$ , or in other words, we have  $f(Y) \subseteq U_i$ . Thus the map  $f$  is given by the map of  $R$ -algebras  $\varphi_i: R[\mathbf{x}/x_i] \rightarrow B$ . We associate to  $f$  the  $(n+1)$ -tuple  $\mathbf{b}_i = (b_{0,i}, \dots, b_{n,i}) \in B^{n+1}$  where

$$b_{j,i} = \begin{cases} \varphi_i(x_j/x_i) & \text{if } j \neq i \\ 1 & \text{if } j = i \end{cases}$$

Note that if  $f(Y) \subseteq U_j$  for some  $j \neq i$ , then by the same argument as above,  $f$  is also given by a map of  $R$ -algebras  $\varphi_j: R[\mathbf{x}/x_j] \rightarrow B$  and in this case we would associate to  $f$  the  $(n+1)$ -tuple  $\mathbf{b}_j = (b_{0,j}, \dots, b_{n,j})$  where

$$b_{i,j} = \begin{cases} \varphi_j(x_i/x_j) & \text{if } i \neq j \\ 1 & \text{if } i = j \end{cases}$$

Note that  $b_{i,j}$  is a unit in  $B$  (whose inverse is  $b_{j,i}$ ) and we have  $b_{i,j}\mathbf{b}_i = \mathbf{b}_j$  since  $b_{i,j}b_{k,i} = b_{k,j}$  for every  $k$ . Thus we have  $[\mathbf{b}_i] = [\mathbf{b}_j]$ . Conversely, given an  $n+1$ -tuple  $\mathbf{b} \in B^{n+1}$  with  $b_i$  a unit, we map  $Y$  to  $U_i$  via the map corresponding to the  $R$ -algebra homomorphism  $R[\mathbf{x}/x_i] \rightarrow B$  given by  $x_j/x_i \mapsto b_j/b_i$ .  $\square$

We regard the  $(n+1)$ -tuple in the proposition above as giving a  $B$ -module homomorphism  $\mathbf{b}: B^{n+1} \rightarrow B$ . To say that  $\mathbf{b}$  is surjective is equivalent to saying that any of the  $b_i$  is a unit in  $B$ , and two such maps are equivalent if they differ by composition with an automorphism of the  $B$ -module  $B$  (that is, multiplication by a unit). Equivalently, the kernel is a rank- $n$  summand of  $B^{n+1}$ . It turns out that this last sentence generalizes to describe  $R$ -morphisms from an arbitrary  $R$ -scheme  $Y$  to  $\mathbb{P}_R^n$ :

**Theorem 13.1.** *For any scheme  $Y$  we have natural bijections*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}^n(Y) &\simeq \{\text{subsheaves } \mathcal{K} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_Y^{n+1} \text{ that locally are summands of rank } n\} \\ &\simeq \frac{\{\text{invertible sheaves } \mathcal{J} \text{ on } Y \text{ together with an epimorphism } \mathcal{O}_Y^{n+1} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}\}}{\{\text{units of } \mathcal{O}_Y(Y) \text{ acting as automorphisms of } \mathcal{J}\}}. \end{aligned}$$

Here “natural” means that for any morphism  $f: Y' \rightarrow Y$  of schemes, the map  $\mathbb{P}^n(Y) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^n(Y')$  given by composition with  $f$  commutes with pullback of invertible sheaves and epimorphisms; in other words, we have an isomorphism of functors from the category of schemes to the category of sets. Note that if  $Y$  is an  $S$ -scheme, then after applying the structure morphism  $Y \rightarrow S$  we get a bijection  $\mathbb{P}^n(Y) \simeq \operatorname{Hom}_S(Y, \mathbb{P}_S^n)$ . Indeed, this follows from the fact that  $\mathbb{P}_S^n = \mathbb{P}^n \times S$  and thus universal mapping property says that an  $S$ -morphism  $Y \rightarrow \mathbb{P}_S^n$  is uniquely determined by a morphism  $Y \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^n$ . Since all of the terms in these isomorphisms are defined locally on  $Y$ , the theorem easily reduces to the case where  $Y$  is affine.

**Proposition 13.5.** *Let  $B$  be any ring and let  $Y = \operatorname{Spec} B$ . Then*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}^n(Y) &\simeq \{\text{submodules } K \subseteq B^{n+1} \text{ that locally are summands of rank } n\} \\ &\simeq \{\text{invertible } B\text{-modules } J \text{ with an epimorphism } B^{n+1} \twoheadrightarrow J\} / \sim \end{aligned}$$

where an isomorphism from  $\varphi: B^{n+1} \twoheadrightarrow J$  to  $\varphi': B^{n+1} \twoheadrightarrow J'$  is an isomorphism  $\alpha: J \rightarrow J'$  such that  $\alpha\varphi = \varphi'$ . Note that the set of such isomorphisms is either empty or in (non-natural) one-to-one correspondence with the units of  $B$ .

*Proof.* First suppose  $K$  is locally a rank  $n$  free summand of  $B^{n+1}$  and write  $J = B^{n+1}/K$ . This module is locally free of rank 1 and generated by the  $n+1$  images of  $e_i$  of the  $n+1$  generators of  $B^{n+1}$ . Let  $I_j$  be the annihilator of  $J/Be_j$  and let  $V_j = D(I_j)$  in  $Y$  so that the  $V_j$  form an open cover of  $Y$ . Regard  $B$ -modules as sheaves on  $Y$ . On  $V_j$  the map  $B \rightarrow J$  defined by  $1 \mapsto e_j$  is an isomorphism, and identifying  $J|_{V_j}$  with  $B|_{V_j}$  via this map, the projection

$$B^{n+1}|_{V_j} \rightarrow J|_{V_j} = B|_{V_j}$$

has a matrix of the form  $\mathbf{b}_j = (b_{0,j}, \dots, b_{j,j} = 1, \dots, b_{n,j})$  which defines an element of  $B^{n+1}|_{V_j}$  and thus a morphism  $Y \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^n$ . These morphisms agree on overlaps so they define a morphism  $Y \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^n$ .

Conversely, suppose that we are given a morphism  $f: \operatorname{Spec} B \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^n$ . Since  $\mathbb{P}^n$  is covered by  $n+1$  affine  $n$ -spaces,  $f$  is by definition associated to an open cover  $\operatorname{Spec} B = \bigcup_{i=0}^n V_i$  and for each  $i$  an element  $\mathbf{b}_i = (b_{0,i}, \dots, b_{i,i} = 1, \dots, b_{n,i})$

of  $B_i^{n+1}$  such that  $b_{k,i} = b_{k,j}b_{j,i}$  in  $B_{ij}$  for all  $i, j, k$  where we set  $B_i = B|_{V_i}$  and  $B_{ij} = B|_{V_i \cap V_j}$ . In particular, note that  $b_{i,j}$  is a unit in  $B_{ij}$  since  $b_{j,i}b_{i,j} = 1$  in  $B_{ij}$ . Two such  $B$ -valued points are the same if and only if the corresponding elements of  $B_i^{n+1}$  are equal for each  $i$ . Let  $K_i$  be the kernel of the map  $\mathbf{b}_i: B_i^{n+1} \rightarrow B_i$ . In particular, note that  $K$  is generated by  $\mathbf{w}_k = (w_{0,k}, \dots, w_{n,k}) \in B_i^{n+1}$  where  $k = 0, \dots, i-1, i+1, \dots, n$  and

$$w_{j,k} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } j = k \\ -b_{k,i} & \text{if } j = i \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

In other words,  $\mathbf{w}_k$  is the  $k$ th the column vector of the  $(n+1) \times n$  matrix below:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \vdots & 0 & \cdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ -b_{0,i} & -b_{1,i} & \cdots & -b_{n-1,i} & -b_{n,i} \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & 0 & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notice in  $B_{ij}$  we have  $(K_i)_{V_j} = K_{ij} = (K_j)|_{V_i}$  where we set  $K_{ij} = \ker(\mathbf{b}_i: B_{ij}^{n+1} \rightarrow B_{ij}) = \ker(\mathbf{b}_j: B_{ij}^{n+1} \rightarrow B_{ij})$ . Indeed, in  $B_{ij}$  we have  $\mathbf{b}_i = (b_i/b_j)\mathbf{b}_j$  with  $b_i/b_j$  being a unit in  $B_{ij}$ . Therefore the maps  $\mathbf{b}_i: B_{ij}^{n+1} \rightarrow B_{ij}$  and  $\mathbf{b}_j: B_{ij}^{n+1} \rightarrow B_{ij}$  have the same kernel. In particular, the  $K_i$ 's will glue to the submodule of  $B^{n+1}$  given by

$$K := \{\mathbf{b} \in B^{n+1} \mid \mathbf{b}|_{V_i} \in K_i \text{ for each } i\}.$$

Now set  $L := B^{n+1}/K$ . We claim that  $K$  is locally a rank  $n$  summand of  $B^{n+1}$  or equivalently that  $L$  is an invertible  $B$ -module. To see this, note that any local ring of  $B$  is a local ring of one of the  $V_i$  so the result of localizing the sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow K \longrightarrow B^{n+1} \longrightarrow L \longrightarrow 0 \quad (31)$$

at any prime  $\mathfrak{q}$  is a sequence of the form

$$0 \longrightarrow K_{\mathfrak{q}} \longrightarrow B_{\mathfrak{q}}^{n+1} \longrightarrow B_{\mathfrak{q}} \longrightarrow 0 \quad (32)$$

and such a sequence must split.  $\square$

*Remark 25.* To derive the version for invertible modules, we use the fact that  $K \subseteq B^{n+1}$  is a direct summand of rank  $n$  if and only if  $B^{n+1}/K$  is an invertible.

## 13.5 Basic properties of Schemes and Morphism of Schemes

### 13.5.1 Topological Properties

**Definition 13.3.** Let  $X$  be a scheme and let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes.

1. We say  $f$  is **quasi-compact** if  $f^{-1}$  takes quasi-compact sets to quasi-compact sets.
2. We say  $X$  is **quasi-separated** if the intersection of any two quasi-compact open subsets is again quasi-compact.
3. We say  $X$  is **irreducible**, if the underlying topological space is irreducible.
4. We say  $f$  is **injective**, **surjective**, or **bijective**, if the continuous map  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of the underlying topological spaces has this property.
5. We say  $f$  is **open**, **closed**, or a **homeomorphism**, if the continuous map  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of the underlying topological spaces has this property.

Furthermore, we often say  $X$  has property  $P$  if  $X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{Z}$  has property  $P$  (for instance, we say  $X$  is quasi-compact if  $X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{Z}$  is quasi-compact).



*Remark 26.* Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. Recall that the morphism  $f^b: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_Y$  of sheaves on  $X$  is surjective if and only if  $f_y: \mathcal{O}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y,y}$  is a surjective homomorphism of local rings  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  and  $\mathcal{O}_{Y,y}$  for all  $y \in Y$  where we set  $x = f(y)$ . If  $f$  is surjective, then it need not be the case that  $f^b: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_Y$  is surjective. For a simple example of this, consider the morphism  $\text{Spec } L \rightarrow \text{Spec } K$  where  $L/K$  is an extension of fields with  $K \neq L$ .

*Remark 27.* Surjective morphisms of schemes need not be *epimorphisms*. Indeed, let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field, let  $X = \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon]$ , let  $Y = \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}$  where  $\mathbb{k}[\varepsilon] = \mathbb{k}[t]/\langle t^2 \rangle$ , and let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be the closed immersion of the simple point to the double point corresponding to the homomorphism  $\varphi: \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon] \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$  of  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebras sending  $\varepsilon \mapsto 0$ . Also let  $f_1, f_2: X \rightarrow X$  be the morphisms corresponding to the  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra homomorphisms  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2: \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon] \rightarrow \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon]$  given by  $\varphi_1(\varepsilon) = 0$  and  $\varphi_2(\varepsilon) = \varepsilon$  respectively. Then we have  $f_1 \circ f = f_2 \circ f$  but  $f_1 \neq f_2$ .

Similarly, epimorphisms of schemes need not be surjective morphisms. Indeed, let  $X = \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  where  $\mathbb{k}$  is an algebraically closed field and let  $Y$  be the discrete scheme obtained from the disjoint union (=coproduct) of all the closed points of  $X$ . The natural morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  has image  $X$  minus the generic point of  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  and is thus not surjective. However one can show that this is an epimorphism.

**Proposition 13.6.** *Let  $X$  be a noetherian topological space which is  $T_0$ . Then  $X$  has a closed point.*

*Proof.* Choose a point  $x_1$  in  $X$ . If  $x_1$  is closed, then we are done, otherwise choose  $x_2 \in \overline{\{x_1\}}$  such that  $x_2 \neq x_1$ . Since  $X$  is  $T_0$ , there exists an open neighborhood  $U$  of  $x_1$  such that  $x_2 \notin U$ . In particular, this implies  $\overline{\{x_1\}} \supset \overline{\{x_2\}}$  where the containment is strict. Now if  $x_2$  is closed, then we choose  $x_3 \in \overline{\{x_2\}}$  such that  $x_3 \neq x_2$ . Proceeding inductively, we obtain a strictly descending sequence of closed irreducible sets:

$$\overline{\{x_1\}} \supset \overline{\{x_2\}} \supset \cdots \supset \overline{\{x_i\}} \supset \overline{\{x_{i+1}\}} \supset \cdots$$

Since  $X$  is noetherian, this sequence must terminate, say at  $\overline{\{x_n\}}$ . Then  $x_n$  is our desired closed point of  $X$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 13.7.** *Let  $X$  be a scheme such that the underlying topological space is quasicompact. Then  $X$  has a closed point.*

*Proof.* By assumption, we can cover  $X$  by finitely many affine opens, say  $U_i = \text{Spec } A_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Every  $U_i$  has a closed point since these correspond to maximal ideals of  $A_i$  (which always exists by Zorn's lemma). Thus let  $x_1 \in U_1$  be a closed point in  $U_1$ . If  $x_1$  is closed in  $X$ , then we are done, otherwise choose  $x_2 \in \overline{\{x_1\}}$  with  $x_2 \neq x_1$ . Note that necessarily  $x_2 \notin U_1$ . Without loss of generality, say  $x_2 \in U_2$ . By choosing an appropriate point of the closure of  $\{x_2\}$  in  $U_2$  if necessary, we may assume that  $x_2$  is closed in  $U_2$ . If  $x_2$  is closed in  $X$ , then we are done, otherwise we choose  $x_3 \in \overline{\{x_2\}}$ . Proceeding by induction, we get a sequence of points  $x_1, \dots, x_n \in X$  such that  $x_{i+1} \in \overline{\{x_i\}}$ ,  $x_{i+1} \notin U_1 \cup \cdots \cup U_i$ , and  $x_{i+1}$  is closed in  $U_{i+1}$ . This process must terminate at a closed point in  $X$  since there are only finitely many  $U_i$ .  $\square$

*Remark 28.* There are examples of schemes with no closed points. Necessarily such schemes are not quasicompact.

**Proposition 13.8.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a morphism of schemes. The following are equivalent:*

1.  $f: X \rightarrow S$  is quasi-compact,
2. the inverse image of every affine open is quasi-compact, and
3. there exists some affine open covering  $S = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$  such that  $f^{-1}(U_i)$  is quasi-compact for all  $i$ .

*In particular,  $f$  being quasi-compact is a local on the target property.*

*Proof.* That (1) implies (2) which implies (3) is clear. Let us show (3) implies (1). Suppose  $S = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$  is an affine covering of  $S$ , say  $U_i = \text{Spec } R_i$ , and assume that  $f^{-1}(U_i)$  is quasi-compact for all  $i$ . Then  $f^{-1}(U_i)$  can be expressed as a finite union of affine opens of  $Y$ , say  $f^{-1}(U_i) = \bigcup_{j=1}^{n_i} V_{ij}$  where  $V_{ij} = \text{Spec } A_{ij}$ . Now given  $s_i \in R_i$ , let  $t_{ij} \in A_{ij}$  be the image of  $s_i$  under the ring map  $R_i \rightarrow A_{ij}$ . Observe that  $(f|_{V_{ij}})^{-1}(D(s_i)) = D(t_{ij})$ , or in other words,

$$f^{-1}(D(s_i)) \cap V_{ij} = D(t_{ij}).$$

It follows that  $f^{-1}(D(s_i)) = \bigcup_j D(t_{ij})$ . Thus if  $K$  is any quasi-compact subset of  $X$ , then we can cover it by finitely many distinguished opens of the  $U_i$ , and it follows that  $f^{-1}(K)$  is quasi-compact.  $\square$

*Remark 29.* If  $X$  is separated, then the proposition above still holds when we assume the  $U_i$  are just quasi-compact (and not necessarily affine). However if  $X$  is not separated, then we need to assume the  $U_i$  are affine because otherwise the proposition may not be true.

**Lemma 13.2.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a quasicompact morphism of schemes. The following are equivalent:*

1.  $f(X) \subseteq S$  is closed;
2.  $f(X) \subseteq S$  is stable under specialization.

*Proof.* First we show 1 implies 2, so assume  $f(X)$  is closed in  $S$ . Let  $s, s' \in S$  such that  $s \in f(X)$  and  $s'$  is a specialization of  $s$ . Then  $s' \in \overline{\{s\}} \subseteq f(X)$  since  $f(X)$  is closed. Now we show 2 implies 1, so assume  $f(X) \subseteq S$  is stable under specialization. Let  $U \subseteq S$  be an affine open. It suffices to prove that  $f(X) \cap U$  is closed in  $U$ . Since  $f(X) \cap U$  is stable under specializations in  $U$ , we have reduced to the case where  $S$  is affine. Since  $f$  is quasicompact, we deduce that  $X = f^{-1}(S)$  is quasicompact as  $S$  is affine. Thus we may write  $X = \bigcup_{i=1}^n V_i$  with  $V_i \subseteq X$  open affine, say  $S = \text{Spec } R$  and  $V_i = \text{Spec } A_i$  for some  $R$ -algebra  $A_i$ . Then we have

$$f(X) = \text{im}(\text{Spec}(A_1 \times \cdots \times A_n) \rightarrow \text{Spec } R).$$

Thus we have reduced to the case where  $X = \text{Spec } A$  is affine and the morphism  $f: X \rightarrow S$  corresponds to the ring map  $\varphi: R \rightarrow A$ . Furthermore, by replacing  $R$  with  $R/\ker \varphi$  if necessary, we may assume that  $\varphi$  is injective. Since  $f(X) \subseteq S$  is stable under specialization, it remains to show that  $f(X)$  contains all of the minimal primes of  $R$ . Let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be a minimal prime of  $R$ . Then  $R_{\mathfrak{p}}$  has a unique prime ideal and thus there exists a prime of  $A$  which lies over  $\mathfrak{p}$  if and only if  $A_{\mathfrak{p}} \neq 0$ . However this is true from the fact that  $\varphi: R \rightarrow A$  is injective and localization is exact.  $\square$

**Lemma 13.3.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a quasicompact morphism of schemes. Then  $f$  is closed if and only if specializations lift along  $f$ .*

*Proof.* We first assume  $f$  is closed. Let  $s, s' \in S$  and  $x \in X$  such that  $f(x) = s$  and  $s' \in \overline{\{s\}}$ . Since  $f$  is closed,  $f(\overline{\{x\}})$  is a closed neighborhood of  $s$ , hence  $s' \in \overline{\{s\}} \subseteq f(\overline{\{x\}})$ . It follows that there exists an  $x' \in \overline{\{x\}}$  such that  $f(x') = s'$ . Now we assume that specializations lift along  $f$ . Let  $Z \subseteq X$  be a closed subset. We may think of  $Z$  as a scheme with the reduced induced scheme structure. Since  $Z \subseteq X$  is closed, the restriction of  $f$  to  $Z$  is still quasicompact. Moreover specializations lift along  $Z \rightarrow S$  as well. Hence it suffices to prove  $f(X)$  is closed if specializations lift along  $f$ . In particular,  $f(X)$  is stable under specializations, hence it is closed by the lemma above.  $\square$

**Lemma 13.4.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a quasi-compact, surjective, flat morphism. A subset  $T \subseteq X$  is open (resp. closed) if and only if  $f^{-1}(T)$  is open (resp. closed). In other words,  $f$  is a submersive morphism.*

*Proof.* The question is local on  $X$ , so we may assume  $X$  is affine. In this case  $Y$  is quasi-compact because  $f$  is quasi-compact. Write  $Y = Y_1 \cup \cdots \cup Y_n$  as a finite union of affine opens. Then  $f': Y' := Y_1 \amalg \cdots \amalg Y_n \rightarrow X$  is a surjective flat morphism of affine schemes. Note that for  $T \subseteq X$  we have

$$(f')^{-1}(T) = f^{-1}(T) \cap Y_1 \amalg \cdots \amalg f^{-1}(T) \cap Y_n.$$

Hence  $f^{-1}(T)$  is open (resp. closed) if and only if  $(f')^{-1}(T)$  is open (resp. closed). Thus we may assume both  $Y$  and  $X$  are affine, say  $Y = \text{Spec } B$ ,  $X = \text{Spec } A$ , and  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  corresponds to a flat ring map  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$ . Suppose that  $f^{-1}(T)$  is closed, say  $f^{-1}(T) = V(\mathfrak{b})$  for an ideal  $\mathfrak{b}$  of  $B$ . Then  $T = f(f^{-1}(T)) = f(V(\mathfrak{b}))$  is the image of  $\text{Spec}(B/\mathfrak{b}) \rightarrow X$  (here we use that  $f$  is surjective). On the other hand, generizations lift along  $f$  since  $f$  is flat. Hence  $X \setminus T = f(Y \setminus f^{-1}(T))$  is stable under generization. Hence  $T$  is stable under specialization. Thus  $T$  is closed.  $\square$

### 13.5.2 Noetherian Schemes

**Definition 13.4.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. We say  $X$  is **locally noetherian** if  $X$  admits an affine open cover  $X = \bigcup U_i$ , where  $U_i = \text{Spec } A_i$  for all  $i$ , such that all of the affine coordinate rings  $\mathcal{O}(U_i) = A_i$  are noetherian. If in addition  $X$  is quasi-compact, then we say  $X$  is **noetherian**.

*Remark 30.* Note that since any localization of a noetherian ring is noetherian again, we see that every locally noetherian scheme has a basis of its topology consisting of noetherian affine open subschemes. We also see that the local rings  $\mathcal{O}_x$  of a locally noetherian scheme  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  are all noetherian local rings. However the converse need not be true: even for affine schemes  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$ , it need not be the case that if  $\mathcal{O}_x$  is noetherian for all  $x \in X$  then  $X$  is noetherian. Equivalently, there exists a commutative ring  $A$  such that  $A_{\mathfrak{p}}$  is noetherian for all prime ideals  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$ , but  $A$  itself is not noetherian.

### 13.5.3 Fibre Product of Schemes

**Lemma 13.5.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow T$ ,  $f': X' \rightarrow T$ , and  $\iota: T \rightarrow S$  be morphisms of schemes such that  $\iota$  is a monomorphism. Then*

$$X \times_T X' = X \times_S X'.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\rho_1: X \times_T X' \rightarrow X$  and  $\rho_2: X \times_T X' \rightarrow X'$  denote the canonical projection maps for  $X \times_T X'$  and let  $\pi_1: X \times_S X' \rightarrow X$  and  $\pi_2: X \times_S X' \rightarrow X'$  denote the canonical projection maps for  $X \times_S X'$ . On the one hand,

$$(\iota \circ f) \circ \rho_1 = \iota \circ (f \circ \rho_1) = \iota \circ (f' \circ \rho_2) = (\iota \circ f') \circ \rho_2$$

implies there exists a unique morphism  $\tau: X \times_T X' \rightarrow X \times_S X'$  such that  $\rho_1 = \pi_1 \circ \tau$  and  $\rho_2 = \pi_2 \circ \tau$ . On the other hand, we have

$$f \circ \pi_1 = f' \circ \pi_2$$

since  $\iota$  is a monomorphism. This implies there exists a unique morphism  $\sigma: X \times_S X' \rightarrow X \times_T X'$  such that  $\pi_1 = \rho_1 \circ \sigma$  and  $\pi_2 = \rho_2 \circ \sigma$ . Using the universal mapping property, one can show that  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  are inverse to each other.  $\square$

**Example 13.1.** Keep the notation as in Lemma (13.5) and assume further that  $X = \operatorname{Spec} C$ ,  $X' = \operatorname{Spec} C'$ ,  $T = \operatorname{Spec} B$ , and  $S = \operatorname{Spec} A$ . Thus  $C$  and  $C'$  are  $B$ -algebras and  $B$  is an  $A$ -algebra such that the ring map  $A \rightarrow B$  is an epimorphism. Then the lemma says:

$$C \otimes_B C' = C \otimes_A C'$$

**Lemma 13.6.** Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $f': X' \rightarrow S$  be morphisms of schemes. Suppose that  $U \subseteq S$ ,  $V \subseteq X$ , and  $V' \subseteq X'$  are open subschemes such that  $f(V) \subseteq U$  and  $f'(V') \subseteq U$ . Then we have

$$V \times_U V' = \pi_1^{-1}(V) \cap \pi_2^{-1}(V').$$

*Proof.* We show  $\pi_1^{-1}(V) \cap \pi_2^{-1}(V')$  satisfies the universal mapping property of the fibre product  $V \times_U V'$ . Denote  $\pi_1: X \times_S X' \rightarrow X$  and  $\pi_2: X \times_S X' \rightarrow X'$  to be the canonical projections of the fibre product. Let  $T$  be a scheme and suppose  $g: T \rightarrow V$  and  $g': T \rightarrow V'$  are morphisms such that  $f \circ g = f' \circ g'$  as morphisms into  $U$ . Then they agree as morphisms into  $S$ , so by the universal mapping property we get a unique morphism  $T \rightarrow X \times_S X'$ . This morphism has image contained in the open  $\pi_1^{-1}(V) \cap \pi_2^{-1}(V')$ . In particular,  $\pi_1^{-1}(V) \cap \pi_2^{-1}(V')$  satisfies the universal mapping property of the fibre product  $V \times_U V'$ .  $\square$

**Example 13.2.** Keep the notation as in Lemma (13.6) and assume further that  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ ,  $V = \operatorname{Spec} A_t$ ,  $X' = \operatorname{Spec} A'$ ,  $V' = \operatorname{Spec} A_{t'}$ ,  $S = \operatorname{Spec} R$ , and  $U = \operatorname{Spec} R_s$ . Thus  $A$  and  $A'$  are  $R$ -algebras,  $t \in A$ ,  $t' \in A'$ , and  $s \in R$ . The condition that  $f(V) \subseteq U$  says  $f(D(t)) \subseteq D(s)$  which says for every prime  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $A$  such that  $t \notin \mathfrak{q}$  we have  $s \notin \mathfrak{p}$  where  $\mathfrak{p} = f(\mathfrak{q})$ , so the map  $R_s \rightarrow A_t$  makes sense.

**Corollary 7.** Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $f': X' \rightarrow S$  be morphisms of schemes. Let  $\{U_i\}$  be an open affine covering of  $S$  and for let  $\{V_{i,j}\}_j$  and  $\{V'_{i,j'}\}_{j'}$  be open affine coverings for  $f^{-1}(U_i)$  and  $f'^{-1}(U_i)$  respectively. Then

$$X \times_S X' = \bigcup_{i,j,j'} V_{i,j} \times_{U_i} V'_{i,j'}$$

is an affine open covering of  $X \times_S X'$ .

**Lemma 13.7.** Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $f': X' \rightarrow S$  be morphisms of schemes. Points  $z$  of  $X \times_S X'$  are in bijection with the set of all triples  $(x, x', P)$  where  $x \in X$  and  $x' \in X'$  are points such that  $f(x) = s = f'(x')$  and  $P$  is a prime ideal of the ring  $\kappa(x) \otimes_{\kappa(s)} \kappa(x')$ . The residue field of  $z$  corresponds to the residue field of the prime  $P$ .

*Proof.* Let  $z$  be a point of  $X \times_S X'$ . We view  $z$  as a morphism  $\operatorname{Spec} \kappa(z) \rightarrow X \times_S X'$ . This morphism corresponds to morphisms  $\tilde{x}: \operatorname{Spec} \kappa(z) \rightarrow X$  and  $\tilde{x}': \operatorname{Spec} \kappa(z) \rightarrow X'$  such that  $f \circ \tilde{x} = f' \circ \tilde{x}'$ . Thus we get points  $x \in X$  and  $x' \in X'$  lying over a common point  $s \in S$  as well as field maps  $\kappa(x) \rightarrow \kappa(z)$  and  $\kappa(x') \rightarrow \kappa(z)$  such that the compositions

$$\kappa(s) \rightarrow \kappa(x) \rightarrow \kappa(z) \quad \text{and} \quad \kappa(s) \rightarrow \kappa(x') \rightarrow \kappa(z)$$

are the same. In other words, we get a ring map  $\kappa(x) \otimes_{\kappa(s)} \kappa(x') \rightarrow \kappa(z)$ . Let  $P$  be the kernel of this ring map. Conversely, if we are given a triple  $(x, x', P)$  with  $f(x) = s = f'(x')$ , then the universal mapping property gives us a canonical map

$$\operatorname{Spec} (\kappa(x) \otimes_{\kappa(s)} \kappa(x') / P) \rightarrow X \times_S X'.$$

The corresponding point  $z$  of  $X \times_S X'$  is the image of the generic point of  $\operatorname{Spec} (\kappa(x) \otimes_{\kappa(s)} \kappa(x') / P)$ . In particular, this also shows that  $\kappa(z) \simeq \kappa(x) \otimes_{\kappa(s)} \kappa(x') / P$  so that the ring map  $\kappa(x) \otimes_{\kappa(s)} \kappa(x') \rightarrow \kappa(z)$  is necessarily surjective.  $\square$

*Remark 31.* In particular, the underlying continuous function of the diagonal map  $\Delta: X \rightarrow X \times_S X$  can be described as the map which sends the point  $x \in X$  to the point  $z \in X \times_S X$  which corresponds to the triple  $(x, x, P)$  where  $P$  is the kernel of the canonical multiplication map  $\kappa(x) \otimes_{\kappa(s)} \kappa(x) \rightarrow \kappa(x)$  where  $s = f(x)$ .

*Remark 32.* Assume that  $S = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$  where  $\mathbb{k}$  is algebraically closed and that  $X$  and  $X'$  are locally of finite type over  $S$ . If  $x$  and  $x'$  are closed points in  $X$  and  $X'$  respectively, then we have  $\kappa(x) = \mathbb{k} = \kappa(x')$ , and there is a unique prime ideal of  $\mathbb{k} \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} \mathbb{k} = \mathbb{k}$  (namely 0). In particular, the closed points of  $X \times_S X'$  are in bijection with all pairs  $(x, x')$  where  $x \in X$  and  $x' \in X'$  are closed points.

**Example 13.3.** Let  $X = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[t]$ , let  $X' = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[t']$ , and let  $S = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$  where  $\mathbb{k}$  is an algebraically closed field. There are three types of points of  $X \times_S X'$ ; namely

1.  $(t - \alpha, t - \beta, 0)$  where  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{k}$ ;
2.  $(0, t - \beta, 0)$  and  $(t - \alpha, 0, 0)$  where  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{k}$ ;
3.  $(0, 0, P)$  where  $P$  is a prime ideal of  $\mathbb{k}(t) \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} \mathbb{k}(t')$ .

Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes and let  $E$  be a subscheme of  $X$ . We want to give  $f^{-1}(E)$  the structure of a scheme. The idea is to use fiber products which we already know exist in the category of schemes. In particular, we define  $f^{-1}(E)$  to be the fiber product

$$f^{-1}(E) := Y \times_X E$$

with respect to the morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  and the inclusion  $\iota: E \hookrightarrow X$ . To see why this makes sense, note that the points of  $Y \times_X E$  have the form  $(y, e, P)$  where  $y \in Y$  and  $e \in E$  such that  $f(y) = e$  and where  $P$  is a prime ideal of  $\kappa(y) \otimes_{\kappa(e)} \kappa(e) \simeq \kappa(y)$ . In particular, we have  $P = 0$ , so the points of  $Y \times_X E$  (viewed as a topological space) are naturally in bijection with the points of  $f^{-1}(E)$  (viewed as a topological space). Note that if  $E'$  is another subscheme of  $X$ , then

$$E \cap E' = \iota^{-1}(E') := E \times_X E',$$

so this also gives us a way to define intersections of subschemes. For instance, if  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ ,  $E = \operatorname{Spec}(A/\mathfrak{a})$ , and  $E' = \operatorname{Spec}(A/\mathfrak{a}')$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} E \cap E' &= \operatorname{Spec}(A/\mathfrak{a}) \times_{\operatorname{Spec}(A)} \operatorname{Spec}(A/\mathfrak{a}') \\ &= \operatorname{Spec}(A/\mathfrak{a} \otimes_A A/\mathfrak{a}') \\ &= \operatorname{Spec}(A/\langle \mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{a}' \rangle). \end{aligned}$$

Let us now check that this definition of inverse image satisfies some of the usual properties that inverse images satisfy:

**Lemma 13.8.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes and let  $E, E'$  be subschemes of  $X$ . We have*

$$f^{-1}(E) \cap f^{-1}(E') = f^{-1}(E \cap E').$$

*Proof.* In other words, we want to show

$$(Y \times_X E) \times_{Y \times_X X} (Y \times_X E') = Y \times_X (E \times_X E'). \quad (33)$$

To prove this, we may work locally; assume that  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ ,  $E = \operatorname{Spec} B$ ,  $E' = \operatorname{Spec} B'$ , and  $Y = \operatorname{Spec} C$ , where  $A$  is a ring and  $B, B', C$  are  $A$ -algebras. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} (C \otimes_A B) \otimes_{(C \otimes_A A)} (C \otimes_A B') &\simeq (C \otimes_A B) \otimes_C (C \otimes_A B') \\ &\simeq B \otimes_A C \otimes_C C \otimes_A B' \\ &\simeq B \otimes_A C \otimes_A B' \\ &\simeq C \otimes_A (B \otimes_A B'). \end{aligned}$$

This gives us (33). □

**Lemma 13.9.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  and  $g: Z \rightarrow Y$  be morphisms of schemes and let  $E$  be a subscheme of  $X$ . We have*

$$g^{-1}(f^{-1}(E)) = (f \circ g)^{-1}(E).$$

*Proof.* In other words, we want to show

$$Z \times_Y (Y \times_X E) = Z \times_X E. \quad (34)$$

Again, we may work locally; assume that  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ ,  $E = \operatorname{Spec} B$ ,  $Y = \operatorname{Spec} C$ , and  $Z = \operatorname{Spec} D$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} D \otimes_C (C \otimes_A B) &\simeq (D \otimes_C C) \otimes_A B \\ &\simeq D \otimes_A B. \end{aligned}$$

This gives us (34). □

**Lemma 13.10.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $g: S' \rightarrow S$  be morphisms of schemes.*

1. *(Closed immersions are stable under base change) If  $f: X \rightarrow S$  is a closed immersion, then  $X \times_S S' \rightarrow S'$  is a closed immersion. Moreover, if  $X \rightarrow S$  corresponds to the quasi-coherent sheaf of ideals  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_S$ , then  $X \times_S S' \rightarrow S'$  corresponds to the sheaf of ideals  $\operatorname{Im}(g^*\mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{S'})$ .*
2. *(Open immersions are stable under base change) If  $f: X \rightarrow S$  is an open immersion, then  $X \times_S S' \rightarrow S'$  is an open immersion.*
3. *(Immersion are stable under base change) If  $f: X \rightarrow S$  is an immersion, then  $X \times_S S' \rightarrow S'$  is an immersion.*

*Proof.* Assume that  $f: X \rightarrow S$  is a closed immersion corresponding to the quasi-coherent sheaf of ideals  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_S$ . Then the closed subspace  $Z \subseteq S'$  defined by the sheaf of ideals  $\operatorname{Im}(g^*\mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{S'})$  is the fibre product in the category of locally ringed spaces. It follows that  $Z$  is a scheme. Hence  $Z = X \times_S S'$  and the first statement follows. □

**Definition 13.5.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. Let  $Z \subseteq X$  be a closed subscheme of  $X$ . The **inverse image**  $f^{-1}(Z)$  of the closed subscheme  $Z$  is the subscheme  $Z \times_X Y$  of  $Y$ .

### 13.5.4 Diagonal Morphism and Graph

**Definition 13.6.** Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $f': X' \rightarrow S$  be  $S$ -schemes and let  $g: X \rightarrow X'$  be an  $S$ -morphism.

1. The **diagonal** of  $f$  is the unique morphism  $\Delta_f: X \rightarrow X \times_S X$  induced by the identity map  $\text{id}_X: X \rightarrow X$ . Thus

$$\pi_1 \circ \Delta_f = \text{id}_X = \pi_2 \circ \Delta_f,$$

where  $\pi_1, \pi_2: X \times_S X \rightarrow X$  are the canonical projections of the fibre product.

2. The **graph** of  $g$  is the unique morphism  $\Gamma_g: X \rightarrow X \times_S X'$  induced by the identity map  $\text{id}_X: X \rightarrow X$  and the morphism  $g: X \rightarrow X'$ . Thus

$$\pi_1 \circ \Gamma_g = \text{id}_X \quad \text{and} \quad \pi_2 \circ \Gamma_g = g,$$

where  $\pi_1: X \times_S X' \rightarrow X$  and  $\pi_2: X \times_S X' \rightarrow X'$  are the canonical projections of the fibre product.

**Example 13.4.** Keep the same notation as in Definition (13.6) and assume that  $X = \text{Spec } A$ ,  $X' = \text{Spec } A'$ , and  $S = \text{Spec } R$  (so  $A$  and  $A'$  are  $R$ -algebras). Then the diagonal  $\Delta_f: X \rightarrow X \times_S X$  corresponds to the multiplication map  $\mu: A \otimes_R A \rightarrow A$  given by  $a_1 \otimes a_2 \mapsto a_1 a_2$ .

**Lemma 13.11.** Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$ ,  $f': X' \rightarrow S$ , and  $g: X \rightarrow X'$  be morphism of schemes. Let  $V$  and  $V'$  be affine opens of  $X$  and let  $U$  be an affine open of  $S$  such that  $f(V) \subseteq U$  and  $f'(V') \subseteq U$ . Then

$$\Delta_f^{-1}(V \times_U V') = V \cap V' \quad \text{and} \quad \Gamma_g^{-1}(V \times_U V') = V \cap g^{-1}(V').$$

*Proof.* We have

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_f^{-1}(V \times_U V') &= \Delta_f^{-1}((\pi_1^{-1}(V) \cap \pi_2^{-1}(V'))) \\ &= (\Delta_f^{-1} \circ \pi_1^{-1})(V) \cap (\Delta_f^{-1} \circ \pi_2^{-1})(V') \\ &= (\pi_1 \circ \Delta_f)^{-1}(V) \cap (\pi_2 \circ \Delta_f)^{-1}(V') \\ &= V \cap V'. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_g^{-1}(V \times_U V') &= \Gamma_g^{-1}((\pi_1^{-1}(V) \cap \pi_2^{-1}(V'))) \\ &= (\Gamma_g^{-1} \circ \pi_1^{-1})(V) \cap (\Gamma_g^{-1} \circ \pi_2^{-1})(V') \\ &= (\pi_1 \circ \Gamma_g)^{-1}(V) \cap (\pi_2 \circ \Gamma_g)^{-1}(V') \\ &= V \cap g^{-1}(V'). \end{aligned}$$

□

**Lemma 13.12.** Let  $B$  be an  $A$ -algebra and let  $\mu: B \otimes_A B \rightarrow B$  be the multiplication map. Then

$$\ker \mu = \langle \{b \otimes 1 - 1 \otimes b \mid b \in B\} \rangle$$

*Proof.* Clearly we have  $b \otimes 1 - 1 \otimes b \in \ker \mu$  for each  $b \in B$ . Conversely, suppose  $\sum_{i=1}^n b_i \otimes b'_i \in \ker \mu$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n (b_i \otimes 1 - 1 \otimes b_i)(1 \otimes b'_i) &= \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \otimes b'_i - 1 \otimes \sum_{i=1}^n b_i b'_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \otimes b'_i - 1 \otimes 0 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \otimes b'_i. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Lemma 13.13.** The diagonal morphism of a morphism between affines is a closed immersion.

*Proof.* Let  $B$  be an  $A$ -algebra, let  $Y = \text{Spec } B$ , and let  $X = \text{Spec } A$ . The diagonal morphism of the morphism  $Y \rightarrow X$  is the morphism  $\Delta: Y \rightarrow Y \times_X Y$  corresponding to the multiplication map  $\mu: B \otimes_A B \rightarrow B$  given by

$$\mu(b_1 \otimes b_2) = b_1 b_2$$

for all  $b_1, b_2 \in B$ . This map is surjective since  $B$  is unital, so  $B \cong (B \otimes_A B)/I$  for some ideal  $I$  of  $B \otimes_A B$ . It follows that  $\Delta$  is a closed immersion. □

**Lemma 13.14.** *Let  $X$  be an  $S$ -scheme. Then the diagonal morphism  $\Delta_{X/S}$  is an immersion.*

*Proof.* Recall that if  $V \subseteq X$  is affine open and maps into  $U \subseteq S$  affine open, then  $V \times_U V$  is affine open in  $X \times_S X$ . Let  $W$  be the open subscheme of  $X \times_S X$  which is the union of these affine opens  $V \times_U V$ . Thus  $\Delta_{X/S}$  factors as

$$X \rightarrow W \hookrightarrow X \times_S X,$$

where clearly  $W \hookrightarrow X \times_S X$  is an open immersion. Thus it remains to show that  $X \rightarrow W$  is a closed immersion. Since  $W$  is covered by  $\{V \times_U V\}$ , it is enough to show that each morphism

$$V = \Delta_{X/S}^{-1}(V \times_U V) \rightarrow V \times_U V$$

is a closed immersion since being a closed immersion is local on the target. However this is the affine case which we've already shown.  $\square$

### 13.5.5 Separatedness

Let  $X$  be a topological space. Recall that  $X$  is Hausdorff if and only if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

1. The diagonal  $\{(x, x) \mid x \in X\}$  is closed in  $X \times X$ .
2. For every topological space  $Y$  and every continuous map  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  its graph  $\{(y, f(y)) \mid y \in Y\}$  is closed in  $Y \times X$ .
3. For every topological space  $Y$  and any continuous maps  $f, g: Y \rightarrow X$  the kernel  $\{y \in Y \mid f(y) = g(y)\}$  is closed in  $Y$ .

The underlying topological spaces of schemes are rarely Hausdorff, but the analogues of the three properties above can be used to define an analogue of the Hausdorff property for schemes, which goes under the name separatedness.

**Definition 13.7.** Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a morphism of schemes.

1. We say  $f$  is **separated** if the diagonal morphism  $\Delta_f$  is a closed immersion.
2. We say  $f$  is **quasi-separated** if the diagonal morphism  $\Delta_f$  is a quasi-compact morphism.
3. We say a scheme  $Y$  is **(quasi)-separated** if the morphism  $Y \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{Z}$  is (quasi)-separated.

*Remark 33.* Since  $\Delta_f$  is an immersion, we see that  $f$  is separated if and only if  $\Delta_f(X)$  is a closed subset of  $X \times_S X$ . Furthermore, note that every closed immersion is quasi-compact (since a closed subset of a quasi-compact space is quasi-compact). Therefore if  $f$  is separated, then it is quasi-separated too.

**Example 13.5.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. Let's describe  $\Delta_f: Y \rightarrow Y \times_X Y$  in terms of points. Recall that the points of  $Y \times_X Y$  are in bijection with the set of all quadruples  $(y, y', x, \mathfrak{P})$  where  $y, y' \in Y$  and  $x \in X$  such that  $f(y) = x = f(y')$ , and where  $\mathfrak{P}$  is a prime ideal of  $\kappa(y) \otimes_{\kappa(x)} \kappa(y')$ . In particular, let  $y \in Y$  and set  $x = f(y) \in X$ . Then the point  $\Delta_f(y) \in Y \times_X Y$  corresponds to the quadruple  $(y, y, x, \mathfrak{P})$  where  $\mathfrak{P}$  is the kernel of the multiplication map  $L \otimes_K L \rightarrow L$  where we set  $L = \kappa(y)$  and  $K = \kappa(x)$ . We can describe  $\mathfrak{P}$  explicitly as

$$\mathfrak{P} = \langle \{b \otimes 1 - 1 \otimes b \mid b \in L\} \rangle.$$

**Example 13.6.** Let  $X$  be the affine line with a double origin: say  $V = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[t] = \operatorname{Spec} A$ ,  $V' = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[t'] = \operatorname{Spec} A'$ , and we obtain  $X$  by gluing  $V$  to  $V'$  along the isomorphism  $D(t) \simeq D(t')$  which corresponds to the ring isomorphism  $A_t \rightarrow A_{t'}$  given by  $t \mapsto t'$ . Then  $f: X \rightarrow S$  is not separated where  $S = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$ . There are two ways to see this:

1. The first way is to note that  $\Delta_f(X)$  is not a closed subset of  $X \times_S X$ . Indeed, let  $O$  and  $O'$  be two origins of  $X$  (in  $V$  we have  $O = \langle t \rangle$  and in  $V'$  we have  $O' = \langle t' \rangle$ ). Then there is no open neighborhood of  $(O, O')$  in  $X \times_S X$  which doesn't meet the diagonal. In particular, this implies  $\Delta_f(X)$  is not a closed subset of  $X \times_S X$ .
2. The second way is to note that  $V \cap V' = \operatorname{Spec} A_t$  and  $V \times_S V' = \operatorname{Spec}(A \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} A')$ , so the diagonal morphism  $V \cap V' \rightarrow V \times_S V'$  corresponds to the  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra homomorphism  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} A' \rightarrow A_t$  given by

$$f(t) \otimes g(t') \mapsto f(t)g(t).$$

However this is not surjective since  $1/t$  is not in the image for example. On the other hand, if we glue  $V$  to  $V'$  via the isomorphism  $A_t \rightarrow A_{t'}$  given by  $t \mapsto 1/t'$ , then we obtain  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$ , and  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  is separated over  $S$ ! For instance, in this case the diagonal map  $V \cap V' \rightarrow V \times_S V'$  now corresponds to the ring map  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} A' \rightarrow A_t$  given by

$$f(t) \otimes g(t') \mapsto f(t)g(1/t),$$

and this is surjective (for instance,  $1 \otimes t' \mapsto 1/t$ ).

**Example 13.7.** Let  $X$  be the line with two origins denoted  $0$  and  $0'$ . Then  $\Delta(X)$  is not closed in  $X \times X$  since there is no open neighborhood of  $(0, 0')$  which doesn't meet  $\Delta(X)$ .

**Example 13.8.** Let  $U_1 = U_2 = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[\{t_n\}]$  and let  $S = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$ . Let  $X$  be the scheme obtained by gluing  $U_1$  with  $U_2$  along the complement of  $\{0\}$  via the isomorphism induced by  $t_n \mapsto t_n$  for all  $n$ , and let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be the canonical morphism. Then we have

$$\Delta_f^{-1}(U_1 \times_S U_2) = \operatorname{Spec}(\mathbb{k}[\{t_n\}]) \setminus \{0\},$$

which is not quasi-compact. Therefore  $f$  is not quasi-separated.

**Lemma 13.15.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a morphism of schemes. The following are equivalent.*

1.  $f$  is quasi-separated
2. for every pair of affine opens  $V, V'$  of  $X$  which map to a common affine open  $U$  of  $S$ , then intersection  $V \cap V'$  is a finite union of affine opens of  $X$ .
3. there exists an affine open covering  $S = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$  and for each  $i$  an affine open covering  $f^{-1}U_i = \bigcup_{j \in J_i} V_j$  such that for each pair  $j, j' \in J_i$ , the intersection  $V_j \cap V_{j'}$  is a finite union of affine opens of  $X$ .

*Proof.* We first show (1) implies (2). Suppose  $f$  is quasi-separated and let  $V, V'$  be a pair of affine opens of  $X$  which map to a common affine open  $U$  of  $S$ . Note that  $V \times_U V'$  is an affine open of  $X \times_S X$ . Furthermore, note that  $\Delta_f^{-1}(V \times_U V') = V \cap V'$ . Since  $\Delta_f$  is quasi-compact and  $V \times_U V'$  is an affine open (hence quasi-compact), it follows that  $V \cap V'$  is quasi-compact. Since the affine opens of  $X$  are quasi-compact and form a basis for the topology, we see that  $V \cap V'$  being quasi-compact is equivalent to saying it can be covered by a finite union of affine opens.

That (2) implies (3) is trivial, so we will only prove (3) implies (1). Note that

$$X \times_S X = \bigcup_{i,j,j'} V_j \times_{U_i} V_{j'}$$

is an affine open covering of  $X \times_S X$ . Since  $\Delta_f$  being quasi-compact is a local on the target property and since  $\Delta_f^{-1}(V_j \times_{U_i} V_{j'}) = V_j \cap V_{j'}$ , we see that  $\Delta_f$  is quasi-compact if and only if  $V_j \cap V_{j'} \rightarrow V_j \times_{U_i} V_{j'}$  is quasi-compact (for all  $i, j, j'$ ). Since  $V_j \times_{U_i} V_{j'}$  is an affine open (hence quasi-compact), we see that  $V_j \cap V_{j'} \rightarrow V_j \times_{U_i} V_{j'}$  is quasi-compact if and only if  $V_j \cap V_{j'}$  is quasi-compact. This is equivalent to saying  $V_j \cap V_{j'}$  can be covered by a finite union of affine opens since each affine open is quasi-compact and the collection of all affine opens forms a basis.  $\square$

**Lemma 13.16.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a morphism of schemes.*

1. If  $f$  is separated then for every pair of affine opens  $V = \operatorname{Spec} A$  and  $V' = \operatorname{Spec} A'$  of  $X$  which map into a common affine open of  $S$ , we have
  - (a) the intersection  $V \cap V'$  is affine, say  $V \cap V' = \operatorname{Spec} B$
  - (b) the ring map  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} A' \rightarrow B$  is surjective.
2. If any pair of points  $x, x' \in X$  lying over a common point  $s \in S$  are contained in affine opens  $x \in V$ ,  $x' \in V'$  which map into a common affine open of  $S$  such that (a), (b) hold, then  $f$  is separated.

*Proof.* Assume  $f$  is separated. Let  $V = \operatorname{Spec} A$  and  $V' = \operatorname{Spec} A'$  be affine opens of  $X$  which map to a common affine open of  $S$ , say  $U = \operatorname{Spec} R$ . Then  $V \times_S V' = V \times_U V' = \operatorname{Spec} (A \otimes_R A')$  is an affine open of  $X \times_S X$ . In particular, we see that  $\Delta^{-1}(V \times_S V') \rightarrow V \times_S V'$  can be identified with  $\operatorname{Spec}((A \otimes_R A')/I)$  for some ideal  $I$  of  $A \otimes_R A'$ . Thus  $V \cap V' = \Delta^{-1}(V \times_S V')$  is affine.  $\square$

**Remark 34.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  continuous map of topological spaces. To check that  $f$  is closed, it suffices to find an open cover  $X = \bigcup_i U_i$  of  $X$  such that each map  $f_i: V_i \rightarrow U_i$  is closed, where we set  $V_i = f^{-1}(U_i)$  and  $f_i = f|_{V_i}$ . Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f \text{ is closed} &\iff f(E) \text{ is closed for all closed } E \subseteq Y \\ &\iff f(E)^c \text{ is open for all closed } E \subseteq Y \\ &\iff U_i \cap f(E)^c \text{ is open for all } i \text{ for all closed } E \subseteq Y \\ &\iff U_i \cap f_i(V_i \cap E)^c \text{ is open for all } i \text{ for all closed } E \subseteq Y \\ &\iff f_i \text{ is closed for all } i. \end{aligned}$$



**Example 13.9.** Let  $X$  be the affine line with a double origin: say  $V = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[t] = \operatorname{Spec} A$ ,  $V' = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[t'] = \operatorname{Spec} A'$ , and we obtain  $X$  by gluing  $V$  to  $V'$  along the isomorphism  $D(t) \simeq D(t')$  which corresponds to the ring isomorphism  $A_t \rightarrow A_{t'}$  given by  $t \mapsto t'$ . Then  $X$  is not separated over  $S = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$ . Indeed, note that the diagonal morphism  $\operatorname{Spec} A_t = V \cap V' \rightarrow V \times_S V' = \operatorname{Spec}(A \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} A')$  corresponds to the  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra homomorphism  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} A' \rightarrow A_t$  given by

$$f(t) \otimes g(t') \mapsto f(t)g(t').$$

However this  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra homomorphism isn't surjective since  $1/t$  is not in the image. On the other hand, if we glue  $V$  to  $V'$  via the isomorphism  $A_t \rightarrow A_{t'}$  given by  $t \mapsto 1/t'$ , then we obtain  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$ , which *is* separated over  $S$ ! For instance, in this case the diagonal morphism  $V \cap V' \rightarrow V \times_S V'$  corresponds to the  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra homomorphism  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} A' \rightarrow A_t$  given by

$$f(t) \otimes g(t') \mapsto f(t)g(1/t'),$$

and this *is* surjective (for instance  $1 \otimes t' \mapsto 1/t$ ).

**Lemma 13.17.** *A scheme  $X$  is quasi-compact and quasi-separated if and only if every étale cover  $\{U_i\}$  of  $X$  admits a finite refinement  $\{V_j\}$  such that all double overlaps  $V_j \times_X V_{j'}$  are quasi-compact.*

*Proof.* Assume that  $X$  is quasi-compact and quasi-separated. Openness of étale maps ensures that every étale cover of  $X$  admits a finite refinement consisting of affines whose image in  $X$  is contained in an affine open.  $\square$

### 13.5.6 Universally Closed Morphisms

**Definition 13.8.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. We say  $f$  is **universally closed** if for every morphism  $g: Z \rightarrow X$ , the induced morphism  $Y \times_X Z \rightarrow Z$  is closed. In other words, a morphism is universally closed if it remains closed under any base change.

*Remark 35.* This terminology is used more generally. If  $P$  is some property of  $f$ , then we say  $f$  is “universally  $P$ ” if it remains  $P$  under base change.

**Example 13.10.** Clearly the map  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1 \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$  is closed, but we claim it is not universally closed. Indeed, if we pull it back with respect to itself, then we get the morphism  $\pi: \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1 \times \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  which correspond to the inclusion map of rings  $\mathbb{k}[x] \subseteq \mathbb{k}[x, y]$ . This morphism is not closed since  $\pi(V(xy - 1)) = \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1 \setminus \{0\}$ .

**Proposition 13.9.** *The property of being universally closed is local on the target.*

*Proof.* Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a morphism of schemes and let  $S = \bigcup_i U_i$  be an open covering of  $S$ . We need to show that  $f$  is universally closed if and only if each  $f_i: V_i \rightarrow U_i$  is universally closed, where  $V_i = f^{-1}U_i$  and  $f_i = f|_{V_i}$ . First suppose  $f$  is universally closed. To see that  $f_i$  is universally closed, let  $U'_i \rightarrow U_i$  be any morphism and let  $f'_i: V'_i \rightarrow U'_i$  be the corresponding pullback of  $f_i$  where  $V'_i = V_i \times_{U_i} U'_i$ . Then  $f'_i$  is also the pullback of  $f: X \rightarrow S$  along the composite  $U'_i \rightarrow U_i \hookrightarrow S$  as  $f_i$  is the pullback of  $f$  along  $U_i \hookrightarrow S$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V'_i & \xrightarrow{f'_i} & U'_i \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V_i & \xrightarrow{f_i} & U_i \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & S \end{array}$$

Thus  $f'_i$  is closed since  $f$  is universally closed, and it follows that  $f_i$  is universally closed.

Conversely, suppose that each  $f_i$  is universally closed. To see that  $f$  is universally closed, let  $g: S' \rightarrow S$  be any morphism. We want to show that  $f': X' \rightarrow S'$  is closed where  $f'$  is the pullback of  $f$  along  $g$  and where  $X' = X \times_S S'$ . For each  $i$  let  $U'_i = g^{-1}(U_i)$  and let  $V'_i = (f')^{-1}(U'_i) = (g')^{-1}(V_i)$  where  $g': X' \rightarrow X$  is the canonical projection map. Then the map  $f'_i: V'_i \rightarrow U'_i$  is the pullback of  $f_i$  along  $U'_i \rightarrow U_i$ . Since each  $f_i$  is closed, it follows that each  $f'_i$  is closed. Since the property of being closed is local on the target, it follows that  $f'$  is closed, hence  $f$  is universally closed.  $\square$

**Proposition 13.10.** *The property of being universally closed is stable under base change.*

*Proof.* Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $g: S' \rightarrow S$  be morphisms of schemes such that  $f$  is universally closed. Set  $f': X' \rightarrow S'$  to be the pullback of  $f$  along  $g$  where  $X' = X \times_S S'$ . We want to show that  $f'$  is universally closed. To this end, let  $g': S'' \rightarrow S'$  be another morphism of schemes and let  $f'': X'' \rightarrow S''$  be the pullback of  $f'$  along  $g'$  where  $X'' = X' \times_{S'} S''$ . Then  $f''$  is also the pullback of  $f$  along the composite  $g \circ g'$ :



$$\begin{array}{ccc}
X'' & \xrightarrow{f''} & S'' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow g' \\
X' & \xrightarrow{f'} & S' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow g \\
X & \xrightarrow{f} & S
\end{array}$$

Therefore  $f''$  is closed since  $f$  is universally closed, and it follows that  $f'$  is universally closed.  $\square$

**Proposition 13.11.** *The property of being universally closed under composition*

*Proof.* The proof of this is straightforward and is left as an exercise to the reader.  $\square$

**Proposition 13.12.** *The property of being universally closed is stable under faithfully flat descent.*

*Proof.* Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $\pi: T \rightarrow S$  morphism of schemes such that  $\pi$  is faithfully flat and quasi-compact. Furthermore, suppose that the pullback  $g: Y \rightarrow T$  of  $f$  along  $\pi$  is universally closed, where we set  $Y = X \times_S T$ . We need to show that  $f$  is universally closed. To this end, let  $p: S' \rightarrow S$  be another morphism of schemes and let  $f': X' \rightarrow S'$  be the pullback of  $f$  along  $p$  where  $X' = X \times_S S'$ . Furthermore, let  $\pi': T' \rightarrow S'$  be the pullback of  $\pi$  along  $p$ , where we set  $T' = T \times_S S'$ . Note that  $\pi'$  is faithfully flat and quasi-compact since these properties are preserved under base change. Finally, let  $g': Y' \rightarrow T'$  be the pullback of  $f'$  along  $\pi'$  (or equivalently of  $g$  along  $q: T' \rightarrow T$  where  $q$  is the pullback of  $p$  along  $\pi$ ). Then  $g'$  is closed since  $g$  is closed and the property of being closed is stable under base change. Since the property of being closed is also stable under faithfully flat descent, it follows that  $f'$  is closed.  $\square$

**Proposition 13.13.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a universally closed morphism of schemes. Then  $f$  is quasi-compact.*

*Proof.* We prove the contrapositive. Assume that  $f$  is not quasi-compact. We will show that  $f$  is not universally closed. Since the properties of being quasi-compact and universally closed are local on the target, we may reduce to the case where  $S$  is affine, say  $S = \text{Spec } R$ . Let  $\{X_i = \text{Spec } A_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an affine open covering of  $X$ , let  $S' = \text{Spec } R'$  where  $R' = R[t_i \mid i \in I]$ , and let  $S'_i = D(t_i) = \text{Spec } R'_{t_i}$ . We set  $X' = X \times_S S'$  and  $X'_i = X_i \times_S S' = \text{Spec } A'_i$  where  $A'_i = A_i[t_i \mid i \in I]$ . We also set

$$V'_i = X_i \times_S S'_i = \text{Spec}((A'_i)_{t_i}) = D_{A'_i}(t_i),$$

and we let  $Z'$  be the closed set  $X' - \bigcup_{i \in I} V'_i$ . Notice that  $\{X'_i\}$  is an affine open covering of  $X'$  and thus  $\{Z'_i\}$  gives an open covering of  $Z'$  where

$$Z'_i := Z' \cap X'_i = V_{A'_i}(t_i) = \text{Spec}(A'_i/t_i).$$

Our goal is to show that  $f'(Z')$  is not closed in  $S'$  which will imply  $f$  is not universally closed.

Since  $f$  is not quasi-compact, there exists an  $s \in S$  such that there is no neighborhood  $U$  of  $s$  such that  $X_U := X \times_S U$  is quasi-compact (otherwise we could cover  $S$  by finitely many such  $U$  and this would imply  $f$  is quasi-compact). Fix such an  $s \in S$  and let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be the prime ideal of  $R$  which corresponds to  $s$ . Let  $\mathfrak{p}'$  be the prime ideal of  $R'$  given by  $\mathfrak{p}' = \mathfrak{p}R' + \langle t_i - 1 \mid i \in I \rangle$  and let  $s'$  be the corresponding point of  $S'$ . Note by construction that  $\kappa(s') = \kappa(s)$  and  $s' \in (S')_s = f'((Z')_s)$ . Now assume for a contradiction that  $f'(Z')$  is closed in  $S'$ . Then there exists an element  $g \in R'$  such that  $g \notin \mathfrak{p}'$  (i.e.,  $s' \in D(g)$ ) and  $D(g) \cap f'(Z') = \emptyset$ . Hence the image of  $g$  in  $\kappa(s') = \kappa(s)$  is nonzero which implies some coefficient of  $g$  has nonzero image in  $\kappa(s)$ . Hence this coefficient is invertible on some open neighborhood  $U$  of  $s$ . Let  $J$  be the finite set of  $j \in I$  such that  $t_j$  appears in  $g$ . Since  $X_U$  is not quasi-compact, we may choose a point  $x \in X - \bigcup_{j \in J} X_j$  lying above some  $u \in U$ . Since  $g$  has a coefficient that is invertible on  $U$ , we can find a point  $u' \in S'$  lying above  $u$  such that  $u' \in D(g) \cap V(t_i)$  for all  $i \in I \setminus J$ . Thus we can find a point  $z'$  of  $X'$  mapping to  $x \in X$  and to  $u' \in S'$ . Since  $x \notin X_j$  for  $j \in J$  and  $u' \notin S'_i$  for  $i \in I \setminus J$  we see that  $z' \in Z'$ . On the other hand,  $f'(z') = u' \notin V(g)$  which contradicts  $f'(Z') \subseteq V(g)$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 13.18.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a quasi-compact morphism of schemes. Let  $g: T \rightarrow S$  be a morphism of schemes. Let  $t \in T$  be a point and let  $Z \subseteq X_T$  be a closed subscheme such that  $Z \cap X_t = \emptyset$ . Then there exists an open neighborhood  $V \subseteq T$  of  $t$ , a commutative diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \xrightarrow{a} & T' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow b \\ T & \xrightarrow{g} & S \end{array} \quad (35)$$

and a closed subscheme  $Z' \subseteq X_{T'}$  such that

1. the morphism  $b: T' \rightarrow S$  is locally of finite presentation,
2. with  $t' = a(t)$  we have  $Z' \cap X_{t'} = \emptyset$ ,
3.  $Z \cap X_V$  maps into  $Z'$  via the morphism  $X_V \rightarrow X_{T'}$ .

Moreover, we may assume  $V$  and  $T'$  are affine.

*Proof.* □

### 13.5.7 Valuation Criterion for Separatedness

**Theorem 13.19.** *(Valuation Criterion for Separatedness) A morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of schemes is separated if and only if  $f$  is quasi-separated and for any valuation domain  $V$  with fraction field  $K$ , every diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Spec } K & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow f \\ \text{Spec } V & \longrightarrow & X \end{array} \quad (36)$$

has at most one lift such that the diagram commutes. In other words,  $Y_X(V) \rightarrow Y_X(K)$  is injective. We can write this as

$$\text{qs} + \text{vc} \iff \text{s}$$

**Example 13.11.** Let us consider what this says in the local situation. Suppose  $X = \text{Spec } R$  and  $Y = \text{Spec } A$  where  $A$  is an  $R$ -algebra. Then the diagram says for every  $R$ -algebra homomorphism  $\phi: A \rightarrow K$  there exists at most one  $R$ -algebra homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow V$  such that  $\iota\varphi = \phi$  where  $\iota: V \rightarrow K$  is the inclusion map. However it is clear this is always the case since  $\iota: V \rightarrow K$  is a monomorphism. In particular, the valuation criterion says  $Y \rightarrow X$  is separated in this case.

**Example 13.12.** Suppose  $Y$  is the affine line  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  with the double origin over some field  $\mathbb{k}$  and suppose  $X = \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}$ . Then consider  $V = \mathbb{k}[t]_{\langle t \rangle}$  with fraction field  $K = \mathbb{k}(t)$ . Then  $\text{Spec } V$  is simply a closed point and generic point, and  $\text{Spec } K$  is simply a generic point. We can map our generic point of  $\text{Spec } K$  to the generic point of  $Y$ , and then we have two different lifts of this, either sending the closed point of  $\text{Spec } V$  to either one of the 'origins'. This failure is captured by different specialisations of points.

**Theorem 13.20.** *(Valuation Criterion for Universal Closedness) A morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of schemes is universally closed if and only if  $f$  is quasi-compact and for any valuation domain  $V$  with fraction field  $K$ , every diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Spec } K & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow f \\ \text{Spec } V & \longrightarrow & X \end{array} \quad (37)$$

has at least one lift such that the diagram commutes. In other words,  $Y_X(V) \rightarrow Y_X(K)$  is surjective. We can write this as

$$\text{qc} + \text{vc} \iff \text{uc}$$

**Example 13.13.** The affine line  $\mathbb{A}^1 = \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}[t]$  is not universally closed over  $\text{Spec } \mathbb{k}$  because it fails the valuation criterion for universal closedness. Indeed, let  $V = \mathbb{k}[x]_{\langle x \rangle}$  and let  $K = \mathbb{k}(x)$ . Then map  $\text{Spec } K \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1$  induced by the  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra homomorphism  $\mathbb{k}[t] \rightarrow \mathbb{k}(x)$ , given by  $t \mapsto 1/x$ , cannot be lifted to a map  $\text{Spec } V \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1$  (because there is no  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra homomorphism  $\mathbb{k}[t] \rightarrow V$  given by  $t \mapsto 1/x$  since  $1/x \notin V$ ).

**Theorem 13.21.** (*Valuation Criterion for Properness*) A morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of schemes is proper if and only if  $f$  is of finite type (which implies it is quasi-compact) and quasi-separated, and for any valuation domain  $V$  with fraction field  $K$ , every diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Spec} K & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow f \\ \mathrm{Spec} V & \longrightarrow & X \end{array} \quad (38)$$

has exactly one lift such that the diagram commutes. In other words,  $X_Y(V) \rightarrow X_Y(K)$  is bijective. We can write this as

$$\mathrm{ft} + \mathrm{qs} + \mathrm{vc} \iff \mathrm{p}$$

The **valuative criterion for universal closedness** for  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  that is quasi-compact (e.g. a finite type morphism, or any morphism with  $Y$  noetherian): for every  $\mathrm{Spec} V \rightarrow X$ , where  $V$  is a valuation domain with fraction field  $K$ , and for every  $X$ -map  $h: \mathrm{Spec} K \rightarrow Y$  there is *at least one* extension of  $h$  to a  $Y$ -map  $\mathrm{Spec} V \rightarrow Y$ . In other words,  $X_Y(V) \rightarrow X_Y(K)$  is surjective.

Finally, for a finite type map  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  that is quasi-separated, the synthesis of the valuative criteria of separatedness and universal closedness combine to define: the **valuative criterion for properness** for  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  that is quasi-separated and finite type: for every  $\mathrm{Spec} V \rightarrow X$ , where  $V$  is a valuation domain with fraction field  $K$ , and for every  $X$ -map  $h: \mathrm{Spec} K \rightarrow Y$  there is *exactly one* extension of  $h$  to a  $Y$ -map  $\mathrm{Spec} V \rightarrow Y$ . In other words,  $X_Y(V) \rightarrow X_Y(K)$  is surjective.

**Theorem 13.22.** *The morphism  $f: \mathbb{P}^n \rightarrow \mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{Z}$  is proper.*

*Proof.* We know that our map  $f$  is quasi-separated and of finite type over  $\mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{Z}$ , so it suffices to show that for all valuation rings  $V$  with fraction field  $K$ , we have a unique lift of the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Spec} K & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow f \\ \mathrm{Spec} V & \longrightarrow & X \end{array} \quad (39)$$

We do this by showing  $\mathbb{P}^n(V) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^n(K)$  is a bijection. Assume that  $\mathbf{x} = (x_0 : \cdots : x_n)$  and  $\mathbf{x}' = (x'_0 : \cdots : x'_n)$  are two points in  $\mathbb{P}^n(V)$  which map to the same point in  $\mathbb{P}^n(K)$ . Then for some  $\lambda \in K^\times$  we have  $\mathbf{x} = \lambda \mathbf{x}'$ . As  $V$ -submodules of  $K$  we have

$$V = Vx_0 + \cdots + Vx_n = V(\lambda x'_0) + \cdots + V(\lambda x'_n) = \lambda(Vx'_0 + \cdots + Vx'_n) = \lambda V,$$

so  $\lambda \in V^\times$  and we have injectivity. Now if  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{P}^n(K)$  is any point, then we choose  $i$  such that  $v(x_i) \leq v(x_j)$  for all other  $j$ . Then we have  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}/x_i$  where  $x_j/x_i \in V$  since  $v(x_j/x_i) \geq 0$ . Together they generate  $V$  since  $x_i/x_i = 1$ , so we have surjectivity too.  $\square$

First let's see that the case of separatedness immediately reduces to the case of universal closedness. Suppose  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is quasi-separated, meaning its diagonal  $\Delta_f: Y \rightarrow Y \times_X Y$  is quasi-compact. Separatedness for  $f$  is equivalent to  $\Delta_f$  having closed image, in which case the immersion  $\Delta_f$  is a closed immersion and thus is universally closed (since “closed immersion” is preserved under base change). Thus, separatedness for given  $f$  is equivalent to universal closedness for its quasi-compact diagonal  $\Delta_f$ . Next, we have to show for quasi-separated  $f$  that the valuative criterion for universal closedness applied to  $\Delta_f$  expresses exactly the valuative criterion for separatedness applied to  $f$ . The valuative criterion of separatedness for the quasi-separated  $f$  says that for all valuation rings  $V$  (with fraction field  $K$ ) the natural map  $Y(V) \rightarrow X(V) \times_{X(K)} Y(K)$  is injective. On the other hand, the valuative criterion of universal closedness for the quasi-compact  $\Delta_f$  says that for all  $V$  the natural map

$$Y(V) \rightarrow (Y \times_X Y)(V) \times_{(Y \times_X Y)(K)} Y(K)$$

is surjective, and the target of this is

$$(Y(V) \times_{X(V)} Y(V)) \times_{Y(K) \times_{X(K)} Y(K)} Y(K) = Y(V) \times_{X(V) \times Y(K)} Y(V),$$

so the criterion says that any two  $V$ -valued points  $y, y' \in Y(V)$  going to the same place in  $X(V)$  and having the same associated  $K$ -valued point in  $Y(K)$  must be equal. But that is exactly the injectivity from the separatedness criterion for  $f$ !

**Theorem 13.23.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a quasi-compact map of schemes. The map  $f$  is universally closed if and only if it satisfies the valuative criterion for universal closedness.*

*Remark 36.* Note that in practice it is usually not necessary to check that the valuative criterion holds for *all* valuation domains. For instance, if  $X$  and  $Y$  are locally noetherian and  $f$  is finite type, then it turns out to be sufficient to check just discrete valuation domains (and with some more commutative algebra, it suffices to use just discrete valuation domains that are complete with algebraically closed residue field). When working with finite type schemes over an algebraically closed field  $\mathbb{k}$ , it is sufficient to consider only  $V = \mathbb{k}[[t]]$  and  $\mathbb{k}$ -morphisms  $\text{Spec } V \rightarrow X$  carrying the closed point of  $\text{Spec } V$  to a closed point of  $X$ .

### 13.5.8 Properties of Separated Morphisms

Separated morphisms are local on the source, stable under composition and base change,

**Proposition 13.14.** *Let  $g: Z \rightarrow Y$  and  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be morphism of schemes. If  $f \circ g$  is separated, then  $g$  is separated.*

*Proof.* Assume  $f \circ g$  is separated, that is  $\Delta_{Z/X}: Z \rightarrow Z \times_X Z$  is a closed immersion. We wish to show  $\Delta_{Z/Y}: Z \rightarrow Z \times_Y Z$  is a closed immersion. Observe that  $\Delta_{Z/X}$  factors as

$$Z \rightarrow Z \times_Y Z \rightarrow Z \times_X Z$$

□

### 13.5.9 Finiteness Conditions

**Definition 13.9.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes.

1. We say  $f$  is of **finite type (presentation)** at  $y \in Y$  if there exists an affine open neighborhood  $\text{Spec } B = V \subseteq Y$  of  $y$  and an affine open  $\text{Spec } A = U \subseteq X$  with  $f(V) \subseteq U$  such that the ring homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  corresponding to the morphism of affine schemes  $f|_V: V \rightarrow U$  is of finite type (presentation), meaning  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  gives  $B$  the structure of a finitely generated (presented)  $A$ -algebra: this means that

$$B \simeq A[t_1, \dots, t_n]/I = A[\mathbf{t}]/I$$

as  $A$ -algebras for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and for some ideal  $I$  of  $A[\mathbf{t}]$  (where  $I$  is finitely generated). Note that  $\varphi = \rho_{f^{-1}(U), V} \circ f_U^b$  where

$$f_U^b: A = \mathcal{O}_X(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y(f^{-1}(U)) \quad \text{and} \quad \rho_{f^{-1}(U), V}: \mathcal{O}_Y(f^{-1}(U)) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y(V) = B.$$

We say  $f$  is **locally of finite type (presentation)** if it is of finite type (presentation) at every point of  $Y$ .

2. We say that  $f$  is of **finite type** if it is locally of finite type and quasi-compact. Equivalently, for every  $x \in X$  there is an open affine neighborhood  $U = \text{Spec } A \subseteq X$  of  $x$  and a finite covering

$$f^{-1}(U) = \bigcup_{i=1}^n V_i$$

of its inverse image by affine open sets  $V_i = \text{Spec } B_i$  such that the ring homomorphism  $\varphi_i: A \rightarrow B_i$  corresponding to the morphism of affine schemes  $f|_{V_i}: V_i \rightarrow U$  gives  $B_i$  the structure of a finitely generated  $A$ -algebra for each  $i$ .

3. We say  $f$  is of **finite presentation** if it is locally of finite presentation, quasi-compact, *and* quasi-separated. Later we will characterize morphisms which are locally of finite presentation as those morphisms such that

$$\text{colim } \text{Mor}_X(Z_i, Y) = \text{Mor}_X(\lim Z_i, Y),$$

for any directed system of affine  $X$ -schemes  $Z_i$ .

4. We say  $f$  is **finite** if for every  $x \in X$  there is an open affine neighborhood  $U = \text{Spec } A \subseteq X$  of  $x$  such that the inverse image  $V := f^{-1}(U) = \text{Spec } B$  is itself affine and the ring homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$ , corresponding to the morphism of affine schemes  $f|_V: V \rightarrow U$ , gives  $B$  the structure of a finite  $A$ -module.

**Example 13.14.** Let  $A$  be a ring and let  $B = A[t]/\pi$  where  $\pi \in A[t]$ . Let  $X = \text{Spec } A$  and  $Y = \text{Spec } B$ , and let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be the morphism of affine schemes which corresponds to the morphism of rings  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$ . Then  $f$  is finite if and only if the leading coefficient of  $\pi$  is a unit in  $A$ .

**Proposition 13.15.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a finite morphism of schemes. Then we have the following:*

1. *The fibers of  $f$  are finite.*
2. *The underlying continuous map  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is closed.*

*Proof.* 1. Let  $x \in X$  and choose an affine open  $U = \operatorname{Spec} A$  of  $x$  such that  $f^{-1}(U) := V = \operatorname{Spec} B$  is affine where the corresponding map  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  gives  $B$  the structure of a finite  $A$ -module. In this case,  $x$  corresponds to a prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$   $\square$

### 13.5.10 Affine, Finite, and Integral Morphisms

**Definition 13.10.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes.

1. We say  $f$  is **affine** if  $f^{-1}$  takes affine opens to affine opens.
2. We say  $f$  is **integral** if  $f$  is affine and if for every affine open  $U = \operatorname{Spec} A$  of  $X$  with inverse image  $V := f^{-1}(U) = \operatorname{Spec} B$  of  $Y$  the associated ring map  $A \rightarrow B$  is integral.
3. We say  $f$  is **finite** if  $f$  is affine and if for every affine open  $U = \operatorname{Spec} A$  of  $X$  with inverse image  $V := f^{-1}(U) = \operatorname{Spec} B$  of  $Y$  the associated ring map  $A \rightarrow B$  is finite. Equivalently, for every  $x \in X$  there is an open affine neighborhood  $U = \operatorname{Spec} A \subseteq X$  of  $x$  such that the inverse image  $V := f^{-1}(U) = \operatorname{Spec} B$  is itself affine and the ring homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$ , corresponding to the morphism of affine schemes  $f|_V: V \rightarrow U$ , gives  $B$  the structure of a finite  $A$ -module.

**Proposition 13.16.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. Then  $f$  is integral if and only if  $f$  is affine and universally closed.

*Proof.* Assume  $f$  is affine and universally closed. We may assume  $f$  is of the form  $f: \operatorname{Spec} B \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} A$  corresponding to a ring map  $A \rightarrow B$ . Let  $b \in B$   $\square$

## 13.6 Reduced Schemes, Integral Schemes, and Function Fields

**Definition 13.11.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. We say  $X$  is **reduced** if  $\mathcal{O}_x$  is reduced (meaning  $\mathcal{O}_x$  has no nonzero nilpotents) for each  $x \in X$ . We say  $X$  is **integral** if it is reduced and irreducible (meaning the underlying topological space is irreducible).

**Proposition 13.17.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme.

1.  $X$  is reduced if and only if  $\mathcal{O}(U)$  is reduced for each open  $U \subseteq X$ .
2.  $X$  is integral if and only if  $\mathcal{O}(U)$  is an integral domain for each nonempty open  $U \subseteq X$ .
3. If  $X$  is integral, then  $\mathcal{O}_x$  is an integral domain for each  $x \in X$ .

*Proof.* If  $\mathcal{O}(U)$  is reduced for each open  $U \subseteq X$ , then it is clear that  $X$  is reduced. Conversely, suppose  $X$  is reduced.  $U \subseteq X$  be open and let  $f \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  such that  $f^n = 0$  for some  $n \geq 1$ . Then  $f_x^n = 0$  for all  $x \in U$  implies there exists an open covering  $\bigcup_{x \in U} U_x = U$  such that  $f|_{U_x} = 0$  for all  $x \in U$ . But then this implies  $f = 0$  by the sheaf property. It follows that  $\mathcal{O}(U)$  is reduced.

2. Suppose  $X$  is integral. Because all open subschemes of  $X$  are integral too, it suffices to show that  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  is an integral domain. Suppose  $f, g \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  such that  $fg = 0$ . Then  $X = V(f) \cup V(g)$ , so by irreducibility, we either have  $X = V(f)$  or  $X = V(g)$ . Without loss of generality, assume that  $X = V(f)$ . We claim that  $f = 0$  on  $X$ . Indeed, this can be checked locally on  $X$ , so we may assume that  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  is affine. Then  $V(f) = \operatorname{Spec} A$  says that  $f \in N(A)$  where  $N(A)$  is the nilradical of  $A$ . Since  $X$  is reduced, we have  $N(A) = 0$  which implies  $f = 0$ .

Conversely, suppose  $\mathcal{O}(U)$  is an integral domain for all open  $U \subseteq X$ . If there existed nonempty affine opens  $U_1, U_2 \subseteq X$  with empty intersection, then the sheaf axioms imply

$$\mathcal{O}(U_1 \cup U_2) = \mathcal{O}(U_1) \times \mathcal{O}(U_2),$$

but the product on the right-hand side obviously contains zerodivisors.

3. This follows from part 2 since the localization of an integral domain is an integral domain.  $\square$

**Example 13.15.** An affine scheme  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  is integral if and only if  $A$  is an integral domain. The generic point  $\eta$  of  $X$  then corresponds to the zero ideal of  $A$ , and the local ring  $\mathcal{O}_\eta$  is the localization  $A_{(0)}$ , which is just the field of fractions of  $A$ .

**Definition 13.12.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be an integral scheme and let  $\eta \in X$  be its generic point. Then  $\mathcal{O}_\eta$  is a field, which is called the **function field** of  $X$ , and is denoted  $K(X)$ .

**Proposition 13.18.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be an integral scheme with generic point  $\eta$  and let  $K(X)$  be its function field.

1. If  $U = \text{Spec } A$  is a nonempty open affine subscheme of  $X$ , then  $K(X) = \text{Frac } A$ . If  $x \in X$ , then  $K(X) = \text{Frac } \mathcal{O}_x$ .
2. Let  $U \subseteq V \subseteq X$  be nonempty opens. Then the maps  $\mathcal{O}(V) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(U) \rightarrow K(X)$  are injective.
3. For every nonempty open  $U \subseteq X$  and for every open covering  $U = \bigcup_i U_i$ , we have

$$\mathcal{O}(U) = \bigcap_i \mathcal{O}(U_i) = \bigcap_{x \in U} \mathcal{O}_x.$$

*Remark 37.* Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of integral schemes. Let  $\eta_Y$  and  $\eta_X$  be the generic points of  $Y$  and  $X$  respectively and suppose that  $\eta_X = f(\eta_Y)$  for some  $\eta_Y \in Y$ . Then we obtain an induced inclusion map of function fields:

$$K(X) := \mathcal{O}_{X, \eta_X} \xrightarrow{f_Y^\#} \mathcal{O}_{Y, \eta_Y} \hookrightarrow K(Y),$$

where the map  $\mathcal{O}_{Y, \eta_Y} \hookrightarrow K(Y)$  is the canonical inclusion map.

### 13.7 Divisors on Integral Schemes

Let  $X$  be an integral scheme. We denote by  $\mathcal{K} = \mathcal{K}_X$  the constant sheaf with value the function field  $K = K(X)$  of  $X$ . In other words, for every non-empty open  $U \subseteq X$ , we have  $\mathcal{K}(U) = K$ . For every point  $x \in X$ , we have  $\mathcal{K}_x = K$ . Since any non-empty open subset  $U \subseteq X$  is schematically dense, the ring  $R(U)$  of rational functions coincides with  $K(X)$ . In particular, the constant sheaves  $\mathcal{R}_X$  and  $\mathcal{K}_X$  are equal.

**Definition 13.13.** A **Cartier divisor**  $D$  on the integral scheme  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  is given by a tuple  $(U_i, f_i)$  where the  $U_i$  form an open covering of  $X$  and where  $f_i \in K^\times$  are elements with  $f_i f_j^{-1} \in \Gamma(U_i \cap U_j, \mathcal{O}^\times)$  for all  $i, j$ . Two tuples  $(U_i, f_i), (V_j, g_j)$  give rise to the same Cartier divisor if  $f_i g_j^{-1} \in \Gamma(U_i \cap V_j, \mathcal{O}^\times)$  for all  $i, j$ .

The set of Cartier divisors is denoted by  $\text{Div}(X)$ . It is an abelian group: in fact, given divisors  $D, E$ , represented by families  $(U_i, f_i), (V_j, g_j)$ , we define  $D + E$  as the divisor given by  $(U_i \cap V_j, f_i g_j)$ . A Cartier divisor is called **principal** if it is equal to a divisor given by  $(X, f)$ . Two divisors  $D, E$  are **linearly equivalent** if their difference  $D - E$  is a principal divisor. We denote by  $\text{DivCl}(X)$  the quotient of  $\text{Div}(X)$  by the subgroup of principal divisors. We obtain an exact sequence

$$1 \longrightarrow \Gamma(X, \mathcal{O}_X)^\times \longrightarrow K(X)^\times \longrightarrow \text{Div}(X) \longrightarrow \text{DivCl}(X) \longrightarrow 0 \quad (40)$$

There is a close relationship between divisors and line bundles. To a Cartier divisor  $D$  we attach the line bundle  $\mathcal{O}_X(D)$ , given by

$$\Gamma(V, \mathcal{O}_X(D)) = \{f \in K(X) \mid f_i f \in \Gamma(U_i \cap V, \mathcal{O}_X) \text{ for all } i\}$$

for  $V \subseteq X$  open. Over  $U_i$ ,  $\mathcal{O}_X(D)$  is isomorphic to the free  $\mathcal{O}_{U_i}$ -submodule of rank 1 of  $\mathcal{K}_{U_i}$  generated by  $f_i^{-1}$ .

### 13.8 Schemes of Finite Type over a Field

**Proposition 13.19.** Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field, let  $X$  be a  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme locally of finite type, and let  $x \in X$ . Then the following assertions are equivalent.

1. The point  $x \in X$  is closed.
2. The field extension  $\kappa_x/\mathbb{k}$  is finite.
3. The field extension  $\kappa_x/\mathbb{k}$  is algebraic.

**Theorem 13.24.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be an irreducible  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme of finite type with generic point  $\eta$ .

1.  $\dim X = \text{trdeg}_{\mathbb{k}} \kappa(\eta)$ .
2. Let  $x \in X$  be any closed point. The  $\dim X = \dim \mathcal{O}_x$ .
3. Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of  $\mathbb{k}$ -schemes of finite type such that  $f(Y)$  contains the generic point  $\eta$  of  $X$ . Then  $\dim Y \geq \dim X$ . In particular, we have  $\dim U = \dim X$  for any non-empty open subscheme  $U$  of  $X$ .
4. Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of  $\mathbb{k}$ -schemes of finite type with finite fibers. Then  $\dim Y \leq \dim X$ .

*Proof.* 1. We may assume that  $X$  is reduced and covering  $X$  by non-empty open affine subschemes  $U$  we may assume that  $X = \text{Spec } A$  where  $A$  is an integral finitely generated  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra. In this case,  $\kappa(\eta) = K$  is the fraction field of

A. Let  $\mathbb{k}[\mathbf{t}] \rightarrow A$  be a finite injective homomorphism where  $\mathbb{k}[\mathbf{t}] = \mathbb{k}[t_1, \dots, t_d]$  and  $d = \dim A$ . Then  $K$  is a finite extension of  $\mathbb{k}(\mathbf{t})$ , and we have

$$\mathrm{trdeg}_{\mathbb{k}}(K) = \mathrm{trdeg}_{\mathbb{k}}(\mathbb{k}(\mathbf{t})) = d.$$

3. By hypothesis, there exists  $\theta \in Y$  such that  $f(\theta) = \eta$ . Therefore  $f$  induces a  $\mathbb{k}$ -embedding  $\kappa(\eta) \hookrightarrow \kappa(\theta)$ . Denote by  $Z$  the closure of  $\theta$ . Then

$$\dim X = \mathrm{trdeg}_{\mathbb{k}} \kappa(\eta) \leq \mathrm{trdeg}_{\mathbb{k}} \kappa(\theta) = \dim Z \leq \dim Y.$$

2. By (3), we may replace  $X$  by an open affine neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$  in  $X_{\mathrm{red}}$ . Thus again we may assume that  $X = \mathrm{Spec} A$  where  $A$  is an integral finitely generated  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra. Then  $x$  corresponds to a maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{p}_x$  of  $A$  and  $\dim(\mathcal{O}_x)$  is the supremum of lengths of chains of prime ideals of  $A$  that end in  $\mathfrak{p}_x$ . But the chain consisting of the single prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p}_x$  may be completed to a maximal chain of length  $\dim A$ .

4. Let  $Z$  be an irreducible component of  $Y$  with generic point  $\theta$  and set  $x := f(\theta)$ . We will show that  $\mathrm{trdeg}_{\mathbb{k}}(\kappa(\theta)) \leq \dim X$ . Replacing  $X$  by an open affine neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$  and  $Y$  by an open affine neighborhood of  $\theta$  in  $f^{-1}(U)$  we may assume that  $X = \mathrm{Spec} A$  and  $Y = \mathrm{Spec} B$  are affine. Then  $B$  is a  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra of finite type and in particular an  $A$ -algebra of finite type. The fiber  $f^{-1}(x) = \mathrm{Spec}(B \otimes_A \kappa(x))$  is thus a  $\kappa(x)$ -scheme of finite type with one finitely many points. The point  $\theta$  is closed in  $f^{-1}(x)$  and therefore  $\kappa(\theta)$  is a finite extension of  $\kappa(x)$ . This shows

$$\mathrm{trdeg}_{\mathbb{k}} \kappa(\theta) = \mathrm{trdeg}_{\mathbb{k}} \kappa(x) = \dim \overline{\{x\}} \leq \dim X.$$

□

## 13.9 Subschemes and Immersions

**Definition 13.14.** Let  $X$  be a scheme.

1. A closed subscheme of  $X$  is a closed subset  $Z \subseteq X$  (let  $i: Z \rightarrow X$  be the inclusion) and a sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_Z$  on  $Z$  such that  $(Z, \mathcal{O}_Z)$  is a scheme and such that the sheaf  $i_* \mathcal{O}_Z$  is isomorphic to  $\mathcal{O}_X / \mathcal{I}$  for some  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -ideal  $\mathcal{I}$ .
2. A morphism  $i: Z \rightarrow X$  of schemes is called a **closed immersion** if the underlying continuous map is a homeomorphism between  $Z$  and a closed subset of  $X$ , and the sheaf homomorphism  $i^\flat: \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow i_* \mathcal{O}_Z$  is surjective.

## 13.10 Gluing of Schemes

**Definition 13.15.** A gluing datum of schemes consists of the following data:

- an index set  $I$ ,
- for all  $i \in I$  a scheme  $U_i = (U_i, \mathcal{O}_i)$ ,
- for all  $i, j \in I$  an open subset  $U_{i,j} \subseteq U_i$  (viewed as an open subscheme  $U_{i,j} = (U_{i,j}, \mathcal{O}_{i,j})$ ) where  $U_{i,i} = U_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .
- for all  $i, j \in I$  an isomorphism  $f_{ij}: U_{i,j} \rightarrow U_{j,i}$  of schemes such that we have the following cocycle condition:

$$f_{ik} = f_{jk} f_{ij}$$

for all  $i, j, k \in I$ . Here we are assuming implicitly that  $f_{ij}(U_{i,j} \cap U_{i,k}) \subseteq U_{j,k}$  (otherwise the composition is meaningless). For  $i = j = k$ , the cocycle condition implies  $f_{ii} = 1$ . For  $i = k$ , the cocycle condition implies  $f_{ij}^{-1} = f_{ji}$  and that  $f_{ij}$  restricts to an isomorphism from  $U_{i,j} \cap U_{i,k}$  to  $U_{j,i} \cap U_{j,k}$ .

We denote such a gluing datum by  $\mathbf{G} = (I, \{U_i\}, \{U_{i,j}\}, \{f_{ij}\})$ .

**Proposition 13.20.** Let  $\mathbf{G} = (I, \{U_i\}, \{U_{i,j}\}, \{f_{ij}\})$  be a gluing datum of schemes. Then there exists a scheme  $X = X_{\mathbf{G}}$  together with morphisms  $\iota_i: U_i \rightarrow X$  such that

- for all  $i$  the map  $\iota_i$  yields an isomorphism from  $U_i$  onto an open subscheme of  $X$ ,
- $\iota_j f_{ij} = \iota_i$  on  $U_{i,j}$  for all  $i, j$ ,
- $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} \iota_i(U_i)$ ,
- $\iota_i(U_i) \cap \iota_j(U_j) = \iota_i(U_{i,j}) = \iota_j(U_{j,i})$  for all  $i, j \in I$ .

Furthermore,  $X$  together with the  $\iota_i$  is uniquely determined up to unique isomorphism.

*Proof.* The first step is to define the underlying topological space of  $X$ . We start with the disjoint union  $\coprod_{i \in I} U_i$  of the (underlying topological spaces of the)  $U_i$  and define an equivalence relation  $\sim$  on it as follows: points  $x_i \in U_i$  and  $x_j \in U_j$  are said to be equivalent, denoted  $x_i \sim x_j$ , if and only if  $x_j = f_{ij}(x_i)$ . We denote the equivalence class of  $x_i$  by  $[x_i]$ . As a set, we define  $X$  to be the set of equivalence classes,

$$X = \coprod_{i \in I} U_i / \sim.$$

The natural maps  $\iota_i: U_i \rightarrow X$ , given by  $\iota_i(x_i) = [x_i]$ , are injective and we have  $\iota_i(U_{i,j}) = \iota_i(U_i) \cap \iota_j(U_j)$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . We equip  $X$  with the quotient topology, that is, with the coarsest topology such that all  $\iota_i$  are continuous. That means that a subset  $V \subseteq X$  is open if and only if for all  $i$  the preimage  $\iota_i^{-1}(V)$  is open in  $U_i$ . In particular, the  $\iota_i(U_i)$  and the  $\iota_i(U_{i,j}) = \iota_i(U_i) \cap \iota_j(U_j)$  are open in  $X$ .

To clean our notation in what follows, set  $V_i = \iota_i(U_i)$  and note that  $V_{ij} = V_i \cap V_j = \iota_i(U_{i,j}) = \iota_j(U_{j,i})$  for each  $i, j \in I$ . For each  $i$  we have a sheaf  $\mathcal{F}_i := (\iota_i)_* \mathcal{O}_i$  on  $V_i$ , and for each  $i, j$  we have isomorphisms  $\varphi_{ij}: \mathcal{F}_j|_{V_{ij}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i|_{V_{ij}}$  satisfying the cocycle condition:

$$\varphi_{ik} = \varphi_{ij} \varphi_{jk}$$

on  $V_{ijk}$  for all  $i, j, k$ . Thus by Proposition (1.2), there exists a sheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  together with isomorphisms  $\rho_i: \mathcal{F}_i \rightarrow \mathcal{F}|_{V_i}$  for all  $i$  such that  $\rho_i \varphi_{ij} = \rho_j$  on  $V_{ij}$  for all  $i, j$ . Moreover  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\rho_i$  are uniquely determined up to unique isomorphism by these conditions. We have isomorphisms  $\varphi_{ji}: \mathcal{F}_i|_{V_{ij}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_j|_{V_{ij}}$  satisfying the cocycle condition  $\varphi_{ki} = \varphi_{kj} \varphi_{ji}$  on  $V_{ijk}$ . Thus by Proposition (1.2), there exists a sheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  together with isomorphisms  $\psi_i: \mathcal{F}|_{V_i} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i$  for all  $i$  such that  $\varphi_{ij} \psi_j = \psi_i$  on  $V_{ij}$  for all  $i, j$ . Moreover  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\psi_i$  are uniquely determined up to unique isomorphism by these conditions.  $\square$

**Example 13.16.** Let  $X = \text{Spec } A$  and  $X' = \text{Spec } A'$  where  $A = \mathbb{k}[t]$  and  $A' = \mathbb{k}[t']$ . We glue the affine  $\mathbb{k}$ -schemes  $X$  and  $X'$  along open subsets as follows: let  $U = D(t)$ , let  $U' = D(t')$ , and let  $f: U' \rightarrow U$  be the  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme isomorphism corresponding to the  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra isomorphism  $\varphi: A_t \rightarrow A'_{t'}$  defined by

$$\varphi(t) = 1/t'.$$

Then the scheme obtained from this gluing datum is just  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$ . The closed points of  $X$  are the points  $x = \langle \pi \rangle$  corresponding to a monic irreducible  $\pi \in \mathbb{k}[t]$ . The residue field for  $x$  then is  $\kappa(x) = \mathbb{k}[t]/\pi$  which is a finite extension of  $\mathbb{k}$  of degree  $d = \deg \pi$ . The generic point of  $X$  is the point  $\eta = \langle 0 \rangle$  whose corresponding residue field is  $\kappa(\eta) = \mathbb{k}(t)$  which is a transcendental extension of  $\mathbb{k}$ . If  $\pi \neq t$ , then  $x \in U$ , and the point in  $X'$  that  $x$  is glued to (via  $g$ ) is the point  $x' = \langle \pi' \rangle$  where  $\pi' = t^d \pi(1/t)$ . For instance,  $\langle t - \alpha \rangle$  gets glued to  $\langle 1 - \alpha t' \rangle = \langle t' - \alpha^{-1} \rangle$  for every  $\alpha \in \mathbb{k} \setminus \{0\}$ .

**Example 13.17.** Let  $X = \text{Spec } A$  and  $X' = \text{Spec } A'$  where  $A = \mathbb{k}[t]$  and  $A' = \mathbb{k}[t']$ . We glue the affine  $\mathbb{k}$ -schemes  $X$  and  $X'$  along open subsets as follows: let  $U = D(t)$ , let  $U' = D(t')$ , and let  $f: U' \rightarrow U$  be the  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme isomorphism corresponding to the  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra isomorphism  $\varphi: A_t \rightarrow A'_{t'}$  defined by

$$\varphi(t) = t'.$$

Let  $S$  be the  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme obtained from this gluing datum. Then the underlying topological space of  $S$  is affine space  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  with two origins (namely  $\langle t \rangle$  and  $\langle t' \rangle$ ).

**Example 13.18.** Let  $X = \text{Spec } A$  and  $X' = \text{Spec } A'$  where  $A = \mathbb{k}[t]$  and  $A' = \mathbb{k}[t']$ . We glue  $X$  and  $X'$  along open subsets in two ways as follows: let  $U = D(t)$ , let  $U' = D(t')$ , and let  $f, g: U' \rightarrow U$  be the scheme morphisms corresponding to the ring isomorphisms  $\varphi, \psi: A_t \rightarrow A'_{t'}$  defined by

$$\varphi(t) = t' \quad \text{and} \quad \psi(t) = 1/t'$$

respectively. We set  $X \cup_f X'$  to be the scheme obtained by gluing  $X$  and  $X'$  along  $f$ , and we set  $X \cup_g X'$  to be the scheme obtained by gluing  $X$  along  $g$ . Then  $X \cup_f X'$  is affine space  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  with two origins (namely  $\langle t \rangle$  and  $\langle t' \rangle$ ), whereas  $X \cup_g X'$  is the scheme corresponding to  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$ .

The closed points of  $X$  are the points  $x = \langle \pi \rangle$  corresponding to a monic irreducible  $\pi \in \mathbb{k}[t]$ . The residue field for  $x$  then is  $\kappa(x) = \mathbb{k}[t]/\pi$  which is a finite extension of  $\mathbb{k}$  of degree  $d = \deg \pi$ . The generic point of  $X$  is the point  $\eta = \langle 0 \rangle$  whose corresponding residue field is  $\kappa(\eta) = \mathbb{k}(t)$  which is a transcendental extension of  $\mathbb{k}$ . If  $\pi \neq t$ , then  $x \in U$ , and the point in  $X'$  that  $x$  is glued to (via  $g$ ) is the point  $x' = \langle \pi' \rangle$  where  $\pi' = t^d \pi(1/t)$ . For instance,  $\langle t - \alpha \rangle$  gets glued to  $\langle 1 - \alpha t' \rangle = \langle t' - \alpha^{-1} \rangle$  for every  $\alpha \in \mathbb{k} \setminus \{0\}$ .

**Example 13.19.** Consider the affine scheme

$$Z := \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}[s, t, u] / \langle u^3 - st \rangle \cong \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}[x^3, y^3, xy].$$



We can think of  $Z$  as the quotient of  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{K}}^2$  by the group of third roots of unity with an isolated singularity at the origin. We resolve this singularity as follows: for  $i \in \{1, 2, 3\}$  let  $U_i = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{K}[u_i, v_i] \simeq \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{K}}^2$ . We glue the  $U_i$  together via

$$\begin{array}{lll} u_2 = u_1^{-1} & u_3 = v_1^2 u_1 & u_3 = u_2^3 v_2^2 \\ v_2 = u_1^2 v_1 & v_3 = v_1^{-1} & v_3 = u_2^{-2} v_2^{-1}. \end{array}$$

More precisely, we have the following gluing datum:

$$\begin{aligned} U_2 \supset D(u_2) &:= U_{2,1} \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\varphi_{1,2}} U_{1,2} := D(u_1) \subset U_1 \\ U_3 \supset D(v_3) &:= U_{3,1} \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\varphi_{1,3}} U_{1,3} := D(v_1) \subset U_1 \\ U_2 \supset D(u_2 v_2) &:= U_{3,2} \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\varphi_{2,3}} U_{2,3} := D(u_3 v_3) \subset U_3 \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{array}{lll} \varphi_{1,2}(u_2) = u_1^{-1} & \varphi_{1,3}(u_3) = v_1^2 u_1 & \varphi_{2,3}(u_3) = u_2^3 v_2^2 \\ \varphi_{1,2}(v_2) = u_1^2 v_1 & \varphi_{1,3}(v_3) = v_1^{-1} & \varphi_{2,3}(v_3) = u_2^{-2} v_2^{-1}. \end{array}$$

One checks that the  $\varphi_{i,j}$  satisfy the cocycle equation. For instance,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{1,2} \varphi_{2,3}(u_3) &= \varphi_{1,2}(u_2^3 v_2^2) \\ &= u_1^{-3} (u_1^2 v_1)^2 \\ &= u_1 v_1^2 \\ &= \varphi_{1,3}(u_3). \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\tilde{Z}$  denote the scheme obtained by this gluing datum. Next, let

$$Z := \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{K}[s, t, u] / \langle u^3 - st \rangle \cong \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{K}[x^3, y^3, xy].$$

We can think of  $Z$  as the quotient of  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{K}}^2$  by the group of third roots of unity. We have maps

$$\begin{aligned} U_1 &\rightarrow Z, & (u_1, v_1) &\mapsto (u_1 v_1^2, u_1^2 v_1, u_1 v_1) \\ U_2 &\rightarrow Z, & (u_2, v_2) &\mapsto (u_2^3 v_2^2, v_2, u_2 v_2) \\ U_3 &\rightarrow Z, & (u_3, v_3) &\mapsto (u_3, u_3^2 v_2^3, u_3 v_3), \end{aligned}$$

which glue to a morphism  $\pi: \tilde{Z} \rightarrow Z$ . One checks that the restriction  $\pi^{-1}(Z \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}) \rightarrow Z \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}$  is an isomorphism. The closed subscheme  $\pi^{-1}(\{\mathbf{0}\})$  (with the reduced scheme structure) can be identified with the union (inside a  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{K}}^2$ ) of two projective lines intersecting in a single point.

### 13.10.1 Construction of $\mathbb{P}^n$

Let  $\mathbf{G} = (I, \{U_i\}, \{U_{i,j}\}, \{\varphi_{ij}\})$  be the gluing datum where

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \{0, 1, \dots, n\} \\ U_i &= \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{Z}[\mathbf{X}_i] \\ U_{i,j} &= \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{Z}[\mathbf{X}_i]_{X_{i,j}} \\ {}^a\varphi_{ij} &= (\text{given by } X_{i,k} \mapsto X_{j,k} X_{j,i}^{-1} \text{ for each } k \neq j) \end{aligned}$$

The  $X_{\mathbf{G}} = \mathbb{P}^n$ .

**Example 13.20.** Let  $A$  be a ring, let  $B = A[t] = A[t_0, \dots, t_d]$ , and let  $X = \operatorname{Proj} B$ .

## 14 Local Properties of Schemes

### 14.1 Normal Schemes

**Definition 14.1.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. We say that  $X$  is **normal** at  $x \in X$  if  $\mathcal{O}_x$  is a normal domain (i.e. the local ring  $\mathcal{O}_x$  is an integral domain which is closed in its field of fractions). We say  $X$  is **normal** if it is normal at every point  $x \in X$ .

*Remark 38.* Suppose  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  where  $A$  is reduced. Then saying that  $X$  is normal is not equivalent to saying that  $A$  is integrally closed in its total ring of fractions. On the other hand, if  $A$  is noetherian, then this is the case.

**Lemma 14.1.** *Let  $A$  be a reduced ring which has finitely many minimal primes. Then the following are equivalent:*

1.  $A$  is a normal ring.
2.  $A$  is integrally closed in its total ring of fractions.
3.  $A$  is a finite product of normal domains.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{p}_1, \dots, \mathfrak{p}_n$  be the minimal primes of  $A$ . Then we have

$$Q(A) = A_{\mathfrak{p}_1} \times \cdots \times A_{\mathfrak{p}_n}$$

where each factor is a field since  $A$  is reduced. Let  $e_i = (0, \dots, 1, \dots, 0)$  be the  $i$ th idempotent of  $Q(A)$ . If  $A$  is integrally closed in  $Q(A)$ , then it contains in particular the idempotents  $e_i$  (since this is a root to the monic polynomial  $x^2 - x$ ), and so in this case we see that  $A$  is a product of  $n$  domains. Each factor is of the form  $A/\mathfrak{p}_i$  with field of fractions  $A_{\mathfrak{p}_i}$ . Furthermore, each map  $A/\mathfrak{p}_i \rightarrow A_{\mathfrak{p}_i}$  is integrally closed. Hence  $A$  is a finite product of normal domains.  $\square$

**Definition 14.2.** Let  $A$  be a noetherian domain. We say  $A$  is a **Dedekind domain** if it is normal and has dimension  $\leq 1$ .

## 14.2 The Tangent Space

Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme and let  $x \in X$ . Recall that we set  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  to be the maximal ideal of the local ring  $\mathcal{O}_x$ , and we set  $\kappa(x)$  to be the residue field  $\kappa(x) := \mathcal{O}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x$ . Note that  $\mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2$  is a  $\kappa(x)$ -vector space.

**Definition 14.3.** The **tangent space** of  $X$  at  $x$  is defined to be the dual space:

$$T_x(X) := (\mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2)^* := \text{Hom}_{\kappa(x)}(\mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2, \kappa(x)).$$

*Remark 39.* This notion is best behaved if  $X$  is a  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme and  $x \in X$  is a point with residue field  $\mathbb{k}$ . On the other hand, if  $\eta$  is a generic point of any integral scheme  $X$ , then we have  $\mathfrak{m}_\eta = 0$ , so  $T_\eta(X)$  does not contain any information about  $X$ .

*Remark 40.* In differential geometry, one defines the tangent space of a smooth manifold  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  at a point  $x \in X$  to be the  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space of all point derivations  $\vec{v}: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Note that if  $\vec{v}: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a point derivation, then the Leibniz law implies  $\vec{v}(\mathfrak{m}_x^2) \subseteq \mathfrak{m}_x$ .

**Example 14.1.** Let  $(R, \mathfrak{m}, \mathbb{k})$  be a local noetherian ring of dimension  $d$ . Then the **tangent space** of  $R$  is the  $\mathbb{k}$ -vector space

$$T(R) := (\mathfrak{m}/\mathfrak{m}^2)^* = \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{k}}(\mathfrak{m}/\mathfrak{m}^2, \mathbb{k}).$$

Now suppose that  $\mathfrak{m} = \langle x_1, \dots, x_m \rangle$  where  $m$  is minimal. Then Nakayama's lemma tells us that  $(\bar{x}_1, \dots, \bar{x}_m)$  is a  $\mathbb{k}$ -basis of  $\mathfrak{m}/\mathfrak{m}^2$ . In particular, we have

$$\dim T(R) = \dim_{\mathbb{k}}((\mathfrak{m}/\mathfrak{m}^2)^*) = \dim_{\mathbb{k}}(\mathfrak{m}/\mathfrak{m}^2) = m.$$

For each  $1 \leq i \leq m$  let  $\partial_i: \mathfrak{m} \rightarrow \mathfrak{m}$  be a map such that

$$\partial_i(x_j) \in \begin{cases} 1 + \mathfrak{m}^2 & \text{if } i = j \\ \mathfrak{m}^2 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

The tangent space is functorial in the following sense: let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes and let  $y \in Y$  be a point and set  $x = f(y)$ . Then the local homomorphism  $f_y^\sharp: \mathcal{O}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y,y}$  induces a  $\kappa(y)$ -linear map

$$\mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2 \otimes_{\kappa(x)} \kappa(y) \rightarrow \mathfrak{m}_y/\mathfrak{m}_y^2.$$

If the extension  $\kappa(y)/\kappa(x)$  is finite or if  $T_x(X)$  is a finite-dimensional  $\kappa(x)$ -vector space, then dualizing we obtain an induced map on tangent space

$$df_y: T_y(Y) \rightarrow T_x(X) \otimes_{\kappa(x)} \kappa(y),$$

where we used the canonical isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\kappa(y)}(\mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2 \otimes_{\kappa(x)} \kappa(y), \kappa(y)) &\simeq \text{Hom}_{\kappa(x)}(\mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2, \text{Hom}_{\kappa(y)}(\kappa(y), \kappa(y))) \\ &\simeq \text{Hom}_{\kappa(x)}(\mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2, \kappa(y)) \\ &\simeq \text{Hom}_{\kappa(x)}(\mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2, \kappa(x)) \otimes_{\kappa(x)} \kappa(y), \\ &= T_x(X) \otimes_{\kappa(x)} \kappa(y). \end{aligned}$$

where the last isomorphism follows from the finiteness assumptions.

### 14.3 Conormal Sheaf of an Immersion

Let  $\iota: Y \rightarrow X$  be an immersion of schemes. Thus there exists an open subscheme  $U$  of  $X$  and a closed immersion  $\iota_1: Y \rightarrow U$  such that  $\iota$  is the composition of  $\iota_1$  followed by the inclusion  $U \hookrightarrow X$ . Let  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_U$  be the quasicoherent ideal defining  $\iota_1$ . For any integer  $n \geq 0$  the closed subscheme

$$Y_\iota^{(n)} := V(\mathcal{I}^{n+1})$$

of  $U$  is called the  $n$ th **infinitesimal neighborhood** of  $Y$  in  $X$ . Moreover, we call

$$\mathcal{C}_{Y/X} := \mathcal{C}_\iota := \mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}^2$$

the **conormal sheaf** of  $\iota$ . It is a quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}_U$ -module that is annihilated by  $\mathcal{I}$ . Thus we consider it as a quasicoherent  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -module. We obtain a sequence of closed immersions of subschemes of  $X$ :

$$Y = Y_\iota^{(0)} \hookrightarrow Y_\iota^{(1)} \hookrightarrow Y_\iota^{(2)} \hookrightarrow \dots$$

each closed immersion defined by a quasicoherent ideal of square 0. The immersion  $Y_\iota^{(n-1)}$  is defined by the quasicoherent ideal  $\mathcal{I}^n/\mathcal{I}^{n+1}$  which we consider as a quasicoherent  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -module. In particular,  $\mathcal{C}_\iota$  defines the closed immersion  $Y \rightarrow Y_\iota^{(1)}$ .

**Definition 14.4.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. The conormal sheaf of the diagonal map  $\Delta_f: Y \rightarrow Y \times_X Y$  is denoted  $\Omega_f^1 := \Omega_{Y/X}^1$  and is called the  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -module of Kähler differentials.

*Remark 41.* Suppose  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$ ,  $B = \operatorname{Spec} Y$ , and  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  corresponds to the ring homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$ . Then  $\Omega_{Y/X}^1$  is the quasicoherent  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -module attached to  $\Omega_{B/A}^1$ .

### 14.4 Smooth Morphisms

Heuristically, smoothness should mean that the scheme in question “locally” looks like affine space. However the Zariski topology is not sufficiently fine to appropriately make sense of this; instead one uses étale topology. Here we define smoothness by the condition that locally, the scheme in question is defined by equations  $f_1, \dots, f_r$  in some affine space which behave as coordinate functions  $T_1, \dots, T_r$ , at least if we only consider their first derivatives. This notion of smoothness is the same as the one used in differential geometry.

**Definition 14.5.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes and let  $d \geq 0$  be an integer.

1. We say that  $f$  is **smooth of relative dimension  $d$  at  $y \in Y$** , if there exists affine open neighborhoods  $V = \operatorname{Spec} B$  of  $y$  and  $U = \operatorname{Spec} R$  of  $f(y)$  such that  $f(V) \subseteq U$ , and open immersion

$$j: V \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} R[T_1, \dots, T_n]/\langle f_1, \dots, f_{n-d} \rangle := \operatorname{Spec} A$$

of  $R$ -schemes for suitable  $n$  and  $f_i$ , such that the Jacobian matrix

$$J_f(y) = (\partial_{T_j} f_i(y))_{i,j} \in M_{(n-d) \times n}(\kappa(y))$$

has rank  $n-d$ . Thus the morphism of schemes  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  restricts to a morphism of affine schemes  $f|_V: V \rightarrow U$  which corresponds to a morphism of rings  $\varphi: R \rightarrow B$  which makes  $B$  into an  $R$ -algebra. The morphism  $j: V \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} A$  of  $R$ -schemes corresponds to the morphism of  $R$ -algebras  $A \rightarrow B$ . To say that  $j$  is an open immersion is equivalent to saying  $B$  is isomorphic to  $A_t$  for some nonzero  $t \in A$ .

2. We say that  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is **smooth**, or that  $Y$  is **smooth over  $X$**  (of relative dimension  $d$ ), if it is smooth (of relative dimension  $d$ ) at all points  $y \in Y$ . If  $f$  is smooth of relative dimension 0, then we say  $f$  is **étale**.

**Definition 14.6.** A map of schemes  $f: S' \rightarrow S$  is **étale** if it satisfies one of the following equivalent properties:

1. For every  $s' \in S'$  there is an open neighborhood  $U' \subseteq S'$  around  $s'$  and an open affine neighborhood  $\operatorname{Spec} R \simeq U \subseteq S$  around  $f(s')$  with  $f(U') \subseteq U$  such that  $U'$  is  $U$ -isomorphic to an open subscheme of  $\operatorname{Spec}(R[t]/g)_{g'}$  for some monic polynomial  $g \in R[t]$  with  $g' = dg/dt$ .
2. The map  $f$  is locally of finite presentation and flat, and each fiber  $f^{-1}(s)$  is  $\coprod_{i \in I_s} \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}_{i,s}$  for finite separable extensions  $\mathbb{k}_{i,s}$  of  $\kappa(s)$ .
3. The map  $f$  is locally of finite presentation and flat, and  $\Omega_{S'/S}^1 = 0$ .
4. The map  $f$  is locally of finite presentation and satisfies the functorial criterion of being **formally étale**: for any closed immersion  $\operatorname{Spec} B_0 \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} B$  over  $S$  with  $\mathfrak{b} = \ker(B \twoheadrightarrow B_0)$  satisfying  $\mathfrak{b}^2 = 0$ , the natural map  $S'(B) \rightarrow S'(B_0)$  is bijective (i.e. solutions to the equations defining  $S'$  over  $S$  can be lifted uniquely through nilpotent thickenings).

**Example 14.2.** Let  $S = \operatorname{Spec} R$  and let  $T = \operatorname{Spec} A$  where

$$A = R[\mathbf{t}]_g / \mathbf{f} = R[t_1, \dots, t_n]_g / \langle f_1, \dots, f_n \rangle,$$

where  $g \in R[\mathbf{t}]$  is the determinant of the Jacobian matrix of  $\mathbf{f}$ :

$$g := \det J_{\mathbf{f}} = \det(\partial_{t_j} f_i) \in R[\mathbf{t}].$$

Clearly  $T \rightarrow S$  is locally of finite presentation. We wish to show that  $T \rightarrow S$  is étale using the functorial criterion. Suppose  $B$  is an  $R$ -algebra and  $\mathfrak{b}$  is an ideal of  $B$  such that  $\mathfrak{b}^2 = 0$ . Set  $\overline{B} = B/\mathfrak{b}$  and note that a  $\overline{B}$ -valued point of  $T$  consists of a vector  $\overline{\mathbf{b}} \in \overline{B}^n$  such that  $\mathbf{f}(\overline{\mathbf{b}}) = 0$  and such that  $g(\overline{\mathbf{b}}) \in \overline{B}^\times$ . Indeed, if  $\varphi: A \rightarrow \overline{B}$  is an  $R$ -algebra homomorphism, then  $\varphi(t_j) = \overline{b}_j$  for some  $\overline{b}_j \in \overline{B}$ , and so we set  $\overline{\mathbf{b}} = (\overline{b}_1, \dots, \overline{b}_n)$ . Since this is an  $R$ -algebra homomorphism we must have  $\mathbf{f}(\overline{\mathbf{b}}) = 0$  and since ring homomorphisms send units to units we must also have  $g(\overline{\mathbf{b}}) \in \overline{B}^\times$ . Now given such a  $\overline{B}$ -valued point of  $T$ , we wish to uniquely lift it to a  $B$ -valued point of  $T$ . First consider the point  $\mathbf{b} = (b_1, \dots, b_n) \in B^n$  which is a lift of  $\overline{\mathbf{b}}$ , so  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{b}) \in \mathfrak{b}B^n$ . We seek unique  $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \in \mathfrak{b}B^n$  such that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{b} + \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}) = 0$  and  $g(\mathbf{b} + \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}) \in B^\times$ . First note that since  $\mathfrak{b}^2 = 0$ , we have

$$\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{b} + \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}) = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{b}) + J_{\mathbf{f}}(\mathbf{b})\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}.$$

Furthermore, both  $g(\mathbf{b})$  and  $g(\mathbf{b} + \boldsymbol{\varepsilon})$  reduce to  $g(\overline{\mathbf{b}}) \in \overline{B}^\times$ , thus both  $g(\mathbf{b})$  and  $g(\mathbf{b} + \boldsymbol{\varepsilon})$  are units in  $B^\times$  (a unit plus a nilpotent is a unit) and in particular this implies  $J_{\mathbf{f}}(\mathbf{b})$  is invertible. Thus, we may indeed uniquely solve

$$\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} = -J_{\mathbf{f}}(\mathbf{b})^{-1}(\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{b})).$$

**Definition 14.7.** A map of schemes  $f: X \rightarrow S$  is **smooth** if it satisfies any of the following equivalent conditions:

1. For all  $x \in X$  there are opens  $V \subseteq X$  around  $x$  and  $U \subseteq S$  around  $f(x)$  with  $f(V) \subseteq U$  such that  $V$  admits an étale  $U$ -map to some  $\mathbb{A}_{U'}^n$ .
2. The map  $f$  is locally of finite presentation and flat, and all fibers  $f^{-1}(s)$  are regular and remain so after extension of scalars to some perfect extension of  $\kappa(s)$ .
3. The map  $f$  is locally of finite presentation and flat, and  $\Omega_{X/S}^1$  is locally free with rank near  $x \in X$  equal to  $\dim_x X_{f(x)}$  (the maximal dimension of an irreducible component of  $X_{f(x)}$  through  $x$ ) for each  $x \in X$ .
4. The map  $f$  is locally of finite presentation and satisfies the functorial criterion of being **formally smooth**: for any closed immersion  $\operatorname{Spec} B_0 \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} B$  over  $S$  with  $I = \ker(B \twoheadrightarrow B_0)$  satisfying  $I^2 = 0$ , the natural map  $X(B) \rightarrow X(B_0)$  is surjective (i.e. solutions to the equations defining  $X$  over  $S$  can be lifted through nilpotent thickenings).

*Remark 42.* If  $S$  is locally noetherian, then in (4) it suffices to use artin local  $\operatorname{Spec} A$  with residue field equal to a chosen algebraic closure of the residue field at the image point in  $S$ .

**Example 14.3.** The basic example of a smooth scheme over  $S = \operatorname{Spec} R$  is any open subscheme  $X$  in  $\operatorname{Spec} A$  where  $A = R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f} = R[t_1, \dots, t_n]/\langle f_1, \dots, f_m \rangle$  such that the  $m \times n$  matrix  $J_{\mathbf{f}} = (\partial_{t_j} f_i)$  has rank  $m$  at all points on  $X$ . Conditions 1, 2, and 3 are not easily checked by explicit computation, but condition 4 may be checked by the same method as the previous example. In the present case,  $J_{\mathbf{f}}(v)$  is pointwise of rank  $m$  on  $\operatorname{Spec} B$  so by Nakayama's lemma it is a surjective linear map  $B_0^n \rightarrow B_0^m$ .

#### 14.4.1 Topological Motivation for Sites

**Definition 14.8.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a map between topological spaces. We say  $f$  is **étale** if it is a local homeomorphism, meaning for every  $y \in Y$  there exists an open neighborhood  $V$  of  $y$  such that  $U = f(V)$  is open and  $f|_V: V \rightarrow U$  is a homeomorphism.

**Lemma 14.2.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be étale. Then  $f$  is continuous.

*Proof.* Let  $y \in Y$  and let  $U$  be an open neighborhood of  $x = f(y)$ . We need to find an open neighborhood  $V$  of  $y$  such that  $f(V) \subseteq U$ . Since  $f$  is étale, there exists an open neighborhood  $V_y$  of  $y$  such that  $U_y := f(V_y)$  is open and  $f|_{V_y}: V_y \rightarrow U_y$  is a homeomorphism. Then  $V = f^{-1}(U \cap U_y)$  is an open neighborhood of  $y$  which is contained in  $V_y$  and  $f(V) \subseteq U$ . In fact,  $f$  restricts to a homeomorphism  $f|_V: V \rightarrow f(V)$ .  $\square$

**Definition 14.9.** Let  $X$  be a topological space. The **topological étale site** of  $X$  consists of the following data:

1. The category  $X_{\text{ét}}$  of étale  $X$ -spaces  $U \rightarrow X$ ;
2. The rule  $\tau$  that assigns to each  $U$  in  $X_{\text{ét}}$  a distinguished class  $\tau_U$  of **étale coverings**:  $\tau_U$  is the collections of maps  $\{f_i: U_i \rightarrow U\}$  in  $X_{\text{ét}}$  such that  $\bigcup_{i \in I} f_i(U_i) = U$ . The étale coverings satisfy the properties that constitute the axioms for a **Grothendieck topology** on the category  $X_{\text{ét}}$ .

If we replace étale maps with open embeddings, then we obtain the **ordinary topological site**, denoted  $X_{\text{top}}$ .

**Definition 14.10.** A **presheaf** of sets on  $X_{\text{ét}}$  is a contravariant functor  $\mathcal{F}: X_{\text{ét}} \rightarrow \text{Set}$ , and a **morphism** between presheaves of sets on  $X_{\text{ét}}$  is a natural transformation. A presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X_{\text{ét}}$  is called a **sheaf** if it satisfies the sheaf axiom which says: for all  $U$  in  $X_{\text{ét}}$  and all coverings  $\{U_i \rightarrow U\}$  in  $\tau_U$  the diagram of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{F}(U) & \longrightarrow & \prod_i \mathcal{F}(U_i) & \longrightarrow & \prod_{i,j} \mathcal{F}(U_i \times_U U_j) \\ & & s & \longmapsto & (s|_{U_i})_i & & \\ & & & & (s_i)_i & \longmapsto & (s_i|_{U_i \times_U U_j} - s_j|_{U_i \cap U_j})_{i,j} \end{array}$$

is exact, meaning the first map is an injection whose image consists of all  $I$ -tuples  $(c_i) \in \prod \mathcal{F}(U_i)$  such that  $\mathcal{F}(\text{pr}_1)(c_i) = \mathcal{F}(\text{pr}_2)(c_j)$  in  $\mathcal{F}(U_i \times_U U_j)$  for all  $i, j \in I$ . The category of sheaves of sets on  $X_{\text{ét}}$  is denoted  $\text{Ét}(X)$  and is called the (étale) **topos** on  $X_{\text{ét}}$  and the category of all sheaves of sets on  $X_{\text{top}}$  is denoted  $\text{Top}(X)$ .

**Lemma 14.3.** *The categories  $\text{Ét}(X)$  and  $\text{Top}(X)$  are equivalent.*

*Proof.* For any  $\mathcal{F}$  in  $\text{Ét}(X)$ , define a sheaf  $\iota_*\mathcal{F}$  on the usual topological space by only evaluating on opens in  $X$ . If  $\mathcal{F}$  is in  $\text{Top}(X)$ , we define  $\iota^*\mathcal{F}$  in  $\text{Ét}(X)$  as follows: its value on any  $h: U \rightarrow X$  is  $\Gamma(U, h^*\mathcal{F})$  where  $h^*\mathcal{F}$  denotes the usual topological pullback.  $\square$

*Remark 43.* Note that the categories  $X_{\text{ét}}$  and  $X_{\text{top}}$  are *not* equivalent since objects in  $X_{\text{ét}}$  can have non-trivial automorphisms.

The global-sections functor  $\mathcal{F} \rightsquigarrow \mathcal{F}(X)$  in  $\text{Top}(X)$  is isomorphic to the functor  $\text{Hom}_{\text{Top}(X)}(\underline{X}_0, \cdot)$  of morphisms from the final object  $\underline{X}_0 = \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{top}}}(\cdot, X)$  and the subcategory of abelian sheaves on  $X_{\text{top}}$  is the subcategory of abelian group in  $\text{Top}(X)$ , where an abelian group in a category  $\mathbf{C}$  admitting finite products and a final object  $e$  is an object  $G$  equipped with maps fitting into the diagrams that axiomatize a commutative group (the identity is a map  $e \rightarrow G$ ); i.e. the functor  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{C}}(\cdot, G)$  is endowed with a structure of group-functor. We conclude that the sheaf cohomology on the topological space  $X$  can be intrinsically described in terms of the category  $\text{Top}(X)$ : it is the derived functor of the restriction of  $\text{Hom}_{\text{Top}(X)}(\underline{X}_0, -)$  to the subcategory of abelian groups in  $\text{Top}(X)$ . Since  $\text{Ét}(X)$  and  $\text{Top}(X)$  are equivalent, we can therefore construct sheaf cohomology in terms of  $\text{Ét}(X)$ . More precisely, the global-sections functor on  $\text{Ét}(X)$  is the functor  $\mathcal{F} \rightsquigarrow \mathcal{F}(X)$  and this is the same functor as the functor of morphisms from the final object  $\underline{X}$ . The restriction of this functor to the category of abelian groups in  $\text{Ét}(X)$  must have sheaf-cohomology as its right derived functor via the equivalence between  $\text{Ét}(X)$  and  $\text{Top}(X)$ . Hence, when considering sheaf cohomology, the category of sheaves of sets is more important than the underlying space.

**Definition 14.11.** Let  $S$  be a scheme. The **étale site** of  $S$  consists of the following data:

1. The category  $S_{\text{ét}}$  of étale  $S$ -spaces  $U \rightarrow S$ ;
2. for each  $U$  in  $S_{\text{ét}}$ , the class  $\tau_U$  of **étale coverings**: collections  $\{f_i: U_i \rightarrow U\}$  of (necessarily étale) maps in  $S_{\text{ét}}$  such that the (necessarily open) subsets  $f_i(U_i) \subseteq U$  are a set-theoretic cover of  $U$ .

**Lemma 14.4.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a morphism of schemes which is flat and locally of finite presentation. Then  $f$  is universally open.*

*Proof.* Since being flat and being locally of finite presentation is stable under base change, it suffices to show that  $f$  is open. Since the property for  $f$  to be open is local on the source, it suffices to show that we may cover  $X$  by open affine  $X = \bigcup V_i$  such that  $V_i \rightarrow S$  is open. We may cover  $X$  by affine opens  $V_i = \text{Spec } B_i$  of  $X$  such that each  $V_i$  maps into an affine open  $U_i = \text{Spec } A_i$  of  $S$  and such that the induced ring map  $A_i \rightarrow B_i$  is flat and of finite presentation.  $\square$

**Lemma 14.5.** *Let  $A \rightarrow B$  be a flat ring homomorphism which is also of finite presentation. Then the corresponding map of affine schemes  $Y := \text{Spec } B \rightarrow \text{Spec } A := X$  is open. More generally this holds for any ring map  $A \rightarrow B$  of finite presentation which satisfies going down.*

*Proof.* It suffices to prove that the image of  $D(t)$  is open where  $t \in B$ . Since  $B \rightarrow B_t$  satisfies going down, we see that  $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow B_t$  satisfies going down. Thus after replacing  $B$  by  $B_t$  we see it suffices to prove the image is open. By Chevalley's theorem, the image is a constructible set  $E$ . And  $E$  is stable under generalization because  $A \rightarrow B$  satisfies going down. It follows that  $E$  is open.  $\square$

The category of sheaves of sets on  $S_{\text{ét}}$  is denoted  $\text{Ét}(S)$ , and it is called the **étale topos** of  $S$ . This category admits arbitrary products, and it has both a final object (with value  $\{\emptyset\}$  on all  $S' \in S_{\text{ét}}$ ) and an initial object (the functor  $\underline{S} = \text{Hom}_{S_{\text{ét}}}(\cdot, S)$ ). The abelian sheaves on  $S_{\text{ét}}$  are the abelian-group objects in the étale topos; these are sheaves with values in the category of abelian groups, and this subcategory of  $\text{Ét}(S)$  is denoted  $\text{Ab}(S)$ . The final object of  $\text{Ab}(S)$  is the same as the final object in  $\text{Ét}(S)$ , but the initial objects are not the same.

## 14.5 Sheaves in the étale topology

We now define what it means to be a sheaf for the étale topology on a scheme  $S$ .

## 14.6 The étale fundamental group

Let  $X$  be any topological space and let  $M$  be an abelian group. For each  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  the universal coefficient theorem says we have a short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \operatorname{Ext}^1(H_{n-1}(X), M) \longrightarrow H^n(X, M) \longrightarrow \operatorname{Hom}(H_n(X), M) \longrightarrow 0 \quad (41)$$

In particular, when  $n = 0$  we have  $H^1(X, M) \simeq \operatorname{Hom}(H_1(X), M)$  since  $H_0(X)$  is free. Furthermore,  $H_1(X)$  is isomorphic to the abelianization of the fundamental group (at any base point). We wish to have an analog of this fact for étale cohomology. Thus we now discuss the theory of the étale fundamental group of a connected (pointed) scheme, and we will establish that it can be used to compute  $H_{\text{ét}}^1$  with coefficients in a finite abelian group.

Let  $S$  be an arbitrary connected scheme and let  $\bar{s}$  be a geometric point of  $S$ . Let  $S' \rightarrow S$  be a finite étale map. Connectivity of  $S$  forces this map to have constant degree, say  $n$ . Assume  $S'$  is connected and choose a geometric point  $\bar{s}'$  of  $S'$  over  $\bar{s}$ . We further assume that  $\bar{s}$  and  $\bar{s}'$  have the same residue field  $\mathbb{k}$ . The uniqueness principle for lifting through covering spaces in topology has the following analogue in the étale topology:

**Lemma 14.6.** (*Rigidity of pointed étale covers*). *If  $f, g: S' \rightrightarrows S''$  are  $S$ -maps to a separated étale  $S$ -scheme  $S''$ , and  $(S', \bar{s}')$  is a pointed connected scheme such that  $f(\bar{s}') = g(\bar{s}')$  in  $S''(\mathbb{k})$ , then  $f = g$ .*

### 14.6.1 Etale Morphisms

**Definition 14.12.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes.

1. We say  $f$  is **unramified** if  $\Omega_{Y/X}^1 = 0$ . Equivalently, all residue field extensions are separable.
2. We say  $f$  is **étale** if it is locally of finite presentation, flat, and unramified.

**Definition 14.13.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes.

1. We say  $f$  is **unramified** if  $\Omega_{Y/X}^1 = 0$ . Equivalently, all residue field extensions are separable.
2. We say  $f$  is **étale** if it is locally of finite presentation, flat, and unramified.

**Example 14.4.** Let  $X = \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  and consider the morphism  $f: X \rightarrow X$  given by  $f(x) = x^2$  is not unramified. Indeed, let  $R = \mathbb{k}[t]$  be the coordinate ring of  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  and let  $\eta = \langle 0 \rangle$  be the generic point of  $X$ . Then the morphism  $f: \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  induces the residue field extension  $\mathbb{k}(t) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbb{k}(t^2) \subseteq \mathbb{k}(t)$  ring homomorphism  $\varphi: R \rightarrow R$  given by  $\varphi(t) = t^2$ , and this induces the local ring homomorphism

**Example 14.5.** Multiplication by  $[n]$  on an elliptic curve is étale if  $n$  is invertible in the base.

**Example 14.6.** The morphism  $\mathbb{C}[t, t^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}[t, t^{-1}, \varepsilon]/\langle \varepsilon^n - t \rangle$  is étale and corresponds to a degree  $n$  covering space of  $\mathbb{G}_m \in \mathbf{Sch}/\mathbb{C}$  with the group  $\mathbb{Z}/n$  of deck transformations. Indeed, this is because  $\partial_{\varepsilon}(\varepsilon^n - t)(e) = ne^{n-1} \neq 0$  for all nonzero  $e \in \mathbb{C}$ .

**Example 14.7.** Let  $A$  be a ring, let  $t \in A$ , and let  $B = A_t$ . Furthermore set  $X = \operatorname{Spec} A$  and  $Y = \operatorname{Spec} B$ . Then the morphism  $Y \rightarrow X$  corresponding to the localization map  $A \rightarrow B$  is étale. Indeed, it is locally of finite presentation since  $B = A[s]/\langle 1 - st \rangle$ . It is flat since localization is flat. Finally,  $\Omega_{Y/X}^1 = 0$  since this is true for Zariski open embeddings.

**Proposition 14.1.** *Any open immersion is étale.*

**Example 14.8.** The morphism  $\mathbb{G}_m \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_m \setminus \{1\}$  induced by  $t \mapsto t^2$  is étale however it is not proper, so it is not finite onto its image.

**Example 14.9.** Any finite separable field extension is étale.

**Example 14.10.** Let  $X = \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle xy \rangle$  and let  $\widehat{X}$  be the normalization of  $X$ . Then  $\widehat{X} \rightarrow X$  is not étale because it is not flat.

**Example 14.11.** The morphism  $\mathbb{A}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1$  given by  $t \mapsto t^2$  is not étale because it is ramified at 0. Indeed,

$$\Omega_f^1 = \mathbb{k}[t]dt/2tdt$$

and this is supported at  $t = 0$  (if  $\operatorname{char} \mathbb{k} \neq 2$ ). More generally suppose  $F: \mathbb{A}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1$  is given by  $t \mapsto t^p$  and furthermore assume that  $\mathbb{k}$  has characteristic  $p$ . Then

$$\Omega_F^1 = \mathbb{k}[t]dt.$$

**Example 14.12.** The morphism  $\mathbb{A}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1$  given by  $t \mapsto t^2$  is not étale because it is ramified at 0. Indeed,

$$\Omega_f^1 = \mathbb{k}[t]dt/2tdt$$

and this is supported at  $t = 0$  (if  $\text{char} \neq 2$ ).

**Example 14.13.** Let  $f: \mathbb{A}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^m$  be a morphism. Then  $f$  is étale in a neighborhood of  $a$  if and only if the determinant of the Jacobian  $J_f(a)$  is a unit.

**Proposition 14.2.** *We have the following:*

1. *Open immersions are étale.*
2. *Compositions of étale morphisms are étale.*
3. *Base change of étale is étale.*
4. *If  $\varphi \circ \psi$  and  $\varphi$  are étale, then  $\psi$  is étale.*

## 14.7 Formally unramified/smooth/étale morphisms

**Definition 14.14.** Let  $\iota: Y \rightarrow X$  be a closed immersion defined by a quasi-coherent ideal  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_X$ . Then  $\iota$  is called a **nil-immersion** if it is a homeomorphism. We call  $\iota$  a **thickening** if  $\mathcal{I}$  is locally nilpotent meaning there exists an open covering  $(U_i)_{i \in I}$  of  $X$  and for all  $i$  an  $n_i \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $(\mathcal{I}|_{U_i})^{n_i+1} = 0$ . For  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , a thickening is called of order at most  $n$  if  $\mathcal{I}^{n+1} = 0$ .

*Remark 44.* Let  $\iota: Y \rightarrow X$  be a closed immersion defined by a quasi-coherent ideal  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_X$ . Then  $\iota$  is a nil-immersion if and only if  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{N}_X$  where  $\mathcal{N}_X$  is the nil-radical of  $\mathcal{O}_X$ . This is the quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -module defined on open affine basis elements  $U = \text{Spec } A$  by

$$\mathcal{N}_X(U) = \text{Nil } A = \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in \text{Spec } A} \mathfrak{p}.$$

Furthermore, note that if  $X$  is quasi-compact and  $\iota$  is a thickening, then there exists an integer  $n \geq 0$  such that  $\mathcal{I}^{n+1} = 0$ .

## 15 The étale topology

**Definition 15.1.** Let  $X$  be a scheme.

1. An **étale covering** of  $X$  is a family of étale morphisms  $\mathcal{U} = (f_i: U_i \rightarrow X)_{i \in I}$  such that  $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} f_i(U_i)$ .
2. If  $\mathcal{U} = (U_i \rightarrow X)_{i \in I}$  and  $\mathcal{V} = (V_j \rightarrow X)_{j \in J}$  are étale coverings of  $X$ , then  $\mathcal{V}$  is called a **refinement** of  $\mathcal{U}$  if there exists a map  $\alpha: J \rightarrow I$  such that for each  $j \in J$  an  $X$ -morphism  $V_j \rightarrow U_{\alpha(j)}$  (which is automatically étale).

*Remark 45.* Suppose  $X$  is quasi-compact. Then for every étale covering  $\mathcal{U} = (f_i: U_i \rightarrow X)_{i \in I}$  of  $X$  there exists a finite refinement  $\mathcal{V} = (V_j \rightarrow X)_{j \in J}$  of  $\mathcal{U}$  such that  $V_j$  is affine for all  $j \in J$ . Indeed, choosing for each  $U_i$  an open affine covering, we can replace  $\mathcal{U}$  by a refinement such that all  $U_i$  are affine. Then  $f_i(U_i)$  is open in  $X$  since each  $f_i$  is flat and locally of finite presentation. However since  $X$  is quasi-compact, there exists a finite subset  $J$  of  $I$  such that  $X = \bigcup_{j \in J} f_j(U_j)$ .

**Definition 15.2.** Let  $P$  be a property of schemes. We say  $P$  is **local for the étale topology** if for any scheme  $X$  with an étale covering  $(U_i \rightarrow X)_{i \in I}$  the scheme  $X$  has property  $P$  if and only if all  $U_i$  have property  $P$ .

**Example 15.1.** The following are properties that are local for the étale topology on locally noetherian schemes: “reduced”, “normal”, “regular”, “Cohen-Macaulay”, and more generally the properties  $(R_k)$  and  $(S_k)$  for fixed  $k$ .

**Definition 15.3.** Let  $P$  be a property of morphisms of schemes.

1. We say  $P$  is **local on the source for the étale topology** if for all morphisms  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of schemes and for every étale covering  $(g_j: V_j \rightarrow Y)$  of  $Y$  the morphism  $f$  satisfies  $P$  if and only if  $f \circ g_j$  satisfies  $P$  for all  $j$ .
2. We say  $P$  is **local on the target for the étale topology** if for all morphisms  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of schemes and for every étale covering  $(g_i: U_i \rightarrow X)$  of  $X$  the morphism  $f$  satisfies  $P$  if and only if  $f \times 1_{U_i}: Y \times_X U_i \rightarrow U_i$  satisfies  $P$  for all  $i$ .

**Proposition 15.1.** *Let  $P$  be a property of morphisms of schemes. Assume that  $P$  is local on the target for the Zariski topology, stable under étale base change, and stable under faithfully flat descent. Then  $P$  is local on the target for the étale topology.*

*Proof.* Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes and let  $(U_i \rightarrow X)_{i \in I}$  be an étale covering of  $X$ . If  $f$  satisfies  $P$ , then its étale base change  $f_i: Y \times_X U_i \rightarrow U_i$  satisfies  $P$  for all  $i$  by hypothesis. Conversely, assume that  $f_i$  satisfies  $P$  for all  $i$ . As  $P$  is local on the target for the Zariski topology, we may assume that  $X$  is affine. As  $P$  is stable under étale base change, we may replace  $(U_i \rightarrow X)_{i \in I}$  by any refinement. Hence we may assume that  $I$  is finite and that each  $U_i$  is affine. Then the morphism  $g: U := \coprod_i U_i \rightarrow X$ , where  $g|_{U_i} = f_i$ , is an étale surjective affine morphism. In particular, it is faithfully flat and quasi-compact. As  $P$  is local on the target for the Zariski topology, we see that  $f_i$  satisfies  $P$  if and only if  $g$  satisfies  $P$ . Finally, as  $P$  is stable under faithfully flat descent, this implies that  $f$  has the property  $P$ .  $\square$

## 15.1 Étale covers

Let  $S$  be a scheme. An **étale cover** of  $S$  is a finite étale morphism of schemes  $\pi: X \rightarrow S$ . A morphism of étale covers of  $S$  is a morphism of  $S$ -schemes. The category of étale covers of  $S$  is denoted  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}/S$  (or by  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}/R$  if  $S = \operatorname{Spec} R$  is affine). An étale cover  $X \rightarrow S$  is **split** if it is isomorphic as an  $S$ -scheme to  $\coprod_{i=1}^m S$  for some integer  $m \geq 0$ .

**Example 15.2.** Let  $L/K$  be a finite separable field extension. Then the corresponding map  $\operatorname{Spec} L \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} K$  is an étale cover. More generally, let  $R$  be a ring and let  $f \in R[t]$  be a monic polynomial such that  $\langle f, f' \rangle = 1$ . Then  $\operatorname{Spec}(R[t]/f) \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} R$  is an étale cover.

## 16 Proj

Let  $A$  be a graded ring. The **irrelevant ideal** of  $A$  is the ideal of elements of positive degree

$$A_+ = \bigoplus_{n \geq 1} A_n$$

We define  $\operatorname{Proj} A$  to be the set of all homogeneous prime ideals of  $A$  which do not contain the irrelevant ideal:

$$\operatorname{Proj} A := \{\mathfrak{p} \mid \mathfrak{p} \text{ is a homogeneous prime ideal of } A \text{ such that } \mathfrak{p} \not\supseteq A_+\}.$$

We will now endow  $\operatorname{Proj} A$  with the structure of a topological space. For every subset  $S$  of  $A$ , we denote by  $V_+(S)$  (or more simply by  $V(S)$  if context is clear) to be the set of all  $\mathfrak{p} \in \operatorname{Proj} A$  such that  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq S$ . Similarly, we denote by  $D_+(S)$  (or more simply by  $D(S)$  if context is clear) to be the complement of  $V(S)$  in  $\operatorname{Proj} A$ . Clearly, if  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a homogeneous ideal generated by  $S$  (meaning  $\mathfrak{a}$  is the smallest homogeneous ideal of  $A$  which contains  $S$ ), then  $V(S) = V(\mathfrak{a}) = V(\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}})$  and similarly  $D(S) = D(\mathfrak{a}) = D(\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}})$ .

**Proposition 16.1.** *Let  $A$  be a graded ring and let  $X = \operatorname{Proj} A$ . The following statements hold.*

1. *We have  $V(0) = X$  and  $V(1) = \emptyset$ . Equivalently, we have  $D(0) = \emptyset$  and  $D(1) = \operatorname{Spec} A$*

2. *For two ideals  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{b}$ , we have*

$$V(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}) = V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) = V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b}).$$

*Equivalently, we have*

$$D(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}) = D(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) = D(\mathfrak{a}) \cap D(\mathfrak{b}).$$

3. *For every family  $\{\mathfrak{a}_i\}_{i \in I}$  of ideals of  $A$ , we have*

$$V\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = V\left(\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} V(\mathfrak{a}_i).$$

*Equivalently, we have*

$$D\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = D\left(\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = \bigcup_{i \in I} D(\mathfrak{a}_i).$$

*Proof.* The first statement is trivial. For the second statement, observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{p} \in V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) &\iff \mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b} \\ &\iff \mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a} \text{ or } \mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{b} && \text{since } \mathfrak{p} \text{ is prime} \\ &\iff \mathfrak{p} \in V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b}). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) = V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b})$ . In particular, since  $V$  is inclusion-reversing, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}) &\supseteq V(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}) \\ &\supseteq V(\mathfrak{a}) \cup V(\mathfrak{b}) \\ &= V(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}). \end{aligned}$$



For the last statement, note that

$$V\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = V\left(\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right)$$

since  $\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i$  is the ideal generated by  $\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i$ , and we have

$$V\left(\sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i\right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} V(\mathfrak{a}_i)$$

since  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \sum_{i \in I} \mathfrak{a}_i$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .  $\square$

It follows from the proposition above that the collection  $\{D(\mathfrak{a}) \mid \mathfrak{a} \text{ is an ideal of } A\}$  forms a topology on  $\text{Spec } A$ , which we call the **Zariski topology**. We view  $\text{Spec } A$  as a topological space equipped with this topology (and not just as a mere set). Later on we will endow  $\text{Spec } A$  with even more structure by equipping it with a sheaf of rings (defined in terms of  $A$ ) and this will give  $\text{Spec } A$  the structure of a locally ringed space, but for now let us focus on  $\text{Spec } A$  viewed as a topological space. The closed subsets of  $\text{Spec } A$  are of the form  $V(\mathfrak{a})$  and the open subsets of  $\text{Spec } A$  are of the form  $D(\mathfrak{a})$  where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal of  $A$  (and in fact  $\mathfrak{a}$  can be chosen to be a radical ideal). Open sets of the form  $D(a)$  where  $a \in A$  are given a special name: they are called **principal opens**.

Let

$$\tau_A = \{D(\mathfrak{a}) \mid \mathfrak{a} \text{ is a homogeneous ideal of } A\}.$$

It is straightforward to check that  $\tau_A$  is a topology on  $\text{Proj } A$ . We call this topology the **Zariski topology**. Note that since  $\bigcap V(\mathfrak{a}_i) = V(\sum \mathfrak{a}_i)$ , we see that every closed set in the Zariski topology has the form  $V(\mathfrak{a})$  for some homogeneous ideal  $\mathfrak{a}$  of  $A$  which doesn't contain the irrelevant ideal. Suppose  $a \in A_+$  and express it in terms of its homogeneous components as

$$a = a_{i_1} + \cdots + a_{i_k},$$

where  $a_{i_j} \in A_{i_j}$  for each  $1 \leq j \leq k$  and where  $i_1 < \cdots < i_k$ . Then for any  $\mathfrak{p} \in \text{Proj } A$  we have  $a \in \mathfrak{p}$  if and only if  $a_{i_j} \in \mathfrak{p}$  for all  $1 \leq j \leq k$ . Equivalently this says

$$V_+(a) = V_+(a_{i_1}) \cap \cdots \cap V_+(a_{i_k}) = V_+(a_{i_1}, \dots, a_{i_k}),$$

or equivalently still

$$D_+(a) = D_+(a_{i_1}) \cup \cdots \cup D_+(a_{i_k}) = D_+(a_{i_1}, \dots, a_{i_k}).$$

*Remark 46.* Suppose  $a \in A_+$  and express it in terms of its homogeneous components as

$$a = a_{i_1} + \cdots + a_{i_k},$$

where  $a_{i_j} \in A_{i_j}$  for each  $1 \leq j \leq k$  and where  $i_1 < \cdots < i_k$ . Then for any  $\mathfrak{p} \in \text{Proj } A$  we have  $a \in \mathfrak{p}$  if and only if  $a_{i_j} \in \mathfrak{p}$  for all  $1 \leq j \leq k$ . Equivalently this says

$$V_+(a) = V_+(a_{i_1}) \cap \cdots \cap V_+(a_{i_k}) = V_+(a_{i_1}, \dots, a_{i_k}),$$

or equivalently still

$$D_+(a) = D_+(a_{i_1}) \cup \cdots \cup D_+(a_{i_k}) = D_+(a_{i_1}, \dots, a_{i_k}).$$

**Lemma 16.1.** *The collection  $\{D_+(a) \mid a \in A_+ \text{ is homogeneous}\}$  is a basis for  $\text{Proj } A$ .*

*Proof.* First note that  $\{D_+(a)\}$  covers  $\text{Proj } A$ . Let  $D_+(\mathfrak{a})$  and  $D_+(\mathfrak{b})$  be two nonempty open subsets of  $\text{Proj } A$  where  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{b}$  are nonzero homogeneous ideals of  $A$  strictly contained in  $A_+$ , and let  $\mathfrak{p} \in D_+(\mathfrak{a}) \cap D_+(\mathfrak{b}) = D_+(\mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b})$ . Then  $\mathfrak{p} \not\supseteq \mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}$ , so there exists a homogeneous  $a \in \mathfrak{a} \cap \mathfrak{b}$  such that  $a \notin \mathfrak{p}$ , or equivalently  $\mathfrak{p} \notin D_+(a)$ . Since  $D_+$  is inclusion-preserving, we see that  $\mathfrak{p} \in D_+(a) \subseteq D_+(\mathfrak{a}) \cap D_+(\mathfrak{b})$ . It follows that  $\{D_+(a)\}$  is a basis for  $\text{Proj } A$ .  $\square$

*Remark 47.* Note that  $\text{Proj } A$  need not be quasi-compact (whereas  $\text{Spec } A$  is always quasi-compact). Indeed, consider  $A = \mathbb{k}[\{x_n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}]$  where  $\deg x_n = 1$  for all  $n$ . Then  $\{D_+(x_n)\}$  is an open cover of  $\text{Proj } A$  which admits no finite subcover (note that  $\{D(x_n)\}$  is not an open cover of  $\text{Spec } A$  since  $\langle \{x_n\} \rangle$  is not the unit ideal).

For every subset  $Z$  of  $\text{Proj } A$ , we set

$$I_+(Z) := \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in Z} \mathfrak{p}$$

**Theorem 16.2.**  *$\text{Proj } A$  is empty if and only if all elements of  $A_+$  are nilpotent. More generally, for positive-degree homogeneous elements  $a$  and  $\{a_i\}_{i \in I}$  in  $A$ , we have  $D_+(a) \subseteq \bigcup D_+(a_i)$  if and only if some power of  $a$  lies in the homogeneous ideal generated by the  $a_i$ 's.*

**Definition 16.1.** Let  $A$  be a graded ring and let  $d \geq 1$  be an integer. We set

$$A^{(d)} := \bigoplus_{n \geq 0} A_{dn}.$$

If context is clear, we will write  $A^d$  instead of  $A^{(d)}$ . Note that if  $a \in A$  is homogeneous, then  $a^d \in A^d$ . In particular,  $A^d \rightarrow A$  is an integral extension. If  $\mathfrak{p}$  is a prime ideal of  $A^d$  and  $\mathfrak{q}$  is a prime ideal of  $A$  which lies over  $\mathfrak{p}$ , then for each homogeneous  $x \in \mathfrak{q}$  we have  $x^d \in \mathfrak{q} \cap A^d = \mathfrak{p}$ . In particular, note that

$$\mathfrak{p}_{(s)} := \mathfrak{p}_s \cap A_{(s)} = \mathfrak{q}_s \cap A_{(s)} := \mathfrak{q}_{(s)}.$$

**Proposition 16.2.** Let  $A$  be a graded ring and let  $s \in A$  be a homogeneous element of degree  $d$ . The map  $f: D_+(s) \rightarrow \text{Spec } A_{(s)}$  given by sending to  $\mathfrak{p} \in D_+(s)$  to  $\mathfrak{p}_{(s)} := \mathfrak{p}_s \cap A_{(s)}$  is a homeomorphism.

*Proof.* First we show  $f$  is injective. Suppose that  $\mathfrak{q}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}'$  are distinct homogeneous primes which do not contain  $s$  (hence both do not contain  $A_+$ ). Without loss of generality, assume  $x \in \mathfrak{q}$  is homogeneous of degree  $e$  and  $x \notin \mathfrak{q}'$ . Then  $x^d/s^e \in \mathfrak{q}_{(s)}$  but  $x^d/s^e \notin \mathfrak{q}'_{(s)}$ . Indeed,  $x^d/s^e \in \mathfrak{q}'_{(s)}$  if and only if  $s^m x^d \in \mathfrak{q}'$  for some  $m$ . However neither  $s^m$  nor  $x^d$  is in  $\mathfrak{q}'$ , contradicting the fact that  $\mathfrak{q}'$  is a prime. Therefore  $\mathfrak{q}_{(s)} \neq \mathfrak{q}'_{(s)}$  which shows that the map  $f$  is injective. It remains to show that  $f$  is surjective. Let  $\mathfrak{q}$  be the contraction of  $\mathfrak{p}A_s^d$  under the ring map  $A^d \rightarrow A_s^d$ . Note that  $\mathfrak{q}$  doesn't contain  $s$  since otherwise  $\mathfrak{p}A_s^d$  would contain 1 which contradicts the fact that  $\mathfrak{p}A_s^d$  is proper. We claim that  $\mathfrak{q}$  is a homogeneous prime ideal of  $A$ . Indeed, it is clearly homogeneous since  $\mathfrak{p}A_s^d$  is homogenous. Let us show it is prime. Let  $a, a' \in A^d$  be homogeneous of degrees  $dn$  and  $dn'$  respectively and assume that  $aa' \in \mathfrak{q}$ . Thus  $aa'/1 \in \mathfrak{p}A_s^d$  which means  $aa'/1 = (x/s^e)s^{n+n'}$  where  $x/s^e \in \mathfrak{p}$  and  $\deg x = ed$ . Therefore

$$\frac{a}{s^n} \frac{a'}{s^{n'}} = \frac{x}{s^e} \in \mathfrak{p}$$

which implies either  $a/s^n$  or  $a'/s^{n'}$  is in  $\mathfrak{p}$  since  $\mathfrak{p}$  is a prime ideal. Thus either  $a/1$  or  $a'/1$  is in  $\mathfrak{p}A_s^d$  which implies either  $a$  or  $a'$  is in  $\mathfrak{q}$ . Therefore  $\mathfrak{q}$  is a prime. Finally, there exists a prime  $\tilde{\mathfrak{q}}$  of  $A$  which lies over  $\mathfrak{q}$  since  $A^d \rightarrow A$  is integral. Furthermore we have  $\tilde{\mathfrak{q}}_{(s)} = \mathfrak{q}_{(s)} = \mathfrak{p}$ .  $\square$

We construct a sheaf on  $X := \text{Proj } A$ , called the **structure sheaf** which gives it the structure of a scheme given by

$$\mathcal{O}_X(D_+(s)) = A_{(s)}.$$

## 16.1 Flatness

**Proposition 16.3.** A family  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{P}_S^n$  of closed subschemes of a projective space over a reduced connected base  $S$  is flat if and only if all fibers have the same Hilbert polynomial.

*Proof.* We prove this in the case that  $S = \text{Spec } R$  where  $R = \mathbb{k}[u]_{\langle u \rangle}$ . In this case, a closed subscheme  $X \subseteq \mathbb{P}_S^n$  is given by a homogeneous ideal  $I$  in  $R[\mathbf{t}] = R[t_0, \dots, t_n]$ . Thus each graded piece of the homogeneous coordinate ring  $A = R[\mathbf{t}]/I$  is a module over  $R$ . The family  $X \rightarrow S$  is flat if and only if each local ring  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  is  $R$ -torsion free (since  $R$  is a principal ideal domain). This is equivalent to saying that the torsion submodule of  $A$  goes to zero if we invert any of the  $t_i$ . It follows that the torsion submodule is killed by a power of the ideal  $\langle \mathbf{t} \rangle$  and thus meets only finitely many graded components of  $A$ . But if  $A_i$  is a graded component of  $A$ , then since  $R$  is a principal ideal domain and  $A_i$  is finitely generated as an  $A$ -module, we see that  $A_i$  is torsion-free if and only if it is free. Further,  $A_i$  is free if the number of generators it requires is equal to its rank:

$$\beta_1(A_i) = \dim_{\mathbb{k}} A_i \otimes_R \mathbb{k} = \dim_{\mathbb{k}(u)} A_i \otimes_R \mathbb{k}(u) = \text{rank } A_i.$$

That is, if and only if the value of the  $H(X_{\langle u \rangle}, i)$  is equal to the value of  $H(X_\eta, i)$ , where  $X_{\langle u \rangle}$  and  $X_\eta$  are the fibers of the family  $X$  over the two points  $\langle u \rangle$  and  $\eta$  of  $S$ .  $\square$

## 16.2 Functoriality of Proj

Let  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  be a graded ring homomorphism. If  $\mathfrak{q} \in \text{Proj } B$ , then  $\mathfrak{p} := \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  is a homogeneous prime ideal of  $A$ , however it's possible that  $\mathfrak{p} \supseteq A_+$  (or equivalently, that  $\mathfrak{q} \supseteq \varphi(A_+)$ ). Set  $X = \text{Proj } A$ ,  $Y = \text{Proj } B$ , and define  $V = D_+(\varphi(A_+))$  (that is,  $V$  is the set of all homogeneous prime ideals  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  such that  $\mathfrak{q}$  does not contain  $\varphi(A_+)$ ). Then we obtain a well-defined map of sets  $f: V \rightarrow X$  given by  $f(\mathfrak{q}) = \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$ . Furthermore, it is easy to see that

$$f^{-1}(D_+(s)) = V \cap D_+(\varphi(s)),$$

for homogeneous  $s \in A$ . Therefore  $f$  is even continuous.

**Lemma 16.3.** If there exists an integer  $d \geq 1$  such that  $A_n \rightarrow B_n$  is surjective for all sufficiently large  $n \in d\mathbb{N}$  then  $V = Y$ . If  $A_n \rightarrow B_n$  is even bijective for all sufficiently large  $n \in d\mathbb{N}$  then the map  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is a homeomorphism.

*Proof.* Suppose that  $\mathfrak{q}$  is a homogeneous prime ideal of  $B$  which contains  $\varphi(A_+)$ . We claim that  $\mathfrak{q}$  already contains  $B_+$ . Indeed, first note that  $\mathfrak{q}$  contains  $B_{dn}$  for all large  $n$  by assumption of  $\varphi$ . Now suppose that  $t \in B_m$  for some  $m \geq 1$ . Then we have  $t^{dn} \in B_{dmn}$  for all  $n \geq 1$ , so by taking  $n$  to be large we have  $t^{dn} \in B_{dmn} \subseteq \mathfrak{q}$ , and since  $\mathfrak{q}$  is a prime, it follows that  $t \in \mathfrak{q}$ . Since  $t$  was arbitrary, it follows that  $\mathfrak{q} \supseteq B_+$ .

Now suppose that  $A_n \rightarrow B_n$  is bijective for all large  $n \in d\mathbb{N}$ . Then  $V = Y$  by the first part of this proof. To show that  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is a homeomorphism, it suffices to first treat the case of  $A = B^{(d)} := \bigoplus_{n \geq 0} B_{dn}$  and then applying that to  $A^{(d)} \rightarrow A$  and  $B^{(d)} \rightarrow B$  would reduce our task to the case  $d = 1$  upon dividing degrees by  $d$  for  $B^{(d)}$  and  $A^{(d)}$ . So assume that  $A = B^{(d)}$ . Note that  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  being a homeomorphism is a local on the target property. In particular, we just need to find an open cover  $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$  such that  $f|_{V_i}: V_i \rightarrow U_i$  is a homeomorphism for each  $i$  where we set  $V_i = f^{-1}(U_i)$ . The idea is that  $\mathbb{k}[t]$

$$\{D_+(t^d) \mid t \in B \text{ homogeneous}\}$$

will form such a cover. Indeed, this is a cover of  $X$  because the radical of the ideal generated by the  $t^d$ 's is exactly  $A_+$ . Furthermore, note that  $f^{-1}(D_+(t^d)) = D_+(t)$  since a homogeneous prime  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  doesn't contain  $t$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{q} \cap A$  doesn't contain  $t^d$ . The ring corresponding to  $D_+(t)$  is  $B_{(t)}$  (the degree 0 part of  $B_t$ ), the ring corresponding to  $D_+(t^d)$  is  $A_{(t^d)}$ , and the map  $f|_{D_+(t)}: D_+(t) \rightarrow D_+(t^d)$  corresponds to the inclusion map  $A_{(t^d)} \hookrightarrow B_{(t)}$ . In fact, we already have  $A_{(t^d)} = B_{(t)}$  since if  $b/t^m \in B_{(t)}$  where  $b \in B_{me}$  and  $e = \deg t$ , then  $b/t^m = (bt^{dn-m})/t^{dn} \in A_{(t^d)}$  for any multiple  $dn \geq m$ . It follows that  $f|_{D_+(t)}$  is a homeomorphism.

It now remains to treat the case  $d = 1$ , namely that  $A_n \rightarrow B_n$  is bijective for all  $n \geq n_0$ . This case goes almost exactly like the case of  $B^{(d)} \hookrightarrow B$  just treated, but we don't need to raise to any powers: instead, we take the denominators to come from homogeneous elements with degree at least  $n_0$  (the associated affine open subschemes of each Proj provide an open cover).  $\square$

**Example 16.1.** Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a homogeneous ideal of  $A$ . Then  $A \rightarrow A/\mathfrak{a}$  is surjective in all degrees and so we obtain a well-defined map of sets  $\text{Proj}(A/\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \text{Proj } A$ . Choose any integer  $m > 0$  and let  $\mathfrak{a}_{\geq m}$  be the ideal inside of  $\mathfrak{a}$  generated by homogeneous parts in degree at least  $m$ . Then  $A/\mathfrak{a}_{\geq m} \rightarrow A/\mathfrak{a}$  is an isomorphism in all degrees at least  $m$ , hence  $\text{Proj}(A/\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \text{Proj}(A/\mathfrak{a}_{\geq m})$  is a homeomorphism.

We now upgrade to ringed spaces. Let  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  be a graded ring homomorphism. Let  $X = \text{Proj } A$ , let  $Y = \text{Proj } B$ , let  $V = D_+(\varphi(A_+))$ , and let  $f: V \rightarrow X$  be the map corresponding to  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$ . At the moment, we've shown that  $f$  is continuous, however we now want to promote it to be a map of ringed spaces. Note that  $V$  is covered by the open subsets  $D_+(\varphi(s))$  where  $s \in A_+$  is homogeneous, and for such  $s$  there is a natural map of affine schemes  $D_+(\varphi(s)) \rightarrow D_+(s)$  corresponding to the ring map  $A_{(s)} \rightarrow B_{(\varphi(s))}$  induced on degree 0 parts by the graded map  $\varphi_s: A_s \rightarrow B_{\varphi(s)}$ . These morphisms agree on overlaps

$$D_+(\varphi(s_1)) \cap D_+(\varphi(s_2)) = D_+(\varphi(s_1)\varphi(s_2)) = D_+(\varphi(s_1s_2))$$

ultimately because the ring maps  $A_{s_1} \rightarrow B_{\varphi(s_1)}$  and  $A_{s_2} \rightarrow B_{\varphi(s_2)}$  arising from  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  each induce upon further localization the same ring map  $A_{s_1s_2} \rightarrow B_{\varphi(s_1s_2)}$  arising from  $\varphi$ . Hence, they glue to define a morphism  $f: V \rightarrow X$ , and on the underlying sets this really is  $\mathfrak{q} \mapsto \varphi^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$ . Now in the setting of Lemma (16.3) we have a morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  whose restriction over each open affine  $U_s := D_+(s)$  for homogeneous  $s \in A_+$  is exactly  $V_s \rightarrow U_s$ , where we set  $V_s = f^{-1}(U_s) = D_+(\varphi(s))$ , corresponding to the ring homomorphism  $A_{(s)} \rightarrow B_{(\varphi(s))}$ . The ring map is surjective (respectively an isomorphism) when  $A_n \rightarrow B_n$  is surjective (respectively an isomorphism) in all large degrees divisible by  $d$ . In other words, we have shown:

**Theorem 16.4.** *Under the hypotheses of Lemma (16.3), the associated morphism  $Y \rightarrow X$  is a closed immersion. It is an isomorphism when  $A_n \rightarrow B_n$  is bijective for all large  $n \in d\mathbb{N}$ .*

*Remark 48.* The map  $\text{Proj } A \rightarrow \text{Proj}(A/\mathfrak{a})$  from Example (16.1) is a closed immersion. Similarly, the map  $\text{Proj}(A/\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \text{Proj}(A/\mathfrak{a}_{\geq m})$  from Example (16.1) is an isomorphism of schemes.

## 17 Representable Functors

**Definition 17.1.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $F: \mathcal{C}^{\text{opp}} \rightarrow \text{Set}$  be a functor. We say  $F$  is **representable** if there exists an object  $X$  together with an isomorphism  $\xi: h_X \xrightarrow{\sim} F$ .

## 18 Functor of Points

Let  $R$  be a ring, let  $\mathbf{f} = f_1, \dots, f_m$  be polynomials in  $R[\mathbf{t}] = R[t_1, \dots, t_n]$ , and let  $A$  be an  $R$ -algebra. We have a bijection which is natural in  $A$ :

$$\{\mathbf{a} \in A^n \mid \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{a}) = 0\} \simeq \text{Hom}_{R\text{-alg}}(R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f}, A),$$

where the right side is set of all  $R$ -algebra homomorphisms from  $R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f}$  to  $A$ , and where the left side can be thought of as the set of all  **$A$ -valued points of  $R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f}$**  (over  $R$ ). Indeed, if  $\mathbf{a} \in A^n$  such that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{a}) = 0$  (meaning  $f_i(\mathbf{a}) = 0$

for all  $i$ ), then we define  $\varphi_{\mathbf{a}}: R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f} \rightarrow A$  by  $\varphi_{\mathbf{a}}(t_j) = a_j$  for all  $j$ . That  $\varphi_{\mathbf{a}}$  is well-defined follows from the fact that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{a}) = 0$ . Conversely, if  $\varphi: R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f} \rightarrow A$  is an  $R$ -algebra homomorphism, then we get a point  $\mathbf{a}^\varphi \in A^n$  where  $a_j^\varphi = \varphi(t_j)$  such that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{a}^\varphi) = 0$ . By “natural in  $A$ ” we mean that if  $\psi: A \rightarrow B$  is any  $R$ -algebra homomorphism, then we obtain a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\mathbf{a} \in A^n \mid \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{a}) = 0\} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathrm{Hom}_{R\text{-alg}}(R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f}, A) \\ \psi_* \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi_* \\ \{\mathbf{b} \in B^n \mid \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{b}) = 0\} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathrm{Hom}_{R\text{-alg}}(R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f}, B) \end{array}$$

where  $\psi_*$  is given by  $\psi_*(\mathbf{a}^\varphi) = \mathbf{b}^{\psi\varphi}$  and where  $\psi_*$  is given by  $\psi_*(\varphi) = \psi\varphi$ . In fact, we can slightly generalize this further as follows: let  $g \in R[\mathbf{t}]$ , set  $X = \mathrm{Spec} R[\mathbf{t}]_g/\mathbf{f}$ , and set  $T = \mathrm{Spec} A$ . Then we have a bijection which is natural in  $A$  (and hence in  $T$ ):

$$\{\mathbf{a} \in A^n \mid \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{a}) = 0 \text{ and } g(\mathbf{a}) \in A^\times\} \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{R\text{-alg}}(R[\mathbf{t}]_g/\mathbf{f}, A) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{R\text{-sch}}(T, X)$$

where the right side is the set of all  $R$ -scheme homomorphisms from  $T$  to  $X$ . We need the extra condition that  $g(\mathbf{a})$  be a unit in  $A$  since ring homomorphisms must send units to units.

We can generalize this construction way further as follows: we attach to a scheme  $X$  the covariant functor  $h_X: \mathbf{Sch}^{\mathrm{opp}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  which takes a scheme  $T$  and sends it to the set of all scheme homomorphisms  $h_X(T) := \mathrm{Hom}(T, X)$ , and which takes a morphism of schemes  $f: T' \rightarrow T$  and sends it to the function  $h_X(f): h_X(T) \rightarrow h_X(T')$  given by  $h_X(f)(g) = gf$ . We often denote  $h_X(f) = f^*$  and  $h_X(T) = X(T)$  and we call this set the  **$T$ -valued points of  $X$** . If  $T = \mathrm{Spec} A$  is affine, then we often set  $X(A) := X(\mathrm{Spec} A)$  and call this set the  **$A$ -valued points of  $X$** . More generally, we might consider an arbitrary functor  $F: \mathbf{Sch}^{\mathrm{opp}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  as a “geometric object” and we call  $F(T)$  the set of  **$T$ -valued points of  $F$** .

More generally, let  $S$  be a fixed scheme. Indeed for the category  $\mathbf{Sch}$ , we consider  $\mathbf{Sch}/S$ : the category of  $S$ -schemes. Again, every  $S$ -scheme  $X$  provides a functor from  $\mathbf{Sch}/S$  to  $\mathbf{Set}$ , which is given by  $T \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_S(T, X) := X_S(T)$  on objects. If it is understood that all schemes are considered  $S$ -schemes, then we simplify our notation further by writing  $X_S(T) = X(T)$ . If  $S = \mathrm{Spec} R$  or  $T = \mathrm{Spec} A$  is affine, we also write  $X_R(T)$  or  $X_S(A)$  (or even  $X_R(A)$  if both  $S = \mathrm{Spec} R$  and  $T = \mathrm{Spec} A$  are affine).

**Example 18.1.** Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be an algebraically closed field and let  $X$  be a  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme locally of finite type. For every  $\mathbb{k}$ -valued point  $x: \mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{k} \rightarrow X$ , its image  $\mathrm{im}(x)$  is a closed point of the underlying topological space of  $X$ . The map  $X_{\mathbb{k}}(\mathbb{k}) \rightarrow X_0$ , given by  $x \mapsto \mathrm{im}(x)$ , is a bijection of  $X_{\mathbb{k}}(\mathbb{k})$  onto the set of closed points  $X_0$  of  $X$ . If  $X$  is integral and of finite type, we thus obtain a bijection  $X_{\mathbb{k}}(\mathbb{k})$  onto the associated prevariety.

**Example 18.2.** Let  $X = \mathrm{Spec} A$  be any affine scheme. Then for any scheme  $T = (T, \mathcal{O})$ , one has

$$X(T) = \mathrm{Hom}(A, \mathcal{O}(T)).$$

For example, if  $A = \mathbb{Z}[\mathbf{t}] = \mathbb{Z}[t_1, \dots, t_n]$  (so  $X = \mathbb{A}^n$ ), then we have  $X(T) = \mathcal{O}(T)^n$  where the map  $\mathrm{Hom}(A, \mathcal{O}(T)) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(T)^n$  is defined by  $\varphi \mapsto (\varphi(t_1), \dots, \varphi(t_n)) = (\varphi(\mathbf{t}))$ . If  $A = \mathbb{Z}[t, 1/t]$  (so  $X = \mathbb{G}_m$ ), then we have  $X(T) = \mathcal{O}(T)^\times$  where the map  $\mathrm{Hom}(A, \mathcal{O}(T)) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(T)^\times$  is defined by  $\varphi \mapsto \varphi(t)$ . More generally, let  $R$  be a ring, let  $\mathbf{f} = f_1, \dots, f_m$  be polynomials in  $R[\mathbf{t}] = R[t_1, \dots, t_n]$ , and let  $A = R[\mathbf{t}]/\mathbf{f}$ . Then for any  $R$ -scheme  $T = (T, \mathcal{O})$ , we have

$$X_R(T) = \{\mathbf{s} \in \mathcal{O}(T)^n \mid \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{s}) = 0\}.$$

## 18.1 The $\mathbb{k}$ -valued Points of a Scheme $X$

**Proposition 18.1.** *Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field and let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. The  $\mathbb{k}$ -rational points of  $X$  consists of pairs  $(x, \iota_x)$  where  $x \in X$  and where  $\iota_x: \kappa(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$  is an extension of fields.*

*Proof.* Let  $f: \mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{k} \rightarrow X$  be a morphism. Recall that this consists of two pieces of data:

1. First we have the continuous map of underlying topological spaces  $f: \mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{k} \rightarrow X$ . This is simple to describe since  $\mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{k}$  consists of just one point, thus the map  $f$  sends the unique point of  $\mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{k}$  to some point of  $X$ , say  $x \in X$ .
2. Next we have the morphism of sheaves  $f^\flat: \mathcal{O} \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_{\mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{k}}$  as well as the induced local ring homomorphism  $f_x: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$ . The data of  $f^\flat: \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{k}}$  is equivalent to the data of a compatible sequence  $(f_U^\flat)_{x \in U}$  of ring homomorphisms  $f_U^\flat: \mathcal{O}(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$  (compatible with restriction) where the sequence ranges over all open neighborhoods  $U \subseteq X$  of  $x$ , and this is equivalent to the data of the induced local ring homomorphism  $f_x: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$ . In other words, we only need to specify what the local ring homomorphism  $f_x: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$  looks like. Note that since  $f_x$  is local, we must have  $f_x(\mathfrak{m}_x) = 0$ . In particular,  $f_x$  factors as  $f_x = \iota_x \circ \rho_x$  where  $\rho_x: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \kappa(x)$  is the canonical quotient map and where  $\iota_x: \kappa(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$  is an extension of fields. In summary, the local ring homomorphism  $f_x: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$  as well as the morphism of sheaves  $f^\flat: \mathcal{O} \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_{\mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{k}}$  are completely determined once we specify what the extension of fields  $\iota_x: \kappa(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$  looks like.

From this, we see that

$$X(\mathbb{k}) \simeq \{(x, \iota_x) \mid x \in X \text{ and } \iota_x: \kappa(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{k} \text{ is a field extension}\}.$$

□

*Remark 49.* Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field and let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme. In particular, this means  $X$  comes equipped with a canonical map  $X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$ . In particular,  $\mathcal{O}$  is a sheaf of  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebras and for each  $x \in X$ , we have a canonical extension of fields  $\kappa(x)/\mathbb{k}$ . In this case, the  $\mathbb{k}$ -rational points  $X$  are given by the *closed* points  $x \in X$  whose residue field is  $\kappa(x) = \mathbb{k}$ . Indeed, since  $\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$  has no nontrivial open coverings, a map from  $\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}$  into  $X$  is a map into some affine open subscheme  $\operatorname{Spec} A$  of  $X$ , and such a morphism is determined by a  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra homomorphism  $A \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$ , that is, by a maximal ideal of  $A$  with residue class field  $\mathbb{k}$ . Conversely, we may reverse the construction and see that any  $\mathbb{k}$ -rational closed point  $x$  gives rise to a unique morphism  $\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k} \rightarrow X$  of  $\mathbb{k}$ -schemes.

**Proposition 18.2.** *Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field and let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme. The  $\mathbb{k}[\varepsilon]/\langle \varepsilon^2 \rangle$ -points of  $X$  consists of pairs  $(x, v_x)$  where  $x \in X$  is a  $\mathbb{k}$ -rational point of  $X$  (hence is closed and has residue class field  $\kappa(x) = \mathbb{k}$ ) and where  $v_x \in T_x(X)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $f: \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon]/\langle \varepsilon^2 \rangle \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of  $\mathbb{k}$ -schemes. The underlying continuous map  $f$  sends the unique point of  $\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon]/\langle \varepsilon^2 \rangle$  to some point  $x = \mathfrak{m} \in \operatorname{Spec} A \subseteq X$ . This corresponds to the ring homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon]/\langle \varepsilon^2 \rangle$  where  $\varphi^{-1}(\langle \varepsilon \rangle) = \mathfrak{m}$ . In other words,  $A/\mathfrak{m} \simeq \mathbb{k}$  shows that  $\mathfrak{m}$  is a maximal ideal of  $A$ , hence  $x$  is a closed point of  $X$ . Next note that the morphism of sheaves  $f^\flat: \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon]/\langle \varepsilon^2 \rangle}$  is completely determined by the local ring homomorphism  $\varphi_x: A_{\mathfrak{m}_x} \rightarrow \mathbb{k}[\varepsilon]/\langle \varepsilon^2 \rangle$ . Since  $\varphi_x(\mathfrak{m}_x) \subseteq \langle \varepsilon \rangle$ , we see that  $\varphi_x$  induces a unique map  $v_x: \mathfrak{m}_x/\mathfrak{m}_x^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$ . □

### 18.1.1 A Surjectivity Criterion for Morphism of Schemes

**Proposition 18.3.** *A morphism of schemes  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is surjective if and only if for every field  $K$  and for every  $K$ -valued point  $x \in X(K)$  there exists a field extension  $L/K$  and a  $y \in Y(L)$  such that  $f(L)(y) = x_L$  where  $x_L$  is the image of  $x$  under the map  $X(K) \rightarrow X(L)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $x_0$  be a point of the underlying topological space of  $X$  and let  $x: \operatorname{Spec}(\kappa(x_0)) \rightarrow X$  be the corresponding canonical morphism. If  $y: \operatorname{Spec} L \rightarrow Y$  is an  $L$ -valued point of  $Y$  with  $f(L)(y) = x_L$  and  $y_0 \in Y$  is the image of  $y$ , then we have  $f(y_0) = x_0$ .

Conversely, suppose  $f$  is surjective, let  $x \in X(K)$ , and let  $x_0 \in X$  be the image of  $x$ . There exists a point  $y_0 \in Y$  with  $f(y_0) = x_0$ . Consider the corresponding extension  $\kappa(x_0) \rightarrow \kappa(y_0)$ . Choose a field extension  $L$  of  $\kappa(x_0)$  such that there exist  $\kappa(x_0)$ -embeddings of  $\kappa(y_0)$  and of  $K$  into  $L$  (for instance  $L = (\kappa(y_0) \otimes_{\kappa(x_0)} K)/\mathfrak{m}$  where  $\mathfrak{m}$  is a maximal ideal of  $\kappa(y_0) \otimes_{\kappa(x_0)} K$  works). Then the composition  $y: \operatorname{Spec} L \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec}(\kappa(y_0)) \rightarrow Y$  has the desired properties. □

*Remark 50.* In particular, we see that if  $f$  is surjective on  $K$ -valued points for every field  $K$ , then  $f$  is surjective, however the converse need not hold. For instance, let  $f: \mathbb{G}_m \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_m$  be given on  $S$ -valued points

$$f(S): \mathbb{G}_m(S) = \Gamma(S, \mathcal{O}_S)^\times \rightarrow \Gamma(S, \mathcal{O}_S)^\times = \mathbb{G}_m(S) \quad x \mapsto x^k$$

where  $k > 1$ . Then  $f(K)$  is surjective if and only if for all  $x \in K^\times$  there exists a  $k$ th root. In particular, if  $K$  is algebraically closed, then  $f(K)$  is surjective and the proposition proved above shows that  $f$  is surjective. But of course there are fields  $K$  such that  $f(K)$  is not surjective.

## 18.2 Fiber Product of Pullback

**Proposition 18.4.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $f': X' \rightarrow S$  be morphism of schemes. Then for every scheme  $T$ , we have*

$$(X' \times_S X)(T) = X'(T) \times_{S(T)} X(T)$$

*Proof.* This essentially follows from the universal mapping property of pullbacks. Indeed, given a morphism  $t: T \rightarrow X' \times_S X$ , we get induced morphisms

$$\pi_1 \circ t: T \rightarrow X' \times_S X \rightarrow X' \quad \text{and} \quad \pi_2 \circ t: T \rightarrow X' \times_S X \rightarrow X,$$

which make the diagram over  $S$  commute. Conversely, if we are given morphisms  $t_1: T \rightarrow X'$  and  $t_2: T \rightarrow X$  which make the diagram over  $S$  commute, then there exists a unique morphism  $t: T \rightarrow X' \times_S X$  such that  $t_1 = \pi_1 \circ t$  and  $t_2 = \pi_2 \circ t$ . □

## 18.3 Representable Functors

**Proposition 18.5.** *Let  $S$  be a scheme and let  $v: \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  be a homomorphism of  $\mathcal{O}_S$ -modules.*

1. *Assume  $\mathcal{F}$  is of finite type. Then the locus where  $v$  is surjective is open, i.e. the functor  $F: (\text{Sch}/S)^{\text{opp}} \rightarrow \text{Set}$  given by*

$$F(T) = \{f \in \text{Hom}_S(T, S) \mid f^*(v) \text{ is surjective}\},$$

*is represented by an open subscheme of  $S$ .*

2. *Assume  $\mathcal{F}$  is finite locally free. Then the locus  $v = 0$  is closed, i.e. the functor  $F: (\text{Sch}/S)^{\text{opp}} \rightarrow \text{Set}$  given by*

$$F(T) = \{f \in \text{Hom}_S(T, S) \mid f^*(v) = 0\},$$

*is represented by a closed subscheme of  $S$ .*

*Proof.* The first assertion says that there exists an open subscheme  $U \subseteq S$  such that a morphism  $f: T \rightarrow S$  factors through  $U$  if and only if  $f^*(v): f^*\mathcal{E} \rightarrow f^*\mathcal{F}$  is surjective, that is, if and only if  $\text{coker}(f^*(v)) = 0$ . Since  $\text{coker}(v)$  is of finite type, we see that its support is closed. Since  $f^*$  is right exact, we see that  $\text{coker}(f^*(v)) = f^*(\text{coker}(v))$ . Therefore the open subscheme  $U = S \setminus \text{Supp}(\text{coker}(v))$  has the desired property.  $\square$

## 19 One-Dimensional Schemes

**Proposition 19.1.** *Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a non-empty noetherian scheme and let  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  be the irreducible components of  $X$ . The following assertions are equivalent:*

1. *For every closed point  $x \in X$ , we have  $\dim \mathcal{O}_x = 1$ .*
2. *The closed irreducible subsets of  $X$  are the  $X_i$  and the closed points of  $X$ .*
3. *The scheme  $X$  is of pure dimension 1 (in other words,  $\dim X_i = 1$  for all  $i$ ).*

*We call a scheme satisfying these equivalent conditions an **absolute curve**.*

*Proof.* As  $X$  is quasi-compact, every closed irreducible set contains a closed point of  $X$ . This shows the equivalence of all assertions.  $\square$

## 20 Zariski's Main Theorem

Zariski's main theorem states that a quasi-finite morphism of finite presentation between separated noetherian schemes factors as a composite of an open immersion and a finite morphism.

**Definition 20.1.**

**Lemma 20.1.** *Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field, let  $R$  be a finitely generated  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra, and let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be a prime ideal of  $R$ . The following statements are equivalent:*

1.  *$\mathfrak{p}$  is an isolated point of  $X := \text{Spec } R$  (i.e.  $\{\mathfrak{p}\}$  is open in  $X$ ).*
2.  *$R_{\mathfrak{p}}$  is finite over  $\mathbb{k}$ .*
3. *there exists an  $s \in R \setminus \mathfrak{p}$  such that  $D(s) = \{\mathfrak{p}\}$ .*
4.  *$\dim_{\mathfrak{p}}(X) = 0$ .*
5.  *$\mathfrak{p}$  is a closed point of  $X$  and  $\dim(R_{\mathfrak{p}}) = 0$ .*
6. *the field extension  $\kappa(\mathfrak{p})/\mathbb{k}$  is finite and  $\dim(R_{\mathfrak{p}}) = 0$ .*

*In this case, we have  $R = R_{\mathfrak{p}} \times R'$  for some finitely generated  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra  $R'$ . Also, the element  $s$  in (3) has the property that  $R_{\mathfrak{p}} = R_s$ .*

*Proof.* We first show (1) implies (2). Suppose  $\mathfrak{p}$  is an isolated point of  $X$ . Since  $\{\mathfrak{p}\}$  is open, we have  $X \setminus \{\mathfrak{p}\} = V(I)$  for some ideal  $I$  of  $R$ . Thus every prime of  $R$  contains  $I$ , except for  $\mathfrak{p}$ . In particular,  $\mathfrak{p}$  is clearly a minimal prime. Furthermore,  $\mathfrak{p}$  is also maximal since  $R$  is Jacobson (if  $\mathfrak{p}$  weren't maximal, then every maximal which contains  $\mathfrak{p}$  would contain  $I$ , hence  $\mathfrak{p}$  being the intersection of all such maximal ideals would also contain  $I$ , which is a contradiction). In other words  $\{\mathfrak{p}\}$  is a clopen and we may write  $R = R_1 \times R_2$  with  $\mathfrak{p}$  corresponding to the only point of  $X_1 := \text{Spec } R_1$ . Hence  $R_1 = R_{\mathfrak{p}}$  is a zero dimensional ring of finite type over  $\mathbb{k}$ ; whence it is finite over  $\mathbb{k}$ . Since  $R$  is noetherian, it

has finitely many minimal primes. Let the minimal primes of  $R$  be  $\mathfrak{p}_1, \mathfrak{p}_2, \dots, \mathfrak{p}_m$  with  $\mathfrak{p} = \mathfrak{p}_1$ . If  $m = 1$ , then  $R$  is already an artinian  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra with unique maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{p}$ . On the other hand, if  $m > 1$ , then we can set  $I = \mathfrak{p}_2 \cap \dots \cap \mathfrak{p}_m$ . In this case, if  $s \in I \setminus \mathfrak{p}$ , then it is clear that  $D(s) = \{\mathfrak{p}\}$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 20.2.** *Let  $B$  be a finitely generated  $A$ -algebra, let  $\mathfrak{q}$  be a prime ideal of  $B$  which lies over the prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p} = \mathfrak{q} \cap A$  of  $A$ , let  $F = \text{Spec}(B \otimes_A \kappa(\mathfrak{p}))$  be the fibre of  $Y := \text{Spec } B \rightarrow \text{Spec } A := X$ , and denote  $\bar{\mathfrak{q}} \in F$  to be the point corresponding to  $\mathfrak{q}$ . The following statements are equivalent:*

1.  $\bar{\mathfrak{q}}$  is an isolated point of  $F$  (i.e.  $\{\bar{\mathfrak{q}}\}$  is open in  $F$ ).
2.  $B_{\mathfrak{q}}/\mathfrak{p}$  is finite over  $\kappa(\mathfrak{p})$ .
3. there exists an  $s \in B \setminus \mathfrak{q}$  such that the only prime of  $D(s)$  mapping to  $\mathfrak{p}$  is  $\mathfrak{q}$ .
4.  $\dim_{\bar{\mathfrak{q}}}(F) = 0$ .
5.  $\bar{\mathfrak{q}}$  is a closed point of  $F$  and  $\dim(B_{\mathfrak{q}}/\mathfrak{p}) = 0$ .
6. the field extension  $\kappa(\mathfrak{q})/\kappa(\mathfrak{p})$  is finite and  $\dim(B_{\mathfrak{q}}/\mathfrak{p}) = 0$ .

Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. We denote by

$$\text{Isol}(f) := \text{Isol}(Y/X) = \{y \in Y \mid y \text{ isolated in its fiber}\}.$$

If  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  corresponds to a ring homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$ , then we also write  $\text{Isol}(f) = \text{Isol}(\varphi) = \text{Isol}(B/A)$ . If  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  is of finite type, then we have

$$\text{Isol}(B/A) = \{\mathfrak{q} \in \text{Spec } B \mid \mathfrak{q} \text{ is maximal and minimal among all primes lying over } \mathfrak{p} = \varphi^{-1}\mathfrak{q}\}.$$

With this notation set up, we are now ready to state Zariski's Main Theorem:

**Theorem 20.3.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes such that*

1.  $X$  is quasicompact and quasiseparated (equivalently  $X$  can be covered by finitely many affine opens whose overlaps can also be covered by finitely many affine opens)
2.  $f$  is separated and of finite type (thus if  $X = \bigcup_{i=1}^m U_i$  is a covering of  $X$  by finitely affine opens  $U_i := \text{Spec } A_i$ , then the inverse images  $V_i := f^{-1}(U_i)$  can be covered by finitely many affine opens, say  $V_i = \bigcup_{j=1}^{n_i} V_{i,j}$  with  $V_{i,j} := \text{Spec } B_{i,j}$ . Furthermore, all overlaps  $V_{i,jj'} := V_{i,j} \cap V_{i,j'}$  are themselves affine, say  $V_{i,jj'} := \text{Spec } B_{i,jj'}$ , and we have canonical surjective ring homomorphisms  $B_{i,j} \otimes_{A_i} B_{i,j'} \twoheadrightarrow B_{i,jj'}$ ).

*Then  $\text{Isol}(f)$  is open in  $Y$  and for every quasicompact open subset  $V \subseteq \text{Isol}(f)$  there exists a factorization  $f = gh$  where  $h: Y \rightarrow X'$  restricts to a quasicompact open immersion  $h|_V: V \rightarrow X'$  with  $h^{-1}h(V) = V$  and where  $g: X' \rightarrow X$  is finite.*

*Remark 51.* If  $\text{Isol}(f)$  itself is quasicompact, then we may take  $V = \text{Isol}(f)$ . For instance, if  $Y$  is noetherian, then every open subset of  $Y$  is quasicompact, so  $\text{Isol}(f)$  is quasicompact. Similarly if  $f$  is of finite presentation, then  $\text{Isol}(f)$  is quasicompact (this is a little more subtle and involves a noetherian approximation argument to prove that for every  $n$  the local immersion  $\{y \in Y \mid \dim_y f^{-1}f(y) \leq n\} \hookrightarrow Y$  is quasicompact).

We consider the following situation. Let  $B$  be a ring and let  $A \subseteq B$  be a subring. Set  $Y = \text{Spec } B$ ,  $X = \text{Spec } A$ , and let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be the morphism corresponding to the inclusion  $A \hookrightarrow B$ .

**Lemma 20.4.** *Assume that  $A$  is integrally closed in  $B$  and that  $B$  has the form  $B = A[\beta]$  for some  $\beta \in B$ . Let  $x$  be a point in  $X$  and let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be the corresponding prime ideal of  $A$ . Then the fiber  $f^{-1}(x) = \text{Spec}(B_{\mathfrak{p}}/\mathfrak{p})$  has one of the following three forms:*

1.  $f^{-1}(x) = \emptyset$ .
2.  $f^{-1}(x)$  consists of a single point. Then there exists an open neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$  such that  $f$  induces an isomorphism  $f^{-1}(U) \xrightarrow{\cong} U$ .
3. We have  $(A/\mathfrak{p})[t] \cong B/\mathfrak{p}$  (and in particular,  $f^{-1}(x) \cong \mathbb{A}_{\kappa(x)}^1$  and for the generic point  $y \in f^{-1}(x)$  the residue field  $\kappa(y)$  is transcendental over  $\kappa(x)$ ).

*Proof.* Let  $\varepsilon: A[t] \rightarrow B$  be the  $A$ -algebra homomorphism which sends  $t$  to  $\beta$ .

**Step 1:** We first show that  $\ker \varepsilon$  is generated by linear polynomials. Let

$$f = a_n t^n + a_{n-1} t^{n-1} + \dots + a_0 \in \ker \varepsilon$$

with  $a_n \neq 0$ . We show that  $f$  is a linear combination (with coefficients in  $A[t]$ ) of linear polynomials contained in  $\ker \varepsilon$  by induction on  $n$ . We may assume that  $n \geq 2$ . Multiplying with  $a_n^{n-1}$  and evaluating in  $\beta$  we obtain

$$(a_n \beta)^n + a_{n-1}(a_n \beta)^{n-1} + a_{n-1}a_n(a_n \beta)^{n-2} + \cdots + a_0 a_n^{n-1} = 0.$$

Thus  $\alpha := a_n \beta \in A$  because  $A$  is integrally closed in  $B$  and  $a_n t - \alpha$  is a linear polynomial contained in  $\ker \varepsilon$ . We obtain

$$f = t^{n-1}(a_n t - \alpha) + g$$

where  $g \in \ker \varepsilon$  with degree  $< n$ . Thus our claim follows from the induction hypothesis.

**Step 2:** Let  $\bar{\varepsilon}$  be the composition of  $\varepsilon$  with  $B \rightarrow B/\mathfrak{p}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{p}A[t] \subseteq \ker \bar{\varepsilon}$ . Thus case 3 is equivalent to  $\ker \bar{\varepsilon} \subseteq \mathfrak{p}A[t]$  and also equivalent to  $\ker \varepsilon \subseteq \mathfrak{p}A[t]$  because  $\ker \bar{\varepsilon} = \ker \varepsilon + \mathfrak{p}A[t]$ .

If we are not in case 3, then by the first step we find elements  $c, d \in A$  with  $c\beta = d$  and  $c \notin \mathfrak{p}$  or  $d \notin \mathfrak{p}$ . If  $c \notin \mathfrak{p}$ , then  $A_c = B_c$  and  $U := D(c)$  is an open neighborhood as in case 2. If  $d \notin \mathfrak{p}$  and  $c \in \mathfrak{p}$ , then  $\beta$  is a unit in  $B_d$  and  $\beta^{-1} \in \mathfrak{p}B_d$ . Thus  $\mathfrak{p}B_d = B_d$  and  $f^{-1}(x) = \text{Spec}(B_{\mathfrak{p}}/\mathfrak{p}) = \emptyset$ .  $\square$

Let  $\text{LocIsom}(B/A)$  be the set of prime ideals  $\mathfrak{q}$  of  $B$  such that there exists  $s \in A$  with  $s \notin \mathfrak{q}$  and  $B_s = A_s$ . In other words, if  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  corresponds to a ring homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$ , then  $\text{LocIsom}(B/A)$  consists of the set of all points  $y \in Y$  such that there exists an open neighborhood  $U \subseteq X$  of  $x = f(y)$  such that  $f$  induces an isomorphism  $f^{-1}(U) \xrightarrow{\sim} U$ .

**Lemma 20.5.** *Assume that  $B$  is a finitely generated algebra over a subring  $A$ .*

1. *For every  $A$ -subalgebra  $A'$  of  $B$  that is integral over  $A$  one has*

$$\text{LocIsom}(B/A) \subseteq \text{LocIsom}(B/A') \subseteq \text{Isol}(B/A) \subseteq \text{Isol}(B/A').$$

2.  *$\text{LocIsom}(B/A)$  is open in  $\text{Spec } B$ .*
3. *If  $S \subseteq A$  is multiplicatively closed, then*

$$\text{Isol}(B_S/A_S) = \text{Isol}(B/A) \cap \text{Spec } B_S \quad \text{and} \quad \text{LocIsom}(B_S/A_S) = \text{LocIsom}(B/A) \cap \text{Spec } B_S.$$

4. *Assume that there exists  $\beta \in B$  such that the extension  $A[\beta] \rightarrow B$  is integral. Then  $\text{Isol}(B/A)$  is stable under generization.*
5. *For every  $A$ -subalgebra  $A'$  of  $B$  that is integral over  $A$ , one has*

$$\text{LocIsom}(B/A') = \bigcup_{A''} \text{LocIsom}(B/A''),$$

where the union is over all  $A \subseteq A'' \subseteq A'$  that are finite  $A$ -algebras.

The following is the local version of Zariski's Main Theorem:

**Proposition 20.1.** *Let  $B$  be a finitely generated algebra over a subring  $A$  and let  $\bar{A}$  be the integral closure of  $A$  in  $B$ . Then*

$$\text{Isol}(B/A) = \text{LocIsom}(B/\bar{A}).$$

## 21 Curves

**Definition 21.1.** Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field. A **variety** is a  $\mathbb{k}$ -scheme  $X$  which is integral, separated over  $\mathbb{k}$ , and of finite type over  $\mathbb{k}$ . In particular, this implies  $X$  is a finite union of affine open sets, say  $X = U_1 \cup \cdots \cup U_m$ , where  $U_i = \text{Spec } A_i$  with  $A_i$  being integral and a finitely generated  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebra, and for each  $i, i'$ , the intersection  $U_{i,i'} := U_i \cap U_{i'} = \text{Spec } A_{i,i'}$  is nonempty affine and the homomorphism of  $\mathbb{k}$ -algebras  $A_i \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} A_{i'} \rightarrow A_{i,i'}$ , corresponding to the diagonal morphism  $U_i \cap U_{i'} \rightarrow U_i \times U_{i'}$ , is surjective. A **curve** is a variety of dimension 1 over  $\mathbb{k}$ .

*Remark 52.* Let  $\mathbb{k}'/\mathbb{k}$  be an extension of fields. If  $X$  is a  $\mathbb{k}$ -variety, then it need not be the case that  $X_{\mathbb{k}'} := X \times_{\text{Spec } \mathbb{k}} \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}'$  is a  $\mathbb{k}'$ -variety. Indeed, consider the case where  $\mathbb{k} = \mathbb{Q}$ ,  $\mathbb{k}' = \mathbb{Q}(i)$ , and  $X = \text{Spec}(\mathbb{Q}(i))$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} X_{\mathbb{Q}(i)} &= \text{Spec}(\mathbb{Q}(i) \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}(i)) \\ &\simeq \text{Spec}(\mathbb{Q}(i) \times \mathbb{Q}(i)) \\ &\simeq X \coprod X. \end{aligned}$$

where the  $\mathbb{Q}$ -algebra isomorphism  $\mathbb{Q}(i) \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}(i) \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}(i) \times \mathbb{Q}(i)$  is given by  $b_1 \otimes b_2 \mapsto (b_1 b_2, b_1 \bar{b}_2)$ .



**Example 21.1.** The affine line  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  and the projective line  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  are curves. The scheme  $X = \operatorname{Spec}(\mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle f \rangle)$  is a curve if and only if  $f \in \mathbb{k}[x, y]$  is irreducible.

## 21.1 Genus of a curve

**Definition 21.2.** Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field. Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a proper scheme over  $\mathbb{k}$  having dimension 1 and  $H^0(X, \mathcal{O}) = \mathbb{k}$ . Then the **genus** of  $X$  is  $g = \dim_{\mathbb{k}} H^1(X, \mathcal{O})$ .

## 21.2 Models of Algebraic Curves

**Definition 21.3.** Let  $S$  be a Dedekind scheme of dimension 1 and with function field  $K$ . Let  $C$  be a normal, connected, projective curve over  $K$ . We call a normal fibered surface  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow S$  together with an isomorphism  $f: \mathcal{C}_{\eta} \simeq C$  a **model** of  $C$  over  $S$ . We will say it is a **regular model** if  $\mathcal{C}$  is regular.

**Example 21.2.** Let  $q \geq 1$  be a square-free integer. Let  $C$  be the projective curve over  $\mathbb{Q}$  defined by the equation

$$x^q + y^q + z^q = 0.$$

One checks that  $C$  is smooth over  $\mathbb{Q}$  using the Jacobian criterion. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be the closed subscheme of  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{Z}}^2$  defined by the same equation. The Jacobian criterion shows that  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{Z}$  is smooth outside of the primes  $p$  that divide  $q$ . Let  $p$  be a prime factor of  $q$ . The integer  $r = q/p$  is prime to  $p$  by hypothesis. We have

$$\mathcal{C}_p = \operatorname{Proj}(\mathbb{F}_p[x, y, z]/(x^r + y^r + z^r)^p).$$

We deduce from this that  $\mathcal{C}_p$  is irreducible and the  $(\mathcal{C}_p)_{\text{red}}$  is the closed subvariety  $V_+(x^r + y^r + z^r)$  over  $\mathbb{F}_p$ . As  $\mathcal{C}$  is a complete intersection, and is regular at the generic fiber, to show normality of  $\mathcal{C}$  it suffices to show its normality at the generic point of  $\mathcal{C}_p$ . We can therefore restrict ourselves to the affine open subscheme  $U := \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{Z}[x, y]/(x^q + y^q + 1)$  of  $\mathcal{C}$  (where we simplify by writing  $x, y$  instead of  $x/z, y/z$ ). The prime ideal corresponding to  $\mathcal{C}_p$  is generated by  $x^r + y^r + 1$ . Let us suppose that  $p \geq 3$  (the  $p = 2$  case can be treated in a similar way). We have

$$(T + S)^p = T^p + S^p + p(T + S)F(T, S)$$

where  $F(T, S) \in \mathbb{Z}[T, S]$  with  $F$  homogeneous and  $F \notin p\mathbb{Z}[T, S]$ . Hence

$$x^q + y^q + 1 = (x^r + y^r + 1)^p - p((x^r + y^r)F(x^r, y^r) + (x^r + y^r + 1)F(x^r + y^r, 1)).$$

The polynomial  $F(x^r, y^r)$  modulo  $p$  is homogeneous and non-zero, and hence non-divisible by  $x^r + y^r + 1$ . This implies  $\mathcal{C}$  is normal. Moreover the intersection of the singular locus of  $U$  with  $U_p$  is defined by the ideal  $\langle p, x^r + y^r + 1, F(x^r, y^r) \rangle$ .

## 22 Divisors

Let  $X$  be an algebraic variety and let  $K$  be the function field of  $X$ . We are often interested in determining the zero/pole configuration of a “meromorphic” function  $\alpha \in K$ . There’s two ways to make this precise: first we can consider formal  $\mathbb{Z}$ -linear combinations of irreducible closed subsets of codimension one, where the coefficient tells us whether we want to see the corresponding subset as a zero locus of some (positive) multiplicity, or as the locus of poles of some order (negative multiplicity). This leads to the notion of Weil divisor. However this notion will only work well under suitable assumptions on  $X$ . The notion which works best is that of the Cartier divisor.

### 22.1 Cartier Divisors

Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. A **Cartier divisor** on  $X$  is an element of

$$\operatorname{Div}(X) := H^0(X, \mathcal{K}^\times / \mathcal{O}^\times),$$

where  $\mathcal{K}$  is the sheaf of total fractions of  $\mathcal{O}$ . Let us describe such an element in the case where  $X$  is an integral scheme. In this case,  $\mathcal{K}$  is the constant sheaf on  $X$  with value  $K = \mathcal{K}(X)$  the function field of  $X$ . A Cartier divisor  $D$  on  $X$  is represented by a tuple  $(U_i, \alpha_i)$  where  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  is an open cover of  $X$  and where  $\alpha_i \in K^\times$  such that  $\alpha_i / \alpha_{i'} \in \mathcal{O}(U_i \cap U_{i'})^\times$  for all  $i, i'$ . Two tuples  $(U_i, \alpha_i)$  and  $(V_j, \beta_j)$  give rise to the same Cartier divisor if  $\alpha_i / \beta_j \in \mathcal{O}(U_i \cap V_j)^\times$  for all  $i, j$ . If  $D$  and  $E$  are two Cartier divisors on  $X$  represented by tuples  $(U_i, \alpha_i)$  and  $(V_j, \beta_j)$  respectively, then their sum  $D + E$  is a Cartier divisor which is represented by the tuple  $(U_i \cap V_j, \alpha_i \beta_j)$  and their difference  $D - E$  is a Cartier divisor which is represented by the tuple  $(U_i \cap V_j, \alpha_i / \beta_j)$ .

A Cartier divisor is called **principal** if it is represented by a tuple of the form  $(X, \alpha)$ . Two divisors  $D$  and  $E$  are said to be **linearly equivalent** if  $D - E$  is principal. We denote by  $\operatorname{DivCl}(X)$  to be the quotient of  $\operatorname{Div}(X)$  by the subgroup of principal divisors. We obtain an exact sequence:

$$1 \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}(X)^\times \longrightarrow K^\times \longrightarrow \operatorname{Div}(X) \longrightarrow \operatorname{DivCl}(X) \longrightarrow 0 \quad (42)$$

To a Cartier divisor  $D$  on  $X$  represented by the tuple  $(U_i, \alpha_i)$ , we attach the line bundle  $\mathcal{O}(D)$  given by

$$\mathcal{O}(D)(U) = \{\alpha \in K \mid \alpha \alpha_i \in \mathcal{O}(U_i \cap U) \text{ for all } i\}.$$

for all open  $U \subseteq X$ . Note that  $\mathcal{O}(D)|_{U_i}$  is isomorphic to the free  $\mathcal{O}_{U_i}$ -submodule of  $\mathcal{K}_{U_i}$  generated by  $1/\alpha_i$ . Indeed, let  $U$  be an open subset of  $U_i$  and let  $\alpha \in \mathcal{O}(D)|_{U_i}(U) = \mathcal{O}(D)(U)$ . Then in particular we have  $\alpha \alpha_i \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  or alternatively  $\alpha \in \langle 1/\alpha_i \rangle_U$ . We shall see that the map  $\text{Div}(X) \rightarrow \text{Pic}(X)$  given by  $D \mapsto \mathcal{O}(D)$  induces an isomorphism  $\text{DivCl}(X) \simeq \text{Pic}(X)$  of abelian groups.

**Example 22.1.** Let  $A = \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{-5}]$ , let  $X = \text{Spec } A$ , let  $U = D(2)$ , let  $U' = D(3)$ , and let  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle 3, 1 + \sqrt{-5} \rangle$ . Then  $\{U, U'\}$  is an open covering of  $X$  on which  $\mathfrak{p}$  is locally principal:

$$\mathfrak{p}_U = \langle 1 + \sqrt{-5} \rangle_U \cong A_U \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{p}_{U'} = A_{U'}.$$

Now let  $\alpha = (1 - \sqrt{-5})/3$  and let  $D$  be the Cartier divisor represented by the tuple  $\{(U, \alpha), (U', 1)\}$ . Then the corresponding line bundle is the  $\mathcal{O}$ -module corresponding to the prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p}$ . In particular,  $\mathcal{O}(D)(X) = \mathfrak{p}$ .

**Example 22.2.** Let  $R = \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle y^2 - x^3 \rangle$  and let  $I = \langle x \rangle$ . Then the map  $\varphi: \text{Cart}(R) \rightarrow \text{Weil}(R)$  sends  $I$  to

$$\sum_{\substack{\mathfrak{p} \in \text{Spec } R \\ \text{codim } \mathfrak{p} = 1}} \ell(R_{\mathfrak{p}}/I_{\mathfrak{p}})\mathfrak{p} = \ell(R_{\mathfrak{m}}/I_{\mathfrak{m}})\mathfrak{m} = 2\mathfrak{m},$$

where we set  $\mathfrak{m} = \langle x, y \rangle$ . Similarly, the map  $\text{Cart}(R) \rightarrow \text{Weil}(R)$  sends  $J = \langle y \rangle$  to  $3\mathfrak{m}$ . It follows that  $\varphi\langle y/x \rangle = \mathfrak{m}$ , and so  $\mathfrak{m} = 0$  in  $\text{Chow}(R)$ .

**Definition 22.1.** Let  $A$  be a commutative ring. We set  $S = R(A)$  to be the set of all regular elements of  $A$ . We set  $K = K(A) := A_S$  to be the localization of  $A$  at  $S$  and we call  $K$  the **total quotient ring** of  $A$ .

In general, the set of all regular elements of  $A$  is given by

$$S = \left( \bigcup_{\mathfrak{p} \in \text{WeakAss}(A)} \mathfrak{p} \right)^c = \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in \text{WeakAss}(A)} \mathfrak{p}^c.$$

where  $\mathfrak{p}$  is weakly associated to  $A$  if  $\mathfrak{p}$  is minimal over an annihilator  $0 : x$  for some  $x \in A$ . Now assume that  $A$  is noetherian. In this case, every weakly associated prime is an associated prime. Furthermore, there are only many associated primes of  $A$ , say  $\mathfrak{p}_1, \dots, \mathfrak{p}_n$ . Note if  $A$  is also reduced, then the associated primes of  $A$  are precisely the minimal primes of  $A$ , and in this case we have

$$S = \mathfrak{p}_1^c \cap \dots \cap \mathfrak{p}_n^c \quad \text{and} \quad K = K_1 \times \dots \times K_n \quad (43)$$

where  $K_i = A_{\mathfrak{p}_i} = \kappa(\mathfrak{p}_i)$  is a field for each  $i$ .

**Example 22.3.** Let  $A = \mathbb{k}[x, y, z]/\mathfrak{a}$  where  $\mathfrak{a} = \langle x^2y, x^2z \rangle$ . A primary decomposition of  $\mathfrak{a}$  is given by  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{a}_1 \cap \mathfrak{a}_2$  where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{a}_1 &= \langle x^2 \rangle & \mathfrak{p}_1 &:= \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}_1} = \langle x \rangle \\ \mathfrak{a}_2 &= \langle y, z \rangle & \mathfrak{p}_2 &:= \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}_2} = \langle y, z \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have  $\text{Ass } A = \{\mathfrak{p}_1, \mathfrak{p}_2\}$ . Therefore the set of all regular elements of  $A$  is given by  $S = \mathfrak{p}_1^c \cap \mathfrak{p}_2^c$  and the total quotient ring is given by

$$K = \mathbb{k}(y, z)[x]_{\langle x \rangle} / \langle x^2 \rangle \times \mathbb{k}(x).$$

**Definition 22.2.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a locally noetherian scheme and let

$$\text{Ass } \mathcal{O} := \{x \in X \mid \mathfrak{m}_x \in \text{Ass}_{\mathcal{O}_x}(\mathcal{O}_x)\} = \{x \in X \mid \text{depth } \mathcal{O}_x = 0\}.$$

The points of  $\text{Ass } \mathcal{O}$  are called the **associated points** of  $X$ . For any open subset  $U$  of  $X$ , we have  $\text{Ass}(\mathcal{O}) \cap U = \text{Ass } \mathcal{O}_U$ . If  $X = \text{Spec } A$  is affine, then  $\text{Ass } \mathcal{O} = \text{Ass } A$ . The generic points of  $X$  are associated points of  $X$ . An associated point that is not a generic point of  $X$  is called an **embedded point** of  $X$ .

Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. We define sheaf on  $X$ , denoted  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{R}_X$ , given by

$$\mathcal{R}(U) := \{a \in \mathcal{O}(U) \mid a_x \text{ is } \mathcal{O}_x\text{-regular for all } x \in U\}$$

for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ . Note that if  $U = \text{Spec } A$  is affine, then  $\mathcal{R}(U)$  is the set of all  $A$ -regular elements. Indeed, this is because  $a$  is  $A$ -regular if and only if  $a/1$  is  $A_{\mathfrak{p}}$ -regular for all primes  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$  which itself follows from

$$\text{Ass } A_{\mathfrak{p}} = \{\mathfrak{q}_{\mathfrak{p}} \mid \mathfrak{q} \in \text{Ass } A \text{ and } \mathfrak{q} \subseteq \mathfrak{p}\}$$

for all primes  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $A$ . We set  $\mathcal{K} = \mathcal{K}_X$  to be the sheafification of the presheaf  $\mathcal{K}'$  on  $X$  given by

$$\mathcal{K}'(U) = \mathcal{O}(U)_{\mathcal{R}(U)}$$

for all open subsets  $U$  of  $X$ . In particular, if  $U = \text{Spec } A$  is affine, then  $\mathcal{K}'(U) = Q(A)$  is the total quotient ring of  $A$ . If  $X$  is locally noetherian, then  $\mathcal{K}_x = Q(A_{\mathfrak{p}_x})$  is the total quotient ring of  $A_{\mathfrak{p}_x}$  for all  $x \in X$ .

## 22.2 Effective Cartier Divisors

**Definition 22.3.** Let  $S = (S, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. An **effective Cartier divisor** on  $S$  is a closed subscheme  $D \subseteq S$  whose ideal sheaf  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{O}$  is an invertible  $\mathcal{O}$ -module.

Thus an effective divisor is a locally principal closed subscheme, though the converse need not be true.

## 22.3 Weil Divisors

We define Weil divisors and rational equivalence for locally Noetherian integral schemes.

**Lemma 22.1.** *Let  $X$  be a locally noetherian scheme. Let  $Z \subseteq X$  be a closed subscheme. The collection of irreducible components of  $Z$  is locally finite in  $X$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $U \subseteq X$  be a quasi-compact open subscheme. Then  $U$  is a Noetherian scheme, thus the underlying topological space of  $U$  is Noetherian. In particular,  $Z \cap U$  is Noetherian and has finitely many irreducible components.  $\square$

**Definition 22.4.** Let  $X$  be a locally noetherian integral scheme.

1. A **prime divisor** is an integral closed subscheme  $Z \subseteq X$  of codimension 1.
2. A **Weil divisor** is a formal sum  $D = \sum n_Z Z$  where the sum is over prime divisors of  $X$  and the collection  $\{Z \mid n_Z \neq 0\}$  is locally finite.

**Definition 22.5.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a locally Noetherian integral scheme and let  $a \in \mathcal{R}(X)^*$ . For every prime divisor  $Z \subseteq X$  we define the **order of vanishing of  $a$  along  $Z$**  as the integer

$$\text{ord}_Z(a) = \text{ord}_{\mathcal{O}_\xi}(a) = \text{length}_{\mathcal{O}_\xi}(\mathcal{O}_\xi/a),$$

where  $\xi$  is the generic point of  $Z$ .

## 23 Vector Bundles

Let  $X$  be a scheme. For an  $X$ -scheme  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  and for  $U \subseteq X$  open we simply write  $Y|_U$  for the  $U$ -scheme  $f^{-1}(U)$ .

**Definition 23.1.** Let  $n \geq 0$  be an integer and let  $X$  be a scheme. A (geometric) **vector bundle of rank  $n$  over  $X$**  is an  $X$ -scheme  $V$  such that there exists an open covering  $X = \bigcup_i U_i$  and isomorphisms of  $U_i$ -schemes  $c_i: V|_{U_i} \simeq \mathbb{A}_{U_i}^n$  such that for any affine open  $U = \text{Spec } A \subseteq U_i \cap U_j$  the automorphism  $c_i \circ c_j^{-1}$  of  $\mathbb{A}_U^n = \text{Spec } A[T_1, \dots, T_n]$  is a linear automorphism, that is, it is given by an  $A$ -algebra automorphism  $\varphi$  of  $A[\mathbf{T}] = A[T_1, \dots, T_n]$  such that  $\varphi(T_i) = \sum_j a_{ji} T_j$  for suitable  $a_{ji} \in A$ .

### 23.1 Torsors and non-abelian cohomology

Let  $X$  be a topological space and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a sheaf of groups on  $X$ .

**Definition 23.2.** If  $\mathcal{T}$  is a sheaf (of sets) on  $X$ , then we say  $\mathcal{G}$  **acts on  $\mathcal{T}$**  or that  $\mathcal{T}$  is a  **$\mathcal{G}$ -sheaf** if there is given a morphism of sheaves  $\mathcal{G} \times \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  such that for every open  $U \subseteq X$  the map

$$\mathcal{G}(U) \times \mathcal{T}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{T}(U)$$

is a left action of the group  $\mathcal{G}(U)$  on the set  $\mathcal{T}(U)$ . A **morphism** of  $\mathcal{G}$ -sheaves is a morphism of sheaves  $\varphi: \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}'$  such that  $\varphi_U: \mathcal{T}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{T}'(U)$  is  $\mathcal{G}(U)$ -equivariant for all open  $U \subseteq X$ . In other words, if  $g \in \mathcal{G}(U)$  and  $t \in \mathcal{T}(U)$ , then

$$g\varphi(t) = \varphi(gt).$$

We obtain the category of  $\mathcal{G}$ -sheaves on  $X$ .

**Definition 23.3.** Let  $\mathcal{T}$  be a  $\mathcal{G}$ -sheaf.

1. We say  $\mathcal{T}$  is a  **$\mathcal{G}$ -pseudotorsor** if the group  $\mathcal{G}(U)$  acts simply transitively on  $\mathcal{T}(U)$  for every  $U \subseteq X$  open. This means that for every  $t, t' \in \mathcal{T}(U)$  distinct, there exists a unique  $g \in \mathcal{G}(U)$  such that  $gt = t'$ .
2. We say  $\mathcal{T}$  is a  **$\mathcal{G}$ -torsor** if there exists an open covering  $X = \bigcup_i U_i$  of  $X$  that  $\mathcal{T}(U_i) \neq \emptyset$  for all  $i$ .

We obtain the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsors of the category of  $\mathcal{G}$ -sheaves.

**Example 23.1.** Let  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}$  be open and let  $f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a holomorphic. Define a sheaf  $\mathcal{P}_f$  on  $\Omega$  by

$$\mathcal{P}_f(U) := \{F: U \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \text{ holomorphic and } F' = f|_U\}$$

for  $U \subseteq \Omega$  open. Then any two primitives of  $f|_U$  differ by a locally constant function. In other words, the constant sheaf  $\mathbb{C}_\Omega$  acts on it by addition. This makes  $\mathcal{P}_f$  into a  $\mathbb{C}_\Omega$ -pseudotorsor because two primitives of a holomorphic function only differ by a locally constant function. Now the local existence of primitives just means that  $\mathcal{P}_f$  is in fact a  $\mathbb{C}_\Omega$ -torsor.

### Example 23.2.

One example for a  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsor is the group  $\mathcal{G}$  itself on which  $\mathcal{G}$  acts by left multiplication. This torsor is called the **trivial**  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsor. A  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsor  $\mathcal{T}$  is isomorphic to the trivial  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsor if and only if  $\mathcal{T}(X) \neq \emptyset$ . Indeed, in this case any  $t \in \mathcal{T}(X)$  yields an isomorphism  $\mathcal{G}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{T}(U)$  given by  $g \mapsto gt|_U$ . We denote by  $H^1(X, \mathcal{G})$  to be the set of isomorphism classes of  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsors. This is a pointed set, where the distinguished element is the isomorphism class of the trivial  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsor.

**Proposition 23.1.** *Let  $X$  be a topological space and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a sheaf of groups on  $X$ . Every morphism in the category  $\mathbf{Tors}(\mathcal{G})$  is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* 1. Let  $\mathcal{S}$  and  $\mathcal{T}$  be  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsors on  $X$  and let  $\varphi: \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  be a  $\mathcal{G}$ -morphism. If  $X = \bigcup_i U_i$  is an open covering and  $\varphi|_{U_i}$  is an isomorphism for each  $i$ , then  $\varphi$  is an isomorphism. By choose a covering  $\{U_i\}$  which trivializes  $\mathcal{S}$  and  $\mathcal{T}$  and replacing  $X$  by one of the  $U_i$  if necessary, we may assume that  $\mathcal{S}(X) \neq \emptyset \neq \mathcal{T}(X)$ . Then  $\mathcal{S}(U) \neq \emptyset \neq \mathcal{T}(U)$  for all  $U \subseteq X$  open. The proof now follows from the following fact: let  $G$  be a group which acts simply transitively on two non-empty sets  $S$  and  $T$ , then every  $G$ -equivariant map  $\varphi: S \rightarrow T$  is bijective.  $\square$

**Proposition 23.2.** *Let  $X$  be a topological space. Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a locally constant sheaf of groups on  $X$ . Suppose that  $X$  is simply connected and locally path connected. Then  $\mathcal{G}$  is a constant sheaf of groups and  $H^1(X, \mathcal{G}) = 0$ .*

*Proof.* As any  $\mathcal{G}$ -torsor  $\mathcal{T}$  is locally isomorphic to  $\mathcal{G}$ , it is a locally constant sheaf on  $X$ . Hence it suffices to show that any locally constant sheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  is constant. Let  $\pi: E \rightarrow X$  be the étalé space corresponding to  $\mathcal{F}$ . Since  $\mathcal{F}$  is locally constant, we see that  $\pi$  is a covering map. As  $X$  is simply connected and locally path connected, this covering map has to be trivial, that is,  $E = X \times F$  where  $F$  is some fiber of  $\pi$ , considered as a discrete topological space. This shows that  $\mathcal{F}$  is a constant sheaf.  $\square$

**Example 23.3.** Let  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}$  be open and let  $f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a holomorphic function. Then the torsor  $\mathcal{P}_f$  is trivial if and only if there exists  $F: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  such that  $F' = f$ .

## 24 Serre Criterion for Affineness

**Lemma 24.1.** *Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme and let  $T$  be a closed subset of  $X$ . There exists a unique closed subscheme  $Z$  of  $X$  such that  $Z$  is reduced and such that the underlying topological space is  $T$ .*

*Proof.* First let's give a local description of  $Z$ . Choose an open affine covering  $\{U_i := \text{Spec } A_i\}$  of  $X$ . Since  $T$  is closed, we have  $T \cap U_i$  is closed in  $U_i$ , so we may write

$$T \cap U_i = V(\mathfrak{a}_i) \simeq \text{Spec}(A_i/\mathfrak{a}_i) := Z_i$$

where  $\mathfrak{a}_i$  is a unique radical ideal of  $A_i$ . Assume that  $U_i \cap U_{i'} \neq \emptyset$  for some  $i \neq i'$  and let  $U_{ii'} = \text{Spec } A_{ii'}$  be an affine open contained in  $U_i \cap U_{i'}$  such that  $A_{i,s} = A_{i',s'}$  for some  $s \in A_i$  and  $s' \in A_{i'}$ . Then since

$$V(\mathfrak{a}_{i,s}) = V(\mathfrak{a}_i) \cap U_{ii'} = V(\mathfrak{a}_{i'}) \cap U_{ii'} = V(\mathfrak{a}_{i',s'}),$$

we must in fact have  $\mathfrak{a}_{i,s} = \mathfrak{a}_{i',s'}$  in  $A_{ii'}$  by uniqueness of radical ideals. It follows that the  $Z_i$  glue to  $Z$  which is reduced and has underlying topological space  $T$  by construction.

Now let's give a global description of  $Z$ . Let  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{O}$  be the sub presheaf defined by

$$\mathcal{I}(U) = \{a \in \mathcal{O}(U) \mid a(x) = 0 \text{ for all } x \in T \cap U\}.$$

Here we write  $a(x)$  to denote the image of  $a$  in the residue field  $\kappa(x)$  of  $X$  at  $x$ . Because of the local nature of the condition it is clear that  $\mathcal{I}$  is a sheaf of ideals. If  $U = \text{Spec } A$  is affine, then we may write  $T \cap U = V(\mathfrak{a})$  where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a radical ideal of  $A$  and we have

$$\mathcal{I}(U) = \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in V(\mathfrak{a})} \mathfrak{p} = \mathfrak{a},$$

since if  $\mathfrak{p}$  is a prime ideal corresponding to  $x$ , then  $a(x) = 0$  if and only if  $a \in \mathfrak{p}$ . For any standard open  $D(s) := U$  of  $X$ , we have  $\mathcal{I}(D(s)) = \mathfrak{a}_s$  by the same reasoning. Thus  $\tilde{\mathfrak{a}}$  and  $\mathcal{I}|_U$  agree (as ideals) on a basis of opens and hence are equal. Therefore  $\mathcal{I}$  is a quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -ideal. Now we define  $Z$  to be the closed subscheme associated to  $\mathcal{I}$ .  $\square$

Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme and set  $A = \mathcal{O}(X)$ . Given  $s \in A$  we define an open subscheme  $X_s$  of  $X$  as follows: choose an open affine covering  $\{U_i := \operatorname{Spec} A_i\}$  of  $X$  and let  $s_i$  be the image of  $s$  in  $A_i$  under the ring homomorphism  $A \rightarrow A_i$ . Then for each  $i$  we have standard affine opens  $D(s_i) \subseteq U_i$ . We define  $X_s$  to be the scheme  $X_s = \bigcup_i D(s_i)$ . Note that if  $\{U'_{i'} := \operatorname{Spec} A'_{i'}\}$  is another open affine covering of  $X$ , then there exists an open affine covering  $\{U''_{i''} := \operatorname{Spec} A''_{i''}\}$  of  $X$  which refines both  $\{U_i\}$  and  $\{U'_{i'}\}$ . If  $U''_{i''} \subseteq U_i \cap U'_{i'}$ , then we have

$$D(s_i) \cap U''_{i''} = D(s_{i''}) = D(s_{i'}) \cap U''_{i''}$$

where  $s_{i''}$  is the image of  $s$  in  $A''_{i''}$  under the ring homomorphism  $A \rightarrow A''_{i''}$  and where  $s_{i'}$  is the image of  $s$  in  $A'_{i'}$  under the ring homomorphism  $A \rightarrow A'_{i'}$ . Indeed, the follows from the fact that  $s_{i''}$  is the image of both  $s_i$  under the ring homomorphism  $A_i \rightarrow A''_{i''}$  and  $s_{i'}$  under the ring homomorphism  $A'_{i'} \rightarrow A''_{i''}$ . Thus the definition of  $X_s$  that we gave does not depend on the choice of affine open covering.

The definition of  $X_s$  we gave above is the *local* description. The underlying topological space of  $X_s$  has the following *global* description:

$$X_s = \{x \in X \mid s(x) \neq 0\},$$

where again we set  $s(x)$  to be the image of  $s$  in the residue field  $\kappa(x)$  of  $X$  at  $x$ .

**Definition 24.1.** A scheme  $X$  is called **quasi-affine** if it is quasi-compact and isomorphic to an open subscheme of an affine scheme.

**Lemma 24.2.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme and set  $A = \mathcal{O}(X)$ . Then  $X$  is quasi-affine if the canonical morphism  $X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} A$  is a quasi-compact open immersion.

*Proof.* If  $X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} A$  is a quasi-compact open immersion, then  $X$  is isomorphic to a quasi-compact open subscheme of  $\operatorname{Spec} A$ , so clearly  $X$  is quasi-affine in this case. Now assume  $X$  is quasi-affine, say  $X \subseteq \operatorname{Spec} R$  is quasi-compact open. Thus in particular this implies  $X$  is separated.  $\square$

**Lemma 24.3.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. Then  $X$  is quasi-affine if and only if  $\mathcal{O}$  is ample.

*Proof.* First assume  $X$  is quasi-affine. Set  $A = \mathcal{O}(X)$  and consider the open immersion

$$j: X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} A$$

$\square$

**Lemma 24.4.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme and set  $A = \mathcal{O}(X)$ . Suppose that there exists finitely many elements  $\mathbf{s} = s_1, \dots, s_m$  of  $A$  such that

1. each  $X_{s_i}$  is an affine open of  $X$ , and
2. we have  $\langle \mathbf{s} \rangle = A$ .

Then  $X$  is affine.

*Proof.* Note that  $X = X_{s_1} \cup \dots \cup X_{s_m}$  since  $\langle \mathbf{s} \rangle = A$  (indeed, writing  $1 = \sum s_i t_i$  for some  $t_i \in A$ , it is clear that the  $s_i$ 's cannot all vanish at a point). In particular,  $X$  is quasi-compact since each  $X_{s_i}$  is quasi-compact. Hence we see that  $X$  is quasi-affine. Consider the open immersion  $\iota: X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} A$ . Then  $\iota$  induces an isomorphism

$$X_{s_i} = \iota^{-1}(D(s_i)) \xrightarrow{\sim} D(s_i)$$

for each  $i$ . Since the  $s_i$  generate the unit ideal we set that  $\operatorname{Spec} A$

$$\operatorname{Spec} A = D(s_1) \cup \dots \cup D(s_m).$$

Thus  $\iota$  is an isomorphism.  $\square$

**Lemma 24.5.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme. Assume that

1.  $X$  is quasi-compact,
2. for every quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -ideal  $\mathcal{I}$  we have  $H^1(X, \mathcal{I}) = 0$ .

Then  $X$  is affine.

*Proof.* Let  $x \in X$  be a closed point, let  $U = \operatorname{Spec} A$  be an affine open neighborhood of  $x$ , and let  $\mathfrak{m}$  be the maximal ideal of  $A$  corresponding to  $x$ . We set  $Z = X \setminus U$  and  $Z' = Z \cup \{x\}$ . By Lemma (24.1) there are quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -ideals  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  which correspond to the reduced closed subschemes  $Z$  and  $Z'$  respectively. Consider the short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{I}' \longrightarrow \mathcal{I} \longrightarrow \mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}' \longrightarrow 0.$$

Since  $x$  is a closed point of  $X$  and  $x \notin Z$  we see that  $\mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}'$  is supported at  $x$ . In fact, we have  $\mathcal{I}(U) = A$  and  $\mathcal{I}'(U) = \mathfrak{m}$ , so the restriction of  $\mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}'$  to  $U$  corresponds to the  $A$ -module  $A/\mathfrak{m}$ . Hence we see that  $\Gamma(X, \mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}') = A/\mathfrak{m}$  (Consider the open covering  $X = U \cup (X \setminus \{x\})$  of  $X$ . Then we have  $(\mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}')(U) = A/\mathfrak{m}$  and  $(\mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}')(X \setminus \{x\}) = 0 = (\mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}')(U \cap X \setminus \{x\})$ , so with respect to this covering, the equalizer is given by  $A/\mathfrak{m}$ ). Since by assumption  $H^1(X, \mathcal{I}') = 0$  we see there exists a global section  $s \in \Gamma(X, \mathcal{I})$  which maps to the element  $1 \in A/\mathfrak{m}$  as a section of  $\mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}'$ . Clearly we have  $x \in X_s \subseteq U$ . This implies  $X_s = D(s_A)$  where  $s_A$  is the image of  $s$  in  $A$ . In particular,  $X_s$  is affine.

Consider the union  $W = \bigcup X_s$  over all  $s \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  such that  $X_s$  is affine. Obviously  $W$  is open in  $X$ . By the arguments above every closed point of  $X$  is contained in  $W$ . The closed subset  $X \setminus W$  of  $X$  is also quasi-compact. Hence it has a closed point if it is nonempty. This would contradict the fact that all closed points are in  $W$ . Hence we conclude  $X = W$ .

Choose finitely many  $s_1, \dots, s_m \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  such that  $X = X_{s_1} \cup \dots \cup X_{s_m}$  and such that  $X_{s_i}$  is affine. It suffices to show that  $s_1, \dots, s_m$  generate the unit ideal in  $\mathcal{O}(X)$ . □

## 24.1 Non-Abelian Čech Cohomology

We may also give a more elementary description of  $H^1(X, \mathcal{G})$  in terms of cocycles which is often advantageous for concrete calculations. Let  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_i\}$  be an open covering of  $X$ . A **Čech 1-cocycle** of  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $\mathcal{U}$  is an element

$$g = (g_{ij}) \in \prod_{i,j \in I} \mathcal{G}(U_{ij}),$$

where we set  $U_{ij} := U_i \cap U_j$ , such that for all  $i, j, k$  we have  $g_{ik} = g_{ij}g_{jk}$  in  $\mathcal{G}(U_{ijk})$ . In particular, this implies  $g_{ii} = 1$  and  $g_{ij} = g_{ji}^{-1}$ . Two Čech 1-cocycles  $g$  and  $g'$  on  $\mathcal{U}$  are called **cohomologous** if there exists an

$$h \in (h_i) \in \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{G}(U_i)$$

such that for all  $i, j$  we have  $g'_{ij} = h_i^{-1}g_{ij}h_j$  in  $\mathcal{G}(U_{ij})$ . This is easily seen to be an equivalence relation. The equivalence class are called **cohomology classes**, and the set of all cohomology classes of  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $\mathcal{U}$  is denoted  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{G})$ . This is a pointed set in which the distinguished class is represented by the element  $g = (g_{ij})$  where  $g_{ij} = 1$  for all  $i, j$ . An open covering  $\mathcal{V} = \{V_j\}$  of  $X$  is said to refine the open covering  $\mathcal{U}$  if there is a map  $\tau: J \rightarrow I$  such that  $V_j \subseteq U_{\tau(j)}$  for all  $j \in J$ . Note that if  $g = (g_{ii'})$  is a Čech 1-cocycle of  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $\mathcal{U}$ , then  $\tau^*g = \tilde{g} = (\tilde{g}_{jj'})$ , where  $\tilde{g}_{jj'} = g_{\tau(j), \tau(j')}$ , is a Čech 1-cocycle of  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $\mathcal{V}$ . In particular, it is easy to check that the map  $\tau$  induces a  $H^1(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{G}) \rightarrow H^1(\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{G})$ . In fact the map  $H^1(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{G}) \rightarrow H^1(\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{G})$  does not depend on  $\tau$ , for if we chose another map  $\tau': J \rightarrow I$ , then the induced map in cohomology would be the same. Two coverings  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  are called equivalent if each one refines the other. In this case, we use the canonical isomorphisms induced by any choice of refining maps and identify  $H^1(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{G}) = H^1(\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{G})$ . Finally, we set

$$H^1_{\text{cech}}(X, \mathcal{G}) := \text{colim}_{\mathcal{U}}(H^1(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{G})),$$

where  $\mathcal{U}$  runs through the set of equivalence classes of open coverings.

### 24.1.1 Vector Bundles on $\mathbb{P}^1$

Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field. We wish to study vector bundles on  $\mathbb{P}^1_{\mathbb{k}}$ . To achieve this end, we cover  $\mathbb{P}^1_{\mathbb{k}}$  by two open affine subschemes  $U_0 = \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}[x] = \text{Spec } R_0$  and  $U_1 = \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}[1/x] = \text{Spec } R_1$ , where we set  $R_0 = \mathbb{k}[x]$  and  $R_1 = \mathbb{k}[1/x]$ . Note that

$$U_{01} := U_0 \cap U_1 \simeq \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}[x, 1/x] = \text{Spec } R_{01},$$

where we set  $R_{01} = \mathbb{k}[x, 1/x]$ . Vector bundles over  $U_i$  correspond to finitely generated projective  $R_i$ -modules. Since each  $R_i$  is a principal ideal domain and any projective module over a principal ideal domain is free, we see that vector bundles over  $U_i$  correspond to finite free  $R_i$ -modules. Thus the isomorphism classes of vector bundles over  $\mathbb{P}^1_{\mathbb{k}}$  of a fixed rank  $n$  are in bijection to elements in  $H^1(\mathcal{U}, G)$  where  $\mathcal{U} = (U_0, U_1)$  and  $G = \text{GL}_n(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^1_{\mathbb{k}}})$ . A Čech 1-cocycle of  $G$  over  $\mathcal{U}$  is simply given by a single element

$$g = g_{01} \in G(U_{01}) = \text{GL}_n(R_{01}).$$

Any two such Čech 1-cocycles  $g$  and  $g'$  are cohomologous if and only if there exists  $h_0 \in \text{GL}_n(R_0)$  and  $h_1 \in \text{GL}_n(R_1)$  such that  $g' = h_0gh_1$ . Thus the isomorphism classes of vector bundles of rank  $n$  on  $\mathbb{P}^1_{\mathbb{k}}$  is in bijection with

$$\text{GL}_n(R_0) \backslash \text{GL}_n(R_{01}) / \text{GL}_n(R_1).$$

Elements in this double quotient can be described as follows:

**Lemma 24.6.** Let  $(\mathbb{Z}^n)_+$  be the set of  $\mathbf{d} = (d_i)_i \in \mathbb{Z}^n$  with  $d_1 \geq d_2 \geq \cdots \geq d_n$ . For each  $\mathbf{d} \in (\mathbb{Z}^n)_+$  let  $x^{\mathbf{d}} \in \mathrm{GL}_n(R_{01})$  be the diagonal matrix with entries  $x^{d_1}, \dots, x^{d_n}$ . Then the map

$$\tau: (\mathbb{Z}^n)_+ \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}_n(R_0) \backslash \mathrm{GL}_n(R_{01}) / \mathrm{GL}_n(R_1),$$

given by  $\mathbf{d} \mapsto \mathrm{GL}_n(R_0)x^{\mathbf{d}}\mathrm{GL}_n(R_1)$  is surjective.

**Theorem 24.7.** For every vector bundle  $\mathcal{E}$  of rank  $n$  on  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^1$  there exist uniquely determined integers  $d_1 \geq \cdots \geq d_n$  such that

$$\mathcal{E} \cong \bigoplus_{i=1}^n \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^1}(d_i).$$

**Proposition 24.1.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be a scheme and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -module. Then

$$H^1(X, \mathcal{M}) = \{\text{extensions of } \mathcal{O} \text{ by } \mathcal{M}\} / \cong$$

*Proof.* Given an extension  $\mathcal{E}$  of  $\mathcal{O}$  by  $\mathcal{M}$ , we construct an  $\mathcal{M}$ -torsor  $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{E}} = \mathcal{P}$  by

$$\mathcal{P}(U) = \{e \in \mathcal{E}(U) \mid \pi(e) = 1\},$$

where  $\pi$  is the map  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}$ . We give  $\mathcal{P}$  the structure of an  $\mathcal{M}$ -torsor via the action  $(m, e) \mapsto m + e$  where  $m \in \mathcal{M}(U)$  and  $e \in \mathcal{P}(U)$ . Note that if  $e \in \mathcal{P}(U)$ , then the map  $\mathcal{M}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(U)$  given by  $m \mapsto m + e$  is an isomorphism since  $\mathcal{P}(U) = e + \mathcal{M}(U)$ . To see the stalks are nonempty let  $X = \mathrm{Spec} A$ . Then our exact sequence defining  $\mathcal{E}$  is equivalent to an exact sequence of  $A$ -modules

$$0 \longrightarrow M \longrightarrow E \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0 \quad (44)$$

which splits as  $A$  is a projective  $A$ -module. □

**Proposition 24.2.** Let  $X = (X, \mathcal{O})$  be an affine scheme and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a quasi-coherent  $\mathcal{O}$ -module. Then

$$H^1(X, \mathcal{M}) = \{*\}.$$

## 25 Flat Morphisms and Dimension

**Definition 25.1.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be an  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -module.

1. We say  $\mathcal{G}$  is **flat over  $X$  at  $y \in Y$**  if  $\mathcal{G}_y$  is a flat  $\mathcal{O}_{X, f(y)}$ -module. We say  $\mathcal{G}$  is **flat over  $X$**  if it is flat over  $X$  at  $y$  for all  $y \in Y$ .
2. We say  $f$  is **flat** if  $\mathcal{O}_Y$  is flat over  $X$ .

**Proposition 25.1.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of schemes. Then  $f$  is flat if and only if for each  $y \in Y$  there exists an open affine neighborhood  $\mathrm{Spec} B = V \subseteq Y$  of  $y$  and an open affine  $\mathrm{Spec} A = U \subseteq X$  with  $f(V) \subseteq U$  such that the ring homomorphism  $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$  corresponding to the morphism of affine schemes  $f|_V: V \rightarrow U$  makes  $B$  into a flat  $A$ -algebra.

Assume  $f$  is flat at  $y$ . Then  $\mathcal{O}$

**Example 25.1.** The idea is that flatness is a local property: if  $R$  is a commutative ring and  $M$  is an  $R$ -module, then  $M$  is flat if and only if  $M_{\mathfrak{p}}$  is a flat  $R_{\mathfrak{p}}$ -module for all prime ideals of  $\mathfrak{p}$ .

### 25.1 Hilbert Schemes

**Definition 25.2.** Let  $X$  be an  $S$ -scheme. Define  $\mathrm{Hilb}(X/S)$  to be the set of all closed subschemes  $Z \subseteq X$  such that  $Z \rightarrow S$  is proper, flat, and of finite presentation. The **Hilbert functor**  $\mathrm{Hilb}_{X/S}$  is the contravariant functor from the category of  $S$ -schemes to the category of sets given by sending an  $S$ -scheme  $T$  to  $\mathrm{Hilb}(X \times_S T/T)$ . Given a morphism of  $S$ -schemes  $T' \rightarrow T$ , the fiber product  $- \times_T T'$  induces a map  $\mathrm{Hilb}(X \times_S T/T) \rightarrow \mathrm{Hilb}(X \times_S T'/T')$ , so this really defines a functor.

Grothendieck has proved that the Hilbert functor is representable in a very general setting;

**Theorem 25.1.** Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a morphism of schemes such that  $S$  is noetherian and  $f$  is (quasi-)projective. Then the Hilbert functor  $\mathrm{Hilb}_{X/S}$  is representable; the representing functor is called the **Hilbert scheme**. All of its connected components are (quasi-)projective.

## 26 The Chow Ring

Let  $X$  be a scheme. The **group of cycles** on  $X$ , denoted  $Z(X)$ , is the free abelian group generated by the set of integral subschemes of  $X$ . The group  $Z(X)$  is graded by dimension: we write  $Z_k(X)$  for the group of cycles that are formal linear combinations of subvarieties of dimension  $k$  (these are called  **$k$ -cycles**), so that

$$Z(X) = \bigoplus_k Z_k(X).$$

A cycle  $Z = \sum n_i Y_i$ , where the  $Y_i$  are integral subschemes, is **effective** if the coefficients  $n_i$  are all nonnegative. A **divisor** (sometimes called a **Weil divisor**) is an  $(n-1)$ -cycle on a pure  $n$ -dimensional scheme. It follows from the definition that  $Z(X) = Z(X_{\text{red}})$ ; that is,  $Z(X)$  is insensitive to whatever non-reduced structure  $X$  may have.

To any closed subscheme  $Y \subseteq X$  we associate an effective cycle  $\langle Y \rangle$ : if  $Y \subseteq X$  is a subscheme, and  $Y_1, \dots, Y_s$  are the irreducible components of the reduced scheme  $Y_{\text{red}}$ , then, because our schemes are noetherian, each local ring  $\mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_i}$  has a finite composition series. Writing  $l_i$  for its length, which is well-defined by the Jordan-Hölder theorem, we define the cycle  $\langle Y \rangle$  to be the formal combination  $\sum l_i \langle Y_i \rangle$  (the coefficient  $l_i$  is called the **multiplicity** of the scheme  $Y$  along the irreducible component  $Y_i$ , and written  $\text{mult}_{Y_i}(Y)$ ).

**Example 26.1.** Suppose  $X = \text{Spec } \mathbb{k}[x, y, z]$  where  $\mathbb{k}$  is a field and  $Y = V(x^2y, x^2z)$ . Then  $Y_{\text{red}} = Y_1 \cup Y_2$  where  $Y_1 = V(x)$  and  $Y_2 = V(y, z)$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_1} &= \mathbb{k}[x, y, z]_{\langle x \rangle} / \langle x^2y, x^2z \rangle \\ &= \mathbb{k}(y, z)[x]_{\langle x \rangle} / \langle x^2 \rangle \\ &= K[x]_{\langle x \rangle} / \langle x^2 \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

where we set  $K = \mathbb{k}(y, z)$ . Then  $\ell(\mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_1}) = \dim_K(\mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_1}) = 2$ . A similar computation shows that  $\ell(\mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_2}) = 1$ . Thus we have  $Y = 2Y_1 + Y_2$ .

**Example 26.2.** Suppose  $X = \text{Spec } \mathbb{Z}[x, y, z]$  and  $Y = V(x^2y, x^2z)$ . Then  $Y_{\text{red}} = Y_1 \cup Y_2$  where  $Y_1 = V(x)$  and  $Y_2 = V(y, z)$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_1} &= \mathbb{Z}[x, y, z]_{\langle x \rangle} / \langle x^2y, x^2z \rangle \\ &= \mathbb{Q}(y, z)[x]_{\langle x \rangle} / \langle x^2 \rangle \\ &= K[x]_{\langle x \rangle} / \langle x^2 \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

where we set  $K = \mathbb{Q}(y, z)$ . Then  $\ell(\mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_2}) = \dim_K(\mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_1}) = 2$ . A similar computation shows that  $\ell(\mathcal{O}_{Y, Y_1}) = 1$ . Thus we have  $Y = 2Y_1 + Y_2$ .

**Example 26.3.** Suppose  $X = \text{Spec } R[x, y, z]$  where  $R = \mathbb{k}[u, v, w] / \langle u^2v, u^2w \rangle$  and  $\mathbb{k}$  is a field and let  $Y = V_R(x^2y, x^2z) = V_{\mathbb{k}}(u^2v, u^2w, x^2y, x^2z)$ . Observe that

$$\langle u^2v, u^2w, x^2y, x^2z \rangle = \langle u^2, x^2 \rangle \cap \langle u^2, y, z \rangle \cap \langle v, w, x^2 \rangle \cap \langle v, w, y, z \rangle.$$

Then  $Y_{\text{red}} = Y_1 \cup Y_2 \cup Y_3 \cup Y_4$  where

$$\begin{aligned} Y_1 &= V(u, x) \\ Y_2 &= V(u, y, z) \\ Y_3 &= V(v, w, x) \\ Y_4 &= V(v, w, y, z). \end{aligned}$$

It is straightforward to check that  $Y = 4Y_1 + 2Y_2 + 2Y_3 + Y_4$ .

### 26.1 Rational Equivalence

The **Chow group** of  $X$  is the group of cycles on  $X$  modulo **rational equivalence**. Informally, two cycles  $A_0, A_1 \in Z(X)$  are rationally equivalent if there is a rationally parametrized family of cycles interpolating between them, that is, a cycle on  $\mathbb{P}^1 \times X$  whose restriction to two fibers  $\{p_0\} \times X$  and  $\{p_1\} \times X$  are  $A_0$  and  $A_1$ . Here is the formal definition:

**Definition 26.1.** Let  $\text{Rat}(X) \subseteq Z(X)$  be the subgroup generated by differences of the form

$$\langle \Phi \cap (\{p_0\} \times X) \rangle - \langle \Phi \cap (\{p_1\} \times X) \rangle,$$

where  $p_0, p_1 \in \mathbb{P}^1$  and  $\Phi$  is a subvariety of  $\mathbb{P}^1 \times X$  not contained in any fiber  $\{p\} \times X$ . We say that two cycles are **rationally equivalent** if their difference is in  $\text{Rat}(X)$ , and we say two subschemes are rationally equivalent if their associated cycles are rationally equivalent.



**Example 26.4.** Suppose  $X = \mathbb{P}_x^2 = \text{Proj}(\mathbb{k}[x_0, x_1, x_2])$  and let

$$\Phi = V(t_0x_1^2 - t_1x_0^2 + t_1x_1x_2) \subseteq \mathbb{P}_t^1 \times X.$$

Then on the one hand we have  $\Phi_{(0:1)} = V(-x_0^2 + x_1x_2)$  and on the other hand we have  $\Phi_{(1:0)} = V(x_1^2)$ . Thus  $\Phi$  induces a rational equivalence between  $V(-x_0^2 + x_1x_2)$  and  $V(x_1^2) = 2V(x_1)$  (a hyperbola and a double-line in the  $x_0 \neq 0$  affine chart).

**Example 26.5.** Let  $X = V_{\mathbb{C}}(y^2z - x^3 - xz^2)$ . Let's calculate the divisors  $\text{div}(y/z)$ ,  $\text{div}(x/z)$ , and  $\text{div}((x-z)/z)$ . First we calculate  $\text{div}(y/z)$ . Setting  $y = 0$  in the equation  $y^2z - x^3 - xz^2 = 0$  gives us the equation  $-x(x+iz)(x-iz) = 0$ , which has solutions  $(0 : 0 : 1)$ ,  $(-i : 0 : 1)$ , and  $(i : 0 : 1)$ . Similarly, setting  $z = 0$  in the equation  $y^2z - x^3 - xz^2 = 0$  gives us the equation  $-x^3 = 0$ , which has one solution  $(0 : 1 : 0)$  with multiplicity 3. Thus,

$$\text{div}(y/z) = (0 : 0 : 1) + (-i : 0 : 1) + (i : 0 : 1) - 3(0 : 1 : 0).$$

Next we calculate  $\text{div}(x/z)$ . Setting  $x = 0$  in the equation  $y^2z - x^3 - xz^2 = 0$  gives us the equation  $y^2z = 0$ , which has solutions which has solutions  $(0 : 0 : 1)$  with multiplicity 2 and  $(0 : 1 : 0)$ . Thus,

$$\text{div}(x/z) = 2(0 : 0 : 1) - 2(0 : 1 : 0).$$

Finally we calculate  $\text{div}((x-z)/z)$ . Setting  $x = z$  in the equation  $y^2z - x^3 - xz^2 = 0$  gives us the equation  $z(y - \sqrt{2}z)(y + \sqrt{2}z) = 0$ , which has solutions  $(0 : 1 : 0)$ ,  $(1 : \sqrt{2} : 1)$ , and  $(1 : -\sqrt{2} : 1)$ . Thus,

$$\text{div}((x-z)/z) = (1 : \sqrt{2} : 1) + (1 : -\sqrt{2} : 1) - 2(0 : 1 : 0).$$

Here's an alternative definition of the Chow group. We have a right exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow Z(\mathbb{P}^1 \times X) \longrightarrow Z(X) \longrightarrow A(X) \longrightarrow 0 \quad (45)$$

where the map  $Z(\mathbb{P}^1 \times X) \rightarrow Z(X)$  is defined by sending  $\Phi \in Z(\mathbb{P}^1 \times X)$  to

$$\langle \Phi \cap (\{p_0\} \times X) \rangle - \langle \Phi \cap (\{p_1\} \times X) \rangle$$

if  $\Phi$  is not contained in any fiber  $\{p\} \times X$  and otherwise sending it to 0.

**Definition 26.2.** We say that subvarieties  $A, B$  of a variety  $X$  intersect **transversely** at a point  $p$  if  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $X$  are all smooth at  $p$  and the tangent spaces to  $A$  and  $B$  at  $p$  together span the tangent space to  $X$ ; that is

$$T_pA + T_pB = T_pX,$$

or equivalently

$$\text{codim}(T_pA \cap T_pB) = \text{codim}(T_pA) + \text{codim}(T_pB).$$

We will say that subvarieties  $A, B \subseteq X$  are **generically transverse**, or that they intersect **generically transversely**, if they meet transversely at a general point of each component  $C$  of  $A \cap B$ . The terminology is justified by the fact that the set of points of  $A \cap B$  at which  $A$  and  $B$  are transverse is open.

**Example 26.6.** labelexample

## 26.2 Bezout's Theorem

**Theorem 26.1.** *Let  $A, B \subseteq X$  be two subvarieties of a smooth variety  $X$  such that*

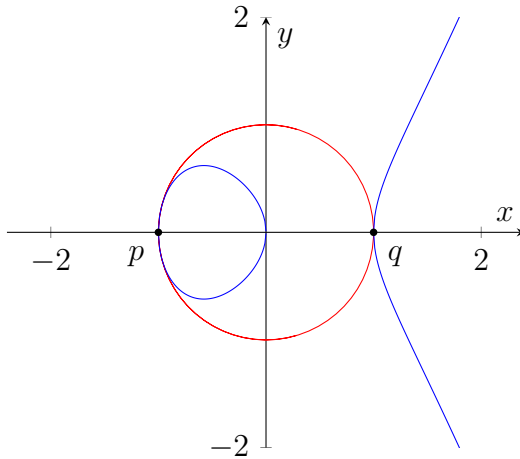
$$\text{codim}(A \cap B) = \text{codim } A + \text{codim } B.$$

*Then to each irreducible component  $C_i$  of  $A \cap B$ , we can associate a positive integer  $m_{C_i}(A, B)$  in such a way that*

$$[A][B] = \sum m_{C_i}(A, B)[C_i].$$

*The integer  $m_{C_i}(A, B)$  is called the **intersection multiplicity** of  $A$  and  $B$  along  $C_i$ .*

**Example 26.7.** Let  $X = V_{\mathbb{k}}(x^2 + y^2 - z^2) = V(f)$  and let  $Y = V_{\mathbb{k}}(y^2z - x^3 + xz^2) = V(g)$  where we view  $X$  and  $Y$  as subvarieties of  $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^2$ . If  $\mathbb{k} = \mathbb{R}$ , then we can see that  $X$  intersects  $Y$  inside the affine open set  $D(z) \simeq \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{k}}^2$  at the points  $p = (-1, 0)$  and  $q = (1, 0)$  as pictured below:



Let  $A = \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle f \rangle$  be the coordinate ring for  $X$  and let  $B = \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle g \rangle$  be the coordinate ring for  $Y$ . Then the coordinate ring of  $X \cap Y$  is given by  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B = \mathbb{k}[x, y]/\langle f, g \rangle$ . The point  $p = (-1, 0)$  corresponds to the maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{m} = \langle x + 1, y \rangle$  of  $\mathbb{k}[x, y]$ , thus the local ring of  $A$  at  $p$  is given by

$$A_p = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{m}} / \langle y^2 - u(x + 1) \rangle_{\mathfrak{m}}$$

where  $u = 1 - x$  (this is a unit in  $A_p$ ). Similarly, the local ring of  $B$  at  $p$  is given by

$$B_p = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{m}} / \langle y^2 + ux(x + 1) \rangle_{\mathfrak{m}}$$

Then a calculation shows that

$$A_p \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B_p = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{m}} / \langle y^2 - u(x + 1), y^2 + ux(x + 1) \rangle_{\mathfrak{m}} = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{m}} / \langle y^2, (x + 1)^2 \rangle.$$

Clearly we have  $\dim_{\mathbb{k}}(A_p \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B_p) = 4$ . Thus  $X$  and  $Y$  intersect at the point  $p$  with multiplicity 4. Next, the point  $q = (1, 0)$  corresponds to the maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{n} = \langle x - 1, y \rangle$  of  $\mathbb{k}[x, y]$ , thus the local ring of  $A$  at  $q$  is given by

$$A_q = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{n}} / \langle y^2 - \tilde{u}(1 - x) \rangle_{\mathfrak{n}}$$

where  $\tilde{u} = 1 + x$  (this is a unit in  $A_q$ ). Similarly, the local ring of  $B$  at  $q$  is given by

$$B_q = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{n}} / \langle y^2 + \tilde{u}x(1 - x) \rangle_{\mathfrak{n}}$$

Then a calculation shows that

$$A_q \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B_q = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{n}} / \langle y^2 - \tilde{u}(1 - x), y^2 + \tilde{u}x(1 - x) \rangle_{\mathfrak{n}} = \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\mathfrak{n}} / \langle y^2, x - 1 \rangle.$$

Clearly we have  $\dim_{\mathbb{k}}(A_q \otimes_{\mathbb{k}} B_q) = 2$ . Thus  $X$  and  $Y$  intersect at the point  $q$  with multiplicity 4.

**Example 26.8.** Let  $X, L_1, L_2 \subseteq \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^4$  be the 2-planes  $X = V(x + z, y + w)$ ,  $L_1 = V(x, y)$ , and  $L_2 = V(z, w)$ . Furthermore, set  $Y = L_1 \cup L_2 = V(xz, xw, yz, yw)$  and let  $p = [0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 1] \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{k}}^4$  be the point which corresponds to  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle x, y, z, w \rangle \subset \mathbb{k}[x, y, z, w, t]$ . Then  $X$  meets  $Y$  only at the point  $p$ . Let  $S = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^4, p}$ , let  $A = \mathcal{O}_{X, p}$ , and let  $B = \mathcal{O}_{Y, p}$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} A \otimes_S B &= \mathbb{k}[x, y, z, w]_{\langle x, y, z, w \rangle} / \langle x + z, y + w, z^2, zw, w^2 \rangle \\ &\cong \mathbb{k}[x, y]_{\langle x, y \rangle} / \langle x^2, xy, y^2 \rangle \\ &= \mathbb{k} \oplus \mathbb{k}\bar{x} \oplus \mathbb{k}\bar{y}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $\ell(A \otimes_S B) = 3$ . However Bezout's Theorem requires the multiplicity to be 2 as one can see by moving  $X$  to a plane  $X'$  which is transverse to  $Y$  (for instance let  $X' = V(x + z + t, y + w + t)$ ). Then  $X'$  meets  $L_1$  at the (necessarily) reduced point  $p_1 = [0 : 0 : -1 : -1 : 1]$  and  $X'$  meets  $L_2$  at the (necessarily) reduced point  $p_2 = [-1 : -1 : 0 : 0 : 1]$ .

## 27 Weil Conjectures

### 27.1 Statement of the Weil conjectures

Let  $X_0$  be a nonsingular projective variety over  $\mathbb{F}_q$  of dimension  $d$ . We let  $X$  be the variety obtained from  $X_0$  by extension of scalars of  $\mathbb{F}_q$  to  $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_q$  and  $X_0(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$  be the set of points of  $X_0$  with coordinates in  $\mathbb{F}_{q^n}$ . We define the zeta function of  $X_0$  to be

$$Z(X_0, t) = \exp \left( \sum_{n \geq 1} \#X_0(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \frac{t^n}{n} \right).$$

Note that the logarithmic derivative of  $Z(X_0, t)$  is:

$$\partial_t \log Z(X_0, t) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \#X_0(\mathbb{F}_{q^{n+1}}) t^n.$$

Thus the logarithmic derivative of the zeta function is the usual generating function for  $\#X_0(\mathbb{F}_{q^{n+1}})$ . The slogan to keep in mind is that the locations of zeros/poles of a meromorphic function control the growth rate of the coefficients of the Taylor series of its log-derivative. Thus the location of the zeros/poles of the zeta function control the growth rate of the coefficients of its logarithmic derivative, and the coefficients of its logarithmic derivative are just the number of rational points (we can make this slogan precise for rational functions). Let us now state the Weil conjectures:

1. **Rationality:**  $Z(X_0, t)$  is a rational function of  $t$ . Moreover, we have

$$Z(X_0, t) = \frac{P_1(X_0, t)P_3(X_0, t) \cdots P_{2d-1}(X_0, t)}{P_0(X_0, t)P_2(X_0, t) \cdots P_{2d}(X_0, t)}$$

where  $P_0(X_0, t) = 1 - t$ ,  $P_{2d}(X_0, t) = 1 - q^d t$ , and each  $P_i(X_0, t)$  is an integral polynomial.

2. **Functional equation:**  $Z(X_0, t)$  satisfies the functional equation

$$Z(X_0, q^{-d}t^{-1}) = \pm q^{d\chi/2} t^\chi Z(X_0, t),$$

where  $\chi = \sum_i (-1)^i \beta_i$  for  $\beta_i = \deg P_i(X_0, t)$ . Here  $\chi$  is called the Euler characteristic.

3. **Betti numbers:** If  $X$  lifts to a variety  $X_1$  in characteristic 0, then  $\beta_i$  are the (real) Betti numbers of  $X_1$  considered as a variety over  $\mathbb{C}$ .
4. **Riemann hypothesis:** For  $1 \leq i \leq 2d - 1$ , we have  $P_i(X_0, t) = \prod_{j=1}^{\beta_i} (1 - \alpha_{i,j}t)$ , where  $\alpha_{i,j}$  are algebraic integers of absolute value  $q^{i/2}$ .

Observe that the conjectures are partially suggested by topological statements. In particular, (1) is suggested by **Lefschetz fixed-point formula** and (2) is suggested by **Poincare duality**. Note that  $\chi$  in (2) is the **Euler characteristic** of  $X$  and (3) suggests the existence of a cohomological theory such that  $\beta_i$  are the Betti numbers of  $X$  in that theory.

**Proposition 27.1.** *If the Weil Conjectures holds, then*

$$\#X_0(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) = \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_0} \alpha_{0,j}^n + \cdots + \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d}} \alpha_{2d,j}^n - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_1} \alpha_{1,j}^n - \cdots - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d-1}} \alpha_{2d-1,j}^n$$

*Proof.* This follows from rationality. Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 1} \#X_0(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) t^n &= t \frac{d}{dt} \log \left( \frac{P_1(t) \cdots P_{2d-1}(t)}{P_0(t) \cdots P_{2d}(t)} \right) \\ &= t \frac{d}{dt} \log \left( \frac{\prod_{j=1}^{\beta_1} (1 - \alpha_{1,j}t) \cdots \prod_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d-1}} (1 - \alpha_{2d-1,j}t)}{\prod_{j=1}^{\beta_0} (1 - \alpha_{0,j}t) \cdots \prod_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d}} (1 - \alpha_{2d,j}t)} \right) \\ &= t \frac{d}{dt} \left( \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_1} \log(1 - \alpha_{1,j}t) + \cdots + \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d-1}} \log(1 - \alpha_{2d-1,j}t) - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_0} \log(1 - \alpha_{0,j}t) - \cdots - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d}} \log(1 - \alpha_{2d,j}t) \right) \\ &= t \left( \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_1} \frac{-\alpha_{1,j}}{1 - \alpha_{1,j}t} + \cdots + \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d-1}} \frac{-\alpha_{2d-1,j}}{1 - \alpha_{2d-1,j}t} - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_0} \frac{-\alpha_{0,j}}{1 - \alpha_{0,j}t} - \cdots - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d}} \frac{-\alpha_{2d,j}}{1 - \alpha_{2d,j}t} \right) \\ &= t \left( - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_1} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{1,j}^n t^n - \cdots - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d-1}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{2d-1,j}^n t^n + \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_0} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{0,j}^n t^n + \cdots + - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{2d,j}^n t^n \right) \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \left( - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_1} \alpha_{1,j}^n - \cdots - \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d-1}} \alpha_{2d-1,j}^n + \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_0} \alpha_{0,j}^n + \cdots + \sum_{j=1}^{\beta_{2d}} \alpha_{2d,j}^n \right) t^n. \end{aligned}$$

□

*Remark 53.* (1) was proved by Dwork using  $p$ -adic methods however this will also follow from  $H^i$  being finite-dimensional. (2) was proved by Grothendieck (will follow from Poincare duality). Finally (3) and (4) were proved by Deligne.

Let  $|X|$  be the set of all closed points of  $X$ . Then notice that

$$\begin{aligned}
Z_X(t) &= \exp \left( \sum_{n \geq 1} \#X(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \frac{t^n}{n} \right) \\
&= \prod_{x \in |X|} \exp \left( t^{\deg x} + \frac{t^{2 \deg x}}{2} + \dots \right) \\
&= \prod_{x \in |X|} \exp(-\log(1 - t^{\deg x})) \\
&= \prod_{x \in |X|} \frac{1}{1 - t^{\deg x}} \\
&= \prod_{x \in |X|} (1 + t^{\deg x} + t^{2 \deg x} + \dots) \\
&= \sum_{n \geq 0} (\# \text{ of Galois stable subsets of } X(\overline{\mathbb{F}_q}) \text{ of size } n) t^n. \\
&= \sum_{n \geq 0} \#(\text{Sym}^n(X)(\mathbb{F}_q)) t^n.
\end{aligned}$$

Here we require there are only finitely many closed points of  $X$  of degree  $n$  in order for the product to converge.

**Theorem 27.1.** *Suppose  $X$  is a smooth proper curve of  $\mathbb{F}_q$ . Then  $Z_X(t)$  is rational.*

*Proof.* We have a map  $\text{Sym}^n X \rightarrow \text{Pic}^n X$  which sends a divisor  $D$  to the line bundle  $\mathcal{O}(D)$ . The fiber of  $\mathcal{O}(D)$  is  $\mathbb{P}\Gamma(X, \mathcal{O}(D))$ . The expected dimension of this projective space is

$$\dim \mathbb{P}\Gamma(X, \mathcal{O}(D)) = \deg D - g + \dim H^1(X, \mathcal{O}(D)).$$

If  $\deg D \geq 2g - 2$ , then  $H^1(X, \mathcal{O}(D)) = 0$  since  $H^1(X, \mathcal{O}(D)) = H^0(X, \mathcal{O}(K - D))^\vee = 0$  as  $K - D$  has negative degree. So we've just shown that the fibers of  $\text{Sym}^n X \rightarrow \text{Pic}^n X$  are  $\simeq \mathbb{P}^{n-g}$  if  $n > 2g - 2$ . Now without loss of generality, assume that  $X(\mathbb{F}_q) \neq \emptyset$ . Then  $\text{Pic}^n(X) \simeq \text{Pic}^{n+1}(X)$  for all  $n$ , thus

$$\#\text{Sym}^n(X)(\mathbb{F}_q) = \#\mathbb{P}^{n-g}(\mathbb{F}_q) = \#\text{Pic}^0(X)(\mathbb{F}_q)$$

for all  $n > 2g - 2$ . Thus

$$Z_X(t) = \text{polynomial} + \sum_{n > 2g-2} t^n \cdot \#\text{Pic}^0(X)(\mathbb{F}_q)(1 + q + q^2 + \dots + q^{n-g}).$$

One can show this implies  $Z_X(t)$  is rational. □

**Theorem 27.2.** *Suppose  $X$  is a smooth proper curve of  $\mathbb{F}_q$ . Then*

$$Z_X(q^{-1}/t) = \pm q^{(2-2g)/2} t^{2-2g} Z_X(t).$$

*Proof.* This will follow from Serre duality. □

**Theorem 27.3.** (Serre) *Let  $X$  be a smooth projective variety over  $\mathbb{C}$ . Let  $[H] \in H^2(X, \mathbb{Z})$  be the cohomology class of a hyperplane section (the intersection of  $X$  with a hyperplane in projective space) and let  $F: X \rightarrow X$  be an endomorphism such that  $F^*[H] = q[H]$  where  $q \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$ . Then the eigenvalues of  $F^*$  on  $H^i(X, \mathbb{C})$  all have absolute value  $= q^{i/2}$ .*

Recall there is a cup product map  $L: H(X, \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow H(X, \mathbb{C})$  which is graded of degree 2 given by  $L(\alpha) = \alpha \cup [H]$ . The hard Lefschetz theorem states that there is a canonical isomorphism (once  $L$  is fixed):

$$H(X, \mathbb{C}) \simeq \text{im } L \oplus H_{\text{prim}},$$

where  $H_{\text{prim}}^k$  decomposes further as

$$H_{\text{prim}}^k = \bigoplus_{p+q=k} H_{\text{prim}}^{p,q}.$$

The Hodge index theorem states that if  $\alpha, \beta \in H^k(X)_{\text{prim}}$  then

$$\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = i^k \int_X \alpha \wedge \bar{\beta} \wedge [H]^{n-k}$$

is definite on  $H_{\text{prim}}^{p,q}$  (here  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ ). The idea is that  $\text{im } L$  comes from lower degree cohomology (so maybe we can control it inductively) and  $H_{\text{prim}}^k$  breaks up into two pieces which has a canonical bilinear form on them which is definite.

*Proof.* (proof of Serre's analogue of RH) We want eigenvalues of  $F^*$  to have absolute value  $q^{k/2}$ . It suffices to do this for  $H_{\text{prim}}^k$ . Indeed, if  $\alpha$  is an eigenvector in  $H^{k-2}(X, \mathbb{C})$ , then by induction on  $k$  we can assume the eigenvalue  $\lambda$  has absolute value  $q^{(k-2)/2}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} F^*(\alpha \cup [H]) &= F^*\alpha \cup F^*[H] \\ &= \lambda\alpha \cup q[H] \\ &= q\lambda(\alpha \cup [H]) \end{aligned}$$

where  $|q\lambda| = q^{k/2}$ . Now let's do it for the primitive part (this includes the base case for the induction step). Let  $\alpha \in H_{\text{prim}}^{p,q}$  where  $p+q=k$  be an  $F^*$ -eigenvector. Then

$$\begin{aligned} |\lambda|^2 \langle \alpha, \alpha \rangle &= \langle F^*\alpha, F^*\alpha \rangle \\ &= i^k \int_X F^*\alpha \wedge F^*\bar{\alpha} \wedge [H]^{n-k} \\ &= \frac{i^k}{q^{n-k}} \int_X F^*(\alpha \wedge \bar{\alpha} \wedge [H]^{n-k}) \\ &= \frac{i^k q^n}{q^{n-k}} \int_X \alpha \wedge \bar{\alpha} \wedge [H]^{n-k} \\ &= q^k \langle \alpha, \alpha \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

By Hodge index theorem,  $\langle \alpha, \alpha \rangle \neq 0$ , thus  $|\lambda| = q^{k/2}$ . □

The slogan here is that structures on cohomology are used to prove the RH.

## 28 Twenty-seven lines

Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field and let  $\bar{\mathbb{k}}$  be an algebraic closure of  $\mathbb{k}$ . Our goal is to prove the following theorem:

**Theorem 28.1.** *Every smooth cubic surface in  $\mathbb{P}_{\bar{\mathbb{k}}}^3$  has exactly 27 lines.*

## 29 Grassmannian

Let  $\mathbb{k}$  be a field, let  $V$  be a  $\mathbb{k}$ -vector space, and let  $k \geq 0$  be an integer. The **Grassmannian**  $G = G(k, V)$  is the set of all  $\mathbb{k}$ -subspaces of  $V$  of dimension  $k$  through the origin in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Such a  $k$ -plane is a linear subspace of dimension  $k$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and has a basis consisting of  $k$  linearly independent vectors  $v_1, \dots, v_k$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . It is therefore completely specified by an  $n \times k$  matrix  $A = [a_1 \cdots a_k]$  of rank  $k$ , where the **rank** of a matrix  $A$ , denoted by  $\text{rk}A$ , is defined to be the number of linearly independent columns of  $A$ . This matrix is called a **matrix representative** of the  $k$ -plane.

Two bases  $a_1, \dots, a_k$  and  $b_1, \dots, b_k$  determine the same  $k$ -plane if there is a change-of-basis matrix  $g = [g_{ij}] \in \text{GL}(k, \mathbb{R})$  such that

$$b_j = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i g_{ij}$$

for all  $1 \leq k \leq n$ . In matrix notation, this says  $B = Ag$ . Let  $F(k, n)$  be the set of all  $n \times k$  matrices of rank  $k$ , topologized as a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^{n \times k}$ , and  $\sim$  the equivalence relation

$$A \sim B \text{ if and only if there is a matrix } g \in \text{GL}(k, \mathbb{R}) \text{ such that } B = Ag.$$

There is a bijection between  $G(k, n)$  and the quotient space  $F(k, n)/\sim$ . We give the Grassmannian  $G(k, n)$  the quotient topology on  $F(k, n)/\sim$ .

A **real Grassmann manifold**  $G(n, k)$  is defined as the space of all  $k$ -dimensional subspaces of the space  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The topology in  $G(n, k)$  may be described as induced by the embedding  $G(n, k) \rightarrow \text{End}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  which assigns to a  $P \in G(n, k)$ , the orthogonal projection  $\mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow P$  combined with the inclusion map  $P \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ .

In  $G(4, 2)$ , we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} c_{11} & c_{12} \\ c_{21} & c_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} c_{11}a_{11} + c_{12}a_{21} & c_{11}a_{12} + c_{12}a_{22} & c_{11}a_{13} + c_{12}a_{23} & c_{11}a_{14} + c_{12}a_{24} \\ c_{21}a_{11} + c_{22}a_{21} & c_{21}a_{12} + c_{22}a_{22} & c_{21}a_{13} + c_{22}a_{23} & c_{21}a_{14} + c_{22}a_{24} \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $c_{11}c_{22} - c_{21}c_{12} \neq 0$ .

### 29.0.1 Grassmanians: Algebraic Theory

Let  $F$  be a field and let  $V$  be a vector space over  $F$  of dimension  $n + 1$  where  $n \geq 1$ . We let  $\mathbb{G}(V)$  denote the set of all subspaces of  $V$ . Also, for each  $0 \leq d \leq n + 1$ , we let  $\mathbb{G}_d(V)$  denote the set of codimension- $d$  subspaces of  $V$ . Thus we have a decomposition

$$\mathbb{G}(V) = \bigcup_{d=0}^{n+1} \mathbb{G}_d(V)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{G}_0(V) &= V \\ \mathbb{G}_1(V) &= \{\text{hyperplanes in } V\} \\ &\vdots \\ \mathbb{G}_n(V) &= \{\text{lines that pass through the origin in } V\} \\ \mathbb{G}_{n+1}(V) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

When  $V = F^{n+1}$ , then this set is called the **Grassmanian of codimension- $d$  subspaces in  $(n + 1)$ -space** (over  $F$ ) and is denoted  $\mathbb{G}(d, n)(F)$  (or more simply by  $\mathbb{G}(d, n)$  if  $F$  is understood. For  $d = 1$  it is called the **projective space** and is denoted  $\mathbb{P}(V)$ . By the dual relationship between subspaces of  $V$  and of  $V^\vee$  (whereby a subspace  $W \subseteq V$  “corresponds” to the subspace  $(V/W)^\vee$  in  $V^\vee$ ),  $\mathbb{G}_d(V)$  can also be viewed as  $\mathbb{G}_{n+1-d}(V^\vee)$ .

Fix an ordered basis  $\mathbf{e} = e_0, \dots, e_n$  of  $V$ .

**Lemma 29.1.** *Let  $I = \{i_1, \dots, i_d\}$  be a set of  $d$  distinct indices where  $0 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_d \leq n$ . Let  $U_I \subseteq \mathbb{G}_d(V)$  denote the subset of codimension- $d$  linear subspaces  $W \subseteq V$  for which the  $e_i$ ’s with  $i \in I$  projective to a basis of the  $d$ -dimensional  $V/W$ . The  $U_I$ ’s cover  $\mathbb{G}_d(V)$  as a set.*

**Proposition 29.1.** *We have a bijection*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{G}_{n+1-d}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1}) & \longleftrightarrow & \{A \in M_{n+1,d}(\mathbb{R}) \mid A \text{ has full rank}\} / \sim \\ W & \rightarrow & \\ \text{im } A & \leftarrow & A \end{array}$$

where the equivalence relation is given by

$$A \sim B \text{ if and only if } AC = B \text{ for some } C \in \text{GL}_d(\mathbb{R}).$$

**Example 29.1.** Let us consider the case where  $V = \mathbb{R}^3$ . We want to describe the codimension-1 subspaces of  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . In other words, we want to describe the subspaces of  $\mathbb{R}^3$  which have dimension 2. A subspace of dimension  $m$  can be described using a

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

We w

### 29.0.2 Grassmanians: Topological Theory

**Theorem 29.2.** *Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$*

## 30 Linear Series

**Definition 30.1.** A **linear series**  $(\mathcal{L}, V, \alpha)$  on a variety  $X$  over  $\mathbb{k}$  consists of a line bundle  $\mathcal{L}$  on  $X$ , a finite dimensional  $\mathbb{k}$ -vector space

## Part III

# Differential Geometry

## 31 Euclidean Spaces

The Euclidean space  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is the prototype of all manifolds. Not only is it the simplest, but locally every manifold looks like  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . A good understanding of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is essential in generalizing differential and integral calculus to a manifold.

**Definition 31.1.** Let  $k$  be a nonnegative integer and  $U$  be an open subset in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . A real-valued function  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is said to be  $C^k$  at  $p \in U$  if its partial derivatives

$$\partial_{x_{i_1}} \partial_{x_{i_2}} \cdots \partial_{x_{i_j}} f$$

of all orders  $j \leq k$  exist and are continuous at  $p$ . The function  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $p$  if it is  $C^k$  at  $p$  for all  $k \geq 0$ . A vector-valued function  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is said to be  $C^k$  at  $p$  if all of its component functions  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  are  $C^k$  at  $p$ . We say that  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^k$  on  $U$  if it is  $C^k$  at every point in  $U$ . A similar definition holds for a  $C^\infty$  function on an open set  $U$ . We treat the terms “ $C^\infty$ ” and “smooth” as synonymous.

**Example 31.1.**

1. A  $C^0$  function on  $U$  is a continuous function on  $U$ .
2. The polynomial, sine, cosine, and exponential functions on the real line are all  $C^\infty$ .
3. Let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be  $f(x) = x^{1/3}$ . Then

$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{3}x^{-2/3} & \text{for } x \neq 0 \\ \text{undefined} & \text{for } x = 0 \end{cases}$$

Thus the function  $f$  is  $C^0$  but not  $C^1$  at  $x = 0$ . On the other hand,  $f$  is  $C^1$  on the open subset  $\{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x \neq 0\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ . Now let  $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be defined by

$$\int_0^x f(t)dt = \int_0^x t^{1/3}dt = \frac{3}{4}x^{4/3}.$$

Then  $g'(x) = f(x) = x^{1/3}$ , so  $g(x)$  is  $C^1$  but not  $C^2$  at  $x = 0$ . In the same way one can construct a function that is  $C^k$  but not  $C^{k+1}$  at a given point.

4. Let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given by  $f(x) = x^3$ . Then  $f$  is smooth and even bijective with inverse  $f^{-1}$  given by  $f^{-1}(x) = x^{1/3}$ , but  $f^{-1}$  is not smooth, as shown above.
5. Continuity of a function can often be seen by inspection, but the smoothness of a function always requires a formula. The graph of  $y = x^{5/3}$  looks perfectly smooth, but it is in fact not smooth at  $x = 0$ , since its second derivative  $y'' = (10/9)x^{-1/3}$  is not defined there.
6. Consider the norm function from  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to  $\mathbb{R}$ , given by sending  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$  to  $\|x\| = \sqrt{x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2} \in \mathbb{R}$ . We will do this in detail. First we claim that  $\partial_{x_n}^k(\|x\|)$  has the form  $f(x)/\|x\|^{2k-1}$ , where  $f(x)$  is a polynomial and  $k \geq 1$ . We prove this by induction on  $k$ . The base case is trivial:

$$\partial_{x_n}(\|x\|) = \frac{x_n}{\|x\|}$$

Now suppose that  $\partial_{x_n}^k(\|x\|)$  has the form  $f(x)/\|x\|^{2k-1}$  where  $f(x)$  is a polynomial. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_{x_n}^{k+1}(\|x\|) &= \partial_{x_n} \left( \frac{f(x)}{\|x\|^{2k-1}} \right) \\ &= \frac{(\partial_{x_n} f)(x)}{\|x\|^{2k-1}} + \frac{(1-2n)x_n f(x)}{\|x\|^{2k+1}} \\ &= \frac{(\partial_{x_1} f)(x)(x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2) + (1-2n)x_n f(x)}{\|x\|^{2n+1}}. \end{aligned}$$

This establishes our claim. Now given that  $\partial_{x_n}^k(\|x\|)$  has the form  $f(x)/\|x\|^{2k-1}$ , where  $f(x)$  is a polynomial, it is clear that  $\partial_{x_1}^{k_1} \cdots \partial_{x_n}^{k_n}(\|x\|)$  has the form  $g(x)/\|x\|^{2(k_1 + \cdots + k_n) - 1}$ , where  $g(x)$  is a polynomial (just use the same induction proof). Now since  $\|x\| = 0$  if and only if  $x = \mathbf{0}$ , we see that the norm function is smooth in  $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}$ .

**Proposition 31.1.** Let  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be smooth. Then  $g \circ f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is smooth.

*Proof.* We will only sketch the proof here. By the chain rule, we have

$$\partial_{x_n}(g \circ f) = (g' \circ f) \cdot \partial_{x_n} f$$

By the product rule we have

$$\partial_{x_n}^2(g \circ f) = (g'' \circ f) \cdot (\partial_{x_n} f)^2 + (g' \circ f) \cdot \partial_{x_n}^2 f$$

Similarly, we have

$$\partial_{x_n}^3(g \circ f) = (g''' \circ f)(\partial_{x_n} f)^3 + 3(g'' \circ f)(\partial_{x_n} f)(\partial_{x_n}^2 f) + (g' \circ f)\partial_{x_n}^3 f.$$

More generally, we will have a pattern which involves stirling numbers. □

**Definition 31.2.** Let  $p = (p_1, \dots, p_n)$  be a point in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . A **neighborhood** of  $p$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is an open set containing  $p$ . The function  $f$  is **real-analytic** at  $p$  if in some neighborhood of  $p$  it is equal to its Taylor series at  $p$ :

$$f(x) = f(p) + \sum_i \partial_{x_i} f(p)(x_i - p_i) + \frac{1}{2!} \sum_{i,j} \partial_{x_i} \partial_{x_j} f(p)(x_i - p_i)(x_j - p_j) + \dots + \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_k} \partial_{x_{i_1}} \dots \partial_{x_{i_k}} f(p)(x_{i_1} - p_{i_1}) \dots (x_{i_k} - p_{i_k}) + \dots$$

A real-analytic function is necessarily  $C^\infty$ , because as one learns in real analysis, a convergent power series can be differentiated term by term in its region of convergence. For example, if

$$f(x) = \sin x = x - \frac{1}{3!}x^3 + \frac{1}{5!}x^5 - \dots$$

then term-by-term differentiation gives

$$f'(x) = \cos x = 1 - \frac{1}{2!}x^2 - \frac{1}{4!}x^4 - \dots$$

The following example shows that a  $C^\infty$  function need not be real-analytic. The idea is to construct a  $C^\infty$  function  $f(x)$  on  $\mathbb{R}$  whose graph, though not horizontal, is “very flat” near 0 in the sense that all of its derivatives vanish at 0.

**Example 31.2.** (A  $C^\infty$  function very flat at 0). Define  $f(x)$  on  $\mathbb{R}$  by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{-1/x} & \text{for } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } x \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

Clearly  $\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(0) = 0$ . Also,

$$\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(e^{-1/x}) = e^{-1/x} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{n+i} \frac{L(n, i)}{x^{n+i}} \right)$$

Where  $L(n, i)$  are the Lah numbers. Both  $e^{-1/x}$  and  $\sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{n+i} \frac{L(n, i)}{x^{n+i}}$  are well defined for  $x > 0$  and  $\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(e^{-1/x}) \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$  (since  $e^{-1/x}$  approaches 0 much faster than  $\sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{n+i} \frac{L(n, i)}{x^{n+i}}$  approaches  $\infty$ ), so this function is clearly  $C^\infty$  on  $\mathbb{R}$ . On the other hand, the Taylor series of this function at the origin is identically zero in any neighborhood of the origin since  $\frac{d^n f}{dx^n}(0) = 0$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . Therefore  $f(x)$  cannot be equal to its Taylor series and thus  $f(x)$  is not real-analytic at 0.

### 31.1 Taylor’s Theorem with Remainder

Although a  $C^\infty$  function need not be equal to its Taylor series, there is a Taylor’s theorem with remainder for  $C^\infty$  functions that is often good enough for our purposes. We say that a subset  $S$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is **star-shaped** with respect to a point  $p$  in  $S$  if for every  $x$  in  $S$ , the line segment from  $p$  to  $x$  lies in  $S$ . The line segment from  $p$  to  $x$  is parametrized by  $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  where  $\gamma(t) = (1-t)p + tx$ .  $S$  is star-shaped with respect to  $p$  if for every  $x$  in  $S$ ,  $(1-t)p + tx$  is in  $S$  for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

**Lemma 31.1.** (Taylor’s theorem with remainder). Let  $f$  be a  $C^\infty$  function on an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  star-shaped with respect to a point  $p = (p_1, \dots, p_n)$  in  $U$ . Then there are functions  $g_1(x), \dots, g_n(x) \in C^\infty(U)$  such that

$$f(x) = f(p) + \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - p_i) g_i(x) \quad g_i(p) = \partial_{x_i} f(p)$$

*Remark 54.* The idea behind this proof is to differentiate  $f(p + t(x - p))$  and then integrate it.

*Proof.* Since  $U$  is star-shaped with respect to  $p$ , for any  $x \in U$  the line segment  $p + t(x - p)$ ,  $0 \leq t \leq 1$  lies in  $U$ . So  $f(p + t(x - p))$  is defined for  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ . By the chain rule

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{df}{dt}(p + t(x - p)) &= \frac{df}{dt}(p_1 + t(x_1 - p_1), \dots, p_n + t(x_n - p_n)) \\ &= (\partial_{x_1} f)(p + t(x - p)) \partial_t(p_1 + t(x_1 - p_1)) + \dots + (\partial_{x_n} f)(p + t(x - p)) \partial_t(p_n + t(x_n - p_n)) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - p_i) \partial_{x_i} f(p + t(x - p)). \end{aligned}$$

If we integrate both sides with respect to  $t$  from 0 to 1, we get

$$f(p + t(x - p))|_0^1 = \sum (x_i - p_i) \int_0^1 \partial_{x_i} f(p + t(x - p)) dt \quad (46)$$

Now let  $g_i(x) = \int_0^1 \partial_{x_i} f(p + t(x - p)) dt$ . □



**Example 31.3.** We want to apply this proof to the function  $f(x)$  on  $\mathbb{R}$  given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{-1/x} & \text{for } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } x \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

Let  $p = 0$  and let  $g(x) = \int_0^1 \frac{df}{dx}(p + t(x - p))dt$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= \int_0^1 \frac{df}{dx}(tx)dt \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{-e^{-1/tx}}{tx^2}dt \\ &= \frac{e^{-1/tx}}{x} \Big|_0^1 \\ &= \frac{e^{-1/x}}{x}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$f(x) = f(0) + x \left( \frac{e^{-1/x}}{x} \right).$$

## 31.2 Tangent Vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ as Derivations

In elementary calculus we normally represent a vector at a point  $p$  in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  algebraically as a column of numbers

$$v = \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ v_3 \end{pmatrix},$$

or geometrically as an arrow emanating from  $p$ . A vector at  $p$  is tangent to a surface in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  if it lies in the tangent plane at  $p$ . Such a definition of a tangent vector to a surface presupposes that the surface is embedded in a Euclidean space, and so would not apply to the projective plane, for example, which does not sit inside an  $\mathbb{R}^n$  in any natural way.

### 31.2.1 The Directional Derivative

Let  $p = (p_1, \dots, p_n)$  be a point with direction  $v = (v_1, \dots, v_n)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The line through the point  $p$  in the direction  $v$  can be parametrized by  $\ell := (\ell_1, \dots, \ell_n) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ , where

$$\ell(t) := p + tv = (p_1 + tv_1, \dots, p_i + tv_i, \dots, p_n + tv_n) =: (\ell_1(t), \dots, \ell_i(t), \dots, \ell_n(t)).$$

Now let  $f$  be a  $C^\infty$  in a neighborhood of  $p$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The **directional derivative** of  $f$  in the direction of  $v$  at  $p$  is defined to be

$$\begin{aligned} D_v f &:= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \left( \frac{f(\ell(t)) - f(p)}{t} \right) \\ &= \partial_t f(\ell(t))|_{t=0} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \partial_{x_i} f(\ell(0)) \cdot \partial_t \ell_i(0) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n v_i \partial_{x_i} f(p) \end{aligned}$$

In the notation  $D_v f$ , it is understood that the partial derivatives are to be evaluated at  $p$ , since  $v$  is a vector at  $p$ . So  $D_v f$  is a number, not a function. We write

$$D_v = \sum v_i \partial_{x_i} |_p$$

for the map that sends a function  $f$  to the number  $D_v f$ . To simplify the notation we often omit the subscript  $p$  if it is clear from the context.

### 31.2.2 Germs of Functions

Consider the set of all pairs  $(f, U)$ , where  $U$  is a neighborhood of  $p$  and  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a  $C^\infty$  function. We introduce a relation  $\sim$  and say that  $(f, U) \sim (g, V)$  if there is an open set  $W \subset U \cap V$  containing  $p$  such that  $f = g$  when restricted to  $W$ . It is easy to check that this is an equivalence relation by showing it is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive. The equivalence class of  $(f, U)$  is called the **germ** of  $f$  at  $p$ . We write  $C_p^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$  for the set of all germs of  $C^\infty$  functions on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  at  $p$ .

*Remark 55.* What happens if we weaken the relation a bit? Say  $(f_1, U_1) \sim (f_2, U_2)$  if  $f_1 = f_2$  on  $U_1 \cap U_2$ . In this case, we no longer have an equivalence relation. The reason is because this relation is not transitive: Suppose  $(f_1, U_1) \sim (f_2, U_2)$  and  $(f_2, U_2) \sim (f_3, U_3)$ . Then  $f_1 = f_2$  on  $U_1 \cap U_2$  and  $f_2 = f_3$  on  $U_2 \cap U_3$ , but this merely implies that  $f_1 = f_3$  on  $U_1 \cap U_2 \cap U_3$ .

**Example 31.4.** The functions

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1-x}$$

with domain  $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$  and

$$g(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots$$

with domain the open interval  $(-1, 1)$  have the same germ at any point  $p$  in the open interval  $(-1, 1)$ .

The addition and multiplication of functions induce corresponding operations on  $C_p^\infty$  making it into an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra. Indeed, let  $(f_1, U_1)$  and  $(f_2, U_2)$  be two representatives. Then multiplication is given by

$$(f_1, U_1) \cdot (f_2, U_2) = (f_1 f_2, U_1 \cap U_2).$$

We need to check that this is well-defined, so let  $(f'_1, U'_1)$  and  $(f'_2, U'_2)$  be two different representatives respectively. Then

$$f_1 = f'_1 \text{ on } W_1 \subset U_1 \cap U'_1 \text{ and } f_2 = f'_2 \text{ on } W_2 \subset U_2 \cap U'_2$$

This implies

$$f_1 f_2 = f'_1 f'_2 \text{ on } W_1 \cap W_2 \subset U_1 \cap U_2,$$

and thus

$$(f_1 f_2, U_1 \cap U_2) \sim (f'_1 f'_2, U_1 \cap U_2)$$

and hence this is well-defined. Similarly, addition is given by

$$(f_1, U_1) + (f_2, U_2) = (f_1 + f_2, U_1 \cap U_2).$$

**Example 31.5.** This example requires some knowledge of Algebraic Geometry. Let  $X$  be an affine algebraic set over an algebraically closed field  $K$ , let  $R = A(X)$  be its coordinate ring, let  $p$  be a point in  $X$ , and let  $\mathfrak{m}$  be the maximal ideal in  $R$  given by the set of all  $f \in R$  which vanish at  $p$ . There are two equivalent ways to define the local ring  $O_{X,p}$  at  $p$ .

One way is to define  $O_{X,p}$  to be the local ring  $R_{\mathfrak{m}}$ . Elements in  $R_{\mathfrak{m}}$  are equivalence classes of elements of the form  $f/g$ , where  $f, g \in R$  and  $g \notin \mathfrak{m}$ . We say  $f_1/g_1$  is equivalent to  $f_2/g_2$  if there is an  $h \in R$  such that  $h \notin \mathfrak{m}$  and  $h(g_2 f_1 - g_1 f_2) = 0$ .

The other way is to define  $O_{X,p}$  to be the ring of all germs of polynomial functions defined on a neighborhood of  $p$ . A “polynomial function defined on a neighborhood of  $p$ ” is of the form  $f/g$  where  $f, g \in R$  and  $g(p) \neq 0$ . We can think of  $f/g$  here as being the germ  $(f/g, D(g))$ , where  $D(g)$  is the set of all points such that  $g \neq 0$ . Two such polynomial functions  $f_1/g_1$  (or germ  $(f_1/g_1, D(g_1))$ ) and  $f_2/g_2$  (or germ  $(f_2/g_2, D(g_2))$ ) represent the same germ if they agree on some small neighborhood of  $p$ . A small open neighborhood of  $p$  in the Zariski topology is simply something of the form  $D(h)$  where  $h$  does not vanish at  $p$ . Thus, we need  $f_1/g_1 = f_2/g_2$  on  $D(h) \cap D(g_1) \cap D(g_2)$ . Another way of saying this is  $g_1 g_2 h(f_1/g_1 - f_2/g_2) = 0$  as a function on  $X$ ; this matches precisely the criterion for  $f_1/g_1$  and  $f_2/g_2$  to be equal in the local ring  $R_{\mathfrak{m}}$ .

### 31.2.3 Derivations at a Point

We claim that  $D_v$  gives a map from  $C_p^\infty$  to  $\mathbb{R}$ . Indeed we just need to check that it is well-defined: suppose  $(f, U) \sim (g, V)$ . Then  $f|_W = g|_W$  for some open set  $W \subseteq U \cap V$ . In particular,

$$\partial_{x_i} f(p) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(p_1, \dots, p_i + h, \dots, p_n)}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{g(p_1, \dots, p_i + h, \dots, p_n)}{h} = \partial_{x_i} g(p).$$

for all  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , which implies

$$\begin{aligned} D_v f &= \sum_{i=1}^n v_i \partial_{x_i} f(p) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n v_i \partial_{x_i} g(p) \\ &= D_v g. \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $D_v : C_p^\infty \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a well-defined map. In fact,  $D_v$  is  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear and satisfies the Leibniz rule

$$D_v(fg) = (D_v f)g(p) + f(p)D_v g, \quad (47)$$

precisely because the partial derivatives  $\partial_{x_i}|_p$  have these properties.

In general, any linear map  $D : C_p^\infty \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfying the Leibniz rule (47) is called a **derivation at  $p$**  or a **point-derivation** of  $C_p^\infty$ . Denote the set of all derivations at  $p$  by  $\mathcal{D}_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . This set is in fact a real vector space, since the sum of two derivations at  $p$  and a scalar multiplication of a derivation at  $p$  are again derivations at  $p$ .

Thus far, we know that directional derivatives at  $p$  are all derivations at  $p$ , so there is a map

$$\phi : T_p(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}_p(\mathbb{R}^n),$$

where a vector  $v = (v_1, \dots, v_n)$  in  $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$  is mapped to the point-derivation  $D_v = \sum_{i=1}^n v_i \partial_{x_i}|_p$ . Since  $D_v$  is clearly linear in  $v$ , the map  $\phi$  is a linear map of vector spaces.

**Lemma 31.2.** *If  $D$  is a point-derivation of  $C_p^\infty$ , then  $D(c) = 0$  for any constant function  $c$ .*

*Proof.* By  $\mathbb{R}$ -linearity,  $D(c) = cD(1)$ , so it suffices to prove that  $D(1) = 0$ . By the Leibniz rule (47), we have

$$D(1) = D(1 \cdot 1) = D(1) \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot D(1) = 2D(1).$$

Subtracting  $D(1)$  from both sides gives  $D(1) = 0$ . □

The **Kronecker delta**  $\delta$  is a useful notation that we frequently call upon:

$$\delta_j^i = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = j. \\ 0 & \text{if } i \neq j. \end{cases}$$

**Theorem 31.3.** *The linear map  $\phi : T_p(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$  defined above is an isomorphism of vector spaces.*

*Proof.* To prove injectivity, suppose  $D_v = 0$  for  $v = (v_1, \dots, v_n) \in T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Applying  $D_v$  to the coordinate function  $x_j$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= D_v x_j \\ &= \sum_i v_i \partial_{x_i} x_j |_p \\ &= v_j. \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $v = 0$  and  $\phi$  is injective.

To prove surjectivity, let  $D$  be a derivation at  $p$  and let  $(f, V)$  be a representative of a germ in  $C_p^\infty$ . Making  $V$  smaller if necessary, we may assume that  $V$  is an open ball, hence star-shaped. By Taylor's theorem with remainder, there are  $C^\infty$  functions  $g_i(x)$  in a neighborhood of  $p$  such that

$$f(x) = f(p) + \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - p_i) g_i(x),$$

where  $g_i(p) = \partial_{x_i} f(p)$ . Applying  $D$  to both sides and noting that  $Df(p) = 0$  and  $D(p_i) = 0$  by Lemma (31.2), we get

by the Leibniz rule (47)

$$\begin{aligned}
Df &= D(f(p) + \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - p_i)g_i(x)) \\
&= D(f(p)) + \sum_{i=1}^n D((x_i - p_i)g_i(x)) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n D((x_i - p_i)g_i(x)) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n (D(x_i - p_i)g_i(p) + (p_i - p_i)Dg_i) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n (D(x_i) - D(p_i))g_i(p) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n D(x_i)g_i(p) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n D(x_i)\partial_{x_i}f(p)
\end{aligned}$$

This proves that  $D = D_v$  for  $v = (Dx_1, \dots, Dx_n)$ . □

### 31.2.4 Vector Fields

A **vector field**  $\vec{v}$  on an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is a function that assigns to each point  $p$  in  $U$  a tangent vector  $\vec{v}(p)$  in  $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Since  $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$  has basis  $\{\partial_{x_i}|_p\}$ , the vector  $\vec{v}(p)$  is a linear combination

$$\vec{v}(p) = \sum_{i=1}^n \vec{v}_i(p)\partial_{x_i}(p),$$

where  $\vec{v}_i(p) \in \mathbb{R}$ . Thus we may write  $\vec{v} = \sum_{i=1}^n \vec{v}_i\partial_{x_i}$ , where the  $\vec{v}_i$  are now functions on  $U$ . We say that a vector field  $\vec{v}$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $U$  if the coefficient functions  $\vec{v}_i$  are all  $C^\infty$  on  $U$ .

#### Example 31.6.

1. On  $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}$ , we have the vector field

$$\vec{v} = \frac{-y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}\partial_x + \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}\partial_y.$$

2. On  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , we have the vector field

$$\vec{v} = x\partial_x - y\partial_y.$$

The ring of  $C^\infty$  on an open set  $U$  is commonly denoted by  $C^\infty(U)$ . Multiplication of vector fields by functions on  $U$  is defined pointwise:

$$(f\vec{v})(p) = f(p)\vec{v}(p).$$

Clearly if  $\vec{v} = \sum_{i=1}^n \vec{v}_i\partial_{x_i}$  is a  $C^\infty$  vector field and  $f$  is a  $C^\infty$  function on  $U$ , then

$$f\vec{v} = \sum_{i=1}^n f\vec{v}_i\partial_{x_i}$$

is a  $C^\infty$  vector field on  $U$ . Thus, the set of all  $C^\infty$  vector fields on  $U$ , denoted by  $\text{Vec}(U)$ , is a  $C^\infty(U)$ -module.

### 31.3 Vector Fields as Derivations

If  $\vec{v}$  is a  $C^\infty$  vector field on an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $f$  is a  $C^\infty$  function on  $U$ , we define a new function on  $U$  by

$$(\vec{v}f)(p) = \vec{v}(p)f$$

for all  $p \in U$ . Writing  $\vec{v} = \sum_{i=1}^n \vec{v}_i\partial_{x_i}$ , we get

$$(\vec{v}f)(p) = \sum_{i=1}^n \vec{v}_i(p)\partial_{x_i}f(p)$$

or  $\vec{v}f = \sum_{i=1}^n \vec{v}_i \partial_{x_i} f$ , which shows that  $\vec{v}f$  is a  $C^\infty$  function on  $U$ . Thus, a  $C^\infty$  vector field  $X$  gives rise to an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map

$$C^\infty(U) \rightarrow C^\infty(U), \quad f \mapsto \vec{v}f.$$

**Proposition 31.2.** (*Leibniz rule for a vector field*) *If  $\vec{v}$  is a  $C^\infty$  vector field and  $f$  and  $g$  are  $C^\infty$  functions on an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $\vec{v}(fg)$  satisfies the Leibniz rule:*

$$\vec{v}(fg) = (\vec{v}f)g + f(\vec{v}g).$$

*Proof.* At each point  $p \in U$ , the vector  $\vec{v}(p)$  satisfies the Leibniz rule:

$$\vec{v}(p)(fg) = \vec{v}(p)(f) \cdot g(p) + f(p) \cdot \vec{v}(p)(g),$$

as  $p$  varies over  $U$ , this becomes an inequality of functions:

$$\vec{v}(fg) = (\vec{v}f)g + f(\vec{v}g).$$

□

If  $A$  is an algebra over a field  $K$ , a **derivation** of  $A$  is a  $K$ -linear map  $D : A \rightarrow A$  such that

$$D(ab) = (Da)b + a(Db),$$

for all  $a, b \in A$ . The set of all derivations of  $A$  is closed under addition and scalar multiplication and forms a vector space, denoted by  $\text{Der}(A)$ . As noted above, a  $C^\infty$  vector field on an open set  $U$  gives rise to a derivation of the algebra  $C^\infty(U)$ . We therefore have a map

$$\varphi : \text{Vec}(U) \rightarrow \text{Der}(C^\infty(U)), \quad \vec{v} \mapsto (f \mapsto \vec{v}f).$$

Just as the tangent vectors at a point  $p$  can be identified with the point-derivations of  $C_p^\infty$ , so the vector fields on an open set  $U$  can be identified with the derivations of the algebra  $C^\infty(U)$ , i.e. the map  $\varphi$  is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

### 31.4 The Exterior Algebra of Multivectors

The basic principle of manifold theory is the linearization principle, according to which every manifold can be locally approximated by its tangent space at a point, a linear object. In this way linear algebra enters into manifold theory.

Instead of working with tangent vectors, it turns out to be more fruitful to adopt the dual point of view and work with linear functions on a tangent space. After all, there is only so much that one can do with tangent vectors, which are essentially arrows, but functions, far more flexible, can be added, multiplied, and composed with other maps.

### 31.5 Dual Spaces

**Definition 31.3.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be two  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces. We denote by  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{R}}(V, W)$  the vector space of all linear maps  $\varphi : V \rightarrow W$ . Define the **dual space**  $V^\vee$  of  $V$  to be the vector space  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{R}}(V, \mathbb{R})$ . The elements of  $V^\vee$  are called **covectors** or **1-covectors** on  $V$ .

Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space with basis  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ . Then every  $v \in V$  can be uniquely expressed as  $\sum_{i=1}^n v_i e_i$  with  $v_i \in \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $\underline{e}_i \in V^\vee$  be the linear function that picks out the  $i$ th coordinate,  $\underline{e}_i(v) = v_i$ . Note that  $\underline{e}_i$  is characterized by

$$\underline{e}_i(e_j) = \delta_j^i = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } i = j, \\ 0 & \text{for } i \neq j. \end{cases}$$

**Proposition 31.3.** *The functions  $\underline{e}_1, \dots, \underline{e}_n$  form a basis for  $V^\vee$ .*

*Proof.* We first show that  $\underline{e}_1, \dots, \underline{e}_n$  span  $V^\vee$ . Suppose  $\ell \in V^\vee$ . For all  $v \in V$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\ell(v) &= \ell\left(\sum_{i=1}^n v_i e_i\right) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n v_i \ell(e_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \underline{e}_i(v) \ell(e_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \ell(e_i) \underline{e}_i(v) \\ &= \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \ell(e_i) \underline{e}_i\right)(v)\end{aligned}$$

Therefore  $\ell = \sum_{i=1}^n \ell(e_i) \underline{e}_i \in \text{Span}(\{\underline{e}_1, \dots, \underline{e}_n\})$ . Next we show the set  $\{\underline{e}_1, \dots, \underline{e}_n\}$  is linearly independent over  $\mathbb{R}$ . Suppose

$$\sum_{i=1}^n c_i \underline{e}_i = 0, \quad (48)$$

where  $e_i \in \mathbb{R}$ . By applying  $e_i$  to both sides of equation (48), we obtain  $c_i = 0$ , for all  $i = 1, \dots, n$ .  $\square$

*Remark 56.* We say  $\{\underline{e}_1, \dots, \underline{e}_n\}$  is the **dual basis** of  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ .

**Proposition 31.4.** *Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space and let  $\ell \in V^\vee$ . Then  $\text{Ker}(\ell)$  is a hyperplane in  $V$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$  be a basis of  $V$  and let  $\{\underline{e}_1, \dots, \underline{e}_n\}$  be its dual basis. Write  $\ell$  in terms of the dual basis:

$$\ell = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \underline{e}_i,$$

where  $a_i \in \mathbb{R}$ . A vector  $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i e_i$  belongs to the kernel of  $\ell$  if and only if  $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i a_i = 0$ . Thus

$$\text{Ker}(\ell) = V \left( \sum_{i=1}^n a_i X_i \right) = \left\{ (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i = 0 \right\}.$$

$\square$

**Proposition 31.5.** *Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space and let  $\ell_1, \dots, \ell_k \in V^\vee$ . Then  $\{\ell_1, \dots, \ell_k\}$  is linearly independent if and only if*

$$\dim \left( \bigcap_{1 \leq i \leq k} \text{Ker}(\ell_i) \right) = n - k.$$

*Proof.* Suppose  $\{\ell_1, \dots, \ell_k\}$  is linearly independent. We may assume that we are working in  $(\mathbb{R}^n)^\vee$  and that  $\ell_i = \underline{e}_i$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}\dim \left( \bigcap_{1 \leq i \leq k} \text{Ker}(\ell_i) \right) &= \dim \left( \bigcap_{1 \leq i \leq k} V(X_i) \right) \\ &= \dim(V(X_1, \dots, X_k)) \\ &= n - k.\end{aligned}$$

The converse is trivial.  $\square$

## 31.6 Differential Forms on $\mathbb{R}^n$

The **cotangent space** to  $\mathbb{R}^n$  at  $p$ , denoted by  $T_p^*(\mathbb{R}^n)$  is defined to be the dual space  $(T_p(\mathbb{R}^n))^\vee$  of the tangent space  $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . In parallel with the definition of a vector field, a **covector field** or **differential 1-form** on an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is a function  $\omega$  that assigns to each point  $p$  in  $U$  a covector  $\omega_p \in T_p^*(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,

$$\omega : U \rightarrow \bigcup_{p \in U} T_p^*(\mathbb{R}^n), \quad p \mapsto \omega_p \in T_p^*(\mathbb{R}^n).$$

We call a differential 1-form a **1-form** for short.

### 31.7 Jacobian

Let  $f = (f_1, \dots, f_m) : U \subset \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  be a smooth map from an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The **Jacobian** of  $f$  at a point  $p \in U$  is the  $m \times n$  matrix

$$J(f)(p) := \begin{pmatrix} (\partial_{x_1} f_1)(p) & \cdots & (\partial_{x_n} f_1)(p) \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ (\partial_{x_1} f_m)(p) & \cdots & (\partial_{x_n} f_m)(p) \end{pmatrix}.$$

The Jacobian satisfies the following property: for all  $p \in U$ , we have

$$\frac{\|f(p + \varepsilon) - f(p) - J(f)_p(\varepsilon)\|}{\|\varepsilon\|} \rightarrow 0$$

as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . One can view the Jacobian as a smooth linear map

$$J(f)(p) = (J(f)(p)_1, \dots, J(f)(p)_m) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m,$$

where the  $i$ th component  $J(f)(p)_i$  is given by

$$J(f)(p)_i(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \sum_{j=1}^n (\partial_{x_j} f_i)(p) x_j.$$

for all  $(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .

If  $m = n$ , then  $f$  is a function from  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to itself and the Jacobian matrix is a square matrix. In particular, we can compute its determinant, known as the **Jacobian determinant**. The Jacobian determinant at a given point gives important information about the behavior of  $f$  near that point. For instance, the inverse function theorem tells us that  $f$  is invertible near a point  $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$  if and only if the Jacobian determinant is non-zero. Furthermore, if the Jacobian determinant at  $p$  is positive, then  $f$  preserves orientation near  $p$ .

#### Example 31.7.

1. Consider  $f = (f_1, f_2) : U \subset \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  and where  $U = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid xy \in (-\pi/2, \pi/2) \text{ and } x + y \in (0, \infty)\}$  and where  $f_1(x, y) = \tan(xy)$  and  $f_2(x, y) = \ln(x + y)$  for all  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . The Jacobian of  $f$  at a point  $(x_0, y_0) \in U$  is given by

$$J(f)(x_0, y_0) = \begin{pmatrix} y_0 \sec^2(x_0 y_0) & x_0 \sec^2(x_0 y_0) \\ \frac{1}{x_0 + y_0} & \frac{1}{x_0 + y_0} \end{pmatrix}.$$

The Jacobian determinant is then

$$\det(J(f)(x_0, y_0)) = \frac{(y_0 - x_0) \sec^2(x_0 y_0)}{x_0 + y_0}.$$

2. Consider  $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  where  $f(x, y) = x^2 + xy + y$ . The Jacobian of  $f$  at a point  $(x_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  is given by

$$J(f)(x_0, y_0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2x_0 + y_0 \\ x_0 + 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let  $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2 > 0$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_0 + \varepsilon_1, y_0 + \varepsilon_2) &= (x_0 + \varepsilon_1)^2 + (x_0 + \varepsilon_1)(y_0 + \varepsilon_2) + (y_0 + \varepsilon_2) \\ &= x_0^2 + x_0 y_0 + y_0 + (2x_0 + y_0)\varepsilon_1 + (x_0 + 1)\varepsilon_2 + \varepsilon_1^2 + \varepsilon_1 \varepsilon_2 \\ &= f(x_0, y_0) + J(f)(x_0, y_0)(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2) + \varepsilon_1^2 + \varepsilon_1 \varepsilon_2 \end{aligned}$$

3. Consider  $f = (f_1, f_2) : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  where  $f_1(x, y) = x^2 y$  and  $f_2(x, y) = y^2 + x$  for all  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . The Jacobian of  $f$  at a point  $(x_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  is given by

$$J(f)(x_0, y_0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2x_0 y_0 & x_0^2 \\ 1 & 2y_0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let  $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2 > 0$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_0 + \varepsilon_1, y_0 + \varepsilon_2) &= ((x_0 + \varepsilon_1)^2(y_0 + \varepsilon_2), (y_0 + \varepsilon_2)^2 + (x_0 + \varepsilon_1)) \\ &= (x_0^2 y_0, y_0^2 + x_0) + (2x_0 y_0 \varepsilon_1 + x_0^2 \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_1 + 2y_0 \varepsilon_2) + (y_0 \varepsilon_1^2 + \varepsilon_1^2 \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_2^2) \\ &= f(x_0, y_0) + J(f)(x_0, y_0)(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2) + (y_0 \varepsilon_1^2 + \varepsilon_1^2 \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_2^2) \end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 31.6.** Let  $f : U \subset \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be a smooth map from an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^m$  and let  $p$  be a point in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ . Then

$$f(p + \varepsilon) = f(p) + J(f)_p(\varepsilon) + \psi(\varepsilon),$$

where  $\psi$  is a smooth map such that  $\|\psi(\varepsilon)\|/\|\varepsilon\| \rightarrow 0$  as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ .

*Proof.* Define  $\psi : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  by

$$\psi(\varepsilon) := f(p + \varepsilon) - f(p) - J(f)_p(\varepsilon).$$

□

**Theorem 31.4.** Let  $W$  be the finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space of symmetric bilinear forms on  $V$ , endowed with its natural topology as a finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space. The subset of elements that are positive-definite inner products is open and connected.

*Proof.* We first prove connectedness, and then we prove openness. There is a natural left action of  $\mathrm{GL}(V)$  on  $W$ : given  $T \in \mathrm{GL}(V)$  and  $B \in W$ , we define a symmetric bilinear form

$$T \cdot B = B \circ (T^{-1} \otimes T^{-1}).$$

Let  $\mathbf{e} = (e_1, \dots, e_n)$  be a basis of  $V$  and let  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  be its corresponding dual basis. Identify  $\mathbf{e}$  with the standard basis of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Then it is easy to see that the matrix representation of  $T \cdot B$  with respect to  $\mathbf{e}$  is given by

$$[T \cdot B] = [T^{-1}]^\top [B] [T^{-1}].$$

By fixing a basis of  $V$  and computing in linear coordinates we see that the resulting map  $\mathrm{GL}(V) \times W \rightarrow W$  is continuous. In particular, if we fix  $B_0 \in W$  then the map  $\mathrm{GL}(V) \rightarrow W$  given by  $T \mapsto T \cdot B_0$  is continuous. Restricting to the connected subgroup  $\mathrm{GL}^+(V)$ , it follows from continuity that the  $\mathrm{GL}^+(V)$ -orbit of any  $B_0$  is connected in  $W$ . But if we take  $B_0$  to be an inner product then from the definition of the action we see that  $T \cdot B_0$  is an inner product for every  $T \in \mathrm{GL}^+(V)$  (even for  $T \in \mathrm{GL}(V)$ ), and it can be shown that every inner product on  $V$  is obtained from a single  $B_0$  by means of  $T \in \mathrm{GL}^+(V)$ . This gives the connectivity. □

## 32 Higher Derivatives and Taylor's Formula Via Multilinear Maps

### 32.1 Differentiability

**Definition 32.1.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces, let  $U \subseteq V$  be open, let  $u \in U$ , and let  $f : U \rightarrow W$  be a function. We say  $f$  is **differentiable** at  $u$  if there exists a (necessarily unique) linear map  $\mathrm{D}f(u) : V \rightarrow W$  such that

$$\frac{\|f(u + h) - f(u) - \mathrm{D}f(u)h\|}{\|h\|} \rightarrow 0 \quad (49)$$

as  $h \rightarrow 0$  in  $V$  (where the norms on the top and bottom are on  $V$  and  $W$ , and the choices do not impact the definition since any two norms on a finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space are bounded by a constant positive multiple of each other). The linear map  $\mathrm{D}f(u) : V \rightarrow W$  is called the **total derivative** of  $f$  at  $u$ . We say  $f$  is **differentiable** on  $U$  (or more simply just **differentiable** if  $U$  is understood from context) if  $f$  is differentiable at all points  $u \in U$ . The map  $\mathrm{D}f : U \rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(V, W)$ , which sends a  $u \in U$  to the linear map  $\mathrm{D}f(u) : V \rightarrow W$ , is called the **total derivative** of  $f$  on  $U$  (or more simply just the total derivative if context is clear).

Suppose  $V$  has dimension  $m$  and  $W$  has dimension  $n$ . If we fix ordered bases for  $V$  and  $W$ , then we implicitly identify  $V$  with  $\mathbb{R}^m$  and  $W$  with  $\mathbb{R}^n$  using these bases as follows: suppose  $\mathbf{v} = v_1, \dots, v_m$  is an ordered basis for  $V$  and let  $\mathbf{x} = x_1, \dots, x_m$  denote the corresponding dual basis. Then a vector  $v = \sum x_i v_i$  in  $V$  is identified with the point  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^m$  via the canonical linear isomorphism  $[\cdot]_{\mathbf{v}} : V \simeq \mathbb{R}^m$  which sends the  $i$ th basis element  $v_i$  in  $V$  to the  $i$ th standard basis element  $\mathbf{e}_i = (0, \dots, 1, \dots, 0)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ . Similarly, suppose  $\mathbf{w} = w_1, \dots, w_n$  is an ordered basis for  $W$  and let  $\mathbf{y} = y_1, \dots, y_n$  denote the corresponding dual basis. Then a vector  $w = \sum y_i w_i$  in  $W$  is identified with the point  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  via the canonical linear isomorphism  $[\cdot]_{\mathbf{w}} : W \simeq \mathbb{R}^n$  which sends the  $i$ th basis element  $w_i$  in  $W$  to the  $i$ th standard basis element  $\mathbf{e}_i = (0, \dots, 1, \dots, 0)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The open subset  $U \subseteq V$  is identified with the open subset  $[U]_{\mathbf{v}} \subseteq [V]_{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbb{R}^m$  and the map  $f : U \rightarrow W$  then is identified with the map  $[f]_{\mathbf{v}}^{\mathbf{w}} := [\cdot]_{\mathbf{w}} \circ f \circ [\cdot]_{\mathbf{v}}^{-1}$  from  $[U]_{\mathbf{v}}$  to  $[W]_{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbb{R}^n$ . Under these identifications, the map  $f : U \rightarrow W$  has the form

$$\begin{aligned} f : U &\longrightarrow W \\ \mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_m)^\top &\longmapsto (f_1(\mathbf{x}), \dots, f_n(\mathbf{x}))^\top = f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{y}, \end{aligned}$$

where the  $f_j : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  for  $1 \leq j \leq n$  are called the **component functions** of  $f$ . We claim that the linear map  $\mathrm{D}f(\mathbf{x})$  is identified the **Jacobian matrix** of  $f$  at  $\mathbf{x}$ :

$$\mathrm{D}f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{J}_f(\mathbf{x}) := \begin{pmatrix} \partial_{x_1} f_1(\mathbf{x}) & \cdots & \partial_{x_m} f_1(\mathbf{x}) \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \partial_{x_1} f_n(\mathbf{x}) & \cdots & \partial_{x_m} f_n(\mathbf{x}) \end{pmatrix} = (\partial_{x_i} f_j(\mathbf{x})).$$



Indeed, suppose  $\mathbf{h} = (0, \dots, h_i, \dots, 0)$  and let  $Df(\mathbf{x})^i$  (respectively  $Df(\mathbf{x})_j^i$ ) denote the  $i$ th column vector (respectively the  $(j, i)$  entry) of the matrix  $Df(\mathbf{x})$ . Then as  $h_i \rightarrow 0$ , we see that

$$\frac{\|f(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) - Df(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{h}\|}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} = \left\| \frac{f(x_1, \dots, x_i + h_i, \dots, x_m) - f(x_1, \dots, x_m) - Df(\mathbf{x})^i h_i}{h_i} \right\| \rightarrow 0.$$

In particular, this implies the  $j$ th component of the vector

$$\frac{f(x_1, \dots, x_i + h_i, \dots, x_m)^\top - f(x_1, \dots, x_m)^\top - Df(\mathbf{x})^i h_i}{h_i} \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

tends to zero as  $h_i \rightarrow 0$ . The  $j$ th component of this vector is given by

$$\frac{f_j(x_1, \dots, x_i + h_i, \dots, x_n) - f_j(x_1, \dots, x_n) - h_i Df(\mathbf{x})_j^i}{h_i}.$$

In particular, this means  $Df(\mathbf{x})_j^i = \partial_{x_i} f_j(\mathbf{x})$ .

**Example 32.1.** Let  $V$  be a two dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space. Let  $\mathbf{e} = (e_1, e_2)$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  and let  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)^\top$  be the corresponding dual basis. Thus every  $v \in V$  can be expressed as  $v = a_1 v_1 + a_2 v_2$  for unique  $a_1, a_2 \in \mathbb{R}$  where  $a_1 = x_1(v)$  and  $a_2 = x_2(v)$ . We often get lazy and simply write  $v = x_1 v_1 + x_2 v_2$  where we think of  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  as the coordinates of  $v$ . Let  $f: V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given by  $f = x_1^2 + x_1 x_2 + x_2$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} f(v) &= (x_1^2 + x_1 x_2 + x_2)(v) \\ &= x_1(v)^2 + x_1(v)x_2(v) + x_2(v) \\ &= x_1^2 + x_1 x_2 + x_2 \end{aligned}$$

where we got lazy at the end simply wrote  $x_1 = x_1(v)$  and  $x_2 = x_2(v)$ . Notice that we are using the  $x_i$ 's in two different (and admittedly contradictory) ways here. When we write  $f = x_1^2 + x_1 x_2 + x_2$ , we are thinking of the  $x_i$  as linear functions  $x_i: V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . When we write  $f(v) = x_1^2 + x_1 x_2 + x_2$ , we are thinking of the  $x_i$  as the coordinates of  $v = x_1 e_1 + x_2 e_2$ . At the end of the day however, context will always make clear how we are thinking of the  $x_i$ 's. The matrix representation of the differential of  $f$  at a point  $v = x_1 e_1 + x_2 e_2$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} [Df(v)]_{\mathbf{e}} &= \nabla_{\mathbf{x}} f(\mathbf{x})^\top \\ &= (\partial_{x_1} f(\mathbf{x}), \partial_{x_2} f(\mathbf{x})) \\ &= (2x_1 + x_2, x_1 + 1). \end{aligned}$$

Now suppose  $\tilde{\mathbf{e}} = (\tilde{e}_1, \tilde{e}_2)$  is another ordered basis of  $V$ . Let  $C = \begin{pmatrix} c_{11} & c_{12} \\ c_{21} & c_{22} \end{pmatrix} \in \text{GL}_2(\mathbb{R})$  be a change of basis matrix from  $\mathbf{e}$  to  $\tilde{\mathbf{e}}$ , so  $\mathbf{e}C = \tilde{\mathbf{e}}$  and  $\mathbf{x} = C\tilde{\mathbf{x}}$  where  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = (\tilde{x}_1, \tilde{x}_2)^\top$  is the corresponding dual basis of  $\tilde{\mathbf{e}}$ . Then  $f$  expressed in this new basis is given by

$$\begin{aligned} f &= x_1^2 + x_1 x_2 + x_2 \\ &= (c_{11}\tilde{x}_1 + c_{12}\tilde{x}_2)^2 + (c_{11}\tilde{x}_1 + c_{12}\tilde{x}_2)(c_{21}\tilde{x}_1 + c_{22}\tilde{x}_2) + c_{21}\tilde{x}_1 + c_{22}\tilde{x}_2 \\ &= c_{11}^2\tilde{x}_1^2 + 2c_{11}c_{12}\tilde{x}_1\tilde{x}_2 + c_{12}^2\tilde{x}_2^2 + c_{11}c_{21}\tilde{x}_1^2 + c_{12}c_{21}\tilde{x}_1\tilde{x}_2 + c_{11}c_{22}\tilde{x}_1\tilde{x}_2 + c_{12}c_{22}\tilde{x}_2^2 + c_{21}\tilde{x}_1 + c_{22}\tilde{x}_2 \\ &= (c_{11}^2 + c_{11}c_{21})\tilde{x}_1^2 + (2c_{11}c_{12} + c_{12}c_{21} + c_{11}c_{22})\tilde{x}_1\tilde{x}_2 + (c_{12}^2 + c_{12}c_{22})\tilde{x}_2^2 + c_{21}\tilde{x}_1 + c_{22}\tilde{x}_2. \end{aligned}$$

Let us consider the special case where  $C = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$ . Then  $f = \tilde{x}_1^2 - \tilde{x}_2^2 - 2\tilde{x}_2$ . and

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \mathbf{e}\mathbf{x} \\ &= \mathbf{e}CC^{-1}\mathbf{x} \\ &= \tilde{\mathbf{e}}\tilde{\mathbf{x}} \end{aligned}$$

We can calculate the matrix representation of  $Df(v)$  with respect to the  $\tilde{\mathbf{e}}$  basis in two ways: the first way is

$$\begin{aligned} [Df(v)]_{\tilde{\mathbf{e}}} &= \nabla_{\tilde{\mathbf{x}}} f(\tilde{\mathbf{x}})^\top \\ &= (\partial_{\tilde{x}_1} f(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}), \partial_{\tilde{x}_2} f(\tilde{\mathbf{x}})) \\ &= (2\tilde{x}_1, -2\tilde{x}_2 - 2) \end{aligned}$$

The second way is

$$\begin{aligned} [Df(v)]_{\tilde{\mathbf{e}}} &= [Df(v)]_{\mathbf{e}}C \\ &= (2x_1 + x_2, x_1 + 1) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (2x_1 + x_2, x_2 - 2) \\ &= (2\tilde{x}_1, -2\tilde{x}_2 - 2). \end{aligned}$$

**Example 32.2.** Let  $U$  be the open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^2$  given by

$$U = \{\mathbf{t} = (t_1, t_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid t_1 t_2 \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{\pi/2 + \pi\mathbb{Z}\} \text{ and } t_1 + t_2 \in (0, \infty)\}$$

and let  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  be defined by

$$f(\mathbf{t}) = (\tan(t_1 t_2), \ln(t_1 + t_2)) = (f_1(\mathbf{t}), f_2(\mathbf{t})).$$

Then  $f$  is differentiable with its derivative at a point  $\mathbf{t} = (t_1, t_2)$  in  $U$  defined by

$$Df(\mathbf{t}) = \begin{pmatrix} t_2 \sec^2(t_1 t_2) & t_1 \sec^2(t_1 t_2) \\ \frac{1}{t_1 + t_2} & \frac{1}{t_1 + t_2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Notice that  $Df(\mathbf{t})$  is literally a matrix in this case (and not an abstract linear map between abstract vector spaces). This is because we are working specifically in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

**Example 32.3.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be two dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces. Let  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, v_2)$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  with corresponding dual basis  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)^\top$  and let  $\mathbf{w} = (w_1, w_2)$  be an ordered basis for  $W$  with corresponding dual basis  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, y_2)^\top$ . Define  $f: V \rightarrow W$  by

$$f(v) = f(x_1 v_1 + x_2 v_2) = \tan(x_1 x_2) w_1 + \ln(x_1 + x_2) w_2 = f_1(v) w_1 + f_2(v) w_2$$

where  $f_1 = f \circ y_1$  and  $f_2 = f \circ y_2$ . The matrix representation of the differential of  $f$  at a point  $v = x_1 e_1 + x_2 e_2$  with respect to the ordered bases  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{w}$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} [Df(v)]_{\mathbf{v}}^{\mathbf{w}} &= \begin{pmatrix} \partial_{x_1} f_1(\mathbf{x}) & \partial_{x_2} f_1(\mathbf{x}) \\ \partial_{x_1} f_2(\mathbf{x}) & \partial_{x_2} f_2(\mathbf{x}) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \sec^2(x_1 x_2) & x_1 \sec^2(x_1 x_2) \\ \frac{1}{x_1 + x_2} & \frac{1}{x_1 + x_2} \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned}$$

which is the same matrix that we calculated in Example (32.2), except now we are expressing it using  $\mathbf{x}$  coordinates. If  $\tilde{\mathbf{v}} = (\tilde{v}_1, \tilde{v}_2)$  is another ordered basis of  $V$  with corresponding change of basis matrix  $C \in \text{GL}_2(\mathbb{R})$ , and  $\tilde{\mathbf{w}} = (w_1, w_2)$  is another ordered basis of  $W$  with corresponding change of basis matrix  $D \in \text{GL}_2(\mathbb{R})$ , then it is straightforward to check that the matrix representation of the differential of  $f$  at the point  $v = \mathbf{v}\tilde{\mathbf{x}}$  is given by

$$[Df(v)]_{\tilde{\mathbf{v}}}^{\tilde{\mathbf{w}}} = D[Df(v)]_{\mathbf{v}}^{\mathbf{w}} C.$$

**Example 32.4.** Let  $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be given by  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top A \mathbf{x}$  where  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix with real entries. Observe that for  $\mathbf{h}$  in a neighborhood of 0, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}) &= (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h})^\top A (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}) \\ &= \mathbf{x}^\top A \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{x}^\top A \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{h}^\top A \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}^\top A \mathbf{h} \\ &= f(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{x}^\top (A + A^\top) \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{h}^\top A \mathbf{h} \\ &= f(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{x}^\top (A + A^\top) \mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h}), \end{aligned}$$

where in the last line we used the fact that  $\|\mathbf{h}^\top A \mathbf{h}\| \leq \|A\| \|\mathbf{h}\|^2 = o(\mathbf{h})$ . It follows that  $f'(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top (A + A^\top) = (A + A^\top) \mathbf{x}$ . A similar calculation shows that  $f''(\mathbf{x}) = A + A^\top$ .

### 32.1.1 Derivative of a Linear Map

Let  $\mathbf{e} = (e_1, \dots, e_n)$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  and let  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)^\top$  be the corresponding dual basis. Let  $T: V \rightarrow V$  be a linear isomorphism and let  $u \in U$ . Identify  $\mathbf{e}$  with the standard ordered basis of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Then  $T$  gets identified to a matrix  $T = (T_j^i)$ , the point  $u$  gets identified to a vector  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, \dots, u_n)^\top$ , and the derivative of  $T$  at  $u$  gets identified to the Jacobian of  $T$  at  $u$ . Viewing  $T$  as a map from  $\mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ , we see that it has the form

$$T(\mathbf{u}) = \begin{pmatrix} T_1^1 & \cdots & T_1^n \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ T_n^1 & \cdots & T_n^n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ \vdots \\ u_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} T_1^1 u_1 + \cdots + T_1^n u_n \\ \vdots \\ T_n^1 u_1 + \cdots + T_n^n u_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} T_1(\mathbf{u}) \\ \vdots \\ T_n(\mathbf{u}) \end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus the component functions of  $T$  correspond to its rows as matrix. These component functions are given by

$$T_j = T_j^1 x_1 + \cdots + T_j^n x_n$$

for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . With this in mind, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (DT)(u) &= J_{\mathbf{u}}(T) \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} (\partial_{x_1} T_1)(\mathbf{u}) & \cdots & (\partial_{x_n} T_1)(\mathbf{u}) \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ (\partial_{x_1} T_n)(\mathbf{u}) & \cdots & (\partial_{x_n} T_n)(\mathbf{u}) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} T_1^1 & \cdots & T_1^n \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ T_n^1 & \cdots & T_n^n \end{pmatrix} \\ &= T. \end{aligned}$$

So the derivative of a linear map at a point  $u$  is just the linear map itself. Notice that we proved this by choosing an ordered basis, but we could have also proven this directly using the coordinate-free definition of differentiability (49). Indeed, if we set  $DT(u) = T$ , then for any  $h$  we have

$$\frac{\|T(u+h) - T(u) - DT(u)(h)\|}{\|h\|} = 0,$$

so clearly  $DT(u)$  exists, and it must be equal to  $T$  itself.

### 32.1.2 Chain Rule

**Proposition 32.1.** *Let  $V$ ,  $V'$ , and  $V''$  be finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces of dimensions  $n$ ,  $n'$ , and  $n''$  respectively, let  $U$  be an open subset of  $V$ , let  $U'$  be an open subset of  $V'$ , and let  $f: U \rightarrow V'$  and  $g: U' \rightarrow V''$  be differentiable functions. Then the map  $g \circ f: U \cap f^{-1}(U') \rightarrow V''$  is differentiable and for all  $u \in U \cap f^{-1}(U')$  we have*

$$D(g \circ f)(u) = Dg(f(u)) \circ Df(u). \quad (50)$$

*Proof.* If  $U \cap f^{-1}(U') = \emptyset$ , then there is nothing to prove, so we may assume that it is nonempty. After choosing bases for  $V$ ,  $V'$ , and  $V''$ , we may identify  $D(g \circ f)(u)$  with the  $n'' \times n$  matrix whose  $(i'', i)$  entry is  $\partial_{x_i}(g \circ f)_{i''}(u)$ , we may identify  $Dg(f(u))$  with the  $n'' \times n'$  matrix whose  $(i'', i')$  entry is  $\partial_{f_{i'}} g_{i''}(f(u))$ , and we may identify  $Df(u)$  with the  $n' \times n$  matrix whose  $(i', i)$  entry is  $\partial_{x_i} f_{i'}(u)$ . Then (50) turns into the matrix equation

$$(\partial_{x_i}(g \circ f)_{i''}(u)) = (\partial_{f_{i'}} g_{i''}(f(u))) \cdot (\partial_{x_i} f_{i'}(u))$$

which gives us a system of equations

$$\partial_{x_i}(g \circ f)_{i''}(u) = \sum_{i'=1}^{n'} \partial_{f_{i'}} g_{i''}(f(u)) \partial_{x_i} f_{i'}(u) \quad (51)$$

for each  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $1 \leq i'' \leq n''$ . Therefore (50) holds if and only if (51) holds for all  $i, i''$ , and (51) holds since this is just the chain rule in the classical case.  $\square$

Here's a coordinate-free proof of the Chain Rule: again we may assume  $U \cap f^{-1}(U') \neq \emptyset$ . Furthermore, by replacing  $U$  with  $U \cap f^{-1}(U')$  if necessary, we may assume that  $U = f^{-1}(U')$ . Fix  $u \in U$  (we show  $g \circ f$  is differentiable at  $u$  with derivative given by (50)). There exists open balls  $B_\varepsilon(0) \subseteq V$  and  $B_{\varepsilon'}(0) \subseteq V'$  together with functions  $R_1: B_\delta(0) \rightarrow V'$  and  $R_2: B_{\delta'}(0) \rightarrow V''$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} f(u+h) &= f(u) + Df(u)h + R_1(h) \\ g(f(u)+h') &= g(f(u)) + Dg(f(u))h' + R_2(h') \end{aligned}$$

for all  $h \in B_\delta(0)$  and  $h' \in B_{\delta'}(0)$ , where  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  have the additional property that

$$\|R_1(h)\| \leq A_u(h)\|h\| \quad \text{and} \quad \|R_2(h')\| \leq B_{f(u)}(h')\|h'\|,$$

where  $A_u: B_\delta(0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  and  $B_{f(u)}: B_{\delta'}(0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  satisfy

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} A_u(h) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{h' \rightarrow 0} B_{f(u)}(h') = 0.$$

Moreover, the convergence  $A_u(h) \rightarrow 0$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$  is uniform on a compact subspace  $K \subseteq U$  where  $u \in K$ . Similarly, the convergence  $B_{f(u)}(h') \rightarrow 0$  as  $h' \rightarrow 0$  is uniform on a compact subspace  $K' \subseteq U'$  with  $f(u) \in K'$ . In particular, given  $\varepsilon, \varepsilon' > 0$ , by replacing  $\delta$  and  $\delta'$  with smaller values if necessary, we have

$$\sup_{\substack{\|h\| < \delta \\ v \in K}} \|A_v(h)\| < \varepsilon \quad \text{and} \quad \sup_{\substack{\|h'\| < \delta' \\ v' \in K'}} \|B_{v'}(h')\| < \varepsilon'.$$

We don't need the full strength of this fact; mainly we just need the fact that  $\|h\| < \delta$  implies  $\|A_u(h)\| < \varepsilon$  and similarly  $\|h'\| < \delta'$  implies  $\|B_{f(u)}(h)\| < \varepsilon'$ . Now, in a moment, we are going to want to replace  $\delta$  with something smaller (if necessary), but before we do this, let's see how the proof ought to work: to show  $g \circ f$  is differentiable at  $u$ , it suffices to show that it has a first order approximation of the form:

$$(g \circ f)(u + h) = g(f(u)) + (Dg(f(u)) \circ Df(u))h + R_3(h),$$

where  $h \in B_r(0)$  where  $r > 0$  is sufficiently small and where  $R_3: B_r(0) \rightarrow V''$  is a function with the property that

$$\|R_3(h)\| \leq C_u(h)\|h\|$$

where  $C_u: B_r(0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfies  $C_u(h) \rightarrow 0$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$ . To determine this first order approximation, write

$$\begin{aligned} (g \circ f)(u + h) &= g(f(u + h)) \\ &= g(f(u) + Df(u)h + R_1(h)) \\ &= g(f(u) + h') \\ &= g(f(u)) + Dg(f(u))h' + R_2(h') \\ &= g(f(u)) + (Dg(f(u)) \circ Df(u))h + (Dg(f(u)) \circ R_1(h) + R_2(h')) \\ &= g(f(u)) + (Dg(f(u)) \circ Df(u))h + R_3(h) \end{aligned}$$

where we set  $h' = Df(u)h + R_1(h)$  and where  $R_3(h) = Dg(f(u)) \circ R_1(h) + R_2(h')$ . In order for this to work, we need to justify the jump from the third line to the fourth line above. We show that we can do this by replacing  $\delta$  with something smaller if necessary. Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \|h'\| &= \|Df(u)h + R_1(h)\| \\ &\leq \|Df(u)\|\|h\| + A_u(h)\|h\| \\ &= (\|Df(u)\| + A_u(h))\|h\| \\ &< (\|Df(u)\| + \varepsilon)\|h\| \\ &< (\|Df(u)\| + \varepsilon)\delta. \end{aligned}$$

So replacing  $\delta$  with  $\delta' / (\|Df(u)\| + \varepsilon)$  if necessary, we can ensure that  $\|h\| < \delta$  implies  $\|h'\| < \delta'$ , so that it makes sense to go from the third line to the fourth line in our "initial proof". Finally, observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \|R_3(h)\| &= \|Dg(f(u)) \circ R_1(h) + R_2(h')\| \\ &\leq \|Dg(f(u))\|\|R_1(h)\| + \|R_2(h')\| \\ &\leq \|Dg(f(u))\|A_u(h)\|h\| + B_{f(u)}(h')\|h'\| \\ &< \|Dg(f(u))\|A_u(h)\|h\| + B_{f(u)}(h')(\|Df(u)\| + \varepsilon)\|h\| \\ &= C_u(h)\|h\|, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$C_u(h) = \|Dg(f(u))\|A_u(h) + B_{f(u)}(h')(\|Df(u)\| + \varepsilon).$$

Then note that  $h \rightarrow 0$  implies  $h' \rightarrow 0$  which implies  $A_u(h) \rightarrow 0$  and  $B_{f(u)}(h') \rightarrow 0$ . So clearly  $h \rightarrow 0$  implies  $C_u(h) \rightarrow 0$ , and we are done. It follows that  $g \circ f$  is differentiable at  $u$  with its derivative given by (50).

### 32.1.3 Derivative of a Chart

Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space and let  $(U, \varphi)$  be a smooth chart of  $V$  centered at  $u \in U$ . This means  $U$  is an open subset of  $V$  and  $\varphi: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is a diffeomorphism onto its image. Then by the chain rule, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= D(1_{\varphi(U)})(\varphi(u)) \\ &= D(\varphi \circ \varphi^{-1})(\varphi(u)) \\ &= D\varphi(u) \circ D\varphi^{-1}(\varphi(u)). \end{aligned}$$

In particular,  $D\varphi(u)$  is invertible (and hence nonzero) with its inverse given by  $D\varphi^{-1}(\varphi(u))$ .

## 32.2 $C^p$ maps

**Definition 32.2.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional spaces, let  $U \subseteq V$  be open, and let  $f: U \rightarrow W$ . We say  $f$  is  $C^1$  on  $U$  (or more simply  $C^1$  if  $U$  is understood from context) if it is differentiable and its total derivative  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$  is continuous. We say  $f$  is  $C^2$  if  $Df$  is  $C^1$ , meaning  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W))$  is differentiable (with total derivative denoted  $D^2f = D(Df)$ ) and  $D^2f$  is continuous. Note that

Thus we have

$$\begin{array}{ll} f(u) \in W & f \in \text{Map}(U, W) \\ (Df)(u) \in \text{Hom}(V, W) & Df \in \text{Map}(U, \text{Hom}(V, W)) \\ (D(Df))(u) \in \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W)) & D(Df) \in \text{Map}(U, \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W))) \\ \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$$

Note that there are unique isomorphisms

$$(-)^\diamond: \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W)) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V \otimes V, W) \quad \text{and} \quad (-)_\diamond: \text{Hom}(V \otimes V, W) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W))$$

of  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces (both natural in  $V$  and  $W$ ) such that

$$\varphi^\diamond(v_1 \otimes v_2) = (\varphi v_1)v_2 \quad \text{and} \quad (\psi_\diamond v_1)v_2 = \psi(v_1 \otimes v_2)$$

for all  $v_1, v_2 \in V$ ,  $\varphi \in \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W))$  and  $\psi \in \text{Hom}(V \otimes V, W)$ . We denote

$$D^2 f(u) = ((D(Df))(u))^\diamond$$

and think of  $D^2 f(u)$  as being a map bilinear map  $D^2 f(u): V \times V \rightarrow W$ . Similarly, we think of  $D^2 f$  as being a map from  $U$  to  $\text{Mult}(V^2, W)$ . Now let us fix a basis  $\mathbf{e} = e_1, \dots, e_m$  of  $V$  with  $\mathbf{x} = x_1, \dots, x_n$  being the corresponding dual basis. Let  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  be the component functions of  $f: U \rightarrow W$  with respect to a basis of  $W$  (say  $\tilde{\mathbf{e}} = \tilde{e}_1, \dots, \tilde{e}_n$  with corresponding dual basis  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \tilde{x}_1, \dots, \tilde{x}_n$  (so  $f_j = \tilde{x}_j \circ f$ )). Then the  $j$ th component function of  $Df(u): V \rightarrow W$  correspond to the  $j$ th row vector of the matrix representation of  $Df(u)$  with respect to  $\mathbf{e}$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{e}}$ . In particular, the  $j$ th component vector of  $Df(u)$  is given by

$$\tilde{x}_j \circ Df(u) = (Df)_j(u) = \sum_{i=1}^m \partial_{x_i} f_j(u) x_i.$$

We have

**Theorem 32.1.** For  $1 \leq i_1, \dots, i_p \leq m$ , we have

$$D^p f(u)(e_{i_1}, \dots, e_{i_p}) = ((\partial_{x_{i_p}} \cdots \partial_{x_{i_1}} f_1)(u), \dots, (\partial_{x_{i_p}} \cdots \partial_{x_{i_1}} f_m)(u)) \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

*Proof.* We induct on  $p$ , the base case  $p = 1$  being the old theorem on the determination of the matrix for the derivative map  $Df(u): V \rightarrow W$  in terms of first-order partials of the component functions for  $f$  (using linear coordinates on  $W$  to define these component functions, and using linear coordinates on  $V$  to define the relevant partial derivative operators on these functions). Now we assume  $p \geq 2$ .

By definition of the isomorphism in the corollary above, we have

$$D^p f(u)(v_1, \dots, v_p) = (\cdots ((D^p f(u)(v_1))(v_2) \cdots)(v_p) \in W$$

for any ordered  $p$ -tuple  $v_1, \dots, v_p \in V$ . Let  $F = Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$ . Using the given linear coordinates on  $V$  and  $W$ , the associated “matrix entries” are taken as the linear coordinates on  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$  to get component functions  $F_{ij}$  for  $F$  (with  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ ). Considering  $v_2, \dots, v_p$  as fixed but  $v_1$  as varying, we have

$$D^p f(u)(\cdot, v_2, \dots, v_p) = (\cdots ((D^{p-1} F)(u)(v_2)) \cdots)(v_p) = D^{p-1} F(u)(v_2, \dots, v_p) \in \text{Hom}(V, W)$$

where  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$  is the target vector space for  $F$ . Setting  $v_k = e_{j_k}$  for  $2 \leq k \leq p$ , the inductive hypothesis applied to  $F: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W) = \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  gives

$$D^{p-1} F(u)(e_{j_2}, \dots, e_{j_p}) = (\partial_{j_p} \cdots \partial_{j_2} F_{ij}(u)) \in \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R}).$$

In view of how the matrix coordinatization of  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$  was *defined* using the chosen ordered bases on  $V$  and  $W$ , evaluating  $e_{j_1}$  in  $\text{Hom}(V, W) \simeq \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  corresponds to pass to the  $j_1$ th column of a matrix. Hence taking  $v_1 = e_{j_1}$  gives

$$D^p f(u)(e_{j_1}, e_{j_2}, \dots, e_{j_p}) = (\partial_{j_p} \cdots \partial_{j_2} F_{1j_1}(u), \dots, \partial_{j_p} \cdots \partial_{j_2} F_{mj_1}(u)) \in \mathbb{R}^m = W.$$

By the  $C^1$  case,  $F = Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W) = \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  has  $ij$ -component function  $F_{ij} = \partial_j f_i$ , so  $F_{ij_1} = \partial_{j_1} f_i$ . Thus, we get the desired formula.  $\square$

Therefore

$$\partial_{x_i}(\mathbf{D}f)_j(u) = \sum_{i=1}^m \partial_{x_i}^2 f_j(u)$$

It follows that for any  $1 \leq i < i' \leq m$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^2 f(u)(e_{i_1}, e_{i_2}) &= \mathbf{D}((\mathbf{D}f)(u)e_{i_1})e_{i_2} \\ \mathbf{D}^2 f(u)(e_{i_1}, e_{i_2}) &= (\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f)(u))^{\diamond}(e_{i_1}, e_{i_2}) = (\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f(u)e_{i_1})e_{i_2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^2 f(u)(e_{i_1}, e_{i_2}) &= ((\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f))(u))^{\diamond}(e_{i_1}, e_{i_2}) \\ &= (((\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f))(u))e_{i_1})e_{i_2} \\ &= \\ &= \left( \mathbf{D} \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \partial_{x_i} f_j \right) (u) \right) e_{i'} \\ &= \left( \mathbf{D} \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \partial_{x_i} f_j \right) (u) \right) e_{i'} \\ &= \sum \end{aligned}$$

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f)$$

$$\mathbf{D}^p f(u)(e_{i_1}, \dots, e_{i_p}) = ((\partial_{x_{i_p}} \cdots \partial_{x_{i_1}} f_1)(u), \dots, (\partial_{x_{i_p}} \cdots \partial_{x_{i_1}} f_m)(u)) \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

$$\mathbf{D}f(u) = (\partial_{x_i} f_j(u))_j^i$$

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f)(u) = (\partial_{x_i} (\partial_{x_{i'}} f_j(u))_{i',j}^i$$

$$\mathbf{D} \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \partial_{x_i} f_j \right) (u) = (\partial_{x_i} \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \partial_{x_i} f_j(u) \right) (u))_j^i$$

In particular, the  $j$ th component vector of  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f)(u)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f)(u)_j &= \sum_{i=1}^m \partial_{x_i} (\mathbf{D}f)_j(u) x_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m \partial_{x_i} \left( \sum_{i'=1}^m \partial_{x_{i'}} f_j(u) x_{i'} \right) x_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{i'=1}^m \partial_{x_i} f_j(u) x_i \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq i, i' \leq m} \partial_{x_i} \partial_{x_{i'}} f_j(u) x_{i'} x_i \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f)(u)_j &= \sum_{i=1}^m \partial_{x_i} (\mathbf{D}f)_j(u) x_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m \partial_{x_i} \left( \sum_{i'=1}^m \partial_{x_{i'}} f_j(u) x_{i'} \right) x_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{i'=1}^m \partial_{x_i} f_j(u) x_i \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq i, i' \leq m} \partial_{x_i} \partial_{x_{i'}} f_j(u) x_{i'} x_i \end{aligned}$$

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{D}f)(u)_j = \sum_{i=1}^m \partial_{x_i} (\mathbf{D}f)_j(u) x_i =$$

It follows that for any  $1 \leq i < i' \leq m$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} D^2 f(u)(e_i, e_{i'}) &= (D(Df)(u))^\diamond(e_i, e_{i'}) \\ &= (D(Df)(u)e_i)e_{i'} \\ &= \\ &= Df(u)_{i'}^i \end{aligned}$$

Where we used the fact that

$$D(Df)(u)e_i = D(Df)(u)^i$$

So we just need to figure out  $(D(Df)(u))^\diamond(e_i, e_{i'})$

$$Df(u) = (\partial_{x_i} f_j(u))$$

$$D(Df)(u) = (\partial_{x_i} (Df)_j(u))$$

$$D^2 f(u)(e_i, e_{i'}) = (D(Df)(u))^\diamond(e_i, e_{i'}) =$$

the matrix representation of  $D((Df(u))(u'))$  is given by

$$D^2 f(u) = D^2 f(u \otimes u) = (D(Df))^\diamond(u \otimes u) = D((Df(u))(u)) = D(Df(u))(u) = D(Df)(u),$$

Now let us fix a basis  $\mathbf{e} = e_1, \dots, e_m$  of  $V$  with  $\mathbf{x} = x_1, \dots, x_n$  being the corresponding dual basis. Let  $\partial_i$  denote  $\partial_{x_i}$  and let  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  be the component functions of  $f: U \rightarrow W$  with respect to a basis of  $W$  (say  $\tilde{\mathbf{e}} = \tilde{e}_1, \dots, \tilde{e}_n$  with corresponding dual basis  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \tilde{x}_1, \dots, \tilde{x}_n$  (so  $f_j = \tilde{x}_j \circ f$ )). Then the  $j$ th component function of  $Df(u): V \rightarrow W$  correspond to the  $j$ th row vector of the matrix representation of  $Df(u)$  with respect to  $\mathbf{e}$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{e}}$ . In particular, the  $j$ th component vector of  $Df(u)$  is given by

$$\tilde{x}_j \circ Df(u) = Df(u)_j = \sum_{i=1}^m \partial_{x_i} f_j(u) x_i.$$

It follows that the matrix representation of  $D((Df(u))(u'))$  is given by

$$D((Df(u))(u')) = J_{Df(u)}(u') := \begin{pmatrix} (\partial_{x_1} \partial_{x_1} f_1)(u) & \cdots & (\partial_{x_m} f_1)(u) \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ (\partial_{x_1} f_n)(u) & \cdots & (\partial_{x_m} f_n)(u) \end{pmatrix}.$$

(Thus we can think of  $\cdot =$  when we identify  $Df(u)$  to a ts rows when we view it as a matrix:as given by

$$Df(u)_j =$$

$$\tilde{x}_j \circ Df(u) =$$

Then for  $1 \leq i_1, i_2 \leq m$ , we have

Now let us fix linear coordinates on  $V$  and  $W$ .

$$\begin{aligned} D^2 f(u_1 \otimes u_2) &= (D(Df))^\diamond(u_1 \otimes u_2) \\ &= D((Df(u_1))(u_2)). \end{aligned}$$

Thus if we fix linear coordinates on  $V$  and  $W$ , we see that it has the form

$$Df(u_1)_i^j = \partial_{x_i} f_j(u_1)$$

$$D^2 f(u_1 \otimes u_2) = (D(Df))^\diamond(u_1 \otimes u_2) = (D(Df))u$$

$$D^2 f(u)(u_1 \otimes u_2) = (D(Df)(u))^\diamond(u_1 \otimes u_2) = (D(Df))u$$

$$D^2 f(u) = (D(Df)(u))^\diamond$$

What does it mean to say that  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$  is continuous? Upon fixing linear coordinates on  $V$  and  $W$ , such continuity amounts to continuity for each of the component functions  $\partial_{x_i} f_j: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  of the matrix-valued  $Df$ , and so the concrete definition of  $f$  being  $C^1$  is equivalent to the coordinate-free property that  $f: U \rightarrow W$  is differentiable

and that the associated total derivative map  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$  from  $U$  to a new vector space  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$  is continuous. With this latter point of view, wherein  $Df$  is a map from the open set  $U \subseteq V$  into a finite-dimensional vector space  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$ , a very natural question is: what does it mean to say that  $Df$  is differentiable, or even continuously so?

**Lemma 32.2.** *Suppose  $f: U \rightarrow W$  is a  $C^1$  map, and let  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$  be the associated total derivative map. As a map from an open set in  $V$  to a finite-dimensional vector space,  $Df$  is  $C^1$  if and only if (relative to a choice of linear coordinates on  $V$  and  $W$ ) all second-order partials  $\partial_{x_{i_1}} \partial_{x_{i_2}} f_j: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  exist and are continuous.*

*Proof.* Fixing linear coordinates identifies  $Df$  with a map from an open set  $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$  to a Euclidean space of  $n \times m$  matrices, with component functions  $\partial_{x_i} f_j$  for  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Hence, this map is  $C^1$  if and only if these components admit all first-order partials that are moreover continuous, and this is exactly the statement that the  $f_j$ 's admit all second-order partials and that such partials are continuous.  $\square$

Let us say that  $f: U \rightarrow W$  is  $C^2$  when it is differentiable and  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$  is  $C^1$ . By the lemma, this is just a fancy way to encode the concrete definition that all component functions of  $f$  (relative to linear coordinizations of  $V$  and  $W$ ) admit continuous second-order partials. Next let us consider the total derivative of  $Df$ , that is,

$$D^2f = D(Df): U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W)) \cong \text{Hom}(V \otimes V, W)$$

More to the point, how do we work with the vector space  $\text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W))$ ? I claim that it is not nearly as complicated as it may seem, and that once we understand how to think about this iterated Hom-space we will see that the theory of higher-order partials admits a very pleasing reformulation in the language of multilinear mappings. The underlying mechanism is a certain isomorphism in linear algebra, so we now digress to discuss the algebraic preliminaries in a purely algebraic setting over any field.

**Definition 32.3.** In general, for an integer  $p \geq 1$  we say that  $f: U \rightarrow W$  is a  $C^p$  **map**, or is  $p$  **times continuously differentiable**, if it is differentiable and  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$  is a  $C^{p-1}$  map. If  $f$  is a  $C^p$  map for every  $p$ , we shall say that  $f$  is a  $C^\infty$  **map**, or is **infinitely differentiable**.

### 32.3 Higher Derivatives as Symmetric Multilinear Maps

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional vector spaces over  $\mathbb{R}$ , and let  $U$  be open in  $V$ . Let  $f: U \rightarrow W$  be a map of sets. We say  $f$  is a  $C^0$  **map** if it is continuous. We have seen above that  $f$  is differentiable with

$$Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$$

continuous if and only if, with respect to a choice of linear coordinates, the components  $f_j$  of  $f$  admit continuous first-order partial derivatives across all of  $U$  with respect to the coordinates on  $V$ . This property of  $f$  is called being a  $C^1$  **map**, and we may rephrase it as the property that  $f$  is differentiable and  $Df$  is continuous. We now make a recursive definition:

**Definition 32.4.** In general, for an integer  $p \geq 1$  we say that  $f: U \rightarrow W$  is a  $C^p$  **map**, or is  $p$  **times continuously differentiable**, if it is differentiable and

$$Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$$

is a  $C^{p-1}$  map. If  $f$  is a  $C^p$  map for every  $p$ , we shall say that  $f$  is a  $C^\infty$  **map**, or is **infinitely differentiable**.

Assuming  $f$  is  $C^2$ , we write  $D^2f(u)$  to denote  $D(Df)(u)$ , and by definition since  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$  is a differentiable map from an open in  $V$  to the vector space  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$ , we see that  $D^2f(u)$  is a linear map from  $V$  to  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$ . That is, we have

$$D^2f: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, W))$$

and this is continuous (as  $f$  is  $C^2$ ). More generally, if  $f$  is  $C^p$ , then for  $i \leq p$  we write  $D^i f = D(D^{i-1} f)$ , and arguing recursively we see that  $D^p f(u)$  is a linear map from  $V$  to  $\text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, \dots, \text{Hom}(V, W) \dots))$  where there are  $p-1$  iterated Hom's. That is, we have

$$D^p f: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, \text{Hom}(V, \dots, \text{Hom}(V, W) \dots)) \simeq \text{Mult}(V^p, W).$$

**Theorem 32.3.** *Suppose  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $W = \mathbb{R}^m$ . Let  $U \subseteq V$  be open and let  $f_i: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  denote the  $i$ th component of  $f$ , so  $f$  is described as a map  $f = (f_1, \dots, f_m): U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m = W$ . Let  $p \geq 0$  be a non-negative integer. Then  $f$  is a  $C^p$  map if and only if all  $p$ -fold iterated partial derivatives of the  $f_i$ 's exist and are continuous on  $U$ . Likewise,  $f$  is  $C^\infty$  if and only if all  $f_i$ 's admit all iterated partials of all orders.*

*Proof.* We induct on  $p$ , the case  $p = 0$  being the old result that a map  $f$  to a product space is continuous if and only if its component maps  $f_i$  are continuous. For  $p = 1$ , the theorem is our earlier observation that  $f$  is differentiable with  $Df: U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$  continuous if and only if the component functions  $f_i$  of  $f$  admit continuous first-order partials.



Now we assume  $p > 1$ , so in either direction of implication in the theorem we know (from the  $C^1$  case which has been established) that  $f$  admits a continuous derivative map  $Df$  and that all partials  $\partial_{x_j} f_i$  exist as continuous functions on  $U$ . Also, we know that the map

$$Df : U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W) \simeq \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$$

to the vector space of  $m \times n$  matrices has as its component functions (i.e. “matrix entries”) precisely the first-order partials  $\partial_{x_j} f_i : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

By definition,  $f$  is  $C^p$  if and only if  $Df$  is  $C^{p-1}$ , but since this latter map has the  $\partial_{x_j} f_i$ ’s as its component functions, by the inductive hypothesis applied to  $Df$  (with the target vector space now  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$  rather than  $W$ , and linear coordinates given by matrix entries), it follows that  $Df$  is  $C^{p-1}$  if and only if all  $\partial_{x_j} f_i$ ’s admit all  $(p-1)$ -fold iterated partial derivatives in the linear coordinates on  $V$  and that these are continuous. Since an arbitrary  $(p-1)$ -fold partial of an arbitrary first order partial  $\partial_{x_j} f_i$  is nothing more or less than an arbitrary  $p$ -fold partial of  $f_i$  with respect to the linear coordinates on  $V$ , we conclude that  $f$  is  $C^p$  if and only if all  $p$ -fold partials of all  $f_i$ ’s with respect to the linear coordinates on  $V$  exist and are continuous.  $\square$

Let  $f : U \rightarrow W$  be a  $C^p$  mapping with  $p \geq 1$ , and consider the continuous  $p$ th derivative mapping

$$D^p f : U \rightarrow \text{Mult}(V^p, W).$$

We want to describe this in terms of partial derivatives using linear coordinates on  $V$  and  $W$ . That is, we fix ordered bases  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$  of  $V$  and  $\{w_1, \dots, w_m\}$  of  $W$ , so for each  $u \in U$  the multilinear mapping

$$D^p f(u) : V^p \rightarrow W = \mathbb{R}^m$$

is uniquely determined by the  $m$ -tuples

$$D^p f(u)(e_{j_1}, \dots, e_{j_p}) \in W = \mathbb{R}^m$$

for  $1 \leq j_1, \dots, j_p \leq n$ . What are the  $m$  components of this vector in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ ? The answer is very nice:

**Theorem 32.4.** *With notation as above, let  $x_1, \dots, x_n \in V^\vee$  be the dual basis to the basis  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$  of  $V$ . Let  $\partial_j$  denote  $\partial_{x_j}$ , and let  $f_1, \dots, f_m$  be the component functions of  $f : U \rightarrow W$  with respect to the basis of  $w_i$ ’s of  $W$ . For  $1 \leq j_1, \dots, j_p \leq n$ ,*

$$D^p f(u)(e_{j_1}, \dots, e_{j_p}) = ((\partial_{j_p} \cdots \partial_{j_1} f_1)(u), \dots, (\partial_{j_p} \cdots \partial_{j_1} f_m)(u)) \in \mathbb{R}^m.$$

*Proof.* We induct on  $p$ , the base case  $p = 1$  being the old theorem on the determination of the matrix for the derivative map  $Df(u) : V \rightarrow W$  in terms of first-order partials of the component functions for  $f$  (using linear coordinates on  $W$  to define these component functions, and using linear coordinates on  $V$  to define the relevant partial derivative operators on these functions). Now we assume  $p \geq 2$ .

By definition of the isomorphism in the corollary above, we have

$$D^p f(u)(v_1, \dots, v_p) = (\cdots ((D^p f(u)(v_1))(v_2) \cdots)(v_p) \in W$$

for any ordered  $p$ -tuple  $v_1, \dots, v_p \in V$ . Let  $F = Df : U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W)$ . Using the given linear coordinates on  $V$  and  $W$ , the associated “matrix entries” are taken as the linear coordinates on  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$  to get component functions  $F_{ij}$  for  $F$  (with  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ ). Considering  $v_2, \dots, v_p$  as fixed but  $v_1$  as varying, we have

$$D^p f(u)(\cdot, v_2, \dots, v_p) = (\cdots ((D^{p-1} F)(u)(v_2)) \cdots)(v_p) = D^{p-1} F(u)(v_2, \dots, v_p) \in \text{Hom}(V, W)$$

where  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$  is the target vector space for  $F$ . Setting  $v_k = e_{j_k}$  for  $2 \leq k \leq p$ , the inductive hypothesis applied to  $F : U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W) = \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  gives

$$D^{p-1} F(u)(e_{j_2}, \dots, e_{j_p}) = (\partial_{j_p} \cdots \partial_{j_2} F_{ij}(u)) \in \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R}).$$

In view of how the matrix coordinatization of  $\text{Hom}(V, W)$  was *defined* using the chosen ordered bases on  $V$  and  $W$ , evaluating  $e_{j_1}$  in  $\text{Hom}(V, W) \simeq \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  corresponds to pass to the  $j_1$ th column of a matrix. Hence taking  $v_1 = e_{j_1}$  gives

$$D^p f(u)(e_{j_1}, e_{j_2}, \dots, e_{j_p}) = (\partial_{j_p} \cdots \partial_{j_2} F_{1j_1}(u), \dots, \partial_{j_p} \cdots \partial_{j_2} F_{mj_1}(u)) \in \mathbb{R}^m = W.$$

By the  $C^1$  case,  $F = Df : U \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V, W) = \text{Mat}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  has  $ij$ -component function  $F_{ij} = \partial_j f_i$ , so  $F_{j_1} = \partial_{j_1} f_i$ . Thus, we get the desired formula.  $\square$

**Example 32.5.** Suppose  $W = \mathbb{R}$  and let  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  be linear coordinates on  $V$  relative to some ordered basis  $e = (e_1, \dots, e_m)$  on  $V$ . Then  $D^2 f(u)$  is identified with the **Hessian** of  $f$  at  $u$ :

$$D^2 f(u) = H_f(u) = \left( \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(u) \right).$$

Hence, the Hessian that appears in the second derivative test in several variables is *not* a linear map (as might be suggested by its traditional presentation as a matrix) but rather is intrinsically seen to be a symmetric bilinear form.

## 32.4 Higher-Dimensional Taylor's Formula: Motivation and Preparations

As an application of the formalism of higher derivatives as multilinear mappings, we wish to state and prove Taylor's formula (with an integral remainder term) for  $C^\alpha$  maps  $f : U \rightarrow W$  on any open  $U \subseteq V$ . In the special case  $V = W = \mathbb{R}$  and  $U$  a non-empty open interval, this will recover the usual Taylor formula from calculus. There is also a more traditional version of the multivariable Taylor formula given with loads of mixed partials and factorials, and we will show that this traditional version is equivalent to the version we will prove in the language of higher derivatives as multilinear mappings. The power of our point of view is that it permits one to give a proof of Taylor's formula that is virtually identical in appearance to the proof in the classical case (with  $V = W = \mathbb{R}$ ); proofs of Taylor's formula in the classical language of mixed partials tend to become a big mess with factorials, and the integral formula and error bound for the remainder term are unpleasant to formulate in the classical language.

Before we state the general case, let us first recall the 1-variable Taylor formula for a  $C^p$  function  $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  on an interval  $I \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  with  $a \in I$  an interior point: for  $|h|$  sufficiently small so that  $(a - h, a + h) \in I$  we have

$$f(a + h) = f(a) + f'(a)h + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}h^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(p)}(a)}{p!}h^p + R_{p,a}(h)$$

with error term  $R_{p,a}$  is given by

$$R_{p,a}(h) = \int_0^1 \frac{f^{(p)}(a + th) - f^{(p)}(a)}{(p-1)!} \cdot (1-t)^{p-1} h^p dt = h^p \psi_{p,a}(h),$$

where  $|\psi_{p,a}(h)|$  can be made below any desired  $\varepsilon$  for  $h$  near 0 (uniformly for  $a$  in a compact subinterval of  $I$ ) since the continuous  $f^{(p)}$  is uniformly continuous on compacts in  $I$ . In particular, as  $h \rightarrow 0$  we have  $|R_{p,a}(h)|/|h|^p \rightarrow 0$  *uniformly* for  $a$  in a compact subinterval of  $I$ .

We calculate

$$\int_0^1 \left( \frac{d}{dt} f(a + th) \right) dt$$

We want to show Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x + h) - f(x) &= \int_0^1 \frac{d}{dt} f(x + th) dt \\ &= \int_0^1 h f'(x + th) dt \\ &= h \int_0^1 f'(x + th) dt \\ &= h \psi(h), \end{aligned}$$

where we set  $\psi(h) = \int_0^1 f'(x + th) dt$ . Notice that

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \int_0^1 f'(x + th) dt &= \int_0^1 \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f'(x + th) dt \\ &= \int_0^1 \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f'(x + th) dt \\ &= \int_0^1 f'(x) dt \\ &= f'(x) \end{aligned}$$

We claim that

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(h, x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(1/n, x).$$

Indeed, suppose  $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(h, x) = f(x)$ . Let  $\varepsilon > 0$  and choose  $\delta > 0$  such that  $|h| < \delta$  implies  $|f(h, x) - f(x)| < \varepsilon$ . Then  $1/n < \delta$  implies  $|f(1/n, x) - f(x)| < \varepsilon$ .

### 32.4.1 Taylor's Formula: Statement and Proof

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces,  $U$  an open subset in  $V$ , and  $f : U \rightarrow W$  a  $C^p$  map with  $p \geq 1$ . We choose  $a \in U$  and  $r > 0$  such that  $B_r(a) \subseteq U$  (relative to an arbitrary but fixed choice of norm on  $V$ ). Thus,  $f(a + h)$  makes sense for  $h \in V$  satisfying  $\|h\| < r$ . Now we can state and prove Taylor's formula by essentially just copying the proof from calculus!

**Theorem 32.5.** *With the notation as above,*

$$f(a+h) = \sum_{j=0}^p \frac{(D^j f)(a)}{j!} (h^{(j)}) + R_{p,a}(h) \quad (52)$$

in  $W$ , where

$$R_{p,a}(h) = \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} ((D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)) (h^{(p)}) dt$$

satisfies

$$\|R_{p,a}(h)\| \leq C_{p,a}(h) \|h\|^p \text{ and } \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} C_{p,a}(h) = 0 \quad (53)$$

with

$$C_{p,a}(h) = \sup_{t \in [0,1]} \frac{\|(D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)\|}{p!}.$$

The convergence  $C_{p,a}(h) \rightarrow 0$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$  is uniform for  $a$  supported in a compact subset of  $U$ .

*Remark 57.* The norm on  $\text{Mult}(V^p, W)$  that is implicit in the numerator defining  $C_{p,h,a}$  is defined in terms of arbitrary but fixed choices of norms on  $V$  and  $W$ : for any multilinear  $\mu: V^p \rightarrow W$  there exists a constant  $B \geq 0$  such that  $\|\mu(v_1, \dots, v_p)\| \leq B \prod_{j=1}^p \|v_j\|$ , by elementary arguments exactly as in the simplest case  $p=1$ , and the infimum of all such  $B$ 's also works and is called  $\|\mu\|$ . More concretely,  $\|\mu\|$  is the minimum of  $\|\mu(v_1, \dots, v_n)\|$  for the compact set of points  $(v_1, \dots, v_p) \in V^p$  satisfying  $\|v_j\| = 1$  for all  $j$ . It is easy to check that  $\mu \mapsto \|\mu\|$  is a norm on the finite-dimensional vector space  $\text{Mult}^p(V, W)$ , and in particular is a continuous  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued function on this space of multilinear mappings. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \|R_{p,a}(h)\| &= \left\| \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} ((D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)) (h^{(p)}) dt \right\| \\ &\leq \int_0^1 \left\| \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} ((D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)) (h^{(p)}) \right\| dt \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} \|((D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)) (h^{(p)})\| dt \\ &\leq \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} \|(D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)\| \|h\|^p dt \\ &\leq \left( \sup_{t \in [0,1]} \|(D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)\| \right) \|h\|^p \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{p!} \left( \sup_{t \in [0,1]} \|(D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)\| \right) \|h\|^p \\ &= C_{p,a}(h) \|h\|^p. \end{aligned}$$

One important consequence of the error estimate (53) is that it shows the error  $R_{p,a}(h)$  in the “degree  $p$ ” expansion (52) of  $f(a+h)$  about  $a$  dies off more rapidly than  $\|h\|^p$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$ , that is  $\|R_{p,a}(h)\|/\|h\|^p \rightarrow 0$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$  with the rate of such decay actually *uniform* for  $a$  supported in a fixed compact subset of  $U$ . This is tremendously important for some applications.

A particular important case is  $p=2$ : the approximation

$$f(a+h) = f(a) + (Df(a))(h) + (D^2 f(a))(h, h) + (\dots)$$

has an error which dies more rapidly than  $\|h\|^2$ . This is what underlies the reason why the symmetric bilinear Hessian  $H_f(a) = (D^2 f)(a)$  governs the structure of  $f$  near critical points (that is those with  $Df(a) = 0$ , such as local extrema) in the case when  $W = \mathbb{R}$ . That is, the signature of the quadratic form associated to  $H_f(a)$  encodes much of the local geometry for  $f$  near  $a$  when  $Df(a) = 0$ .

**Theorem 32.6.** *Let  $U \subseteq V$  be an open set and let  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $C^1$  function. If  $a$  is a local minimizer for  $f$ , then  $\nabla f(a) = 0$ . In this case, we say  $a$  is a **critical point** of  $f$ .*

*Proof.* Replacing  $f$  with  $f - f(a)$ , we may assume that  $f(a) = 0$ . By Taylor's formula, for small  $h$  we have

$$f(a+h) = \nabla f(a)^\top h + R_a(h)$$

where  $\|R_a(h)\| \leq C_{a,h} \|h\|$  and  $C_{a,h} \rightarrow 0$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$ . Setting  $h_t = -t \nabla f(a)$  where  $t \in (0, 1)$  gives us

$$f(a+h_t) = -t \|\nabla f(a)\|^2 + R_a(h_t).$$

Choose  $\delta > 0$  such that  $t < \delta$  implies  $\|R_a(h_t)\| \leq \|h_t\|/2$ . Then  $t < \delta$  implies

$$\begin{aligned} f(a + h_t) &= -t\|\nabla f(a)\|^2 + R_a(h_t) \\ &\leq -t\|\nabla f(a)\|^2 + \frac{1}{2}\|h_t\| \\ &= -t\|\nabla f(a)\|^2 + \frac{t}{2}\|\nabla f(a)\|^2 \\ &= -\frac{t}{2}\|\nabla f(a)\|^2 \\ &< 0. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $f$  has a local minimum at  $a$ , we must have  $\|\nabla f(a)\| = 0$ , which implies  $\nabla f(a) = 0$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 32.7.** *Let  $U \subseteq V$  be an open set and let  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $C^2$  function. Suppose that  $a$  is a critical point for  $f$  in the sense that  $Df(a) = 0$  for some  $a \in U$ . Let  $H_f(a): V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be the symmetric bilinear Hessian  $D^2f(a)$ , and let  $q_{f,a}: V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be the associated quadratic form. If  $H_f(a)$  is non-degenerate, then  $f$  has an isolated local minimum at  $a$  when  $q_{f,a}$  is positive-definite, an isolated local maximum at  $a$  when  $q_{f,a}$  is negative-definite, and neither a local minimum nor a maximum in the indefinite case.*

*Proof.* Replacing  $f$  with  $f - f(a)$ , we may assume that  $f(a) = 0$ . By Taylor's formula, for small  $h$  we have

$$\frac{f(a + h)}{\|h\|^2} = \frac{1}{2}H_f(a)(\hat{h}, \hat{h}) + R_a(h) = q_{f,a}(\hat{h}) + R_a(h)$$

where  $R_a(h) \rightarrow 0$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$  and  $\hat{h} = h/\|h\|$  is a unit vector pointing in the same direction as  $h$ . Thus,  $f(a + h)/\|h\|^2$  is approximated by  $q_{f,a}(\hat{h})$  up to an error that tends to 0 locally uniformly in  $a$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$ . Provided that  $q_{f,a}$  is non-degenerate, in the positive-definite case it is bounded below by some  $c > 0$  on the unit sphere, and hence (depending on  $c$ ) by taking  $h$  sufficiently small we get  $f(a + h)/\|h\|^2 \geq c/2 > 0$ . This shows that  $f$  has an isolated local minimum at  $a$ , and a similar argument gives an isolated local maximum at  $a$  if  $q_{f,a}$  is negative-definite.

Now suppose that  $q_{f,a}$  is indefinite. By the spectral theorem, if we choose the norm on  $V$  to come from an inner product, then the pairing  $H_f(a)$  is given by the inner product against an orthogonal linear map. Hence, in such cases we can find an orthonormal basis with respect to which  $q_{f,a}$  is diagonalized, and so in the indefinite case there are lines on which the restriction of  $q_{f,a}$  is positive-definite and there are lines on which the restriction of  $q_{f,a}$  is negative-definite. Approaching  $a$  along such directions gives different types of behavior for  $f$  at  $a$  (isolated local minimum when approaching through the positive light cone for  $q_{f,a}$ , and an isolated local maximum when approaching through the negative light cone for  $q_{f,a}$ , provided the approach is not tangential to the null cone of vectors  $v \in V$  for which  $q_{f,a}(v) = 0$ ). This gives the familiar “saddle point” picture for the behavior of  $f$ , with the shape of the saddle governed by the eigenspace decomposition for the orthogonal map arising from the Hessian  $H_f(a)$  and the choice of inner product on  $V$ .  $\square$

Now we prove Taylor's Theorem.

*Proof.* By the second Fundamental Theorem of Calculus (applied componentwise using a basis of  $W$ , say), we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(a + h) &= f(a) + (f(a + h) - f(a)) \\ &= f(a) + \int_0^1 Df(a + th)h dt \\ &= f(a) + \int_0^1 Df(a + th)h dt + Df(a)h - Df(a)h \\ &= f(a) + \int_0^1 Df(a + th)h dt + Df(a)h - \int_0^1 Df(a)h dt \\ &= f(a) + Df(a)h + \int_0^1 (Df(a + th) - Df(a))h dt \end{aligned}$$

in  $W$ . This takes care of the case  $p = 1$ . Now we assume  $p > 1$  and we use induction. Since  $f$  is also of class  $C^{p-1}$ , we have

$$f(a + h) = \sum_{j=0}^{p-1} \frac{D^j f(a)}{j!}(h^{(j)}) + R_{p-1,a}(h)$$

in  $W$ , where

$$R_{p-1,a}(h) = \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-2}}{(p-2)!} ((D^{p-1}f)(a + th) - (D^{p-1}f)(a)) (h^{(p-1)}) dt.$$

in  $W$ . Thus we just have to show that

$$R_{p-1,a}(h) = \frac{1}{p!} D^p f(a)(h^{(p)}) + R_{p,a}(h)$$

in  $W$ , where

$$R_{p,a}(h) = \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} ((D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)) (h^{(p)}) dt.$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{p!} D^p f(a)(h^{(p)}) + R_{p,a}(h) &= \frac{1}{p!} D^p f(a)(h^{(p)}) + \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} ((D^p f)(a+th) - (D^p f)(a)) (h^{(p)}) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{p!} D^p f(a)(h^{(p)}) + \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} (D^p f)(a+th)(h^{(p)}) dt - \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} (D^p f)(a)(h^{(p)}) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{p!} D^p f(a)(h^{(p)}) + \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} (D^p f)(a+th)(h^{(p)}) dt - \frac{1}{p!} D^p f(a)(h^{(p)}) \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} (D^p f)(a+th)(h^{(p)}) dt, \end{aligned}$$

so we really just need to show that

$$R_{p-1,a}(h) = \int_0^1 \frac{(1-t)^{p-1}}{(p-1)!} D^p f(a+th)(h^{(p)}) dt$$

in  $W$ . By using the identification  $\text{Mult}(V^p, W) \simeq \text{Hom}(V, \text{Mult}(V^{p-1}, W))$  it suffices to prove that in  $\text{Mult}(V^{p-1}, W)$  we have an equality

$$\int_0^1 (p-1)(1-t)^{p-2} (D^{p-1} f(a+th) - D^{p-1} f(a)) dt = \int_0^1 (1-t)^{p-1} D^p f(a+th) h dt,$$

where the evaluation at  $h \in V$  on the right is really evaluation in the first slot of a symmetric multilinear mapping on  $V^p$ , since then evaluation on  $h^{(p-1)} = (h, \dots, h) \in V^{p-1}$  (which can be moved inside a definite integral) and division by  $(p-1)!$  will yield what we want. Let  $g = D^{p-1} f: U \rightarrow \text{Mult}(V^{p-1}, W)$ , so  $g$  is a  $C^1$  map and we want to show

$$\int_0^1 (p-1)(1-t)^{p-2} (g(a+th) - g(a)) dt = \int_0^1 (1-t)^{p-1} Dg(a+th)(h) dt.$$

This essentially comes down to integration by parts. We can rewrite our desired equation as

$$g(a) = \int_0^1 ((p-1)(1-t)^{p-2} g(a+th) - (1-t)^{p-1} Dg(a+th)h) dt.$$

Consider the map

$$\phi: (-1, 1+\varepsilon) \rightarrow \text{Mult}(V^{p-1}, W)$$

defined by

$$\phi(t) = -(1-t)^{p-1} g(a+th)$$

where  $\varepsilon > 0$  is small enough so that  $(1+\varepsilon)\|h\| < r$  and hence  $a+th \in B_r(a)$  for  $t \in (-1, 1+\varepsilon)$ . Since  $g$  is  $C^1$ , a straightforward application of the Chain Rule yields that  $\phi$  is  $C^1$  with

$$\phi'(t) = D\phi(t)(1) = (p-1)(1-t)^{p-2} g(a+th) - (1-t)^{p-1} Dg(a+th)h$$

in  $\text{Mult}(V^{p-1}, W)$ . This is exactly the integrand we need, so we are reduced to proving  $g(a) = \int_0^1 \phi'$ . But by the second Fundamental Theorem of Calculus (applied componentwise with respect to a basis of the vector space  $\text{Mult}(V^{p-1}, W)$ , say), this latter integral is equal to  $\phi(1) - \phi(0)$ , and from the definition of  $\phi$  this is exactly  $g(a)$  as desired.  $\square$

### 33 Morse Lemma

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional nonzero  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space and let  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $C^p$ -function with  $2 \leq p \leq \infty$ . Suppose for  $u_0 \in U$  we have  $df(u_0) = 0$ ; that is,  $u_0$  is a critical point of  $f$ . We seek a convenient coordinate system on a neighborhood of  $u_0$  in  $U$  that will help us to see how  $f$  behaves near  $u_0$ . The Morse Lemma in the  $C^\infty$  case is this:

**Theorem 33.1.** Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space and  $U \subseteq V$  an open set. Let  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $C^\infty$ -function and suppose  $f$  has a non-degenerate critical point at  $u_0 \in U$ . For a suitable  $C^\infty$ -coordinate system

$$\varphi = (x_1, \dots, x_n): U_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$$

on an open  $U_0 \subseteq U$  around  $u_0$  with  $\varphi(u_0) = 0$ , the mapping  $[f] = f \circ \varphi^{-1}: \varphi(U_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  that is “ $f$  in the  $x_i$ -coordinates” is given by

$$[f](\mathbf{a}) = \sum_{i=1}^r a_i^2 - \sum_{j=1}^s a_{r+j}^2 \quad (54)$$

for all  $\mathbf{a} \in \varphi(U_0)$ , with  $(r, s) = (r, n - r)$  the signature of the quadratic form  $q_f(u_0): V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  associated to the symmetric bilinear form  $H_f(u_0)$  on  $V$ .

*Remark 58.* We could rewrite (54) as

$$[f] = \sum_{i=1}^r x_i^2 - \sum_{j=1}^s x_{r+j}^2$$

where  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  are the standard coordinate functions on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

### 33.1 Separation of Variables

We shall deduce the Morse lemma from a more general result that is called “separation of variables”

**Theorem 33.2.** Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space and  $U \subseteq V$  an open set. Let  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $C^\infty$ -function and suppose  $f$  has a non-degenerate critical point at  $u_0 \in U$ . There exists a  $C^\infty$ -coordinate system  $\varphi = (x_1, \dots, x_n): U_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  on an open neighborhood of  $u_0$  in  $U$  with  $\varphi(u_0) = 0$  such that  $[f] = f \circ \varphi^{-1}$  is given by  $\varepsilon x_1^2 + F$  on  $\varphi(U_0) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  with  $F$  a  $C^\infty$ -function of  $x_2, \dots, x_n$ .

*Remark 59.* For  $n = 1$ , this theorem just says that if  $f$  is a smooth function near the origin in  $\mathbb{R}$  with  $f(0) = f'(0) = 0$  but  $f''(0) \neq 0$  (i.e. 0 is a non-degenerate critical point of  $f$ ), then  $f = \varepsilon k^2$  for  $\varepsilon = \pm 1$  and some smooth function  $k$  near the origin with  $k(0) = 0$  but  $k'(0) \neq 0$  (as such a  $k$  provides a local  $C^\infty$ -coordinate near the origin on the real line).

**Step 1:** We show that since  $f$  is smooth and  $f(0) = 0$ , we have  $f(t) = tg(t)$  for a smooth function  $g$  near the origin. Indeed, we define

$$g(t) := \int_0^1 f'(ty) dy.$$

By the theorem on differentiation through the integral sign, we have

$$g^{(n)}(t) = \int_0^1 y^n f^{(n+1)}(ty) dy. \quad (55)$$

where  $g^{(n)}(t)$  is continuous in  $t$  since the integrand on the righthand side of (55) is continuous in  $t$  with  $y$  fixed and since the integrand on the righthand side of (55) is dominated by some constant (we are secretly applying the dominated convergence theorem here). It follows that  $g$  is a smooth function, and by the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, we have

$$g(t) = \frac{f(ty)}{t} \Big|_{y=0}^{y=1} = \frac{f(t)}{t},$$

whenever  $t \neq 0$ . In other words, we have  $f(t) = tg(t)$  for all  $t$  (including  $t = 0$  since  $f(0) = 0 = g(0)$ ).

**Step 2:** Since  $g$  is smooth and  $g(0) = f'(0) = 0$ , we can repeat the process and obtain  $f(t) = t^2 G(t)$  with  $G$  smooth near the origin. Thus  $G(0) = f''(0) \neq 0$ , so if this has the same sign as  $\varepsilon = \pm 1$  then  $f(t) = \varepsilon t^2 (\varepsilon G)(t)$  with  $\varepsilon G$  a smooth function that is positive at the origin. Hence, it admits a smooth positive square root (possibly on a smaller open neighborhood of 0), so we get the result for  $f$  by setting  $k = t\sqrt{\varepsilon G}$ . This establishes the case where  $n = 1$ .

*Proof.* We may assume that  $n = \dim V > 1$ . Additive translation has no effect on derivative maps, nor on Hessians. Thus by replacing  $U$  with  $U - u_0 = \{u - u_0 \mid u \in U\}$  and replacing  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  with  $f_{u_0}: U - u_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (where  $f_{u_0}(u - u_0) = f(u)$ ) if necessary, we may suppose  $u_0 = 0$  in  $V$  (thus  $f(0) = 0$  and  $Df(0) = 0$ ). Since the symmetric bilinear form  $H_f(0)$  is nonzero, its associated quadratic form  $q_f(0): V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is nonzero. By the structure theorem for quadratic spaces over  $\mathbb{R}$ , we may choose linear coordinates  $\{y_1, \dots, y_n\}$  on  $V$  such that  $q_f(0)$  is in standard diagonal form, say  $\varepsilon y_1^2 + \dots$  with  $\varepsilon = \pm 1$ . By replacing  $f$  with  $-f$  if necessary, we may assume that  $\varepsilon = 1$ .

Observe that  $\partial_{y_1} f(0, \mathbf{0}) = 0$  and  $\partial_{y_1}^2 f(0, \mathbf{0}) = 1 \neq 0$ . Thus the implicit function theorem implies for each  $\mathbf{y} = (y_2, \dots, y_n)$  near  $\mathbf{0}$  there exists a unique  $g(\mathbf{y})$  near 0 satisfying

$$\partial_{y_1} f(g(\mathbf{y}), \mathbf{y}) = 0,$$

(so  $g(\mathbf{0}) = 0$ ) and  $g$  is a  $C^\infty$  function. Thus if we fix  $c > 0$  then by continuity of  $g$  we conclude that for  $|a_2|, \dots, |a_n|$  sufficiently small (depending on  $c$ ) the function  $f(y_1, \mathbf{a})$  has a unique critical point at  $y_1 = g(\mathbf{a})$  in the interval  $(-c, c)$  and the second derivative at this critical point is 1. By taking  $c$  possibly smaller, we can assume that  $|a_2|, \dots, |a_n| < c$  is “sufficiently small”. So  $f(y_1, \mathbf{a})$  on  $(-c, c)$  has a unique minimum at  $y_1 = g(\mathbf{a})$  with positive second derivative there. Define the function

$$k(y_1, \mathbf{y}) = f(y_1, \mathbf{y}) - f(g(\mathbf{y}), \mathbf{y}).$$

Thus for fixed  $a_2, \dots, a_n \in (-c, c)$ , the function  $k(y_1, \mathbf{a})$  is non-negative with a unique zero at  $y_1 = g(\mathbf{a})$  and a positive second derivative at this minimum point.

Suppose that  $k(y_1, \mathbf{y})$  is the square of a  $C^\infty$  function  $h$  near the origin. By defining the  $C^\infty$  function

$$F(\mathbf{y}) := f(g(\mathbf{y}), \mathbf{y})$$

near the origin we get  $f(y_1, \mathbf{y}) = h^2 + F(\mathbf{y})$ , so we would be done as long as  $\{h, \mathbf{y}\}$  is a  $C^\infty$  coordinate system near the origin. By the inverse function theorem, this amounts to the condition that  $(\partial_{y_1} h)(0, \mathbf{0}) \neq 0$ . But such non-vanishing is clear because for  $y_1$  near 0 we see that

$$h(y_1, \mathbf{0})^2 = f(y_1, \mathbf{0}) - f(g(\mathbf{0}), \mathbf{0}) = f(y_1, \mathbf{0})$$

has Taylor expansion  $y_1^2 + \dots$  at the origin (as  $f(0, \mathbf{0}) = 0$ ,  $\partial_{y_1} f(0, \mathbf{0}) = 0$ , and  $\partial_{y_1}^2 f(0, \mathbf{0}) = \varepsilon = 1$ ), so the Taylor expansion of  $h(y_1, \mathbf{0})$  at the origin must be  $\pm y_1 + \dots$ .

It remains to show that  $k$  is the square of a  $C^\infty$  function near the origin. Indeed, let  $y'_1 = y_1 - g(\mathbf{y})$  and note that by the inverse function theorem,  $\{y'_1, \mathbf{y}\}$  is a  $C^\infty$  coordinate system near the origin. Thus if we let  $K$  denote  $k$  expressed in these coordinates, then  $K(y'_1, \mathbf{y})$  is a  $C^\infty$  function near the origin that vanishes for  $y'_1 = 0$ . By applying the fundamental theorem of calculus to  $u(t) = K(ty'_1, \mathbf{y})$  with  $y'_1, \mathbf{y}$  all fixed, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} k(y_1, \mathbf{y}) &= K(y'_1, \mathbf{y}) \\ &= \int_0^1 \partial_t K(ty'_1, \mathbf{y}) dt \\ &= y'_1 \int_0^1 (\partial_1 K)(ty'_1, \mathbf{y}) dt \\ &= y'_1 I(y_1, \mathbf{y}) \\ &= (y_1 - g(\mathbf{y})) I(y_1, \mathbf{y}) \end{aligned}$$

where we set

$$I(y_1, \mathbf{y}) = \int_0^1 (\partial_1 K)(ty'_1, \mathbf{y}) dt,$$

where the integrand is  $C^\infty$  in  $y'_1, \mathbf{y}$  (by differentiation through the integral sign and the  $C^\infty$  property of  $K$ ). Thus, we have made a factorization

$$k(y_1, \mathbf{y}) = (y_1 - g(\mathbf{y})) I(y_1, \mathbf{y}) \tag{56}$$

with  $I$  a  $C^\infty$  function near the origin. Fix  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{a}$  with  $|a_i| < c$ . As we have seen above,  $k(y_1, \mathbf{a}) \geq 0$  has a critical point with positive second derivative at its unique minimum  $y_1 = g(\mathbf{a})$  on  $(-c, c)$  with  $k(y_1, \mathbf{a})$  vanishing at this point, so the Taylor expansion for  $k(y_1, \mathbf{a})$  at  $y_1 = g(\mathbf{a})$  begins in degree 2 with positive coefficient. In particular, by considering Taylor expansions it follows from (56) that  $I(y_1, \mathbf{a})$  vanishes at  $y_1 = g(\mathbf{a})$  and has positive derivative at this point. Running through the same integration trick with the fundamental theorem of calculus again, we get

$$I(y_1, \mathbf{y}) = (y_1 - g(\mathbf{y})) J(y_1, \mathbf{y})$$

with  $J(g(\mathbf{y}), \mathbf{y}) > 0$  for  $y_1, \mathbf{y}$  near the origin. Feeding this into (56) and working with  $y'_1, \mathbf{y}$  as  $C^\infty$  coordinates near the origin we have

$$\begin{aligned} K(y'_1, \mathbf{y}) &= k(y_1, \mathbf{y}) \\ &= (y_1 - g(\mathbf{y})) I(y_1, \mathbf{y}) \\ &= (y_1 - g(\mathbf{y}))^2 J(y_1, \mathbf{y}) \\ &= y_1'^2 \tilde{J}(y'_1, \mathbf{y}) \end{aligned}$$

with  $\tilde{J}(0, \mathbf{0}) > 0$ . We may therefore extract a  $C^\infty$  positive square root of  $\tilde{J}$  near the origin, so indeed  $K$  (and thus  $k$ ) is a square of a  $C^\infty$  function near the origin.  $\square$

## 34 Construction of Vector Fields

Let  $(X, \mathcal{O})$  be a  $C^\alpha$  manifold with corners. There is an important topological consequence of the Hausdorff and second countability assumption on  $X$  that we shall use repeatedly without comment: open covers of  $X$  have locally finite refinements. This guarantees the existence of **partitions of unity** subordinate to any open covering, and this is an absolutely fundamental device used in nearly all global constructions in differential geometry. Let us record the main result.

**Theorem 34.1.** *Let  $M$  be a  $C^\alpha$  manifold and let  $\{U_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$  be an open covering of  $M$ . There exists a  $C^\alpha$  partition of unity subordinate to  $\{U_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$ : that is, a set  $\{\phi_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $C^\alpha$  functions  $\phi_i: M \rightarrow [0, 1]$  such that:*

1. *The supports  $K_i = \text{supp}(\phi_i)$  are compact and form a locally finite collection in  $M$  (i.e., each  $m \in M$  admits an open neighborhood meeting only finitely many  $K_i$ 's),*
2.  *$\sum \phi_i(m) = 1$  for all  $m \in M$  (by the first condition, this sum is locally finite - around each  $m \in M$  there is an open on which all but finitely many  $\phi_i$ 's vanish - and so there is no subtle convergence issue for  $\sum \phi_i$ ),*
3. *each  $K_i$  is contained in some  $U_{\lambda(i)}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\{V_\gamma\}_{\gamma \in \Gamma}$  be a locally finite refinement of  $\{U_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$ . For each  $m \in M$ , choose an open set  $V_{\gamma(m)}$  which contains  $m$  and let  $\psi_m$  be a  $C^\infty$  bump function at  $m$  supported in  $V_{\gamma(m)}$  (if  $\gamma(m) = \gamma(m')$ , then we set  $\psi_m = \psi_{m'}$ ). In particular  $\text{supp}(\psi_m)$  is compact in  $V_{\gamma(m)}$  and hence compact in  $M$ . Thus  $\psi := \sum_{m \in M} \psi_m$  is a perfectly straightforward sum presenting no delicate convergence problems. Moreover, it has the property that  $\psi(m) > 0$  for all  $m \in M$  (indeed  $\psi$ . Finally, we define  $\phi_i := \varphi_i / \varphi$  for all  $i \in I$ . Clearly we have  $\sum_{i \in I} \phi_i = 1$ . Moreover, since  $\varphi > 0$ ,  $\phi_i(m) \neq 0$  if and only if  $\varphi_{i(m)}(m) \neq 0$ , thus

$$\text{supp}(\phi_i) = \text{supp}(\psi_{i(m)}) \subset U_{\lambda(i(m))}$$

This shows that  $\{\phi_i\}$  is a partition of unity such that for every  $j$ ,  $\text{supp} \phi_j \subset U_i$  for some  $i \in I$ .  $\square$

As an easy application of partitions of unity let's construct lots of elements in  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  for any  $C^\alpha$  manifold  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ . Let  $\{U_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$  be any open cover and let  $f_\lambda \in \mathcal{O}(U_\lambda)$  for all  $\lambda \in \Lambda$ ; for example, the  $U_\lambda$ 's could be domains of  $C^\alpha$ -charts (on which there is a plentiful supply of  $f_\lambda$ 's). Let  $\{\phi_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a  $C^\alpha$  partition of unity subordinate to this cover, with the compact  $K_i = \text{supp}(\phi_i)$  contained in  $U_{\lambda(i)}$ . It is not difficult to see that we can make it so that many  $\phi_i$ 's are equal to 1 on rather "large" subsets of coordinate balls. That is, we can arrange that many  $\phi_i$ 's are equal to 1 on a substantial part of  $K_i$  (so all other  $\phi_{i'}$  vanish there).

Consider the product  $\phi_i f_{\lambda(i)} \in \mathcal{O}(U_{\lambda(i)})$ . This vanishes off of the compact  $K_i$ , so it vanishes on the open subset  $U_{\lambda(i)} \setminus K_i$  of  $U_{\lambda(i)}$ . Intuitively,  $\phi_i f_{\lambda(i)}$  vanishes near the "edge" of  $U_{\lambda(i)}$  in  $X$ . Hence,  $\phi_i f_{\lambda(i)} \in \mathcal{O}(U_\lambda)$  and  $0 \in \mathcal{O}(X \setminus K_i)$  are  $C^\alpha$  functions on open sets  $U_{\lambda(i)}$  and  $X \setminus K_i$  that cover  $X$ , so they uniquely "glue" to a  $C^\alpha$  function  $F_i \in \mathcal{O}(X)$ ; this is called the "extension by zero" (it is only reasonable because  $\phi_i f_{\lambda(i)}$  vanishes near the "edge" of  $U_{\lambda(i)}$  in  $X$ ).

By construction, since locally on  $X$  all but finitely many  $\phi_i$ 's vanish, it follows that locally on  $X$  all but finitely many  $F_i$ 's vanish. Hence, the summation  $F = \sum_{i \in I} F_i$  is *locally* a finite sum and thus is a perfectly straightforward sum presenting no delicate convergence problems whatsoever. In particular,  $F \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  (as this condition is local on  $X$ !). Note that for those  $i$ 's such that  $\phi_i = 1$  on a large subset  $K'_i \subseteq K_i$ , we have that  $F_i|_{K'_i} = f_{\lambda(i)}|_{K'_i}$  and  $F_j|_{K'_i} = 0$  for all  $j \neq i$  (as  $\phi_j|_{K'_i} = 0$  since all  $\phi_r \geq 0$  with  $\sum \phi_r = 1$  but  $\phi_i|_{K'_i} = 1$ ). Hence,  $F|_{K'_i} = f_{\lambda(i)}|_{K'_i}$ . To summarize, we have constructed  $F \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  such that on "large" subsets  $K'_i$  of the open  $U_{\lambda(i)}$  the function  $F$  is equal to a prescribed function  $f_{\lambda(i)}$ . In this way, we see that there is an astoundingly large collection of elements of  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  and such that elements may be built with prescribed restrictions on big closed subsets of many open coordinate domains with disjoint closures. This puts to rest any question of  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  being "small".

## 35 Globalization via Bump Functions

Let  $X$  be a  $C^\alpha$  premanifold and  $\mathcal{O}_x$  the local ring at  $x \in X$ . Let  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  be the kernel of the evaluation map  $e_x: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f \mapsto f(x)$ . By the very definition of how we add and multiply functions, it is clear that  $e_x$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra map.

Somewhat more amusing is the fact that such properties uniquely characterize the evaluation map  $e_x$ ; that is, if we focus on the  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra  $\mathcal{O}_x$  and discard the space  $X$  and point  $x$  that give rise to it, we can still define the map  $e_x$ .

**Theorem 35.1.** *Let  $e: \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra map. Then  $e$  must be equal to  $e_x$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $e(c) = c$  for all  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ , certainly  $e$  is surjective. Therefore  $\text{Ker}(e)$  is a maximal ideal in  $\mathcal{O}_x$ . Since  $\mathcal{O}_x$  is a local ring, we must have  $\text{Ker}(e) = \mathfrak{m}_x$ . This shows that  $e$  kills  $\mathfrak{m}_x$ .

It follows that  $e$  and  $e_x$  agree on  $\mathfrak{m}_x \subseteq \mathcal{O}_x$  (both vanish) and they agree on  $\mathbb{R} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_x$  (both send  $c$  to  $c$  for all  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ ). Hence, to conclude  $e = e_x$  it suffices to show  $\mathbb{R} \oplus \mathfrak{m}_x = \mathcal{O}_x$ . That is, we want that each  $f \in \mathcal{O}_x$  is uniquely



expressible as  $f = c + f_0$  with  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $f_0 \in \mathfrak{m}_x$ . The existence follows from the definition of  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  and the identity  $f = f(x) + (f - f(x))$ . As for uniqueness, we just need  $\mathbb{R} \cap \mathfrak{m}_x = 0$ , and this is clear.  $\square$

In the  $C^\infty$  case, we can prove that not only the evaluation map at  $x$  but even the notion of tangent vector at  $x$  is intrinsic to the  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra  $\mathcal{O}_x$  and does not need to “know” about  $X$  and  $x$ . More specifically, recall that in the definition of tangent vector at  $x$  we had two conditions on the  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map  $\partial : \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  for it to be a point-derivation: it has to satisfy the Leibnitz Rule at  $x$ ,

$$\partial(fg) = f(x)\partial(g) + g(x)\partial(f) = e_x(f)\partial(g) + e_x(g)\partial(f)$$

for all  $f, g \in \mathcal{O}_x$ , and it has to kill all  $f \in \mathcal{O}_x$  vanishing to first order. The Leibnitz Rule condition only uses the data of the  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra  $\mathcal{O}_x$  and the mapping  $e_x$  that we have proved above is intrinsic to  $\mathcal{O}_x$ . However, the condition of killing elements vanishing to order 1 does not seem to be intrinsic to  $\mathcal{O}_x$  because the notion of “vanishing to order 1” is defined in terms of expressing germs in local  $C^\alpha$  coordinates near  $x$  on  $X$  rather than in terms of  $\mathcal{O}_x$  itself. Remarkably, in the smooth case the concept of “vanishing to order 1” is intrinsic to the ring  $\mathcal{O}_x$ : one can prove that such elements are exactly those elements that are finite sums  $\sum g_i h_i$  with  $g_i, h_i \in \mathfrak{m}_x$ . This is the real content in the proof of the following result which shows that the notion of point-derivation at  $x$  in the smooth case is intrinsic to the  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra  $\mathcal{O}_x$ :

**Theorem 35.2.** *If  $X$  is smooth, then any  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map  $\partial : \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfying the Leibnitz Rule at  $x$  automatically kills those  $f \in \mathcal{O}_x$  that vanish to first order.*

*Proof.* We shall prove that if  $f$  vanishes to first order at  $x$  and  $\{t_1, \dots, t_n\}$  are local  $C^\infty$  coordinates near  $x$  with  $t_j(x) = 0$  then  $f = \sum t_j h_j$  for  $h_j \in \mathcal{O}_x$  with  $h_j(x) = 0$ . (If  $f$  is  $C^\alpha$  for  $1 \leq \alpha < \infty$  then one only gets  $h_j$  of class  $C^{\alpha-1}$ , so the proof only works in the  $C^\infty$  case.) Using a local  $C^\infty$  chart, we can shift our problem to the origin  $x = 0$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  with its standard coordinate functions  $t_1, \dots, t_n$ , and with  $\mathbb{R}^n$  considered as a  $C^\infty$  manifold with its usual  $C^\infty$  structure. Let  $\partial : \mathcal{O}_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear mapping that satisfies

$$\partial(fg) = f(0)\partial(g) + g(0)\partial(f).$$

We want to prove that  $\partial(f) = 0$  whenever  $f$  vanishes to first order. We claim that near the origin,  $f = \sum t_j h_j$  for smooth functions  $h_j$  that vanish at the origin. If this is true, then  $\partial(f) = \sum \partial(t_j h_j)$  and the Leibnitz Rule at the origin gives

$$\partial(t_j h_j) = t_j(0)\partial(h_j) + h_j(0)\partial(t_j) = 0,$$

so  $\partial(f) = 0$  as desired.

To find the expression  $f = \sum t_j h_j$  with smooth  $h_j$  vanishing at the origin, we use the first-order Taylor formula: this says that for  $x$  near the origin

$$f(t) = f(0) + \int_0^1 Df(ut)(t)du = \int_0^1 \sum_j (\partial_j f)(ut) t_j du = \sum t_j h_j$$

with  $h_j(t) = \int_0^1 (\partial_j f)(ut) du$ . To see that  $h_j$  is smooth we use the theorem on differentiation through the integral and the fact that  $\partial_j f$  is smooth (as  $f$  is smooth). Clearly  $h_j(0) = 0$  because  $(\partial_j f)(0)$  vanishes due to the assumption that  $f$  vanishes to first order.  $\square$

Note that if we were to try to push through the above proof in the  $C^\alpha$  case with finite  $\alpha \geq 1$ , we would run into a serious problem:  $\partial_j f$  would only be  $C^{\alpha-1}$ , and so  $h_j$  would only be  $C^{\alpha-1}$ . This suggests that in the local ring  $\mathcal{O}_0$ , it may not be generally possible to express a  $C^\alpha$  function  $f$  which vanishes to first order as a sum  $f = \sum t_j h_j$  with  $h_j \in \mathcal{O}_0$ . Indeed, this is usually impossible. A simple counterexample on the real line is  $f(t) = t^{3/2}$ . This is  $C^1$  and vanishes to first order at the origin, but we cannot write  $f = th$  near the origin with  $h$  a  $C^1$  (or even differentiable!) function, as we must take  $h(t) = \sqrt{t}$  and this is not differentiable at the origin. Thus, we see that the smoothness hypothesis is crucial for the truth of the result.

### 35.1 The Global Notion

Inspired by Theorem (35.2), for smooth manifolds  $X$  we are led to consider the notion of a **global point derivation at  $x \in X$**  to be an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map  $D : \mathcal{O}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfying the “Leibnitz Rule at  $x$ ”:

$$D(fg) = f(x)D(g) + g(x)D(f)$$

for all  $f, g \in \mathcal{O}(X)$ . Such  $D$ ’s form an  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space in the evident manner. We shall prove that this apparently global definition agrees with our local definition of tangent vectors in a precise sense.

**Lemma 35.3.** *Assume  $X$  is a smooth Hausdorff premanifold. If  $f, g \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  agree on an open set containing  $x$ , then  $D(f) = D(g)$ . In particular, if the germ  $[(X, f)] \in \mathcal{O}_x$  vanishes, then  $D(f) = 0$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $D(f) - D(g) = D(f - g)$ , we may assume  $f$  vanishes on an open  $U$  around  $x$  and we want to conclude  $D(f) = 0$ . Let  $(\phi', U')$  be a  $C^\infty$  chart with  $U' \subseteq U$ . By the theory of bump functions on open sets in a vector space, on the open set  $\phi'(U')$  there is a  $C^\infty$  function  $\rho$  on  $\phi(U')$  with compact support such that  $\rho = 1$  near  $\phi(x)$ . Thus, pulling  $\rho$  back via  $\phi'$ , we get a  $C^\infty$  function  $\rho \circ \phi' : U' \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  that equals 1 near  $x$  and has compact support  $K$ . But  $X$  is Hausdorff, so  $K$  is closed in  $X$  (and not merely in  $U'$ ). It follows from openness of  $X \setminus K$  in  $X$  that  $\rho \circ \phi'^{-1} \in \mathcal{O}(U')$  and  $0 \in \mathcal{O}(X \setminus K)$  agree on overlaps and hence uniquely glue to a global  $C^\infty$  function.

Thus, we get  $g \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  that equals 1 near  $x$  and vanishes outside of the set  $K \subseteq U$ . But  $f$  vanishes on  $U$ , so  $gf = 0$ . Applying  $D$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= D(0) \\ &= D(fg) \\ &= f(x)D(g) + g(x)D(f) \\ &= 0 + D(f) \\ &= D(f). \end{aligned}$$

□

*Remark 60.* Observe that the preceding proof rested crucially on the existence of bump functions and the Hausdorff property of  $X$ .

**Lemma 35.4.** *Assume  $X$  is smooth and Hausdorff. The natural map of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras  $\pi_x : \mathcal{O}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_x$  given by  $f \mapsto [(X, f)]$  is surjective.*

*Proof.* Pick a representative  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  for an element of  $\mathcal{O}_x$ . We seek an element in  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  whose restriction to  $U$  agrees with  $f$  near  $x$ . As in the preceding proof, we can find  $g \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  with  $g = 1$  near  $x$  and  $g = 0$  outside of a compact set  $K \subseteq U$ . Hence,  $g|_U \cdot f \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  agrees with  $f$  near  $x$  but vanishes outside of  $K$ . Since  $X \setminus K$  is open, we can glue  $g|_U \cdot f \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  and  $0 \in \mathcal{O}(X \setminus K)$  to get  $\tilde{f} \in \mathcal{O}(X)$  that agrees with  $f$  near  $x$ . □

For the remainder of the discussion, we assume  $X$  to be smooth and Hausdorff. By Lemma (35.4), we view  $\mathcal{O}_x$  as a quotient of  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  (say a  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces). By Lemma (35.3), the  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map  $D : \mathcal{O}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by a global point derivation at  $x$  kills the kernel of the quotient map  $\pi_x : \mathcal{O}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_x$  and hence uniquely factors as  $D = [D] \circ \pi_x$  for an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map  $[D] : \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . This linear map satisfies the Leibnitz Rule at  $x$  (and so it is a tangent vector at  $x$  by Theorem (35.2)!). Indeed, for any  $f_x, g_x \in \mathcal{O}_x$  we have  $f_x = \pi_x(f)$  and  $g_x = \pi_x(g)$  for  $f, g \in \mathcal{O}(X)$ , so since  $\pi_x$  carries products to products we get

$$\begin{aligned} [D](f_x g_x) &= [D](\pi_x(fg)) \\ &= D(fg) \\ &= f(x)D(g) + g(x)D(f) \\ &= f_x(x)[D](g_x) + g_x(x)[D](f_x). \end{aligned}$$

Conversely, if  $\partial \in T_x(X)$  is a tangent vector in our sense, then composing  $\partial : \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  with  $\pi_x$  gives  $D = \partial \circ \pi_x$  that is readily checked to be a global point derivation at  $x$ . Hence,  $D \mapsto [D]$  defines a surjective  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map from the  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space of global point derivations at  $x$  onto  $T_x(X)$ . Lemma (35.3) and Lemma (35.4) ensure that  $[D] = 0$  if and only if  $D = 0$ , and hence we really have an isomorphism from the  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space of global point derivations at  $x$  onto  $T_x(X)$ . Thus, for smooth  $X$  we have obtained an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear isomorphism between the tangent space at  $x \in X$  as defined in the course text and the local definition that we have used as our foundation.

## 36 Manifold with Corners

Let  $W$  be an  $m$ -dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space where  $m \geq 1$ . For  $1 \leq k \leq m$ , a  $k$ -**sector** in  $W$  is a non-empty subset of the form

$$\Sigma = \{w \in W \mid \ell_1(w) \geq c_1, \dots, \ell_k(w) \geq c_k\} \quad (57)$$

with  $c_1, \dots, c_k \in \mathbb{R}$  and linearly independent  $\ell_1, \dots, \ell_k \in W^\vee$ . We often use the shorthand notation  $\Sigma = \{\ell_1 \geq c_1, \dots, \ell_k \geq c_k\}$  to denote (57). Observe that if  $w \in W$  is a point, then the translation  $w + \Sigma$  is also a  $k$ -sector since

$$w + \Sigma = \{\ell_1 \geq c_1 + \ell_1(w), \dots, \ell_k \geq c_k + \ell_k(w)\}.$$

A 0-**sector** is  $\Sigma = W$ . A **sector**  $\Sigma \subseteq W$  is a  $k$ -sector for some  $0 \leq k \leq m$ .

**Lemma 36.1.** *Let  $\Sigma = \{\ell_1 \geq c_1, \dots, \ell_k \geq c_k\}$  be a  $k$ -sector. There are exactly  $k$  translated hyperplanes  $H$  in  $W$  such that  $H \cap \partial\Sigma$  contains a non-empty open set in  $H$ . In particular, these  $H$ 's are of the form  $\{\ell_i = c_i\}$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . In particular, the subset  $\Sigma \subseteq W$  uniquely determines  $k$  and the pairs  $(\ell_i, c_i)$  up to positive scaling.*

*Proof.* Extend  $\{\ell_1, \dots, \ell_k\}$  to an ordered basis  $\ell = (\ell_1, \dots, \ell_k, \dots, \ell_m)$  of  $W^\vee$  and let  $\mathbf{e} = (e_1, \dots, e_m)$  be the ordered basis of  $W$  whose dual basis is given by  $\ell$ . Thus we have

$$\ell_i(e_j) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = j \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

for all  $1 \leq i, j \leq m$ . Let  $w = \sum_{i=1}^k c_i e_i$  and let  $\Sigma_w$  denote the translated  $k$ -sector  $\Sigma - w$ . Then after identifying  $W$  with  $\mathbb{R}^m$  using the ordered basis  $\mathbf{e}$ , we see that

$$\Sigma_w = [0, \infty)^k \times \mathbb{R}^{m-k}.$$

It suffices to show that there are exactly  $k$  hyperplanes  $H$  in  $W$  such that  $H \cap \partial\Sigma_w$  contains a non-empty open set in  $H$ . First let us calculate  $\partial\Sigma_w$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{int } \Sigma_w &= \text{int}([0, \infty)^k \times \mathbb{R}^{m-k}) \\ &= \text{int}([0, \infty))^k \times \text{int}(\mathbb{R})^{m-k} \\ &= (0, \infty)^k \times \mathbb{R}^{m-k}. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\partial\Sigma_w = \bigcup_{i=1}^k [0, \infty)^{i-1} \times \{0\} \times [0, \infty)^{k-i} \times \mathbb{R}^{m-k},$$

where we make the convention that  $[0, \infty)^0 = \{0\}$  in the union above. Thus  $\partial\Sigma_w$  is the union of  $k$  sets  $\Sigma_w \cap H_i = \partial\Sigma_w \cap H_i$  where  $H_i = \{\ell_i = 0\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , each of which contains a non-empty open in the hyperplane  $H_i$ , namely

$$U_i = \{\ell_i = 0\} \cap \bigcap_{j \neq i} \{\ell_j > 0\}.$$

Assume for a contradiction that  $H \subseteq W$  is some other hyperplane such that  $H \cap \partial\Sigma_w$  contains a non-empty open subset in  $H$ . Since  $H \neq H_i$ , the intersection  $H \cap H_i$  is a proper subspace of  $H$  for all  $i$ . Hence,  $H \cap \partial\Sigma_w$  is contained in the union of the  $H \cap H_i$ 's, but this implies that a finite union of proper subspaces of  $H$  contains a non-empty open subset in  $H$  which is a contradiction. Since the subset  $\{\ell_i = c_i\}$  in  $W$  determines the pair  $(\ell_i, c_i)$  up to a nonzero scaling factor, it remains to prove that if we switch the order of any of the initial defining inequalities then the sector changes. But this is obvious.  $\square$

The lemma above makes the following definition well-posed.

**Definition 36.1.** Let  $\Sigma = \{\ell_1 \geq c_1, \dots, \ell_k \geq c_k\}$  be a  $k$ -sector in  $W$ . For each  $1 \leq i \leq k$  let  $H_i = \{\ell_i = c_i\}$  be the  $k$  translated hyperplanes which are uniquely determined by the subset  $\Sigma \subseteq W$ . We also set

$$U_i = \{\ell_i = 0\} \cap \bigcap_{j \neq i} \{\ell_j > 0\}.$$

Notice that the topological boundary of  $\Sigma$  in  $W$  is given by

$$\partial\Sigma = \bigcup_{i=1}^k \{\ell_1 \geq c_1, \dots, \ell_i = c_i, \dots, \ell_k \geq c_k\}.$$

A point  $x \in \Sigma$  has **index**  $r$  if  $\ell_i(x) = c_i$  for exactly  $r$  indices  $i$  (with  $0 \leq r \leq k$ ). We define  $\Sigma_r$  to be the set of points  $x \in \Sigma$  with index  $r$ , or equivalently  $x \in H_j$  for exactly  $r$  values of  $j$ .

**Example 36.1.** Let  $\Sigma = [0, \infty)^3 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^3$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma_0 &= \{x_1 > 0, x_2 > 0, x_3 > 0\} \\ \Sigma_1 &= \{x_1 = 0, x_2 > 0, x_3 > 0\} \cup \{x_1 > 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 > 0\} \cup \{x_1 > 0, x_2 > 0, x_3 = 0\} \\ \Sigma_2 &= \{x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 > 0\} \cup \{x_1 = 0, x_2 > 0, x_3 = 0\} \cup \{x_1 > 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0\} \\ \Sigma_3 &= \{x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0\} = \{(0, 0, 0)^\top\} \end{aligned}$$

The following result summarizes some nice topological relations (easily visualized by picturing the non-negative orthant  $\Sigma = [0, \infty)^3 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^3 = W$  and the 2-sector  $\Sigma = [0, \infty)^2 \times \mathbb{R}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ ).

**Theorem 36.2.** Let  $\Sigma = \{\ell_1 \geq c_1, \dots, \ell_k \geq c_k\}$  be a  $k$ -sector in  $W$ .

1. We have  $\text{int } \Sigma = \Sigma_0$  and  $\Sigma = \overline{\Sigma_0}$ .
2. For  $1 \leq r \leq k$ , we have  $\Sigma_r \neq \emptyset$  and the connected components of  $\Sigma_r$  are open in  $\Sigma_r$  and are given by the intersections of  $\Sigma_r$  with  $H_{i_1} \cap \dots \cap H_{i_r}$  for each  $1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_r \leq k$ , with this intersection also open in  $H_{i_1} \cap \dots \cap H_{i_r}$ .
3. For  $0 \leq r \leq k$ , we have  $\overline{\Sigma_r} = \bigcup_{r' \geq r} \Sigma_{r'}$ .
4. For  $r \geq 1$ ,  $\Sigma_r$  is the set of  $x \in \Sigma$  that lie in the closure of exactly  $r$  connected components of  $\Sigma_1$ .

*Remark 61.* In particular, using just  $\Sigma$  and  $\Sigma_1$  we can locally topologically encode the property of having index  $r \geq 0$ :  $x \in \Sigma$  has index  $r$  if and only if  $x$  admits arbitrarily small open neighborhoods  $U$  in  $\Sigma$  that meet the closures of exactly  $r$  connected components of  $U_1 = U \cap \Sigma_1$ . This is tremendously important for globalization to manifolds with corners.

### 36.1 Calculus on Sectors

Let  $V$  and  $V'$  be two finite-dimensional vector spaces over  $\mathbb{R}$ , and let  $\Sigma \subseteq V$  and  $\Sigma' \subseteq V'$  be two sectors. Fix  $1 \leq p \leq \infty$ . Suppose that we are given non-empty open sets  $U \subseteq \Sigma$  and  $U' \subseteq \Sigma'$  and let  $f: U \rightarrow U'$  be a  $C^p$ -morphism. Then for each  $x \in U$  there is a derivative  $Df(x)$  that is a linear map  $V \rightarrow V'$ , so by the Chain Rule if  $f$  is a  $C^p$  isomorphism then  $Df(x)$  is a linear isomorphism and hence  $\dim V = \dim V'$ . In general, if  $f$  is a  $C^p$  map then it is impossible to say anything about the index of  $f(x) \in U' \subseteq \Sigma'$  in terms of the index of  $x \in U \subseteq \Sigma$ . For example, the index could go up or down; consider putting  $[0, 1)$  into  $\mathbb{R}$  or along the edge of a square in the plane. However, to get the theory of  $C^p$ -premanifolds with corners off of the ground we just need to build a consistent theory of local  $C^p$ -charts, and so rather than studying general  $C^p$  maps what we need to study are  $C^p$  isomorphisms. That is, we need to prove:

**Theorem 36.3.** If  $f: U \rightarrow U'$  is a  $C^p$ -isomorphism then  $f(x)$  has the same index in  $\Sigma'$  as  $x$  in  $\Sigma$  for all  $x \in U$ . In other words, we have  $f(U \cap \Sigma_r) = U' \cap \Sigma'_r$ .

*Proof.* To prove the theorem, let  $g: U' \rightarrow U$  be the  $C^p$ -inverse of  $f$ . Since  $U$  and  $U'$  are non-empty, the Chain Rule ensures  $\dim V = \dim V'$ ; let  $n$  be this common dimension. Let  $U_r = U \cap \Sigma_r$  and let  $U'_r = U' \cap \Sigma'_r$ . We first show that  $f$  must carry  $U_0$  into  $U'_0$  and  $g$  must carry  $U'_0$  into  $U_0$ , so  $U'_0 = f(U_0)$ . By symmetry, we consider  $f$ .

First note that  $U_0$  is an open set in  $V$  since it is the intersection of two open subsets of  $V$ :

$$U_0 = U \cap \Sigma_0 = U \cap \text{int } \Sigma.$$

The map  $f|_{U_0}$  is therefore a  $C^p$  mapping in the usual sense, with  $(Df|_{U_0})(u_0) = Df(u_0)$  as linear maps from  $V$  to  $V'$ . Since  $Df(u_0)$  is a linear isomorphism (by the Chain Rule for  $f$  and  $g$ ) the mapping  $f|_{U_0}: U_0 \rightarrow V'$  between open sets in vector spaces satisfies the hypotheses for the usual inverse function theorem at  $u_0$  (that is, its total derivative map at  $u_0$  is a linear isomorphism). Thus, by the usual inverse function theorem,  $f|_{U_0}$  gives a  $C^p$  isomorphism between small opens around  $u_0$  and  $f(u_0)$  in  $U_0$  and  $V'$  respectively. In particular,  $f(U_0) \subseteq U' \subseteq V'$  contains an open set around  $f(u_0)$  in  $V'$ . Hence,

$$f(u_0) \in U' \cap \text{int}_{V'}(\Sigma') = U' \cap \Sigma'_0 = U'_0$$

as desired.

For  $r > 1$ , note that  $U_r$  is topologically determined in  $U$  by  $U_1$  and  $U_0$ . More precisely,  $U_r$  is the set of points  $x \in U \setminus U_0$  admitting arbitrarily small open neighborhoods meeting the closures of exactly  $r$  connected components of  $U_1$ . The same holds for  $U'_r$  in terms of  $U'_0$  and  $U'_1$ , so since  $f$  and  $g$  are inverse homeomorphisms and we have already proved that they identify  $U_0$  and  $U'_0$  we are reduced to the case of index 1. If  $x \in U_1$  then  $f(x) \notin f(U_0) = U'_0$ , so  $f(x)$  has index at least 1 in  $U' \subseteq \Sigma'$ . The problem is to prove that  $f(x)$  has index exactly 1. Once this is settled, it makes sense to define the notion of a  $C^p$ -premanifold with corners (in the sense of being a structured  $\mathbb{R}$ -space locally isomorphic to an open in a sector in a vector space equipped with its natural  $\mathbb{R}$ -space structure given by  $C^p$ -functions on its open subsets), but we will need to show more, namely that the locally closed set of points with a given index has a natural structure of  $C^p$ -premanifold. We take up these issues and more in what follows.

Using the notation as in the preceding discussion, we have  $x \in U_1$  and we seek a contradiction if  $f(x) \in U'_r$  with  $r \geq 2$ , which is to say (after relabelling) that we seek a contradiction if  $f(x) \in H'_1 \cap H'_2$  for two of the translated hyperplanes that give “faces” of  $\Sigma'$  (this possibility can only occur if  $n \geq 2$ , so we now assume this to be the case). By translation, we may and do assume (for simplicity of language) that  $x$  and  $f(x)$  are the origin in their respective vector spaces. In particular, any translated hyperplane through these points is a genuine hyperplane.

We claim that in fact if  $f(x) \in H'$  for a hyperplane  $H'$  that gives a “face” of  $\Sigma'$  then the map  $Df(x): V \rightarrow V'$  carries  $H$  into  $H'$ , where  $H$  is the unique hyperplane in  $V$  that is a “face” of  $\Sigma$  and contains  $x$  (here we use that  $x$  has index 1, so  $x \in \Sigma_1$ ). Granting this, it follows that  $Df(x)$  sends  $H$  into  $H'_1 \cap H'_2$ , but this is impossible for dimension

reasons because  $Df(x): V \rightarrow V'$  is an isomorphism and  $H'_1 \cap H'_2$  has codimension 2 in  $V'$ . This contradiction settles the problem for points with index 1, granting the above claim that must now be proved.

By suitable choice of linear coordinates on  $V$  and  $V'$ , we can assume  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$ , and  $\{t_n = 0\}$  is the unique hyperplane  $H$  in  $V$  through the origin  $x$  giving a face of  $\Sigma$ , and that associated to this hyperplane the inequality “ $t_n \geq 0$ ” (rather than “ $-t_n \geq 0$ ”) arises in the definition of the sector  $\Sigma$ . We can likewise suppose  $V' = \mathbb{R}^n$  with  $H' = \{t'_n = 0\}$ , and that “ $t'_n \geq 0$ ” is the corresponding inequality that arises in the definition of  $\Sigma'$ . Since  $x$  is a point of index 1, near  $x$  an open set in  $\Sigma$  is open in the half-space  $\{t_n \geq 0\}$ . Thus, since our problems are local near  $x$ , we may replace  $\Sigma$  with  $\mathbf{H} = \{t_n \geq 0\}$  and  $\Sigma'$  with  $\mathbf{H}' = \{t'_n \geq 0\}$  to reduce to the setup in the following result.  $\square$

**Theorem 36.4.** *Let  $V$  and  $V'$  be finite-dimensional nonzero vector spaces over  $\mathbb{R}$ , and let  $\mathbf{H} = \{\ell \geq 0\}$  and  $\mathbf{H}' = \{\ell' \geq 0\}$  be closed half-spaces defined by nonzero linear functionals  $\ell \in V^\vee$  and  $\ell' \in V'^\vee$ . Let  $U \subseteq \mathbf{H}$  be an open subset around a point  $x \in \partial\mathbf{H} = \{\ell = 0\}$  and let  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbf{H}'$  be a  $C^1$ -map such that  $f(x) \in \partial\mathbf{H}' = \{\ell' = 0\}$ . The map  $Df(x): V \rightarrow V'$  sends the hyperplane  $\partial\mathbf{H}$  into the hyperplane  $\partial\mathbf{H}'$ .*

## 36.2 $C^p$ -Structure on Singular Strata

**Definition 36.2.** For  $0 \leq p \leq \infty$ , a  $C^p$  **premanifold with corners** is a structured  $R$ -space  $(X, \mathcal{O})$  that is locally isomorphic (in the sense of structured  $\mathbb{R}$ -spaces) to an open subset of a sector in a finite-dimensional vector space (equipped with its natural  $\mathbb{R}$ -space structure given by  $C^p$ -functions on open subsets of itself). If the underlying topological space is Hausdorff and second-countable, then we call it a  $C^p$ -**manifold with corners**. We usually write  $X$  rather than  $(X, \mathcal{O})$ .

In view of the local results on sectors, we may use any  $C^p$ -chart to determine the property of  $x \in X$  having index  $r \geq 0$ , and the subset  $X_r \subseteq X$  of points with index  $r$  is locally closed in  $X$ . The subsets  $X_{\geq r} = \cup_{i \geq r} X_i$  are closed in  $X$ , and  $X_{\geq 1}$  is called the **boundary** of  $X$  and is denoted  $\partial X$ ; the intrinsic notion (that makes no reference to an ambient topological space containing  $X$ ) must not be confused with the (extrinsic) notion of topological boundary for a subset of a topological space.

## 36.3 Whitney’s Extension Theorem

**Theorem 36.5.** (*Whitney*). *Let  $V$  and  $V'$  be finite-dimensional nonzero vector spaces over  $\mathbb{R}$  and let  $\Sigma \subseteq V$  be a sector. Let  $U \subseteq \Sigma$  be an open subset and  $x_0 \in U$  a point. Fix  $0 \leq p \leq \infty$ .*

*Any  $C^p$  map  $f: U \rightarrow V'$  locally extends to a  $C^p$  map on an open neighborhood of  $x_0$  in  $V$ . That is, there exists an open set  $\tilde{U} \subseteq V$  around  $x_0$  and a  $C^p$  map  $\tilde{f}: \tilde{U} \rightarrow V'$  such that  $\tilde{f}|_{U \cap \tilde{U}} = f$ .*

## 37 The Derivative of a $C^p$ -Map

Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be two  $C^p$ -premanifolds and let  $F: X \rightarrow Y$  be a  $C^p$ -mapping. Let  $x \in X$  be a point and let  $y = F(x)$ . We can define a linear mapping  $dF(x): T_x(X) \rightarrow T_y(Y)$  called the **derivative** of  $F$  at  $x$  as follows: if  $\vec{v} \in T_x(X)$  is a tangent vector at  $x$  (so it is a point-derivation  $\vec{v}: \mathcal{O}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ), then we define

$$dF(x)(\vec{v}) = \vec{v} \circ F^*$$

with  $F^*: \mathcal{O}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y,y}$  the “pullback map” defined on germs via  $f \mapsto f \circ F$ . That  $\vec{v} \circ F^*: \mathcal{O}_{Y,y} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a point-derivation at  $y$  and that the resulting map of sets  $dF(x): T_x(X) \rightarrow T_y(Y)$  sending  $\vec{v}$  to  $\vec{v} \circ F^*$  is  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear follows from the fact that  $F^*: \mathcal{O}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y,y}$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra map. Indeed, let  $[V, f]_y$  and  $[V, g]_y$  be two germs at  $y$  (with  $V$  being a sufficiently small neighborhood of  $y$ ). Then working with representatives, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\vec{v} \circ F^*)(f \cdot g) &= \vec{v}(F^*(f \cdot g)) \\ &= \vec{v}(F^*(f) \cdot F^*(g)) \\ &= \vec{v}(F^*(f)) \cdot F^*(g)(x) + F^*(f)(x) \cdot \vec{v}(F^*(g)) \\ &= (\vec{v} \circ F^*)(f) \cdot g(y) + f(y) \cdot (\vec{v} \circ F^*)(g). \end{aligned}$$

This establishes Leibnitz Rule. Similarly, for  $r \in \mathbb{R}$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\vec{v} \circ F^*)(f + rg) &= \vec{v}(F^*(f + rg)) \\ &= \vec{v}(F^*(f) + rF^*(g)) \\ &= \vec{v}(F^*(f)) + r\vec{v}(F^*(g)) \\ &= (\vec{v} \circ F^*)(f) + r(\vec{v} \circ F^*)(g). \end{aligned}$$

This establishes  $\mathbb{R}$ -linearity.

Now let  $(U, \varphi)$  and  $(V, \psi)$  be respective  $C^p$  charts centered at  $x$  and  $y$  in  $X$  and  $Y$  respectively, with  $\varphi: U \simeq \varphi(U) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$  and  $\psi: V \simeq \varphi(V) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  having respective component functions  $\varphi = (\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_m)$  and  $\psi = (\psi_1, \dots, \psi_n)$

on the source and target. Thus,  $T_x(X)$  has the ordered basis  $\{\partial_{\varphi_i}|_x\}$  and  $T_y(Y)$  has the ordered basis  $\{\partial_{\psi_j}|_y\}$ . It is natural to ask for the matrix of the linear map  $dF(x) : T_x(X) \rightarrow T_y(Y)$  with respect to these ordered bases.

**Theorem 37.1.** *Write  $F_j = \psi_j \circ F$  for each  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . The matrix of  $dF(x)$  with respect to the ordered bases  $\{\partial_{\varphi_i}|_x\}$  and  $\{\partial_{\psi_j}|_y\}$  has  $(j, i)$ -entry given by  $(\partial_{\varphi_i} F_j)(x)$ .*

*Proof.* By replacing  $U$  with  $U \cap F^{-1}(V)$  if necessary, we may assume that  $F|_U$  lands in  $V$ . Observe that for each  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} dF(x)(\partial_{\varphi_i}|_x)(\psi_j) &= (\partial_{\varphi_i} \circ F^*)(\psi_j)|_x \\ &= \partial_{\varphi_i}(\psi_j \circ F)(x) \\ &= (\partial_{\varphi_i} F_j)(x) \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$dF(x)(\partial_{\varphi_i}|_x) = \sum_{j=1}^n ((\partial_{\varphi_i} F_j)(x)) \partial_{\psi_j}|_y.$$

□

*Remark 62.* Recall that  $\varphi : U \xrightarrow{\sim} \varphi(U) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$  is a  $C^p$ -mapping between two  $C^p$ -premanifolds. Let's calculate the derivative of  $\varphi$  at  $x$ : if  $\varphi(x) = (t_1, \dots, t_m) = \mathbf{t}$ , where the  $t_j$  denote the standard coordinates of  $\mathbb{R}^m$ , then by definition  $\varphi_j = t_j \circ \varphi$ , so we have

$$\begin{aligned} d\varphi(x)(\partial_{\varphi_i}|_x)(t_j) &= (\partial_{\varphi_i} \circ \varphi^*)(t_j)|_x \\ &= \partial_{\varphi_i}(t_j \circ \varphi)(x) \\ &= (\partial_{\varphi_i} \varphi_j)(x). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$d\varphi(x)(\partial_{\varphi_i}|_x) = \partial_{t_i}|_t.$$

### 37.0.1 The Chain Rule

**Theorem 37.2.** *Let  $G : X'' \rightarrow X$  and  $F : X' \rightarrow X$  be  $C^p$  mappings between  $C^p$  premanifolds. For any  $x'' \in X''$  with  $G(x'') = x' \in X'$  and  $F(x') = x \in X$ , the composite linear mapping*

$$(dF)(G(x'')) \circ dG(x'') : T_{x''}(X'') \rightarrow T_{x'}(X') \rightarrow T_x(X)$$

*is equal to  $d(F \circ G)(x'')$ .*

*Proof.* We choose a tangent vector  $\bar{v}'' \in T_{x''}(X'')$ , so we want to prove

$$d(F \circ G)(x'')(\bar{v}'') = (dF)(G(x''))(dG(x'')(\bar{v}''))$$

in  $T_x(X)$ . This is an equality of point derivations  $\mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , and by the definitions of the derivative mappings the left side is  $\bar{v}'' \circ (F \circ G)^*$  and the right side is  $(\bar{v}'' \circ G^*) \circ F^* = \bar{v}'' \circ (G^* \circ F^*)$ . Hence, it suffices to show that the composite of the mappings  $F^* : \mathcal{O}_x \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{x'}$  and  $G^* : \mathcal{O}_{x'} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{x''}$  is equal to  $(F \circ G)^*$ ; that is  $(F \circ G)^* = G^* \circ F^*$ , however this is clear. □

## 37.1 Properties of Derivative Mappings

Let  $(U, \varphi)$  and  $(V, \psi)$  be respective  $C^p$  charts centered at  $x$  and  $y$  in  $X$  and  $Y$  respectively, with  $\varphi : U \xrightarrow{\sim} \varphi(U) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$  and  $\psi : V \xrightarrow{\sim} \psi(V) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  having respective component functions  $\varphi = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$  and  $\psi = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$  on the source and target. Thus,  $T_x(X)$  has the ordered basis  $\{\partial_{x_i}|_x\}$  and  $T_y(Y)$  has the ordered basis  $\{\partial_{y_j}|_y\}$ . It is natural to ask for the matrix of the linear map  $dF(x) : T_x(X) \rightarrow T_y(Y)$  with respect to these ordered bases.

**Theorem 37.3.** *Write  $F_j = y_j \circ F$  for each  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . The matrix of  $dF(x)$  with respect to the ordered bases  $\{\partial_{x_i}|_x\}$  and  $\{\partial_{y_j}|_y\}$  has  $(j, i)$ -entry given by  $(\partial_{x_i} F_j)(x)$ .*

*Proof.* By replacing  $U$  with  $U \cap F^{-1}(V)$  if necessary, we may assume that  $F|_U$  lands in  $V$ . Observe that for each  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} dF(x)(\partial_{x_i}|_x)(y_j) &= (\partial_{x_i} \circ F^*)(y_j)|_x \\ &= \partial_{x_i}(y_j \circ F)(x) \\ &= (\partial_{x_i} F_j)(x) \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$dF(x)(\partial_{x_i}|_x) = \sum_{j=1}^n ((\partial_{x_i} F_j)(x)) \partial_{y_j}|_y.$$

In particular, if  $t = \varphi(x)$ , then we have

$$\begin{aligned} d\varphi(x)(\partial_{x_i}|_x) &= \sum_{j=1}^n ((\partial_{x_i} \varphi_j)(x)) \partial_{t_j}|_t. \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n ((\partial_{x_i} x_j)(x)) \partial_{t_j}|_t \\ &= \partial_{t_i}|_t. \end{aligned}$$

□

## 37.2 Parametric Curves and Velocity Vectors

Let  $X$  be a  $C^p$  premanifold with corners. A **parametrized  $C^p$  curve** at  $x \in X$  is a  $C^p$  map  $c: I \rightarrow X$  with  $I \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  a nontrivial (not a point nor the empty set) interval,  $0 \in I$ , and  $c(0) = p$ . If  $x \notin \partial X$ , then we also require  $0$  to be in the interior of  $I$ . Note that a parametrized curve is the data of the mapping  $c$  and it may not be injective or have smooth image. For instance, the map  $c: (-1, 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  defined by  $c(t) = (t^2, t^3)$  has image contained in the locus  $x_2^2 - x_1^3$  in the plane that has a cusp at the origin. The map  $c': (-1/2, 1/2) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  defined by  $c'(t) = c(2t)$  has the same image as  $c$ , but we consider  $c'$  different than  $c$ . Intuitively,  $c'$  moves twice as quickly as  $c$ .

**Definition 37.1.** Let  $I \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  be a nontrivial interval and let  $\gamma: I \rightarrow X$  be a  $C^p$  mapping. For each  $a \in I$ , the **velocity vector** to  $\gamma$  at  $a$  is

$$\gamma'(a) := d\gamma(a)(\partial_t|_a) \in T_{\gamma(a)}(X)$$

where  $\partial_t|_a \in T_a(I)$  is the canonical basis vector (sending a  $C^p$  germ  $f$  at  $a$  to the old-fashioned derivative  $f'(a)$  in the sense of calculus). In particular, suppose  $(U, \varphi)$  is a chart at  $x \in X$ . Then we have

$$\gamma'(a) = \sum \gamma'_i(a) \partial_{\varphi_i}|_{\gamma(a)}.$$

## 38 Charts

**Definition 38.1.** Let  $X$  be a topological space. A **real  $n$ -chart** of  $X$  (or more simply  **$n$ -chart** or just **chart**) consists of a pair  $(U, \varphi)$  where  $U \subseteq X$  is open and nonempty and where  $\varphi: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is a homeomorphism onto its image  $\varphi(U) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  which is open in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Given a point  $x \in X$ , we say the chart  $(U, \varphi)$  is **contains**  $x$  if  $x \in U$ , and we say  $(U, \varphi)$  is **centered** at  $x$  if it contains  $x$  and  $\varphi(x) = 0$ . We say  $X$  is a **topological  $n$ -premanifold** (or more simply an  **$n$ -premanifold**) if every point  $x \in X$  is contained in an  $n$ -chart of  $X$ . We say  $X$  is a **topological  $n$ -manifold** (or more simply  **$n$ -manifold** or just **manifold**) if it is an  $n$ -premanifold and is Hausdorff and second countable.

Let  $(U, \varphi)$  be a chart of  $X$  where  $\varphi: U \simeq \varphi(U) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ . For any set  $S$ , let  $\text{Map}(S, \mathbb{R})$  denote the set of all functions from  $S$  to  $\mathbb{R}$ . Note that  $\text{Map}(S, \mathbb{R})$  has the structure of an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra, where addition and multiplication are defined pointwise. Let

$$\varphi^*: \text{Map}(\varphi(U), \mathbb{R}) \rightarrow \text{Map}(U, \mathbb{R})$$

be defined by  $\varphi^*g = g \circ \varphi$  for all functions  $g: \varphi(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . We call  $\varphi^*g$  the **pullback** of  $g$  with respect to  $\varphi$ . It is straightforward to check that  $\varphi^*$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra homomorphism. Similarly, if  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a function, we define it **pushforward** with respect to  $\varphi$  to be the map  $(\varphi^{-1})^*f = f \circ \varphi^{-1}$ . Let  $\{t_1, \dots, t_n\}$  denote the standard linear coordinates on  $\varphi(U) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ : thus  $t_i(\mathbf{a}) = a_i$  for all  $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . We often denote by  $\varphi_i$  to be the pullback of  $t_i$  with respect to  $\varphi$ : thus  $\varphi_i = t_i \circ \varphi$ . We can think of the  $\varphi_i$  as being coordinate functions on  $U$ : we call them **local coordinates** of  $X$ . For instance, the function  $f = \varphi_1^3 + \dots + \varphi_n^3$  is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= (\varphi_1^3 + \dots + \varphi_n^3)(x) \\ &= (t_1^3 + \dots + t_n^3)\varphi(x) \\ &= (t_1^3 + \dots + t_n^3)(\mathbf{a}) \\ &= a_1^3 + \dots + a_n^3, \end{aligned}$$

where we set  $\varphi(x) = \mathbf{a} = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$ . Functions are not the only thing we can pullback (or pushforward). Indeed, we can pullback the partial derivative  $\partial_{t_i}$ : we denote by  $\partial_{\varphi_i} := \partial_{t_i} \circ (\varphi^{-1})^*$ . In particular, observe that

$$\partial_{\varphi_i}(\varphi_j) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = j \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

Furthermore, note that  $\partial_{t_i}$  is the pushforward of  $\partial_{\varphi_i}$  in this case:  $\partial_{t_i} = \partial_{\varphi_i} \circ \varphi^*$ . Finally, note that  $\partial_{\varphi_i}$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map which satisfies Leibniz law precisely because  $(\varphi^{-1})^*$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra homomorphism.

**Example 38.1.** Recall that the sphere  $S^n \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  is defined by

$$S^n = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \|\mathbf{x}\| = 1\}.$$

Here we write  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_{n+1})$ . This description  $S^n$  comes equipped with *global* coordinates: every point in  $S^n$  has the form  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_{n+1}) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  such that  $\|\mathbf{x}\| = 1$ . Let  $\mathbf{x}_N = (0, \dots, 0, 1)$  be the north pole and let  $U_N = S^n \setminus \{\mathbf{x}_N\}$ . Let  $(U_N, \varphi_N)$  be a chart where  $\varphi_N = (t_1, \dots, t_n)$  is defined by

$$\varphi_N(\mathbf{x}) = \left( \frac{x_1}{1 - x_{n+1}}, \dots, \frac{x_n}{1 - x_{n+1}} \right) = (t_1, \dots, t_n) = \mathbf{t}.$$

Then  $\varphi_N$  is a homeomorphism onto its image  $\varphi_N(U_N) = \mathbb{R}^n$  whose inverse  $\varphi_N^{-1}: \varphi(U_N) \rightarrow U_N$  is defined by

$$\varphi_N^{-1}(\mathbf{t}) = \left( \frac{2t_1}{\|\mathbf{t}\|^2 + 1}, \dots, \frac{2t_n}{\|\mathbf{t}\|^2 + 1}, \frac{\|\mathbf{t}\|^2 - 1}{\|\mathbf{t}\|^2 + 1} \right) = \mathbf{x}.$$

To see why this is the case, first note that  $\varphi_N$  is continuous since each of its component functions  $\varphi_{N,i} = t_i \circ \varphi_N$  (given by  $\varphi_{N,i} = x_i/(1 - x_{n+1})$ ) is continuous as  $x_{n+1} \neq -1$ . A similar argument shows  $\varphi_N^{-1}$  is continuous as well. Furthermore, observe that

$$\begin{aligned} (\varphi_{N,i} \circ \varphi_N^{-1})(\mathbf{t}) &= \varphi_{N,i}(\mathbf{x}) \\ &= \frac{x_i}{1 - x_{n+1}} \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{1 - \frac{\|\mathbf{t}\|^2 - 1}{1 + \|\mathbf{t}\|^2}} \right) \left( \frac{2t_i}{1 + \|\mathbf{t}\|^2} \right) \\ &= \left( \frac{1 + \|\mathbf{t}\|^2}{2} \right) \left( \frac{2t_i}{1 + \|\mathbf{t}\|^2} \right) \\ &= t_i. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $\varphi_N(\varphi_N^{-1}(\mathbf{t})) = \mathbf{t}$ . A similar calculation shows  $\varphi_N^{-1}(\varphi_N(\mathbf{x})) = \mathbf{x}$ .

Now let  $\mathbf{x}_S = (0, \dots, 0, -1)$  be the south pole and let  $U_S = S^n \setminus \{\mathbf{x}_S\}$ . Let  $(U_S, \varphi_S)$  be a chart where  $\varphi_S = (\tilde{t}_1, \dots, \tilde{t}_n)$  defined by

$$\varphi_S(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}) = \left( \frac{\tilde{x}_1}{1 + \tilde{x}_{n+1}}, \dots, \frac{\tilde{x}_n}{1 + \tilde{x}_{n+1}} \right) = (\tilde{t}_1, \dots, \tilde{t}_n) = \tilde{\mathbf{t}}.$$

Then  $\varphi_S$  is a homeomorphism onto its image  $\varphi_S(U_S) = \mathbb{R}^n$  whose inverse  $\varphi_S^{-1}: \varphi(U_S) \rightarrow U_S$  is defined by

$$\varphi_S^{-1}(\tilde{\mathbf{t}}) = \left( \frac{2\tilde{t}_1}{1 + \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2}, \dots, \frac{2\tilde{t}_n}{1 + \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2}, \frac{1 - \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2}{1 + \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2} \right) = \tilde{\mathbf{x}}.$$

Now observe that for each  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\varphi_{S,i} \circ \varphi_S^{-1})(\tilde{\mathbf{t}}) &= \varphi_{S,i}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}) \\ &= \frac{\tilde{x}_i}{1 + \tilde{x}_{n+1}} \\ &= \left( \frac{2\tilde{t}_i}{1 + \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - \left( \frac{1 - \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2}{1 + \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2} \right)} \right) \\ &= \left( \frac{2\tilde{t}_i}{1 + \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2} \right) \left( \frac{1 + \|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2}{2\|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2} \right) \\ &= \frac{\tilde{t}_i}{\|\tilde{\mathbf{t}}\|^2}. \end{aligned}$$

In particular,  $\varphi_N \circ \varphi_S^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $\varphi_S(U_N \cap U_S) = \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$ . A similar calculation shows  $\varphi_{S,i} \circ \varphi_N^{-1} = t_i/\|\mathbf{t}\|^2$  and hence is  $C^\infty$  on  $\varphi_N(U_N \cap U_S) = \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$ .



In Example (38.1), we noticed that the sphere  $S^n$  came equipped with global coordinates. This makes it easy, for example, to define functions out of  $S^n$ . In general however, a manifold  $X$  will not come equipped with global coordinates (but when they do, we should definitely make use of them!). Here's another manifold which admits nice global coordinates:

**Example 38.2.** (Real Projective Plane) The real projective space  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  is defined to be the set of all lines in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  which pass through the origin. We wish to describe every point in  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  using “global coordinates”. For each  $\mathbf{a} = (a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$ , we let  $\ell_{\mathbf{a}}$  denote the linear form  $\ell_{\mathbf{a}} = \sum_{i=0}^n a_i x_i$ . With this notation in mind, observe that if  $L$  is a line which passes through the origin, then there exists an  $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$  such that  $L$  has the form:

$$L = L_{\mathbf{a}} = V(\ell_{\mathbf{a}}) := \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \ell_{\mathbf{a}}(\mathbf{x}) = 0\}.$$

Moreover,  $\mathbf{a}$  is unique up to scaling by a nonzero constant. This means that if  $L_{\mathbf{a}} = L_{\mathbf{a}'}$ , then there exists  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$  such that  $\lambda \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}'$  (that is, such that  $\lambda a_i = a'_i$  for all  $0 \leq i \leq n$ ). Therefore we have a map  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{RP}^n$  given by  $\mathbf{a} \mapsto L_{\mathbf{a}}$  which is surjective but not one-to-one. However if we define an equivalence relation  $\sim$  on  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$  by declaring  $\mathbf{a} \sim \mathbf{a}'$  if and only if there exists  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$  such that  $\lambda \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}'$ , then the map  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{RP}^n$  induces a bijection from  $(\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\})/\sim$  to  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  which sends the equivalence class  $[\mathbf{a}] := [a_0 : a_1 : \dots : a_n]$  (represented by  $\mathbf{a} = (a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n)$ ) to the line  $L_{\mathbf{a}}$ . Thus our global coordinates for  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  look like  $[\mathbf{a}] = [a_0 : a_1 : \dots : a_n]$ , where we keep in mind that  $[\mathbf{a}] = [\lambda \mathbf{a}]$  for all  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ .

Now that we've described what the global coordinates on  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  look like, let's give  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  the structure of a topological space. Let  $\pi: \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{RP}^n$  denote the projection map. Then  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  inherits the structure a topological space via the quotient topology. This is the weakest topology on  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  which makes  $\pi$  continuous. In particular, a set  $\tilde{U} \subseteq \mathbb{RP}^n$  is said open if and only if  $\pi^{-1}(\tilde{U}) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$  is open. Note that in this case,  $\pi$  is an open map. Indeed, let  $B_r(\mathbf{a})$  be the open ball in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$  centered at the point  $\mathbf{a}$  and with radius  $r > 0$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \pi^{-1}\pi(B_r(\mathbf{a})) &= \{\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \pi(\mathbf{b}) \in \pi(B_r(\mathbf{a}))\} \\ &= \{\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid [\mathbf{b}] = [\mathbf{a}'] \text{ where } \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{a}'\| < r\} \\ &= \{\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}/\lambda\| < r \text{ for some } \lambda \neq 0\} \\ &= \{\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \|\lambda \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\| < \lambda r \text{ for some } \lambda \neq 0\} \\ &= \bigcup_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}} B_{\lambda r}(\lambda \mathbf{a}). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $\pi$  is open. Now in general, if  $X$  is a topological space  $\sim$  is an equivalence relation on  $X$ , then we call  $\sim$  **open** if the corresponding quotient map  $\rho: X \rightarrow X/\sim$  is open. In this case, a lot of nice things happen. First of all,  $X/\sim$  is automatically second-countable. Secondly, if  $\{B_i\}$  is a basis for  $X$ , then its images  $\{\rho(B_i)\}$  form a basis for  $X/\sim$ . Thirdly, the space  $X/\sim$  is Hausdorff if and only if the graph  $\Gamma_{\sim} = \{(x, y) \in X \times X \mid x \sim y\}$  of  $\sim$  is closed in  $X \times X$ . In particular,  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  is second countable since  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$  is and to see that  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  is Hausdorff, we just need to check that the graph  $\Gamma = \Gamma_{\sim}$  is closed in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \times \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$ . In our case, the graph looks like

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma &= \{(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \times \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \mid [\mathbf{a}] = [\mathbf{b}]\} \\ &= \{(\mathbf{a}, \lambda \mathbf{a}) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \times \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \mid \text{for some } \lambda \neq 0\}. \end{aligned}$$

We can show that  $\Gamma$  is closed in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \times \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$  by using the sequential criterion for subspaces of a metric space to be closed: if  $((\mathbf{a}_n, \lambda_n \mathbf{a}_n))$  is a sequence in  $\Gamma$  such that  $(\mathbf{a}_n, \lambda_n \mathbf{a}_n) \rightarrow (\mathbf{a}, \lambda \mathbf{a})$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \times \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$ , then  $\mathbf{a}_n \rightarrow \mathbf{a}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$  and  $\lambda_n \rightarrow \lambda$  in  $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ , and therefore  $(\mathbf{a}, \lambda \mathbf{a}) \in \Gamma$ . It follows that  $\Gamma$  is closed in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \times \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\}$ , hence  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  is Hausdorff.

Finally, we give  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  the structure of a real manifold. Observe that  $\mathbb{RP}^n$  is covered by  $n+1$  open sets

$$\tilde{U}_i := D(x_i) := \{[\mathbf{x}] \in \mathbb{RP}^n \mid x_i \neq 0\}.$$

Notice that  $\tilde{U}_i$  is well-defined since if  $[\mathbf{x}] \in \tilde{U}_i$ , then  $[\lambda \mathbf{x}] \in \tilde{U}_i$  for all  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$  (since  $x_i \neq 0$  if and only if  $\lambda x_i \neq 0$ ). This also implies that it is open since

$$\pi^{-1}(\tilde{U}_i) = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \setminus \{0\} \mid x_i \neq 0\}.$$

Notice that every element in  $\tilde{U}_i$  has a nice representative: if  $[\mathbf{x}] \in \tilde{U}_i$ , then we have

$$[\mathbf{x}] = [x_0 : \dots : x_i : \dots : x_n] = \left[ \frac{x_0}{x_i} : \dots : 1 : \dots : \frac{x_n}{x_i} \right] = [\mathbf{x}/x_i].$$

This gives us an idea of how to define our chart: let  $(\tilde{U}_i, \phi_i)$  be the chart, where  $\phi_i = (x_{0,i}, \dots, x_{j,i}, \dots, x_{n,i}) = \mathbf{x}_i$  with  $0 \leq j \leq n$  and  $j \neq i$ , and where  $\phi_i$  is defined by

$$\phi_i([\mathbf{x}]) = \left( \frac{x_0}{x_i}, \dots, \frac{x_j}{x_i}, \dots, \frac{x_n}{x_i} \right) = \mathbf{x}_i.$$

In particular, if  $\phi_{j,i} := t_j \circ \phi_i$  denotes the  $j$ th coordinate function of  $\phi_i$ , then  $\phi_{j,i}: \mathbb{RP}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is defined by  $\phi_{j,i}([\mathbf{x}]) = x_j/x_i$ . Then  $\phi_i$  is a homeomorphism onto its image  $\phi_i(\tilde{U}_i) = \mathbb{R}^n$  whose inverse  $\phi_i^{-1}: \phi_i(\tilde{U}_i) \rightarrow U_i$  is defined by

$$\phi_i^{-1}(\mathbf{x}_i) = [x_{0,i} : \dots : x_{j,i} : \dots : x_{n,i}] = [\mathbf{x}].$$

Observe that if  $i \neq i'$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{j,i} \circ \phi_{i'}^{-1}(\mathbf{x}_{i'}) &= \phi_{j,i}([x_{0,i'} : \dots : x_{j,i'} : \dots : x_{n,i'}]) \\ &= x_{j,i'}/x_{i,i'}. \end{aligned}$$

### 38.1 Construction of Products

Let  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  be  $C^p$  premanifolds. The topological product  $\prod X_i$  ought to admit a natural  $C^p$  premanifold structure, using as local  $C^p$  charts the maps

**Definition 38.2.**

## 39 Manifolds

We first recall a few definitions from point-set topology. A topological space is **second countable** if it has a countable basis. A **neighborhood** of a point  $p$  in a topological space  $M$  is any open set containing  $p$ . A topological space  $M$  is **Hausdorff** if for every pair of points  $x, y \in M$ , there exists a neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$  and a neighborhood  $V$  of  $y$  such that  $U \cap V = \emptyset$ . An **open cover** of  $M$  is a collection  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of open sets in  $M$  whose union  $\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$  is  $M$ .

The Hausdorff condition and second countability are “hereditary properties”; they are inherited by subspaces: a subspace of a Hausdorff space is Hausdorff.

**Proposition 39.1.** *Let  $M'$  be a subspace of a topological space  $M$ .*

1. *If  $M$  is Hausdorff, then  $M'$  is Hausdorff.*
2. *If  $M$  is second countable, then  $M'$  is second countable.*

*Proof.* (1) : Suppose  $x, y \in M'$ . Since  $x, y \in M$  and  $M$  is Hausdorff, choose a neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$  and a neighborhood  $V$  of  $y$  such that  $U \cap V = \emptyset$ . Then  $U' = U \cap M'$  is a neighborhood of  $x$  in the subspace topology and  $V' = V \cap M'$  is a neighborhood of  $y$  in the subspace topology and  $U' \cap V' = \emptyset$ . (2) : If  $\{B_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a countable basis for  $M$ , then  $\{B'_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a countable basis for  $M'$ , where  $B'_i = B_i \cap M'$ .  $\square$

**Definition 39.1.** A topological space  $M$  is **locally Euclidean of dimension  $n$**  if every point  $p$  in  $M$  has a neighborhood  $U$  such that there is a homeomorphism  $\phi$  from  $U$  onto an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We call the pair  $(U, \phi: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n)$  a **chart**,  $U$  a **coordinate neighborhood** or a **coordinate open set**, and  $\phi$  a **coordinate map** or a **coordinate system on  $U$** . We say that a chart  $(U, \phi)$  is **centered** at  $p \in U$  if  $\phi(p) = 0$ .

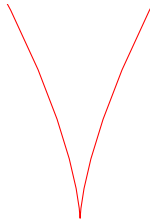
**Proposition 39.2.** *Let  $(U, \phi)$  be a chart on the topological space  $M$ . If  $V$  is an open subset  $U$ , then  $(V, \phi|_V)$  is a chart on  $M$ .*

*Proof.* This follows from the fact that if  $\phi: U \rightarrow \phi(U)$  is a homeomorphism, then  $\phi|_V: V \rightarrow \phi(V)$  is a homeomorphism.  $\square$

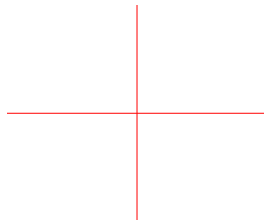
**Definition 39.2.** A **topological manifold** is a Hausdorff, second countable, locally Euclidean space. It is said to be of dimension  $n$  if it is locally Euclidean of dimension  $n$ .

**Example 39.1.** The Euclidean space  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is covered by a single chart  $(\mathbb{R}^n, 1_{\mathbb{R}^n})$ , where  $1_{\mathbb{R}^n}: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is the identity map. It is the prime example of a topological manifold. Every open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is also a topological manifold, with chart  $(U, 1_U)$ .

**Example 39.2.** (A cusp). The graph of  $y = x^{2/3}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  is a topological manifold. By virtue of being a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , it is Hausdorff and second countable. It is locally Euclidean because it is homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}$  via the projection  $(x, x^{2/3}) \mapsto x$ .



**Example 39.3.** (A cross). The cross can be described as  $\{(r, 0) \mid r \in \mathbb{R}\} \cup \{(0, r) \mid r \in \mathbb{R}\}$ . We show that the cross in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  with the subspace topology is not locally Euclidean at the intersection  $p = (0, 0)$ , and so cannot be a manifold. Suppose the cross is locally Euclidean of dimension  $n$  at the point  $p$ . Then  $p$  has a neighborhood  $U$  homeomorphic to an open ball  $B := B_\varepsilon(0) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  with  $p$  mapping to 0. The homeomorphism  $U \rightarrow B$  restricts to a homeomorphism  $U \setminus \{p\} \rightarrow B \setminus \{0\}$ . Now  $B \setminus \{0\}$  is either connected if  $n \geq 2$  or has two connected components if  $n = 1$ . Since  $U \setminus \{p\}$  has four connected components, there can be no homeomorphism from  $U \setminus \{p\}$  to  $B \setminus \{0\}$ . This contradiction proves that the cross is not locally Euclidean at  $p$ .



### 39.1 Compatible Charts

Suppose  $(U, \phi : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $(V, \psi : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n)$  are two charts of a topological manifold. Since  $U \cap V$  is open in  $U$  and  $\phi : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is a homeomorphism onto an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , the image  $\phi(U \cap V)$  will also be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Similarly,  $\psi(U \cap V)$  is an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

**Definition 39.3.** Two charts  $(U, \phi : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $(V, \psi : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n)$  of a topological manifold are  $C^\infty$ -**compatible** if the two maps

$$\phi \circ \psi^{-1} : \psi(U \cap V) \rightarrow \phi(U \cap V) \quad \psi \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U \cap V) \rightarrow \psi(U \cap V)$$

are  $C^\infty$ . These two maps are called the **transition functions** between the charts. If  $U \cap V$  is empty, then the two charts are automatically  $C^\infty$  compatible. To simplify this notation, we will sometimes write  $U_{ij}$  for  $U_i \cap U_j$  and  $U_{ijk}$  for  $U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k$ . We will also sometimes write  $\phi_{ij} = \phi_i \circ \phi_j^{-1}$ . Since we are interested only in  $C^\infty$ -compatible charts, we often omit mention of " $C^\infty$ " and speak simply of compatible charts.

$C^\infty$  compatibility is clearly reflexive and symmetric, but not necessarily transitive. Suppose  $(U_1, \phi_1)$  is  $C^\infty$ -compatible with  $(U_2, \phi_2)$ , and  $(U_2, \phi_2)$  is  $C^\infty$ -compatible with  $(U_3, \phi_3)$ . Note that the three coordinate functions are simultaneously defined only on the triple intersection  $U_{123}$ . Thus, the composite

$$\phi_3 \circ \phi_1^{-1} = (\phi_3 \circ \phi_2)^{-1} \circ (\phi_2 \circ \phi_1^{-1})$$

is  $C^\infty$ , but only on  $\phi_1(U_{123})$ , not necessarily on  $\phi_1(U_{13})$ . A priori we know nothing about  $\phi_3 \circ \phi_1^{-1}$  on  $\phi_1(U_{13} \setminus U_{123})$ .

**Definition 39.4.** A  $C^\infty$  **atlas** or simply an **atlas** on a locally Euclidean space  $M$  is a collection  $\mathfrak{U} = \{(U_i, \phi_i)\}_{i \in I}$  of pairwise  $C^\infty$ -compatible charts that cover  $M$ , i.e. such that  $M = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$ .

**Example 39.4.** (A  $C^\infty$  atlas on a circle). The unit circle  $S^1$  in the complex plane  $\mathbb{C}$  may be described as the set of points  $\{e^{2\pi it} \in \mathbb{C} \mid 0 \leq t \leq 1\}$ . Let  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  be the two open subsets of  $S^1$

$$U_1 = \{e^{2\pi it} \in \mathbb{C} \mid -\frac{1}{2} < t < \frac{1}{2}\} \quad U_2 = \{e^{2\pi it} \in \mathbb{C} \mid 0 < t < 1\}$$



and define  $\phi_i : U_i \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  for  $i = 1, 2$  by

$$\phi_1(e^{2\pi it}) = t \quad \phi_2(e^{2\pi it}) = t$$

Both  $\phi_1$  and  $\phi_2$  are branches of the complex log function  $(1/i)\log z$  and are homeomorphisms onto their respective images. Thus  $(U_1, \phi_1)$  and  $(U_2, \phi_2)$  are charts on  $S^1$ . The intersection  $U_{12}$  consists of two connected components, the lower half  $A$  and the upper half  $B$ :

$$A = \{e^{2\pi it} \mid -\frac{1}{2} < t < 0\} \quad B = \{e^{2\pi it} \mid 0 < t < \frac{1}{2}\}$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_1(U_{12}) &= \phi_1(A \cup B) = \phi_1(A) \cup \phi_1(B) = \left(-\frac{1}{2}, 0\right) \cup \left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right) \\ \phi_2(U_{12}) &= \phi_2(A \cup B) = \phi_2(A) \cup \phi_2(B) = \left(\frac{1}{2}, 1\right) \cup \left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

The transition function  $\phi_2 \circ \phi_1^{-1} : \phi_1(U_{12}) \rightarrow \phi_2(U_{12})$  is given by

$$(\phi_2 \circ \phi_1^{-1})(t) = \begin{cases} t + 1 & \text{for } t \in (-\frac{1}{2}, 0) \\ t & \text{for } t \in (0, \frac{1}{2}) \end{cases}$$

Similarly,

$$(\phi_1 \circ \phi_2^{-1})(t) = \begin{cases} t - 1 & \text{for } t \in (\frac{1}{2}, 1) \\ t & \text{for } t \in (0, \frac{1}{2}) \end{cases}$$

Therefore,  $(U_1, \phi_1)$  and  $(U_2, \phi_2)$  are  $C^\infty$ -compatible charts and form a  $C^\infty$  atlas on  $S^1$ .

We say that a chart  $(V, \psi)$  is **compatible with an atlas**  $\{(U_i, \phi_i)\}_{i \in I}$  if it is compatible with all the charts  $(U_i, \phi_i)$  of the atlas.

**Lemma 39.1.** *Let  $\{(U_i, \phi_i)\}_{i \in I}$  be an atlas on a locally Euclidean space. If two charts  $(V, \psi)$  and  $(W, \sigma)$  are both compatible with the atlas  $\{(U_i, \phi_i)\}_{i \in I}$ , then they are compatible with each other.*

*Proof.* We want to show  $\sigma \circ \psi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $\psi(V \cap W)$ . For all  $i \in I$ ,  $\sigma \circ \psi^{-1} = (\sigma \circ \phi_i^{-1}) \circ (\phi_i \circ \psi^{-1})$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $\psi(V \cap W \cap U_i)$ . Therefore  $\sigma \circ \psi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $\bigcup_{i \in I} \psi(V \cap W \cap U_i) = \psi(V \cap W)$ . Similarly,  $\psi \circ \sigma^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $\sigma(V \cap W)$ .  $\square$

*Remark 63.* The domain of  $\sigma \circ \psi^{-1}$  is  $\psi(V \cap W)$  and the domain of  $(\sigma \circ \phi_i^{-1}) \circ (\phi_i \circ \psi^{-1})$  is  $\psi(U \cap V \cap W)$ . What the equality means in the proof above is that the two maps are equal on their common domain.

An atlas  $\mathfrak{M}$  on a locally Euclidean space is said to be **maximal** if it is not contained in a larger atlas; in other words, if  $\mathfrak{U}$  is any other atlas containing  $\mathfrak{M}$ , then  $\mathfrak{U} = \mathfrak{M}$ .

**Definition 39.5.** A **smooth** or  $C^\infty$  manifold is a topological manifold  $M$  together with a maximal atlas. The maximal atlas is also called a **differentiable structure** on  $M$ . A manifold is said to have dimension  $n$  if all of its connected components have dimension  $n$ . A 1-dimensional manifold is also called a **curve**. A 2-dimensional manifold is a **surface**, and an  $n$ -dimensional manifold an  $n$ -manifold.

In practice, to check that a topological manifold  $M$  is a smooth manifold, it is not necessary to exhibit a maximal atlas. The existence of any atlas on  $M$  will do, because of the following proposition.

**Proposition 39.3.** *Any atlas  $\mathfrak{U} = \{(U_i, \phi_i)\}_{i \in I}$  on a locally Euclidean space is contained in a unique maximal atlas.*

*Proof.* Adjoin to the atlas  $\mathfrak{U}$  all charts  $(V_i, \psi_i)$  that are compatible with  $\mathfrak{U}$ . By Lemma (39.1), the charts  $(V_i, \psi_i)$  are compatible with one another. So the enlarged collection of charts is an atlas. Any chart compatible with the new atlas must be compatible with the original atlas  $\mathfrak{U}$  and so by construction belongs to the new atlas. This proves existence. If  $\mathfrak{M}'$  is another maximal atlas containing  $\mathfrak{U}$ , then all the charts in  $\mathfrak{M}'$  are compatible with  $\mathfrak{U}$  and so by construction must belong to  $\mathfrak{M}$ . This proves  $\mathfrak{M}' \subset \mathfrak{M}$ . Since both are maximal,  $\mathfrak{M}' = \mathfrak{M}$ . This proves uniqueness.  $\square$

In summary, to show that a topological space  $M$  is a  $C^\infty$  manifold, it suffices to check that

1.  $M$  is Hausdorff and second countable
2.  $M$  has a  $C^\infty$  atlas.

From now on, a “manifold” will mean a  $C^\infty$  manifold. We use the terms “smooth” and “ $C^\infty$ ” interchangeably. In the context of manifolds, we denote the standard coordinates of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  by  $r^1, \dots, r^n$ . If  $(U, \phi : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n)$  is a chart of a manifold, we let  $x^i = r^i \circ \phi$  be the  $i$ th component of  $\phi$  and write  $\phi = (x^1, \dots, x^n)$  and  $(U, \phi) = (U, x^1, \dots, x^n)$ . Thus for  $p \in U$ ,  $(x^1(p), \dots, x^n(p))$  is a point in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The functions  $x^1, \dots, x^n$  are called **coordinates** or **local coordinates** on  $U$ . By abuse of notation, we sometimes omit the  $p$ . So the notations  $(x^1, \dots, x^n)$  stands alternately for local coordinates on the open set  $U$  and for a point in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

*Remark 64.* A topological manifold can be endowed with different (non-compatible) differentiable structures. For instance, consider  $X = \mathbb{R}$ . We can give the space the structure of a  $C^\infty$ -manifold using the chart  $(\mathbb{R}, \varphi_1)$ , where  $\varphi_1$  maps  $x \rightarrow x$ . We can also give the space the structure of a  $C^\infty$  manifold using the chart  $(\mathbb{R}, \varphi_2)$ , where  $\varphi_2$  maps  $x \mapsto x^3$ . These two charts are not  $C^\infty$ -compatible since  $\varphi_1 \circ \varphi_2^{-1}$  maps  $x \mapsto x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ , and this is *not*  $C^\infty$  on  $\mathbb{R}$ :  $\frac{d}{dx} \left( x^{\frac{1}{3}} \right) = \frac{1}{3} x^{-\frac{2}{3}}$  is not continuous at  $x = 0$ .

### 39.1.1 An Atlas For a Product

**Proposition 39.4.** *If  $\mathfrak{U} = \{(U_i, \phi_i) \mid i \in I\}$  and  $\mathfrak{V} = \{(V_j, \psi_j) \mid j \in J\}$  are  $C^\infty$  atlases for the manifolds  $M$  and  $N$  of dimensions  $m$  and  $n$ , respectively, then the collection*

$$\mathfrak{U} \times \mathfrak{V} = \{(U_i \times V_j, \phi_i \times \psi_j : U_i \times V_j \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{R}^n) \mid (i, j) \in I \times J\}$$

*of charts is a  $C^\infty$  atlas on  $M \times N$ . Therefore,  $M \times N$  is a  $C^\infty$  manifold of dimension  $m + n$ .*

*Proof.* Clearly the set  $\{U_i \times V_j \mid (i, j) \in I \times J\}$  covers  $M \times N$ , so we just need to show that any two charts in  $\mathfrak{U} \times \mathfrak{V}$  are pairwise compatible. Let  $(U_1 \times V_1, \phi_1 \times \psi_1)$  and  $(U_2 \times V_2, \phi_2 \times \psi_2)$  be two charts in  $\mathfrak{U} \times \mathfrak{V}$ . Then  $(\phi_1 \times \psi_1) \circ (\phi_2 \times \psi_2)^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$ , since

$$(\phi_1 \times \psi_1) \circ (\phi_2 \times \psi_2)^{-1} = (\phi_1 \circ \phi_2^{-1}) \times (\psi_1 \circ \psi_2^{-1}),$$

and both  $\phi_1 \circ \phi_2^{-1}$  and  $\psi_1 \circ \psi_2^{-1}$  are  $C^\infty$  on their respective domains. The same proof shows that  $(\phi_2 \times \psi_2) \circ (\phi_1 \times \psi_1)^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$ . Thus  $\mathfrak{U} \times \mathfrak{V}$  is a collection of pairwise  $C^\infty$  compatible charts that cover  $M \times N$ .  $\square$

**Example 39.5.** It follows from Proposition (39.4) that the infinite cylinder  $S^1 \times \mathbb{R}$  and the torus  $S^1 \times S^1$  are manifolds.

## 39.2 Examples of Smooth Manifolds

### 39.2.1 Euclidean Space

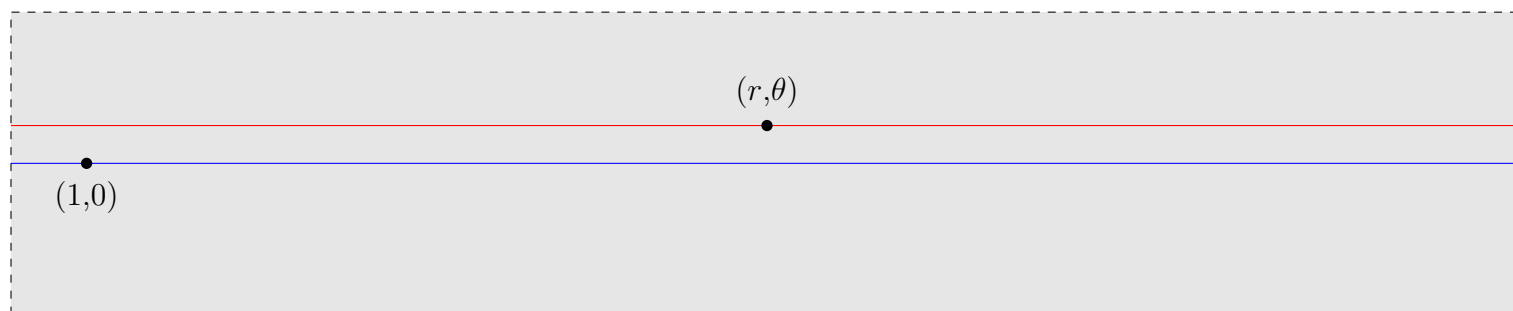
**Example 39.6.** (Euclidean space). The Euclidean space  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is a smooth manifold with a single chart  $(\mathbb{R}^n, \text{id})$ . We use  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  to denote coordinates functions and  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  to denote real numbers. Thus, if  $p = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$  is a point in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , we have  $x_1(p) = a_1$ ,  $x_2(p) = a_2$ , and etc...

**Example 39.7.** The real half line  $\mathbb{R}_{>0} : \{a \in \mathbb{R} \mid a > 0\}$  is also a smooth manifold, with a single chart  $(\mathbb{R}_{>0}, \text{id})$ . In fact,  $\mathbb{R}_{>0}$  is homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}$ . A homeomorphism from  $\mathbb{R}_{>0}$  to  $\mathbb{R}$  is given by  $\log : \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

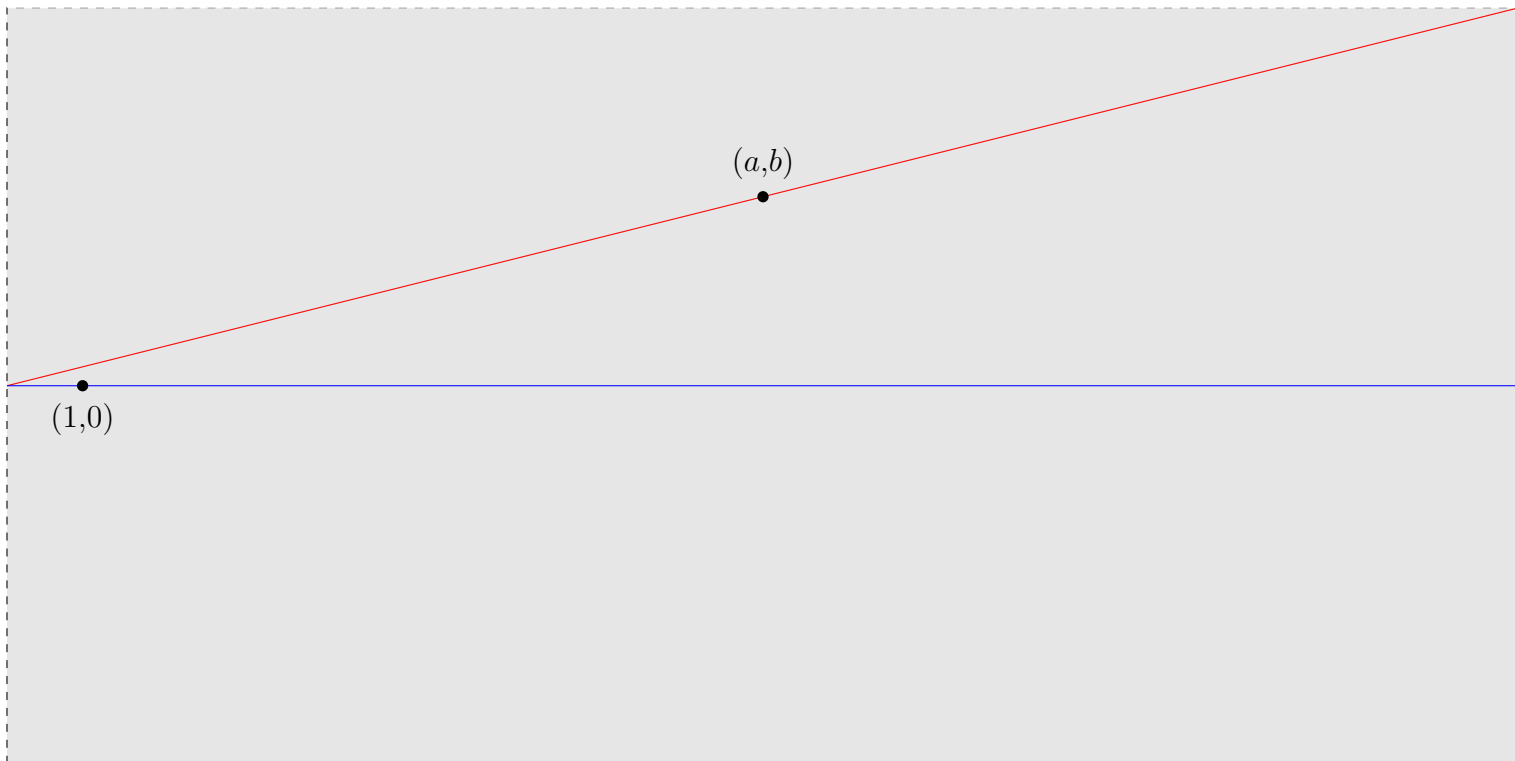
Now consider the half-open interval  $(0, 2\pi)$ . Open sets of the form  $(a, b)$  where  $0 \leq a < b < 2\pi$  form a basis for this topological space.

### 39.2.2 Right-Half Infinite Strip and the Right-Half Plane

Let  $M = \mathbb{R}_{>0} \times \left(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ . We illustrate this space below:



Now let  $N = \mathbb{R}_{>0} \times \mathbb{R}$  be the right-half plane. We illustrate this space below:



We can give both  $M$  and  $N$  the structure of a smooth manifold by simply using the identity charts.

Let  $\varphi : M \rightarrow N$  be given by  $\varphi(r, \theta) = (\varphi_1(r, \theta), \varphi_2(r, \theta))$ , where

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi_1(r, \theta) &= r \sin \theta \\ \varphi_2(r, \theta) &= r \cos \theta\end{aligned}$$

Then  $\varphi$  is a diffeomorphism from  $M$  to  $N$ . The Jacobian of  $\varphi$  at a point  $(r, \theta) \in M$ :

$$J_{(r, \theta)}(\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} \sin \theta & r \cos \theta \\ \cos \theta & -r \sin \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

The inverse to  $\varphi : M \rightarrow N$  is  $\psi : N \rightarrow M$ , given by  $\psi(a, b) = (\psi_1(a, b), \psi_2(a, b))$  where

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_1(a, b) &= \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \\ \psi_2(a, b) &= \arctan\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)\end{aligned}$$

The Jacobian of  $\psi$  at a point  $(a, b) \in N$ :

$$J_{(a, b)}(\psi) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix}.$$

### 39.2.3 Manifolds of Dimension Zero

**Example 39.8.** (Manifolds of dimension zero). In a manifold of dimension zero, every singleton subset is homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}^0$  and so is open. Thus, a zero-dimensional manifold is a discrete set. By second countability, this discrete set must be countable.

### 39.2.4 Graph of a Smooth Function

**Example 39.9.** (Graph of a smooth function). For a subset  $A \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  and a function  $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ , the **graph** of  $f$  is defined to be the subset

$$\Gamma(f) = \{(p, f(p)) \in A \times \mathbb{R}^n\}.$$

If  $U$  is an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is  $C^\infty$ , then the two maps

$$\phi : \Gamma(f) \rightarrow U \quad (p, f(p)) \mapsto p$$

and

$$(1, f) : U \rightarrow \Gamma(f) \quad p \mapsto (p, f(p))$$

are continuous and inverse to each other, and so are homeomorphisms. The graph  $\Gamma(f)$  of a  $C^\infty$  function  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  has an atlas with a single chart  $(\Gamma(f), \phi)$ , and is therefore a  $C^\infty$  manifold. This shows that many familiar surfaces of calculus, for example an elliptic paraboloid or a hyperbolic paraboloid, are manifolds.

### 39.2.5 Circle $S^1$

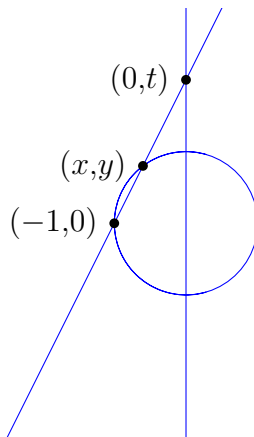
**Example 39.10.** (Circle) Let  $S^1$  be the unit circle centered at the origin in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ :

$$S^1 = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x^2 + y^2 = 1\}.$$

We shall describe an atlas on  $S^1$  using stereographic projection. Let  $U_1 = S^1 \setminus \{(-1, 0)\}$ . Consider the line  $L$  which passes through the points  $(-1, 0)$  and  $(0, t)$  where  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . The equation of this line is given by

$$Y = t(X + 1).$$

Since  $L$  passes through  $(-1, 0)$  and is not tangent to  $(-1, 0)$ , it must pass through a unique point  $(x, y)$  in  $S^1$ . This is illustrated in the image below:



Since  $(x, y)$  lies on the line  $L$  and the unit circle, we get the relations

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 - 1 &= 0, \\ y - t(x + 1) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Using the second relation, we have  $y = t(x + 1)$ . Plugging in  $t(x + 1)$  for  $y$  in the first relation, we get

$$t^2 = \frac{(1 - x)^2}{(1 + x)^2} = \frac{1 - x}{1 + x}.$$

Now we solve for  $x$  in terms of  $t$ , to get:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2}, \\ y &= \frac{2t}{1 + t^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, let  $\phi_1 : U_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given by

$$(x, y) \mapsto \frac{y}{1 + x}.$$

This map is clearly  $C^\infty$  in its domain  $U_1$ , since  $x \neq -1$ , and the inverse  $\phi_1^{-1} : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow U_1$  is given by

$$t \mapsto \left( \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2}, \frac{2t}{1 + t^2} \right).$$

Next, let  $U_2 = S^1 \setminus \{(1, 0)\}$ . Following the same line of reasoning as the paragraph above, let  $\phi_2 : U_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given by

$$(x, y) \mapsto \frac{y}{1 - x}.$$

Again, this map is clearly  $C^\infty$  in its domain  $U_2$ , since  $x \neq 1$ , and the inverse  $\phi_2^{-1} : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow U_2$  is given by

$$t \mapsto \left( \frac{t^2 - 1}{1 + t^2}, \frac{2t}{1 + t^2} \right).$$

Let us calculate the transition map  $\phi_{12} := \phi_1 \circ \phi_2^{-1}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{12}(t) &= (\phi_1 \circ \phi_2^{-1})(t) \\ &= \phi_1 \left( \frac{t^2 - 1}{1 + t^2}, \frac{2t}{1 + t^2} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{t}. \end{aligned}$$

*Remark 65.* We think of  $t$  as a local coordinate of  $S^1$  and  $x, y$  as global coordinates of  $S^1$ .



### 39.2.6 Projective Line

**Example 39.11.** Let  $\mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{R})$  be the projective line over  $\mathbb{R}$ . Define in  $\mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{R})$  the two charts given by

$$U_0 = D(X_0) = \{(x_0 : x_1) \in \mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{C}) \mid x_0 \neq 0\} \quad \phi_0(x_0 : x_1) = \frac{x_1}{x_0} \in \mathbb{R},$$

$$U_1 = D(X_1) = \{(x_0 : x_1) \in \mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{C}) \mid x_1 \neq 0\} \quad \phi_1(x_0 : x_1) = \frac{x_0}{x_1} \in \mathbb{R}.$$

These maps are clearly  $C^\infty$  in their domains. The inverse maps are given by

$$\phi_0^{-1}(t) = (1 : t) \in U_0 \quad \phi_1^{-1}(t) = (t : 1) \in U_1.$$

Now let's calculate the transition map  $\phi_{01} := \phi_0 \circ \phi_1^{-1}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_0 \circ \phi_1^{-1}(t) &= \phi_0 \circ \phi_1^{-1}(t) \\ &= \phi_0(t : 1) \\ &= \frac{1}{t}. \end{aligned}$$

Recall that this is the same transition map we calculated in Example (39.10).

### 39.2.7 Sphere $S^2$

**Example 39.12.** (Sphere) Let  $S^2$  be the unit sphere

$$S^2 = \{(a, b, c) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid a^2 + b^2 + c^2 = 1\}$$

in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Define in  $S^2$  the six charts corresponding to the six hemispheres - the front, rear, right, left, upper, and lower hemispheres

$$\begin{aligned} U_1 &= \{(a, b, c) \in S^2 \mid a > 0\} & \phi_1(a, b, c) &= (b, c) \\ U_2 &= \{(a, b, c) \in S^2 \mid a < 0\} & \phi_2(a, b, c) &= (b, c) \\ U_3 &= \{(a, b, c) \in S^2 \mid b > 0\} & \phi_3(a, b, c) &= (a, c) \\ U_4 &= \{(a, b, c) \in S^2 \mid b < 0\} & \phi_4(a, b, c) &= (a, c) \\ U_5 &= \{(a, b, c) \in S^2 \mid c > 0\} & \phi_5(a, b, c) &= (a, b) \\ U_6 &= \{(a, b, c) \in S^2 \mid c < 0\} & \phi_6(a, b, c) &= (a, b) \end{aligned}$$

The open set  $U_{14}$  is  $\{(a, b, c) \in S^2 \mid b < 0 < a\}$  and  $\phi_4(U_{14}) = \{(a, c) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid a^2 + c^2 < 1 \text{ and } a > 0\}$ .

Let us do some computations. First, let's compute the transition map  $\phi_{14}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{14}(a, c) &= \phi_1 \circ \phi_4^{-1}(a, c) \\ &= \phi_1\left(a, \sqrt{1 - c^2 - a^2}, c\right) \\ &= \left(\sqrt{1 - c^2 - a^2}, c\right). \end{aligned}$$

It is easy to see that this is indeed a smooth map in its domain (since  $1 - c^2 - a^2 \neq 0$ ). The Jacobian of  $\phi_{14}$  at the point  $(a, c)$  is

$$J_{(a,c)}(\phi_{14}) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a}{\sqrt{1-c^2-a^2}} & \frac{c}{\sqrt{1-c^2-a^2}} \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now let's compute the transition map  $\phi_{45}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{45}(a, b) &= \phi_4 \circ \phi_5^{-1}(a, b) \\ &= \phi_4\left(a, b, \sqrt{1 - a^2 - b^2}\right) \\ &= \left(a, \sqrt{1 - a^2 - b^2}\right). \end{aligned}$$



### 39.2.8 The Sphere $S^n$

**Example 39.13.** Recall that the sphere  $S^n \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  is defined by

$$S^n = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \|\mathbf{x}\| = 1\}.$$

Here we write  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n, x_{n+1})$ . In particular, this description  $S^n$  comes equipped with *global* coordinates: every point in  $S^n$  has the form  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_{n+1})$  where  $\|\mathbf{x}\| = 1$ . Let  $\mathbf{x}_N = (0, \dots, 0, 1)$  be the north pole and let  $U_N = S^n \setminus \{\mathbf{x}_N\}$ . Define  $\varphi_N: U_N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  by

$$\varphi_N(\mathbf{x}) = \varphi_N(x_1, \dots, x_{n+1}) = \left( \frac{x_1}{1 - x_{n+1}}, \dots, \frac{x_n}{1 - x_{n+1}} \right) = (y_1(\mathbf{x}), \dots, y_n(\mathbf{x})),$$

where  $y_i = t_i \circ \varphi_N$  for each  $1 \leq i \leq n$  where the  $t_i$  denote the standard coordinates of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We denote this map by  $\varphi_N = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$ . We often get lazy and write  $y_i(\mathbf{x}) = y_i$  where we think of  $y_i$  in this case as a real number (and not a function) which gives the  $i$ th coordinate of  $\mathbf{x}$ . For instance, the function  $f: U_N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  given by  $f = y_1^3 + \dots + y_n^3$  is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} f(\mathbf{x}) &= (y_1^3 + \dots + y_n^3)(\mathbf{x}) \\ &= y_1(\mathbf{x})^3 + \dots + y_n(\mathbf{x})^3 \\ &= y_1^3 + \dots + y_n^3 \end{aligned}$$

for all  $\mathbf{x} \in U_N$ , where we got lazy at the end and simply wrote  $y_i(\mathbf{x}) = y_i$ . When we write  $f = y_1^3 + \dots + y_n^3$ , we are thinking of the  $y_i$  as functions  $y_i: U_N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . When we write  $f(\mathbf{x}) = y_1^3 + \dots + y_n^3$ , we are thinking of the  $y_i$  as the coordinates of  $\mathbf{x} = \varphi_N^{-1}(y_1, \dots, y_n) = \varphi_N^{-1}(\mathbf{y})$ .

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = y_1(\mathbf{x}) + \dots$$

we have a function  $f: U_N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f =$

$$f = y_1 + y_2 + \dots + y_n.$$

Thus the  $y_i$  are used in two different (and admittedly contradictory) ways: either as a function  $y_i: U_N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  or as the  $i$ th coordinate of  $\mathbf{x}$ .

Here, the  $y_i$  gives us *local* coordinates of  $S^n$  in the open set  $U_N$ : each  $\mathbf{x} \in U_N$  can be identified with the unique point  $(y_1(\mathbf{x}), \dots, y_n(\mathbf{x})) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . We denote this map by  $\varphi_N = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$ . Note that we often get lazy and write  $(y_1, \dots, y_n) = (y_1(\mathbf{x}), \dots, y_n(\mathbf{x}))$  where now we think of the  $y_i$  in this case as It is straightforward to check that this map is a homeomorphism. Here, the  $y_i$  gives us *local* coordinates of  $S^n$  in the open set  $U_N$ : every point  $\mathbf{x}$  in  $U_N$  can be identified uniquely with the form  $\mathbf{x} = (y_1(\mathbf{x}), \dots, y_n(\mathbf{x}))$ . Here, we view the  $\mathbf{y}$  gives us local coordinates of  $S^n$  on  $U_N$ , and we can

Using stereographic projections (from the north pole and the south pole), we can define two charts on  $S^n$  and show that  $S^n$  is a smooth manifold. Let  $\mathbf{x}_N = (0, \dots, 0, 1)$  be the north pole  $p_N = (0, \dots, 0, 1) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  be the north pole and  $p_S = (0, \dots, 0, -1) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  be the south pole. Define the maps  $\phi_N: S^n \setminus \{p_N\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\phi_S: S^n \setminus \{p_S\}$ , called **stereographic projection** from the north pole (resp. south pole), by

$$\phi_N(x_1, \dots, x_{n+1}) = \frac{1}{1 - x_{n+1}}(x_1, \dots, x_n) \quad \text{and} \quad \phi_S(x_1, \dots, x_{n+1}) = \frac{1}{1 + x_{n+1}}(x_1, \dots, x_n).$$

The inverse stereographic projections are given by

$$\phi_N^{-1}(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \frac{1}{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2} \left( 2x_1, \dots, 2x_n, -1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \right)$$

and

$$\phi_S^{-1}(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \frac{1}{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2} \left( 2x_1, \dots, 2x_n, 1 - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \right).$$

Thus, if we let  $U_N = S^n \setminus \{p_N\}$  and  $U_S = S^n \setminus \{p_S\}$ , we see that  $U_N$  and  $U_S$  are two open subsets covering  $S^n$ , both homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Furthermore, it is easily checked that on the overlap,  $U_N \cap U_S$ , the transition maps

$$\phi_S \circ \phi_N^{-1} = \phi_N \circ \phi_S^{-1}$$

are given by

$$(x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto \frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2} (x_1, \dots, x_n),$$

that is, the inversion of center  $p_O = (0, \dots, 0)$  and power 1. Clearly, this map is smooth on  $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{O\}$ , so we conclude that  $(U_N, \phi_N)$  and  $(U_S, \phi_S)$  form a smooth atlas for  $S^n$ .

### 39.2.9 Real Projective Plane

**Example 39.14.** (Projective Plane) Let  $\mathbb{P}^2(\mathbb{R})$  be the projective plane over  $\mathbb{R}$ . Define in  $\mathbb{P}^2(\mathbb{R})$  the three charts given by

$$U_0 = D(X_0) = \{(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) \in \mathbb{P}^2(\mathbb{R}) \mid x_0 \neq 0\} \quad \phi_0(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) = \left(\frac{x_1}{x_0}, \frac{x_2}{x_0}\right) =: (a, b)$$

$$U_1 = D(X_1) = \{(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) \in \mathbb{P}^2(\mathbb{R}) \mid x_1 \neq 0\} \quad \phi_1(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) = \left(\frac{x_0}{x_1}, \frac{x_2}{x_1}\right) =: (c, d)$$

$$U_2 = D(X_2) = \{(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) \in \mathbb{P}^2(\mathbb{R}) \mid x_2 \neq 0\} \quad \phi_2(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) = \left(\frac{x_0}{x_2}, \frac{x_1}{x_2}\right) =: (e, f)$$

The reason the map  $\phi_1$  is a homeomorphism is because given that  $x_1 \neq 0$ , we use the equivalence relation to write the point  $p = (x_0 : x_1 : x_2)$  as  $p = \left(\frac{x_0}{x_1} : 1 : \frac{x_2}{x_1}\right)$ . Now  $\frac{x_0}{x_1}$  and  $\frac{x_2}{x_1}$  are two real numbers which uniquely determine the point  $(a, b)$ . We think of  $a$  and  $b$  as the local coordinates in the  $(U_0, \phi_0)$  chart.

Let  $U_{01}$  be the intersection of  $U_0$  and  $U_1$ , that is,  $U_{01} := \{(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) \in \mathbb{P}^2(\mathbb{R}) \mid x_0 \neq 0 \text{ and } x_1 \neq 0\}$ . Then  $\phi_0(U_{01}) = \left\{\left(\frac{x_1}{x_0}, \frac{x_2}{x_0}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x_0 \neq 0 \text{ and } x_1 \neq 0\right\}$  and  $\phi_1(U_{01}) = \left\{\left(\frac{x_0}{x_1}, \frac{x_2}{x_1}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x_0 \neq 0 \text{ and } x_1 \neq 0\right\}$ . We can also write this in terms of local coordinates as  $\phi_0(U_{01}) = \{(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid a \neq 0\}$  and  $\phi_1(U_{01}) = \{(c, d) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid c \neq 0\}$ . Now let's calculate the transition map  $\phi_{01} := \phi_0 \circ \phi_1^{-1} : \phi_1(U_{01}) \rightarrow \phi_0(U_{01})$  using the local coordinates. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{01}(c, d) &= \phi_0 \circ \phi_1^{-1}(c, d) \\ &= \phi_0 \circ \phi_1^{-1}\left(\frac{x_0}{x_1}, \frac{x_2}{x_1}\right) \\ &= \phi_0\left(\frac{x_0}{x_1} : 1 : \frac{x_2}{x_1}\right) \\ &= \phi_0\left(1 : \frac{x_1}{x_0} : \frac{x_2}{x_0}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{x_1}{x_0}, \frac{x_2}{x_0}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{c}, \frac{d}{c}\right). \end{aligned}$$

It's easy to see that  $\phi_{01}$  is  $C^\infty$ . Indeed, writing  $\phi_{01}^1$  and  $\phi_{01}^2$  for the components of  $\phi_{01}$  (so  $\phi_{01}^1(c, d) = \frac{1}{c}$  and  $\phi_{01}^2(c, d) = \frac{d}{c}$ ), the partial derivatives  $\partial_c^m \partial_d^n \phi_{01}^i$  exist and are continuous everywhere in  $\phi_1(U_{01})$  for all  $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $i = 1, 2$ . This is because  $\phi_{01}^1$  and  $\phi_{01}^2$  are rational functions (i.e. ratio of two polynomials) and are they are defined everywhere since  $c \neq 0$  in  $\phi_1(U_{01})$ .

Similarly, one can easily show that

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{10}(a, b) &= \left(\frac{1}{a}, \frac{b}{a}\right) \\ \phi_{20}(a, b) &= \left(\frac{1}{b}, \frac{a}{b}\right) \\ \phi_{02}(e, f) &= \left(\frac{f}{e}, \frac{1}{e}\right) \\ \phi_{12}(e, f) &= \left(\frac{e}{f}, \frac{1}{f}\right) \\ \phi_{21}(c, d) &= \left(\frac{c}{d}, \frac{1}{d}\right) \end{aligned}$$

It is instructive to check that  $\phi_{ij} \circ \phi_{ji} = 1$  and  $\phi_{ij} \circ \phi_{jk} = \phi_{ik}$ .

### 39.2.10 Riemann Sphere

**Example 39.15.** (Riemann sphere) In this example we describe a **complex manifold**. A complex manifold is the complex analogue of a manifold, however in the complex manifold case, we require the transition maps to be holomorphic, and not just  $C^\infty$ . Let  $\mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{C})$  be the projective line over  $\mathbb{C}$  (also known as the Riemann sphere). Define in  $\mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{C})$  the two charts given by

$$U_0 = D(X_0) = \{(x_0 : x_1) \in \mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{C}) \mid x_0 \neq 0\} \quad \phi_0(x_0 : x_1) = \frac{x_1}{x_0}$$

$$U_1 = D(X_1) = \{(x_0 : x_1) \in \mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{C}) \mid x_1 \neq 0\} \quad \phi_1(x_0 : x_1) = \frac{x_0}{x_1}$$

This time, let  $z = \frac{x_0}{x_1}$ . The open set  $U_{01}$  is  $\{(x_0 : x_1) \in \mathbb{P}^1(\mathbb{C}) \mid x_0 \neq 0 \text{ and } x_1 \neq 0\}$  and  $\phi_1(U_{01}) = \mathbb{C}^\times$ . Now

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_0 \circ \phi_1^{-1}(z) &= \phi_0 \circ \phi_1^{-1} \left( \frac{x_0}{x_1} \right) \\ &= \phi_0 \left( \frac{x_0}{x_1} : 1 \right) \\ &= \phi_0 \left( 1 : \frac{x_1}{x_0} \right) \\ &= \frac{x_1}{x_0} \\ &= \frac{1}{z}. \end{aligned}$$

One can show that the map  $z \mapsto \frac{1}{z}$  is holomorphic in the domain  $\mathbb{C}^\times$ .

### 39.2.11 Mobius Strip

**Example 39.16.** Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be the set of all lines in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . We want to give this set the structure of a  $C^\infty$ -manifold. First we consider the set of all nonvertical lines in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , which we denote by  $U_v$ . A nonvertical is of the form  $\ell_{a,b}^v = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid y = ax + b\}$ . Each such line is uniquely determined by a point  $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . So we have bijection  $\varphi_v : U_v \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ , given by  $\ell_{a,b}^v \mapsto (a, b)$ . We give  $U_v$  a topology using the bijection  $\varphi_v$ : a set  $U \subset U_v$  is open if and only if  $\varphi_v(U)$  is open in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . This makes  $\varphi_v$  into a homeomorphism. Next we consider the set of all nonhorizontal lines in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , which we denote by  $U_h$ . A nonhorizontal is of the form  $\ell_{c,d}^h = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x = cy + d\}$ . Each such line is uniquely determined by a point  $(c, d) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . So we have bijection  $\varphi_h : U_h \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ , given by  $\ell_{c,d}^h \mapsto (c, d)$ . We give  $U_h$  a topology using the bijection  $\varphi_h$ : a set  $U \subset U_h$  is open if and only if  $\varphi_h(U)$  is open in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . This makes  $\varphi_h$  into a homeomorphism. Now we have  $U_v \cup U_h = \mathcal{L}$ . To get a topology on  $\mathcal{L}$ , we glue the topologies from  $U_v$  and  $U_h$ : a set  $U \subset \mathcal{L}$  is open if and only if  $U \cap U_h$  is open in  $U_h$  and  $U \cap U_v$  is open in  $U_v$ . Let's calculate the transition maps  $\varphi_{vh}$  and  $\varphi_{hv}$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{vh}(c, d) &= \varphi_v \circ \varphi_h^{-1}(c, d) \\ &= \varphi_v(\ell_{c,d}^h) \\ &= \varphi_v \left( \ell_{\frac{1}{c}, -\frac{d}{c}}^v \right) \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{c}, -\frac{d}{c} \right), \end{aligned}$$

and similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{hv}(a, b) &= \varphi_h \circ \varphi_v^{-1}(a, b) \\ &= \varphi_h(\ell_{a,b}^v) \\ &= \varphi_h \left( \ell_{\frac{1}{a}, -\frac{b}{a}}^h \right) \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{a}, -\frac{b}{a} \right). \end{aligned}$$

These maps are clearly  $C^\infty$ . In fact, they look very similar to the transition maps for the projective plane, except they are twisted by a negative sign.

*Remark 66.* We can also describe  $\mathcal{L}$  as  $\mathbb{RP}^2 \setminus \{[0 : 0 : 1]\}$ : Any line in the euclidean plane is of the form  $ax + by + c = 0$ , for some  $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$ . First note that these coefficients uniquely determine the line and they are homogeneous. Hence there is a well defined map  $\phi : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{RP}^2$ , given by mapping the line  $\mathbf{V}(ax + by + c)$  to the point  $[a : b : c]$ . Now  $\phi$  is injective, but not surjective. However if we remove the point  $[0 : 0 : 1]$ , then the induced map  $\phi : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{RP}^2 \setminus \{[0 : 0 : 1]\}$  is a bijection.

### 39.2.12 Grassmannians

The **Grassmannian**  $G(k, n)$  is the set of all  $k$ -planes through the origin in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Such a  $k$ -plane is a linear subspace of dimension  $k$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and has a basis consisting of  $k$  linearly independent vectors  $v_1, \dots, v_k$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . It is therefore completely specified by an  $n \times k$  matrix  $A = [a_1 \cdots a_k]$  of rank  $k$ , where the **rank** of a matrix  $A$ , denoted by  $\text{rk} A$ , is defined to be the number of linearly independent columns of  $A$ . This matrix is called a **matrix representative** of the  $k$ -plane.

Two bases  $a_1, \dots, a_k$  and  $b_1, \dots, b_k$  determine the same  $k$ -plane if there is a change-of-basis matrix  $g = [g_{ij}] \in \text{GL}(k, \mathbb{R})$  such that

$$b_j = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i g_{ij}$$

for all  $1 \leq k \leq n$ . In matrix notation, this says  $B = Ag$ . Let  $F(k, n)$  be the set of all  $n \times k$  matrices of rank  $k$ , topologized as a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^{n \times k}$ , and  $\sim$  the equivalence relation

$$A \sim B \text{ if and only if there is a matrix } g \in \text{GL}(k, \mathbb{R}) \text{ such that } B = Ag.$$

There is a bijection between  $G(k, n)$  and the quotient space  $F(k, n)/\sim$ . We give the Grassmannian  $G(k, n)$  the quotient topology on  $F(k, n)/\sim$ .

A **real Grassmann manifold**  $G(n, k)$  is defined as the space of all  $k$ -dimensional subspaces of the space  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The topology in  $G(n, k)$  may be described as induced by the embedding  $G(n, k) \rightarrow \text{End}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  which assigns to a  $P \in G(n, k)$ , the orthogonal projection  $\mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow P$  combined with the inclusion map  $P \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ .

In  $G(4, 2)$ , we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} c_{11} & c_{12} \\ c_{21} & c_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} c_{11}a_{11} + c_{12}a_{21} & c_{11}a_{12} + c_{12}a_{22} & c_{11}a_{13} + c_{12}a_{23} & c_{11}a_{14} + c_{12}a_{24} \\ c_{21}a_{11} + c_{22}a_{21} & c_{21}a_{12} + c_{22}a_{22} & c_{21}a_{13} + c_{22}a_{23} & c_{21}a_{14} + c_{22}a_{24} \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $c_{11}c_{22} - c_{21}c_{12} \neq 0$ .

### 39.2.13 Grassmanians: Algebraic Theory

Let  $F$  be a field and let  $V$  be a vector space over  $F$  of dimension  $n+1$  where  $n \geq 1$ . We let  $\mathbb{G}(V)$  denote the set of all subspaces of  $V$ . Also, for each  $0 \leq d \leq n+1$ , we let  $\mathbb{G}_d(V)$  denote the set of codimension- $d$  subspaces of  $V$ . Thus we have a decomposition

$$\mathbb{G}(V) = \bigcup_{d=0}^{n+1} \mathbb{G}_d(V)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{G}_0(V) &= V \\ \mathbb{G}_1(V) &= \{\text{hyperplanes in } V\} \\ &\vdots \\ \mathbb{G}_n(V) &= \{\text{lines that pass through the origin in } V\} \\ \mathbb{G}_{n+1}(V) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

When  $V = F^{n+1}$ , then this set is called the **Grassmanian of codimension- $d$  subspaces in  $(n+1)$ -space** (over  $F$ ) and is denoted  $\mathbb{G}(d, n)(F)$  (or more simply by  $\mathbb{G}(d, n)$  if  $F$  is understood. For  $d = 1$  it is called the **projective space** and is denoted  $\mathbb{P}(V)$ . By the dual relationship between subspaces of  $V$  and of  $V^\vee$  (whereby a subspace  $W \subseteq V$  “corresponds” to the subspace  $(V/W)^\vee$  in  $V^\vee$ ),  $\mathbb{G}_d(V)$  can also be viewed as  $\mathbb{G}_{n+1-d}(V^\vee)$ .

Fix an ordered basis  $\mathbf{e} = e_0, \dots, e_n$  of  $V$ .

**Lemma 39.2.** *Let  $I = \{i_1, \dots, i_d\}$  be a set of  $d$  distinct indices where  $0 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_d \leq n$ . Let  $U_I \subseteq \mathbb{G}_d(V)$  denote the subset of codimension- $d$  linear subspaces  $W \subseteq V$  for which the  $e_i$ ’s with  $i \in I$  projective to a basis of the  $d$ -dimensional  $V/W$ . The  $U_I$ ’s cover  $\mathbb{G}_d(V)$  as a set.*

**Proposition 39.5.** *We have a bijection*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{G}_{n+1-d}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1}) & \longleftrightarrow & \{A \in M_{n+1,d}(\mathbb{R}) \mid A \text{ has full rank}\} / \sim \\ W & \rightarrow & \\ \text{im } A & \leftarrow & A \end{array}$$

where the equivalence relation is given by

$$A \sim B \text{ if and only if } AC = B \text{ for some } C \in \text{GL}_d(\mathbb{R}).$$

**Example 39.17.** Let us consider the case where  $V = \mathbb{R}^3$ . We want to describe the codimension-1 subspaces of  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . In other words, we want to describe the subspaces of  $\mathbb{R}^3$  which have dimension 2. A subspace of dimension  $m$  can be described using a

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

We w

### 39.2.14 Grassmanians: Topological Theory

**Theorem 39.3.** *Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$*

## 40 Smooth Maps on a Manifold

Now that we've defined smooth manifolds, it is time to consider maps between them. Using coordinate charts, one can transfer the notion of smooth maps from Euclidean spaces to manifolds. By the  $C^\infty$  compatibility of charts in an atlas, the smoothness of a map turns out to be independent of the choice of charts and is therefore well defined.

### 40.1 Smooth Functions

**Definition 40.1.** Let  $M$  be a smooth manifold of dimension  $n$ . A function  $f: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is said to be  $C^\infty$  or **smooth at a point**  $p$  in  $M$  if there is a chart  $(U, \phi)$  about  $p$  in  $M$  such that  $f \circ \phi^{-1}$ , a function defined on the open subset  $\phi(U)$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ . The function  $f$  is said to be  $C^\infty$  on  $M$  if it is  $C^\infty$  at every point of  $M$ .

Observe that the definition of the smoothness of a function  $f$  at a point  $p$  is independent of the chart  $(U, \phi)$ , for if  $f \circ \phi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$  and  $(V, \psi)$  is any other chart about  $p$  in  $M$ , then on  $\psi(U \cap V)$ , we have

$$f \circ \psi^{-1} |_{\psi(U \cap V)} = (f \circ \phi^{-1}) \circ (\phi \circ \psi^{-1}),$$

which is  $C^\infty$  at  $\psi(p)$ . Thus  $f \circ \psi^{-1}$  must be  $C^\infty$  at  $\psi(p)$ . Also observe that in the definition above,  $f: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is not assumed to be continuous. However, if  $f$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $p \in M$ , then  $f \circ \phi^{-1}: \phi(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , being a  $C^\infty$  function at the point  $\phi(p)$  in an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , is continuous at  $\phi(p)$ . As a composite of continuous functions,  $f = (f \circ \phi^{-1}) \circ \phi$  is continuous at  $p$ . Since we are only interested in functions that are smooth on an open set, there is no loss of generality in assuming at the onset that  $f$  is continuous.

**Proposition 40.1.** *Let  $M$  be a manifold of dimension  $n$ , and  $f: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  a real-valued function on  $M$ . The following are equivalent:*

1. *The function  $f: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is  $C^\infty$ .*
2. *The manifold  $M$  has an atlas such that for every chart  $(U, \phi)$  in the atlas,  $f \circ \phi^{-1}: \mathbb{R}^n \supset \phi(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is  $C^\infty$ .*
3. *For every chart  $(V, \psi)$  on  $M$ , the function  $f \circ \psi^{-1}: \mathbb{R}^n \supset \psi(V) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is  $C^\infty$ .*

*Proof.* We will prove the proposition as a cyclic chain of implications.

(2  $\implies$  1): This follows directly from the definition of a  $C^\infty$  function, since by (2) every point  $p \in M$  has a coordinate neighborhood  $(U, \phi)$  such that  $f \circ \phi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ .

(1  $\implies$  3): Let  $(V, \psi)$  be an arbitrary chart on  $M$  and let  $p \in V$ . By the remark above,  $f \circ \psi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\psi(p)$ . Since  $p$  was an arbitrary point of  $V$ ,  $f \circ \psi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $\psi(V)$ .

(3  $\implies$  2): Obvious. □

The smoothness conditions of Proposition (40.1) will be a recurrent motif: to prove the smoothness of an object, it is sufficient that a smoothness criterion hold on the charts of some atlas. Once the object is shown to be smooth, it then follows that the same smoothness criterion holds on *every* chart.

**Definition 40.2.** Let  $F: N \rightarrow M$  be a map and  $h$  a function on  $M$ . The **pullback** of  $h$  by  $F$ , denoted by  $F^*h$ , is the composite function  $h \circ F$ .

*Remark 67.* In this terminology, a function  $f$  on  $M$  is  $C^\infty$  on a chart  $(U, \phi)$  if and only if its pullback  $(\phi^{-1})^*f$  by  $\phi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  on the subset  $\phi(U)$  of Euclidean space.

**Example 40.1.** Let  $\phi: \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  be rotation counterclockwise by an angle  $\theta$  and let  $x, y$  denote the standard coordinate functions on  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}\phi^*x &= (\cos \theta)x - (\sin \theta)y \\ \phi^*y &= (\sin \theta)x + (\cos \theta)y.\end{aligned}$$

Indeed, let  $e_1, e_2$  denote the standard coordinates on  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ; so  $x(e_1) =$

$$\begin{aligned} (\phi^*x)(a, b) &= x(\phi(a, b)) \\ &= x(\cos \theta a - \sin \theta b, \sin \theta a + \cos \theta b) \\ &= \cos \theta a - \sin \theta b \\ &= ((\cos \theta)x - (\sin \theta)y)(a, b). \end{aligned}$$

## 40.2 Smooth Maps Between Manifolds

We emphasize again that unless otherwise specified, by a manifold we always mean a  $C^\infty$  manifold. We use the terms “ $C^\infty$ ” and “smooth” interchangeably.

**Definition 40.3.** Let  $N$  and  $M$  be manifolds of dimension  $n$  and  $m$ , respectively. A continuous map  $F : N \rightarrow M$  is  $C^\infty$  **at a point**  $p$  in  $N$  if there are charts  $(V, \psi)$  about  $F(p)$  in  $M$  and  $(U, \phi)$  about  $p$  in  $N$  such that the composition  $\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1}$ , a map from the open subset  $\phi(F^{-1}(V) \cap U)$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to  $\mathbb{R}^m$ , is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ . The continuous map  $F : N \rightarrow M$  is said to be  $C^\infty$  if it is  $C^\infty$  at every point of  $N$ .

*Remark 68.*

1. In the definition, we needed  $F^{-1}(V)$  to be open so that  $\phi(F^{-1}(V) \cap U)$  is open. Thus,  $C^\infty$  maps between manifolds are by definition continuous.
2. In case  $M = \mathbb{R}^m$ , we can take  $(\mathbb{R}^m, 1_{\mathbb{R}^m})$  as a chart about  $F(p)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ . According to the definition above,  $F : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $p \in N$  if and only if there is a chart  $(U, \phi)$  about  $p$  in  $N$  such that  $F \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ . Letting  $m = 1$ , we recover the definition of a function being  $C^\infty$  at a point.

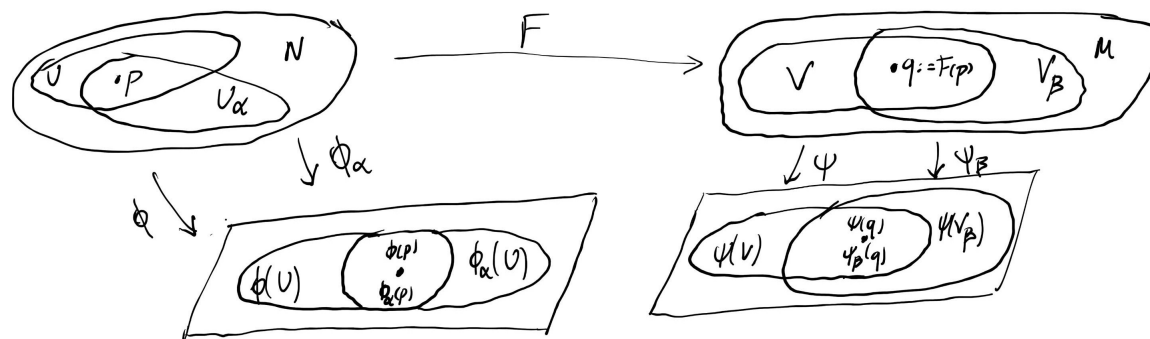
We show now that the definition of the smoothness of a map  $F : N \rightarrow M$  at a point is independent of the choice of charts.

**Proposition 40.2.** Suppose  $F : N \rightarrow M$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $p \in N$ . If  $(U, \phi)$  is any chart about  $p$  in  $N$  and  $(V, \psi)$  is any chart about  $F(p)$  in  $M$ , then  $\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ .

*Proof.* Since  $F$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $p \in N$ , there are charts  $(U_\alpha, \phi_\alpha)$  about  $p$  in  $N$  and  $(V_\beta, \psi_\beta)$  about  $F(p)$  in  $M$  such that  $\psi_\beta \circ F \circ \phi_\alpha^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi_\alpha(p)$ . By the  $C^\infty$  compatibility of charts in a differentiable structure, both  $\phi_\alpha \circ \phi^{-1}$  and  $\psi \circ \psi_\beta^{-1}$  are  $C^\infty$  on open subsets of Euclidean spaces. Hence, the composite

$$\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1} \big|_{\phi(F^{-1}(V \cap V_\beta) \cap U \cap U_\alpha)} = (\psi \circ \psi_\beta^{-1}) \circ (\psi_\beta \circ F \circ \phi_\alpha^{-1}) \circ (\phi_\alpha \circ \phi^{-1}),$$

is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ . Therefore  $\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ .



□

**Proposition 40.3.** (Smoothness of a map in terms of charts). Let  $N$  and  $M$  be smooth manifolds, and  $F : N \rightarrow M$  a continuous map. The following are equivalent:

1. The map  $F : N \rightarrow M$  is  $C^\infty$ .
2. There are atlases  $\mathfrak{U}$  for  $N$  and  $\mathfrak{V}$  for  $M$  such that for every chart  $(U, \phi)$  in  $\mathfrak{U}$  and  $(V, \psi)$  in  $\mathfrak{V}$ , the map

$$\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U \cap F^{-1}(V)) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$$

is  $C^\infty$ .

3. For every chart  $(U, \phi)$  on  $N$  and  $(V, \psi)$  on  $M$ , the map

$$\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U \cap F^{-1}(V)) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$$

is  $C^\infty$ .

*Proof.*

(2  $\implies$  1): Let  $p \in N$ . Suppose  $(U, \phi)$  is a chart about  $p$  in  $\mathfrak{U}$  and  $(V, \psi)$  is a chart about  $F(p)$  in  $\mathfrak{V}$ . By (2),  $\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ . By the definition of a  $C^\infty$  map,  $F : N \rightarrow M$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $p$ . Since  $p$  was an arbitrary point of  $N$ , the map  $F : N \rightarrow M$  is  $C^\infty$ .

(1  $\implies$  3): Suppose  $(U, \phi)$  and  $(V, \psi)$  are charts on  $N$  and  $M$  respectively such that  $U \cap F^{-1}(V) \neq \emptyset$ . Let  $p \in U \cap F^{-1}(V)$ . Then  $(U, \phi)$  is a chart about  $p$  and  $(V, \psi)$  is a chart about  $F(p)$ . By Proposition (40.2),  $\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  at  $\phi(p)$ . Since  $\phi(p)$  was an arbitrary point of  $\phi(U \cap F^{-1}(V))$ , the map  $\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U \cap F^{-1}(V)) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$ .

(3  $\implies$  2): Obvious. □

**Proposition 40.4.** (*Composition of  $C^\infty$  maps*). If  $F : N \rightarrow M$  and  $G : M \rightarrow P$  are  $C^\infty$  maps of manifolds, then the composite  $G \circ F : N \rightarrow P$  is  $C^\infty$ .

*Proof.* Let  $(U, \phi)$ ,  $(V, \psi)$ , and  $(W, \sigma)$  be charts on  $N$ ,  $M$ , and  $P$  respectively. Then

$$\sigma \circ (G \circ F) \circ \phi^{-1} = (\sigma \circ G \circ \psi^{-1}) \circ (\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1}).$$

Since  $F$  and  $G$  are  $C^\infty$ , the maps  $\sigma \circ G \circ \psi^{-1}$  and  $\psi \circ F \circ \phi^{-1}$  are also  $C^\infty$ . As a composite of  $C^\infty$  maps of open subsets of Euclidean spaces,  $\sigma \circ (G \circ F) \circ \phi^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$ , and thus  $G \circ F$  is  $C^\infty$ . □

### 40.2.1 Diffeomorphisms

A **diffeomorphism** of manifolds is a bijective  $C^\infty$  map  $F : N \rightarrow M$  whose inverse  $F^{-1}$  is also  $C^\infty$ . According to the next two propositions, coordinate maps are diffeomorphisms, and conversely, every diffeomorphism of an open subset of a manifold with an open subset of a Euclidean space can serve as a coordinate map.

**Proposition 40.5.** If  $(U, \phi)$  is a chart on a manifold  $M$  of dimension  $n$ , then the coordinate map  $\phi : U \rightarrow \phi(U) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is a diffeomorphism.

*Proof.* By definition,  $\phi$  is a homeomorphism, so it suffices to check that both  $\phi$  and  $\phi^{-1}$  are smooth. To test the smoothness of  $\phi : U \rightarrow \phi(U)$ , we use the atlas  $\{(U, \phi)\}$  with a single chart on  $U$  and the atlas  $\{(\phi(U), \text{id}_{\phi(U)})\}$  with a single chart on  $\phi(U)$ . Since

$$\text{id}_{\phi(U)} \circ \phi \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U) \rightarrow \phi(U)$$

is the identity map, it is  $C^\infty$ . By Proposition (40.3),  $\phi$  is  $C^\infty$ .

To test smoothness of  $\phi^{-1} : \phi(U) \rightarrow U$ , we use the same atlases as above. Since

$$\phi \circ \phi^{-1} \circ \text{id}_{\phi(U)} : \phi(U) \rightarrow \phi(U)$$

is the identity map, the map  $\phi^{-1}$  is also  $C^\infty$ . □

**Proposition 40.6.** Let  $U$  be an open subset of a manifold  $M$  of dimension  $n$ . If  $F : U \rightarrow F(U) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is a diffeomorphism onto an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $(U, F)$  is a chart in the differentiable structure of  $M$ .

*Proof.* For any chart  $(U_\alpha, \phi_\alpha)$  in the maximal atlas of  $M$ , both  $\phi_\alpha$  and  $\phi_\alpha^{-1}$  are  $C^\infty$  by Proposition (40.5). As composites of  $C^\infty$  maps, both  $F \circ \phi_\alpha^{-1}$  and  $\phi_\alpha \circ F^{-1}$  are  $C^\infty$ . Hence,  $(U, F)$  is compatible with the maximal atlas. By the maximality of the atlas, the chart  $(U, F)$  is in the atlas. □

### 40.2.2 Smoothness in Terms of Components

In this subsection, we derive a criterion that reduces the smoothness of a map to the smoothness of real-valued functions on open sets.

**Proposition 40.7.** (*Smoothness of a vector-valued function*) Let  $N$  be a manifold and let  $F : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  be a continuous map. The following are equivalent:

1. The map  $F : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$ .
2. The manifold  $N$  has an atlas such that for every chart  $(U, \phi)$  in the atlas, the map  $F \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$ .
3. For every chart  $(U, \phi)$  on  $N$ , the map  $F \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$ .

**Proposition 40.8.** (*Smoothness in terms of components*). Let  $N$  be a manifold. A vector-valued function  $F : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$  if and only if its component functions  $F_1, \dots, F_m : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are all  $C^\infty$ .

*Proof.* The  $F : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$  if and only if for every chart  $(U, \phi)$  on  $N$ , the map  $F \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is  $C^\infty$  if and only if for every chart  $(U, \phi)$  on  $N$ , the functions  $F_i \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are all  $C^\infty$  if and only if the functions  $F_i : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are all  $C^\infty$ . □

### 40.3 Germs of $C^\infty$ functions

Let  $M$  be an  $n$ -dimensional manifold and let  $p$  be a point in  $M$ . Consider the set of all pairs  $(f, U)$ , where  $U$  is an open neighborhood of  $p$  and  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a  $C^\infty$  function. Just as in the  $\mathbb{R}^n$  case, we introduce an equivalence relation  $\sim$  and say that  $(f, U) \sim (g, V)$  if there is an open set  $W \subset U \cap V$  containing  $p$  such that  $f = g$  when restricted to  $W$ . The equivalence class of  $(f, U)$  is called the **germ** of  $f$  at  $p$ . We write  $C_p^\infty(M)$  for the set of all germs of  $C^\infty$  functions on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  at  $p$ .

Let  $(f, U)$  be represent a germ in  $C_p^\infty(M)$  and suppose  $(U_0, \phi)$  is a chart centered at  $p$ . Then  $(U_0 \cap U, \phi|_U)$  is a chart centered at  $p$  and clearly we have  $(f, U) \sim (f|_{U_0 \cap U}, U_0 \cap U)$ . Thus we may always assume that a germ can be represented by  $(f, U)$  where  $(U, \phi)$  is a chart centered at  $p$ . In particular, we obtain an isomorphism

$$\widehat{\phi} : C_p^\infty(M) \rightarrow C_p^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n),$$

given by  $(f, U) \mapsto (f \circ \phi^{-1}, \phi(U))$ . Of course this map depends on our choice of chart. If  $(V, \varphi)$  was another chart, then we'd obtain another isomorphism

$$\widehat{\varphi} : C_p^\infty(M) \rightarrow C_p^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n),$$

given by  $(f, U) \mapsto (f \circ \varphi^{-1}, \varphi(U))$ . We can relate these two isomorphisms via the transition function  $\phi \circ \varphi^{-1}$ .

Let  $M$  be a manifold and let  $\{(U_i, \phi_i)\}_{i \in I}$  be an atlas on  $M$ . We describe the structure of a premanifold as follows: if  $U$  is an open subset of  $M$ , then we set

$$\mathcal{O}_M(U) := \{f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \mid f|_{U \cap U_i} \circ \phi_i^{-1} : \phi_i(U \cap U_i) \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \text{ is } C^\infty\} = \{f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \mid f \text{ is } C^\infty\}.$$

To see that this is a premanifold, fix  $i_0 \in I$ . For  $U \subseteq U_{i_0}$  open let  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a map such that  $f \circ \phi_{i_0}^{-1} : \phi_{i_0}(U_{i_0} \cap U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a  $C^\infty$  function. Then  $f \in \mathcal{O}_M(U)$  because the change of charts between  $i$  and  $i_0$  are  $C^\infty$ -diffeomorphisms. Indeed, we have

$$f|_{U \cap U_i} \circ \phi_i^{-1} = (f \circ \phi_{i_0}^{-1}) \circ (\phi_{i_0} \circ \phi_i^{-1}).$$

Therefore  $\phi_{i_0}$  yields an isomorphism  $(U_{i_0}, \mathcal{O}_{M|U_{i_0}}) \cong (Y_{i_0}, \mathcal{O}_{Y_{i_0}})$ , where  $\mathcal{O}_{Y_{i_0}}$  is the sheaf of  $C^\infty$  functions on  $Y_{i_0}$ . Hence,  $(M, \mathcal{O}_M)$  is a ringed space that is locally isomorphic to a manifold. Hence it is a premanifold.

### 40.4 Examples of Smooth Maps

**Example 40.2.** We show that the map  $F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^1$  given by  $F(t) = (\cos t, \sin t)$  is  $C^\infty$ . For  $\mathbb{R}$ , we use the atlas which consists of a single chart  $(\mathbb{R}, \text{id})$ . For  $S^1$  we use the atlas which consists of the charts  $(U_1, \phi_1)$ ,  $(U_2, \phi_2)$ ,  $(U_3, \phi_3)$  and  $(U_4, \phi_4)$  where

$$\begin{aligned} U_1 &= \{(a, b) \in S^1 \mid a > 0\} & \phi_1(a, b) &= b \\ U_2 &= \{(a, b) \in S^2 \mid a < 0\} & \phi_2(a, b) &= b \\ U_3 &= \{(a, b) \in S^2 \mid b > 0\} & \phi_3(a, b) &= a \\ U_4 &= \{(a, b) \in S^2 \mid b < 0\} & \phi_4(a, b) &= a \end{aligned}$$

Let us do some computations. First, let's compute the transition map  $\phi_{14}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{14}(a) &= \phi_1 \circ \phi_4^{-1}(a) \\ &= \phi_1(a, \sqrt{1-a^2}) \\ &= \sqrt{1-a^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Similar computations shows that

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{13}(a) &= \sqrt{1-a^2} \\ \phi_{24}(a) &= \sqrt{1-a^2} \\ \phi_{23}(a) &= \sqrt{1-a^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, we need to show that  $\phi_i \circ F \circ \text{id}$  is  $C^\infty$  for  $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$ . Let's compute  $\phi_1 \circ F \circ \text{id}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} (\phi_1 \circ F \circ \text{id})(t) &= \phi_1(F(t)) \\ &= \phi_1((\cos t, \sin t)) \\ &= \sin t. \end{aligned}$$



Similar computations shows that

$$\begin{aligned}(\phi_2 \circ F \circ \text{id})(t) &= \sin t \\(\phi_3 \circ F \circ \text{id})(t) &= \cos t \\(\phi_4 \circ F \circ \text{id})(t) &= \cos t.\end{aligned}$$

These maps are all  $C^\infty$ .

**Example 40.3.** Consider  $N = \mathbb{R}$  and  $M = \mathbb{R}^2$  and let  $f : N \rightarrow M$  be given by  $f(t) = (t^2, t^3)$ .

**Example 40.4.** Let  $S^2$  be the unit sphere with its smooth structure given in Example (39.12). Let  $f : S^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given by

$$f(a, b, c) = c^2.$$

We claim that  $f$  is  $C^\infty$ . To see this, we need to show that  $f$  is  $C^\infty$  at every point  $p = (a, b, c)$  in  $S^2$ . First assume that  $p \in U_6$ . Using the chart  $(U_6, \phi_6)$ , we find that

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ \phi_6^{-1})(a, b) &= f(\phi_6^{-1}(a, b)) \\&= f\left(a, b, \sqrt{1 - a^2 - b^2}\right) \\&= 1 - a^2 - b^2,\end{aligned}$$

which is clearly  $C^\infty$ .

**Example 40.5.** Let us show that a  $C^\infty$  function  $f(x, y)$  on  $\mathbb{R}^2$  restricts to a  $C^\infty$ -function on  $S^1$ . To avoid confusing functions with points, we will denote a point on  $S^1$  as  $p = (a, b)$  and use  $x, y$  to mean the standard coordinate functions on  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Thus,  $x(a, b) = a$  and  $y(a, b) = b$ . Suppose that we can show that  $x$  and  $y$  restrict to  $C^\infty$ -functions on  $S^1$ . Then the inclusion map  $i : S^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ , given by  $i(p) = (x(p), y(p))$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $S^1$ , and so the composition  $f|_{S^1} = f \circ i$  will be  $C^\infty$  on  $S^1$  too.

Consider first the function  $x$ . We use the following atlas  $(U_i, \phi_i)$  for  $S^1$ , where

$$\begin{aligned}U_1 &= \{(a, b) \in S^1 \mid b > 0\} & \phi_1(a, b) &= a \\U_2 &= \{(a, b) \in S^1 \mid b < 0\} & \phi_2(a, b) &= a \\U_3 &= \{(a, b) \in S^1 \mid a > 0\} & \phi_3(a, b) &= b \\U_4 &= \{(a, b) \in S^1 \mid a < 0\} & \phi_4(a, b) &= b\end{aligned}$$

Since  $x$  is a coordinate function on  $U_1$  and  $U_2$ , it is a coordinate function on  $U_1 \cup U_2$ . To show that  $x$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $U_3$ , it suffices to check the smoothness of  $x \circ \phi_3^{-1} : \phi_3(U_3) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

$$(x \circ \phi_3^{-1})(b) = x\left(\sqrt{1 - b^2}, b\right) = \sqrt{1 - b^2}.$$

On  $U_3$ , we have  $b \neq \pm 1$ , so that  $\sqrt{1 - b^2}$  is a  $C^\infty$  function of  $b$ . Hence,  $x$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $U_3$ . On  $U_4$ , we have

$$(x \circ \phi_4^{-1})(b) = x\left(-\sqrt{1 - b^2}, b\right) = -\sqrt{1 - b^2}.$$

which is  $C^\infty$  because  $b$  is not equal to  $\pm 1$ . Since  $x$  is  $C^\infty$  on the four open sets  $U_1, U_2, U_3$ , and  $U_4$ , which cover  $S^1$ ,  $x$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $S^1$ . The proof that  $y$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $S^1$  is similar.

**Example 40.6.** Let  $S^2$  be the unit sphere with its smooth structure given in Example (39.12). Let's construct a smooth function on  $S^2$ . First note that

$$\phi_1(U_{16}) = \{(b, c) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid b^2 + c^2 < 1 \text{ and } c < 0\} \quad \text{and} \quad \phi_6(U_{16}) = \{(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid a^2 + b^2 < 1 \text{ and } 0 < a\}.$$

Let  $f : \phi_1(U_{16}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  be given by

$$f(b, c) = b^2 + c^2.$$

Let's pullback  $f : \phi_1(U_{16}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  to  $\phi_{16}^*(f) : \phi_6(U_{16}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  using the transition function  $\phi_{16}$ , where

$$\begin{aligned}\phi_{16}(a, b) &= \phi_1 \circ \phi_6^{-1}(a, b) \\&= \phi_1\left(a, b, \sqrt{1 - b^2 - a^2}\right) \\&= \left(b, \sqrt{1 - b^2 - a^2}\right).\end{aligned}$$

We have,

$$\begin{aligned}\phi_{16}^*(f)(a, b) &= (f \circ \phi_{16})(a, b) \\&= f\left(b, \sqrt{1 - b^2 - a^2}\right) \\&= 1 - a^2.\end{aligned}$$

#### 40.4.1 Diffeomorphism from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to the open unit ball $B_1(0)$

Let  $\beta : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow B_1(0)$  be given by

$$x := (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto \left( \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}}, \dots, \frac{x_n}{\sqrt{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} \right) := \beta(x)$$

for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then  $\beta$  is a diffeomorphism from  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to  $B_1(0)$  with inverse given by

$$x := (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto \left( \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{1 - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}}, \dots, \frac{x_n}{\sqrt{1 - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} \right) := \beta^{-1}(x)$$

for all  $x \in B_1(0)$ . Indeed, let us first check that  $\beta(x) \in B_1(0)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \|\beta(x)\| &= \sqrt{\left( \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} \right)^2 + \dots + \left( \frac{x_n}{\sqrt{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} \right)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} \\ &< \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} \\ &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $\beta(x) \in B_1(0)$ . Next we check that  $\beta$  is smooth. This comes down to checking the component functions  $\beta_i$  are smooth:

$$x := (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto \frac{x_i}{\sqrt{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} := \beta_i(x).$$

This follows from the fact that  $1 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 > 0$ . That  $\beta^{-1}$  is smooth follows by the same reasoning. Finally, checking that  $\beta(\beta^{-1}(x)) = x$  is tedious but trivial:

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(\beta^{-1}(x)) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{x_i}{\sqrt{1 - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} \right)^2}} \left( \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{1 - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}}, \dots, \frac{x_n}{\sqrt{1 - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}} (x_1, \dots, x_n) \\ &= (x_1, \dots, x_n). \end{aligned}$$

### 40.5 Inverse Function Theorem

We say that a  $C^\infty$  map  $F : N \rightarrow M$  is **locally invertible** or a **local diffeomorphism** at  $p \in N$  if  $p$  has a neighborhood  $U$  on which  $F|_U : U \rightarrow F(U)$  is a diffeomorphism. Given  $n$  smooth functions  $F_1, \dots, F_n$  in a neighborhood of a point  $p$  in a manifold  $N$  of dimension  $n$ , one would like to know whether they form a coordinate system, possibly on a smaller neighborhood of  $p$ . This is equivalent to whether  $F = (F_1, \dots, F_n) : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is a local diffeomorphism at  $p$ . The inverse function theorem provides an answer.

**Theorem 40.1.** (*Inverse function theorem for  $\mathbb{R}^n$* ). Let  $F : W \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be a  $C^\infty$  map defined on an open subset  $W$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . For any point  $p$  in  $W$ , the map  $F$  is locally invertible at  $p$  if and only if the Jacobian determinant  $\det(J(F)_p)$  is not zero.

**Theorem 40.2.** (*Inverse function theorem for manifolds*). Let  $F : N \rightarrow M$  be a  $C^\infty$

## 41 Tangent Spaces

By definition, the **tangent space** to a manifold at a point is the vector space of derivations at the point. A smooth map of manifolds induces a linear map, called its **differential**, of tangent spaces at corresponding points. In local coordinates, the differential is represented by the Jacobian matrix of partial derivatives of the map. In this sense, the differential of a map between manifolds is a generalization of the derivative of a map between Euclidean spaces.

## 41.1 The Tangent Space at a Point

Just as for  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , we define a **germ** of a  $C^\infty$  function at  $p$  in  $M$  to be an equivalence class of  $C^\infty$  functions defined in a neighborhood of  $p$  in  $M$ , two such functions being equivalent if they agree on some, possibly smaller, neighborhood of  $p$ . The set of germs of  $C^\infty$  real-valued functions at  $p$  in  $M$  is denoted by  $C_p^\infty(M)$ . The addition and multiplication of functions make  $C_p^\infty(M)$  into a ring; which scalar multiplication by real numbers,  $C_p^\infty(M)$  becomes an  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebra.

Generalizing a derivation at a point in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , we define a **derivation at a point** in a manifold  $M$ , or a **point-derivation** of  $C_p^\infty(M)$ , to be a linear map  $D : C_p^\infty(M) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$D(fg) = (Df)g(p) + f(p)Dg.$$

**Definition 41.1.** A **tangent vector** at a point  $p$  in a manifold  $M$  is a derivation at  $p$ .

Let  $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given by mapping  $(x, y)$  to  $x^3 + y^3 + x + 1 := t$ . Let  $p = (x_0, y_0)$  be a point in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Then  $f$  induces a map  $T_p\mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow T_{f(p)}\mathbb{R}$  by taking a derivation  $D$  in  $T_p\mathbb{R}^2$  to the derivation  $f_*D$  in  $T_{f(p)}\mathbb{R}$ , where  $(f_*D)(g) = D(g \circ f)$ .

**Example 41.1.** Let  $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given by  $x \mapsto x^3 - x := t$ . Then  $\partial_x \mapsto (3x_0^2 - 1)\partial_t$ .

**Example 41.2.** Let  $h : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  be given by  $(x, y) \mapsto (f_1(x, y), f_2(x, y))$ , where

$$\begin{aligned} f_1(x, y) &= x \\ f_2(x, y) &= \frac{xy^2}{y^2 + 1} \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} J_{(x_0, y_0)}(f_1, f_2) &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \frac{y_0^2}{y_0^2 + 1} & \frac{2x_0y_0}{(y_0^2 + 1)^2} \end{pmatrix} \\ \frac{2x_0y_0}{(y_0^2 + 1)^2} &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Let  $M$  be an  $n$ -dimensional manifold and let  $p$  be a point in  $M$ . We describe  $T_pM$  in another way. Let  $\mathcal{P}_p$  be the set of paths through  $p$ :

$$\mathcal{P}_p := \{\gamma : (-a, a) \rightarrow M \mid \gamma \text{ is } C^\infty \text{ and } \gamma(0) = p\}.$$

We define an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{P}_p$  as follows: we say  $\gamma_1 \sim \gamma_2$  if there exist a chart  $(U, \phi)$  centered at  $p$  such that

$$(\phi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) = (\phi \circ \gamma_2)'(0).$$

Here,  $\phi \circ \gamma_1$  and  $\phi \circ \gamma_2$  are paths in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

*Remark 69.* This is independent of the choice of chart. If  $(V, \psi)$  is another chart centered at  $p$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} (\psi \circ \gamma_1)' &= (\psi \circ \phi^{-1} \circ \phi \circ \gamma_1)' \\ &= (\psi \circ \phi^{-1})'(\phi \circ \gamma_1)' \\ &= (\psi \circ \phi^{-1})'(\phi \circ \gamma_2)' \\ &= (\psi \circ \phi^{-1} \circ \phi \circ \gamma_2)' \\ &= (\psi \circ \phi^{-1} \circ \phi \circ \gamma_2)' \\ &= (\psi \circ \gamma_2)' \end{aligned}$$

Here,  $(\psi \circ \phi^{-1})'$  is the Jacobian.

**Definition 41.2.** The tangent space at  $p$  in  $M$  is

$$T_pM := \mathcal{P}_p / \sim.$$

**Example 41.3.** Let  $M = \{(\cos \alpha, \sin \alpha, \beta) \mid \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}\}$  be the cylinder. Define the two charts  $(U, \varphi)$  and  $(M, \psi)$  where  $U = M \cap \left\{ \left( \frac{-\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \times \left( \frac{-\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \times \mathbb{R} \right\}$  and

$$\varphi(\cos \alpha, \sin \alpha, \beta) = (\alpha, \beta) \quad \text{and} \quad \psi(\cos \alpha, \sin \alpha, \beta) = (\cos \alpha, \beta).$$

Now let  $\gamma_1$  and  $\gamma_2$  be two paths in  $M$  given by

$$\gamma_1(t) = (\cos(t^2), \sin(t^2), t) \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_2(t) = (0, 1, t).$$

Using the chart  $(U, \varphi)$ , we have

$$(\varphi \circ \gamma_1)(t) = (t^2, t) \quad \text{and} \quad (\varphi \circ \gamma_2)(t) = \left( \frac{\pi}{2}, t \right).$$

Therefore

$$(\varphi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) = (0, 1) = (\varphi \circ \gamma_2)'(0)$$

and so  $\gamma_1 \sim \gamma_2$ .

## 41.2 Partial Derivatives

On a manifold  $M$  of dimension  $n$ , let  $(U, \phi)$  be a chart and  $f$  a  $C^\infty$  function. As a function into  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\phi$  has  $n$  components  $\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n$ . This means that if  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  are the standard coordinates on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $\phi_i = x_i \circ \phi$ . For  $p \in U$ , we define the **partial derivative of  $f$  with respect to  $\phi_i$** , denoted  $\partial_{\phi_i} f$ , to be

$$\partial_{\phi_i} |_p f := (\partial_{\phi_i} f)(p) := \partial_{x_i}(f \circ \phi^{-1})(\phi(p)) := \partial_{x_i} |_p (f \circ \phi^{-1}).$$

**Example 41.4.** Consider the projective plane  $\mathbb{P}^2(\mathbb{R})$ . Use the chart  $(U, \phi)$  where

$$U = \{(a_0 : a_1 : a_2) \in \mathbb{P}^2(\mathbb{R}) \mid a_0 \neq 0\} \quad \phi(a_0 : a_1 : a_2) = \left( \frac{a_1}{a_0}, \frac{a_2}{a_0} \right).$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_1(a_0 : a_1 : a_2) &= (x_1 \circ \phi)(a_0 : a_1 : a_2) \\ &= x_1(\phi(a_0 : a_1 : a_2)) \\ &= x_1\left(\frac{a_1}{a_0}, \frac{a_2}{a_0}\right) \\ &= \frac{a_1}{a_0}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,  $\phi_2(a_0 : a_1 : a_2) = a_2/a_0$ .

### 41.2.1 Polar Coordinates

Consider the following smooth map from  $\mathbb{R}^2$  to  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \\ \theta &= \arctan\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} dr &= \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} dx + \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} dy \\ d\theta &= \frac{-y}{x^2 + y^2} dx + \frac{x}{x^2 + y^2} dy \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} r dr d\theta &= \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} dx + \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} dy \right) \left( \frac{-y}{x^2 + y^2} dx + \frac{x}{x^2 + y^2} dy \right) \\ &= (x dx + y dy) \left( \frac{-y}{x^2 + y^2} dx + \frac{x}{x^2 + y^2} dy \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{x^2 + y^2} (x dx + y dy) (-y dx + x dy) \\ &= \frac{1}{x^2 + y^2} (-xy dx dx + x^2 dx dy - y^2 dy dx + xy dy dy) \\ &= \frac{1}{x^2 + y^2} (x^2 dx dy - y^2 dy dx) \\ &= \frac{1}{x^2 + y^2} (x^2 dx dy + y^2 dx dy) \\ &= \frac{x^2 + y^2}{x^2 + y^2} dx dy \\ &= dx dy. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we can integrate the Gaussian as follows:

$$\int_0^\infty \int_0^\infty e^{-(x^2+y^2)} dx dy = \int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^\infty e^{-r^2} r dr d\theta.$$

The inverse map is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x &= r \cos \theta \\ y &= r \sin \theta \end{aligned}$$

### 41.3 Immersion, Embedding, Submersion

Let  $F : N \rightarrow M$  be a  $C^\infty$  map and let  $p$  be a point in  $N$ . Then

1.  $F$  is called an **immersion** at  $p$  if the induced map  $F_{*,p} : T_p N \rightarrow T_{F(p)} M$  is injective.
2.  $F$  is called an **immersion** if it is an immersion at every point in  $N$ .
3.  $F$  is called a **submersion** at  $p$  if the induced map  $F_{*,p} : T_p N \rightarrow T_{F(p)} M$  is surjective.
4.  $F$  is called an **submersion** if it is a submersion at every point in  $N$ .

**Example 41.5.** The prototype of an immersion is the inclusion of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  in a higher-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}^m$ :

$$i(a_1, \dots, a_n) = (a_1, \dots, a_n, 0, \dots, 0).$$

The prototype of a submersion is the projection of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  onto a lower-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}^m$ :

$$\pi(a_1, \dots, a_m, a_{m+1}, \dots, a_n) = (a_1, \dots, a_m).$$

**Example 41.6.** If  $U$  is an open subset of a manifold  $M$ , then the inclusion  $i : U \rightarrow M$  is both an immersion and submersion. This example shows in particular that a submersion need not be onto.

#### 41.3.1 Critical Point

**Definition 41.3.** Let  $F : N \rightarrow M$  be a  $C^\infty$  map,  $p$  a point in  $N$ , and  $q$  a point in  $M$ . Then

1. We say  $p$  is a **critical point** of  $F$  if  $F_{*,p}$  is not surjective.
2. We say  $q$  is a **critical value** of  $F$  if the set  $F^{-1}(q) := \{p \in N \mid F(p) = q\}$  contains a critical point.

**Theorem 41.1.** Let  $M$  be a manifold and let  $f$  be a  $C^\infty$  function. Then the set of critical values of  $f$  has measure zero.

#### Measure Theory on $\mathbb{R}$

Let  $\mu$  be the Lebesgue measure on  $\mathbb{R}$ . Recall that

- If  $I = (a, b)$ , then  $\mu(I) = b - a$ .
- If  $I$  and  $J$  are disjoint intervals, then  $\mu(I \cup J) = \mu(I) + \mu(J)$ .
- A set  $E \subset \mathbb{R}$  has measure 0 if for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ , you can cover  $E$  by a union of intervals  $\{I_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  such that  $\mu(\bigcup_n I_n) < \varepsilon$ .

**Example 41.7.** Let  $E = \{0, 1\}$ . For each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , define the set

$$A_n := \left( \frac{-1}{4n}, \frac{1}{4n} \right) \cup \left( 1 - \frac{1}{4n}, 1 + \frac{1}{4n} \right)$$

Then for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $A_n$  is a disjoint union of intervals which covers  $E$  and

$$\begin{aligned} \mu(A_n) &= \frac{1}{4n} - \frac{-1}{4n} + 1 + \frac{1}{4n} - \left( 1 - \frac{1}{4n} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{n}. \end{aligned}$$

As  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\mu(A_n) \rightarrow 0$ . Thus,  $E$  has measure 0.

**Example 41.8.** Let  $M = \{(x, x + \sin(x)) \mid x \in \mathbb{R}\}$  and let  $\pi : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be the projection onto the  $y$ -axis map, given by  $(x, x + \sin(x)) \mapsto x + \sin(x)$ .

**Definition 41.4.** A critical point is **degenerate** if the associated Hessian matrix is **singular** (i.e. has determinant equal to 0).

**Example 41.9.** Let  $M = \{(\cos \theta, \theta, \sin \theta + 2) \mid \theta \in \mathbb{R}\}$  and  $N = \{(x, y, 0) \mid x, y \in \mathbb{R}\}$ . Note that  $M$  is homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}$  and  $N$  is homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Let  $\varphi : M \rightarrow N$  be the projection map, given by  $(\cos \theta, \theta, \sin \theta + 2) \mapsto (\cos \theta, \theta, 0)$ . Let  $\{(M, \psi_M)\}$  be an atlas on  $M$  and  $\{(N, \psi_N)\}$  be an atlas on  $N$  where

$$\psi_M(\cos \theta, \theta, \sin \theta + 2) = \theta \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_N(x, y, 0) = (x, y)$$

What are the coordinates of  $\left( \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\pi}{4}, 2 + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \right) \in M$ ? Then answer is  $\frac{\pi}{4}$ .

**Theorem 41.2.** Let  $f$  be a continuous function

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \sum_{k=1}^n a_k \right)$$

A critical point is **degenerate** if the associated Hessian matrix is **singular**

## 41.4 Tangent Bundle

Let  $M$  be an  $n$ -dimensional manifold. The **Tangent Bundle** of  $M$  is

$$TM := \bigcup_{p \in M} T_p M.$$

Let  $\mathcal{A} := \{(U_i, \phi_i)\}$  be an atlas for  $M$ . Then an atlas for  $TM$  is given by

$$\mathcal{A}_T := \{(U_i \times \mathbb{R}^n, \phi_i \times \text{id})\}$$

Thus, if we denote  $\Phi_i := \phi_i \times \text{id}$ . Then  $\Phi_i : U_i \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2n}$  and we think of  $(x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_n)$  as the local coordinates of  $TM$ , where  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is a point in  $M$  and  $(y_1, \dots, y_n)$  is a vector.

**Example 41.10.** The tangent bundle of the circle  $S^1$  is diffeomorphic to the cylinder.

*Remark 70.* There exist a canonical map  $\pi : TM \rightarrow M$  given by  $(p, v) \mapsto p$ .

**Definition 41.5.** A **vector field** is a smooth function  $\omega$  from  $M$  to  $TM$  such that  $\pi \circ \omega = \text{id}$ .

*Remark 71.* Intuitively, a vector field is the data of a vector at every point in  $M$ .

A vector field  $\omega$  comes with two gadgets. The first gadget is called a **1-parameter flow** and is denoted  $\omega^t$ . The second gadget is called a **differential operator** and is denoted  $L_\omega$ .

## 41.5 Vector Bundles

On the tangent bundle  $TM$  of a smooth manifold  $M$ , the natural projection map  $\pi : TM \rightarrow M$ , given by  $\pi(p, v) = p$ , makes  $TM$  into a  $C^\infty$  **vector bundle** over  $M$ , which we now define.

Given any map  $\pi : E \rightarrow M$ , we call the inverse image  $\pi^{-1}(p) := \pi^{-1}(\{p\})$  of a point  $p \in M$  the **fiber** at  $p$ . The fiber at  $p$  is often written as  $E_p$ . For any two maps  $\pi : E \rightarrow M$  and  $\pi' : E' \rightarrow M$  with the same target space  $M$ , a map  $\phi : E \rightarrow E'$  is said to be **fiber-preserving** if  $\phi(E_p) \subset E'_p$  for all  $p \in M$ . Equivalently, this says that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \xrightarrow{\phi} & E' \\ & \searrow \pi & \swarrow \pi' \\ & M & \end{array}$$

A surjective smooth map  $\pi : E \rightarrow M$  of manifolds is said to be **locally trivial of rank  $r$**  if

1. Each fiber  $E_p$  has the structure of a vector space of dimension  $r$ .
2. For each  $p \in M$ , there are an open neighborhood  $U$  of  $p$  and a fiber-preserving diffeomorphism  $\phi : \pi^{-1}(U) \rightarrow U \times \mathbb{R}^r$  such that for every  $q \in U$  the restriction

$$\phi|_{E_q} : E_q \rightarrow \{q\} \times \mathbb{R}^r$$

is a vector space isomorphism. Such an open set  $U$  is called a **trivializing open set** for  $E$ , and  $\phi$  is called a **trivialization** of  $E$  over  $U$ .

The collection  $\{(U, \phi)\}$ , with  $\{U\}$  an open cover of  $M$ , is called a **local trivialization** for  $E$ , and  $\{U\}$  is called a **trivializing open cover** of  $M$  for  $E$ . A  $C^\infty$  **vector bundle of rank  $r$**  is a triple  $(E, M, \pi)$  consisting of manifolds  $E$  and  $M$  and a surjective smooth map  $\pi : E \rightarrow M$  that is locally trivial of rank  $r$ . The manifold  $E$  is called the **total space** of the vector bundle and  $M$  the **base space**. By abuse of language, we say that  $E$  is a **vector bundle over  $M$** . Properly speaking, the tangent bundle of a manifold  $M$  is a triple  $(TM, M, \pi)$ , and  $TM$  is the total space of the tangent bundle. In common usage,  $TM$  is often referred to as the tangent bundle.

### 41.5.1 Gluing

Given two local trivializations  $\phi_i : \pi^{-1}(U_i) \rightarrow U_i \times \mathbb{R}^k$  and  $\phi_j : \pi^{-1}(U_j) \rightarrow U_j \times \mathbb{R}^k$ , we obtain a smooth gluing map  $\phi_j \circ \phi_i^{-1} : U_i \cap U_j \times \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow U_i \cap U_j \times \mathbb{R}^k$ . This map preserves images to  $M$ , and hence it sends  $(x, v)$  to  $(x, g_{ji}(v))$ , where  $g_{ji}$  is an invertible  $k \times k$  matrix smoothly depending on  $x$ . That is, the gluing map is uniquely specified by a smooth map

$$g_{ji} : U_i \cap U_j \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}_k(\mathbb{R}).$$

These are called **transition functions** of the bundle, and since they come from  $\phi_j \circ \phi_i^{-1}$ , they clearly satisfy  $g_{ij} = g_{ji}^{-1}$ , as well as the cocycle condition

$$g_{ij}g_{jk}g_{ki} = \mathrm{id} \mid_{U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k}$$

**Example 41.11.** To build a vector bundle, choose an open cover  $\{U_i\}$  and form the pieces  $\{U_i \times \mathbb{R}^k\}$ . Then glue these together on the double overlaps  $\{U_i \cap U_j\}$  via functions  $g_{ij} : U_i \cap U_j \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}_k(\mathbb{R})$ . As long as  $g_{ij}$  satisfy  $g_{ij} = g_{ji}^{-1}$  as well as the cocycle condition, the resulting space has a vector bundle structure.

**Example 41.12.** Given a manifold  $M$ , let  $\pi : M \times \mathbb{R}^r \rightarrow M$  be the projection to the first factor. Then  $M \times \mathbb{R}^r$  is a vector bundle of rank  $r$ , called the **product bundle** of rank  $r$  over  $M$ . The vector space structure on the fiber  $\pi^{-1}(p) = \{(p, v) \mid v \in \mathbb{R}^r\}$  is the obvious one:

$$(p, u) + (p, v) = (p, u + v) \text{ and } b \cdot (p, v) = (p, bv) \text{ for } b \in \mathbb{R}.$$

A local trivialization on  $M \times \mathbb{R}$  is given by the identity map  $1_{M \times \mathbb{R}} : M \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow M \times \mathbb{R}$ . For example, the infinite cylinder  $S^1 \times \mathbb{R}$  is the product bundle of rank 1 over the circle.

Let  $\pi_E : E \rightarrow M$  and  $\pi_F : F \rightarrow N$  be two vector bundles, possibly of different ranks. A **bundle map** from  $E$  to  $F$  is a pair of maps  $(f, \tilde{f})$ , where  $f : M \rightarrow N$  and  $\tilde{f} : E \rightarrow F$  such that

1. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \xrightarrow{\tilde{f}} & F \\ \pi_E \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_F \\ M & \xrightarrow{f} & N \end{array}$$

is commutative.

2.  $\tilde{f}$  is linear on each fiber; i.e.  $\tilde{f} : E_p \rightarrow F_{f(p)}$  is a linear map of vector spaces for each  $p \in M$ .

The collection of all vector bundles together with bundle maps between them forms a category.

**Example 41.13.** A smooth map  $f : N \rightarrow M$  of manifolds induces a bundle map  $(f, \tilde{f})$ , where  $\tilde{f} : TN \rightarrow TM$  is given by

$$\tilde{f}(p, v) = (f(p), f_*(v)) \in \{f(p)\} \times T_{f(p)}M \subset TM$$

for all  $v \in T_pN$ . This gives rise to a covariant functor  $T$  from the category of smooth manifolds and smooth maps to the category of vector bundles and bundle maps: to each manifold  $M$ , we associate its tangent bundle  $TM$ , and to each  $C^\infty$  map  $f : N \rightarrow M$  of manifolds, we associate the bundle map  $T(f) = (f, \tilde{f})$ .

If  $E$  and  $F$  are two vector bundles over the same manifold  $M$ , then a bundle map from  $E$  to  $F$  over  $M$  is a bundle map in which the base map is the identity  $1_M$ . For a fixed manifold  $M$ , we can also consider the category of all  $C^\infty$  vector bundles over  $M$  and  $C^\infty$  bundles maps over  $M$ . In this category it makes sense to speak of an isomorphism of vector bundles over  $M$ . Any vector bundle over  $M$  is isomorphic over  $M$  to the product bundle  $M \times \mathbb{R}^r$  is called a **trivial bundle**.

**Example 41.14.** Let

$$M = \left\{ (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid \det \begin{pmatrix} x & 1-y \\ y & x \end{pmatrix} = 0 \right\} = \left\{ (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x^2 + \left(y - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4} \right\}.$$

This can be realized as the circle of radius  $\frac{1}{2}$  centered at the point  $(0, 1/2)$  in the plane. There is natural vector bundle associated to  $M$ . Indeed, to each point  $(x, y) \in M$ , let  $E_p := \mathrm{Ker} \begin{pmatrix} x & 1-y \\ y & x \end{pmatrix}$ . Note that  $E_p$  is nonzero since  $\det \begin{pmatrix} x & 1-y \\ y & x \end{pmatrix} = 0$ .

### 41.5.2 Smooth Sections

A **section** of a vector bundle  $\pi : E \rightarrow M$  is a map  $s : M \rightarrow E$  such that  $\pi \circ s = 1_M$ . This condition means precisely that for each  $p$  in  $M$ ,  $s$  maps  $p$  into the fiber  $E_p$ . We say that a section is **smooth** if it is smooth as a map from  $M$  to  $E$ . A **vector field**  $X$  on a manifold  $M$  is a function that assigns a tangent vector  $X_p \in T_p M$  to each point  $p$  in  $M$ . In terms of the tangent bundle, a vector field on  $M$  is simply a section of the tangent bundle  $\pi : TM \rightarrow M$  and the vector field is **smooth** if it is smooth as a map from  $M$  to  $TM$ .

**Example 41.15.** The formula

$$X_{(x,y)} = -y\partial_x + x\partial_y$$

defines a smooth vector field on  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

### 41.5.3 Whitney Sum

Let  $(E, M, \pi)$  and  $(E', M, \pi')$  be two vector bundles. We can construct a new vector bundle called the **Whitney sum**, given by  $(\pi, \pi') : E \oplus E' \rightarrow M$ .

**Example 41.16.** Suppose  $E = L \oplus L'$  where  $L$  and  $L'$  are line bundles. Then we can make a new bundle called  $\det(E)$ .

Throughout this section, let  $R$  be a commutative ring.

**Definition 41.6.** An  **$R$ -ringed space** is a pair  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ , where  $X$  is a topological space and  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is a sheaf of commutative  $R$ -algebras on  $X$ . The sheaf of rings  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is called the **structure sheaf** of  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ . A **locally ringed  $R$ -space** is an  $R$ -ringed space  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  such that the stalk  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  is a local ring for all  $x \in X$ . We then denote by  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  to be the maximal ideal of  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  and by  $\kappa(x) := \mathcal{O}_{X,x}/\mathfrak{m}_x$  its residue field.

*Remark 72.* As every ring has a unique structure as a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -algebra, we simply say **(locally) ringed space** instead of **(locally)  $\mathbb{Z}$ -ringed space**. Usually we will denote a (locally)  $R$ -ringed space by  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  simply by  $X$ .

**Example 41.17.** Let  $X$  be an open subset of a finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space. We denote by  $C_X^\infty$  the sheaf of  $C^\infty$ -functions, i.e.

$$C_X^\infty(U) := \{f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \mid f \text{ is } C^\infty \text{ function}\}.$$

Then  $C_X^\infty$  is a sheaf of  $\mathbb{R}$ -algebras.

## 42 Differential Forms

### 42.1 Differential 1-Forms

Let  $M$  be a smooth manifold and  $p$  a point in  $M$ . The **cotangent space** of  $M$  at  $p$ , denoted by  $T_p^* M$ , is defined to be the dual space of the tangent space  $T_p M$ :

$$T_p^* M = (T_p M)^\vee = \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{R}}(T_p M, \mathbb{R}).$$

An element of the cotangent space  $T_p^* M$  is called a **covector** at  $p$ . Thus, a covector  $\omega_p$  at  $p$  is a linear function

$$\omega_p : T_p M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}.$$

A **covector field**, also called a **differential 1-form** or more simply a **1-form**, on  $M$  is a function  $\omega$  that assigns to each point  $p$  in  $M$  a covector  $\omega_p$  at  $p$ . In this sense it is dual to a vector field on  $M$ , which assigns to each point in  $M$  a tangent vector at  $p$ . There are many reasons for the great utility of differential forms in manifold theory, among which is the fact that they can be pulled back under a map. This is in contrast to vector fields, which in general cannot be pushed forward under a map.

#### 42.1.1 The Differential of a Function

If  $f$  is a  $C^\infty$  real-valued function on a manifold  $M$ , its **differential** is defined to be the 1-form  $df$  on  $M$  such that for any  $p \in M$  and  $X_p \in T_p M$ , we have

$$(df)_p(X_p) = X_p f.$$

Instead of  $(df)_p$  we also write  $df|_p$  for the value of the 1-form  $df$  at  $p$ .



## 43 Bump Functions and Partitions of Unity

A partition of unity on a manifold is a collection of nonnegative functions that sum to 1. Usually one demands in addition that the partition of unity be **subordinate** to an open cover  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$ . What this means is that the partition of unity  $\{\rho_i\}_{i \in I}$  is indexed over the same set as the open cover  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$ , and for each  $i$  in the index  $I$ , the support of  $\rho_i$  is contained in  $U_i$ .

The existence of a  $C^\infty$  partition of unity is one of the most technical tools in the theory of  $C^\infty$  manifolds. It is the single feature that makes the behavior of  $C^\infty$  manifolds so different from that of real-analytic or complex manifolds. In this section we construct  $C^\infty$  bump functions on any manifold and prove the existence of a  $C^\infty$  partition of unity on a compact manifold. The proof of the existence of a  $C^\infty$  partition of unity of a general manifold is more technical and is postponed.

A partition of unity is used in two ways:

1. to decompose a global object on a manifold into a locally finite sum of local objects on the open sets  $U_i$  of an open cover.
2. to patch together local objects on the open sets  $U_i$  into a global object on the manifold.

Thus, a partition of unity serves as a bridge between global and local analysis on a manifold. This is useful because while there are always local coordinates on a manifold, there may be no global coordinates.

### 43.1 $C^\infty$ Bump Functions

The **support** of a real-valued function  $f$  on a manifold  $M$  is defined to be the closure in  $M$  of the subset on which  $f \neq 0$ :

$$\text{supp } f := \overline{f^{-1}(\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\})}.$$

Let  $q$  be a point in  $M$ , and  $U$  a neighborhood of  $q$ . By a **bump function at  $q$  supported in  $U$**  we mean any continuous nonnegative function  $\rho$  on  $M$  that is 1 in a neighborhood of  $q$  with  $\text{supp } \rho \subset U$ .

**Example 43.1.** The support of the function  $f : (-1, 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , given by  $f(x) = \tan(\pi x/2)$ , is the open interval  $(-1, 1)$ , and not the closed interval  $[-1, 1]$ , because the closure of  $f^{-1}(\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\})$  is taken in the domain  $(-1, 1)$  and not in  $\mathbb{R}$ .

Recall from Example (31.2) the smooth function  $f$  defined on  $\mathbb{R}$  by the formula

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{-1/x} & \text{for } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } x \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

We wish to build a smooth bump function from  $f$ . The main challenge in building a smooth bump function from  $f$  is to construct a smooth version of a step function. We seek  $g(t)$  by dividing  $f(t)$  by a positive function  $\ell(t)$ , for the quotient  $f(t)/\ell(t)$  will be zero for  $t \leq 0$ . The denominator  $\ell(t)$  should be a positive function that agrees with  $f(t)$  for  $t \geq 1$ , for then  $f(t)/\ell(t)$  will be identically 1 for  $t \geq 1$ . The simplest way to construct such an  $\ell(t)$  is to add to  $f(t)$  a nonnegative function that vanishes for  $t \geq 1$ . One such nonnegative function is  $f(1-t)$ . This suggests that we take  $\ell(t) = f(t) + f(1-t)$  and consider

$$g(t) = \frac{f(t)}{f(t) + f(1-t)}.$$

Given two positive real numbers  $a < b$ , we make a linear change of variables to map  $[a^2, b^2]$  to  $[0, 1]$ :

$$x \mapsto \left( \frac{x - a^2}{b^2 - a^2} \right) :$$

Let  $h : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, 1]$  be given by

$$h(x) = g\left(\frac{x - a^2}{b^2 - a^2}\right).$$

Then  $h$  is a  $C^\infty$  step function such that

$$h(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \leq a^2 \\ 1 & \text{if } x \geq b^2. \end{cases}$$

Now replace  $x$  by  $x^2$  to make the function symmetric in  $x$ :  $k(x) = h(x^2)$ . Finally, set

$$\rho(x) = 1 - k(x) = 1 - g\left(\frac{x^2 - a^2}{b^2 - a^2}\right).$$

This  $\rho(x)$  is a  $C^\infty$  bump function at 0 in  $\mathbb{R}$  that is identically 1 on  $[-a, a]$  and has support in  $[-b, b]$ . For any  $q \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\rho(x - q)$  is a  $C^\infty$  bump function at  $q$ .

It is easy to extend the construction of a bump function from  $\mathbb{R}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . To get a  $C^\infty$  bump function at  $\mathbf{0}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  that is 1 on the closed ball  $\overline{B_a(\mathbf{0})}$  and has support in the closed ball  $\overline{B_b(\mathbf{0})}$ , set

$$\sigma(x) = \rho(\|x\|) = 1 - g\left(\frac{x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2 - a^2}{b^2 - a^2}\right).$$

As a composition of  $C^\infty$  functions,  $\sigma$  is  $C^\infty$ . To get a  $C^\infty$  bump function at  $q$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , take  $\sigma(x - q)$ .

#### 43.1.1 Extending $C^\infty$ Bump Functions to $M$

Now suppose we have manifold  $M$ , and open subset  $U$  of  $M$ , and a point  $q$  in  $U$ . Choose a chart  $(\phi_i, U_i)$  such that  $U_i \subseteq U$  and  $\phi_i(U_i) \cong B_b(\phi(q))$ , for some  $b > 0$ , and choose an open neighborhood  $V_i$  of  $p$  such that  $V_i \subseteq U_i$  and  $\phi_i(V_i) \cong B_a(\phi(q))$  for some  $a < b$ . We've shown now to construct a bump function  $\rho$  at  $\phi_i(q)$  such that  $\rho(x) = 1$  for all  $x \in B_a(\phi_i(q))$  and such that  $\rho(x) = 0$  outside  $B_b(\phi_i(q))$ . Now we pull back  $\rho$  by  $\phi$  to get a bump function on  $U_i$ :

$$(\phi_i^* \rho)(q') = \rho(\phi_i(q')) \text{ for all } q' \in U_i.$$

Finally we extend this function a bump function  $\tilde{\rho}$  on  $M$  by setting

$$\tilde{\rho}(q') = \begin{cases} (\phi_i^* \rho)(q') & \text{if } q' \in U_i \\ 0 & \text{if } q' \notin U_i \end{cases}$$

Let us show that this function is  $C^\infty$ . For  $q' \in U_i$ , we simply choose the chart  $(\phi_i, U_i)$ . Then

$$(\tilde{\rho} \circ \phi_i^{-1})(x) = (\phi_i^* \rho)(\phi_i^{-1}(x)) = \rho(x),$$

shows that  $\tilde{\rho}$  is  $C^\infty$  in  $(\phi_i, U_i)$ . For  $q' \notin U_i$ , we choose a chart  $(\phi_j, U_j)$  such that  $U_i \cap U_j = \emptyset$ . Then

$$(\tilde{\rho} \circ \phi_j^{-1})(x) = \tilde{\rho}(\phi_j^{-1}(x)) = 0.$$

Thus, the function  $\tilde{\rho}$  we constructed is  $C^\infty$  everywhere.

#### 43.1.2 $C^\infty$ Extension of a Function

In general, a  $C^\infty$  function on an open subset  $U$  of a manifold  $M$  cannot be extended to a  $C^\infty$  function on  $M$ ; an example is the function  $\sec x$  on the open interval  $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ . However, if we require that the global function on  $M$  agree with the given function only on some neighborhood of a point in  $U$ , then a  $C^\infty$  extension is possible.

**Proposition 43.1.** ( *$C^\infty$  extension of a function*) Suppose  $f$  is a  $C^\infty$  function defined on a neighborhood  $U$  of a point  $p$  in a manifold  $M$ . Then there is a  $C^\infty$  function  $\tilde{f}$  on  $M$  that agrees with  $f$  in some possibly smaller neighborhood of  $p$ .

*Proof.* Choose a  $C^\infty$  bump map  $\rho : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  supported in  $U$  that is identically 1 in a neighborhood  $V$  of  $p$ . Define

$$\tilde{f}(q) = \begin{cases} \rho(q)f(q) & \text{if } q \in U \\ 0 & \text{if } q \notin U \end{cases}$$

As the product of two  $C^\infty$  functions on  $U$ ,  $\tilde{f}$  is  $C^\infty$  on  $U$ . If  $q \notin U$ , then  $q \notin \text{supp } \rho$ , and so there is an open set containing  $q$  on which  $\tilde{f}$  is 0, since  $\text{supp } \rho$  is closed. Therefore  $\tilde{f}$  is also  $C^\infty$  at every point  $q \notin U$ . Finally, since  $\rho = 1$  on  $V$ , the function  $\tilde{f}$  agrees with  $f$  on  $V$ .  $\square$

*Remark 73.* This proposition says that the natural map  $C^\infty(M) \rightarrow C_p^\infty(M)$  is surjective. Thus, every germ in  $C_p^\infty(M)$  can be represented by  $(f, M)$ , where  $f$  is a  $C^\infty$  function on  $M$ .

## 43.2 Partitions of Unity

If  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a finite open cover of  $M$ , a  $C^\infty$  **partition of unity subordinate to**  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a collection of nonnegative functions  $\{\rho_i : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}\}$  such that  $\text{supp } \rho_i \subset U_i$  and

$$\sum_{i \in I} \rho_i = 1. \quad (58)$$

When  $I$  is an infinite set, for the sum in (58) to make sense, we will impose a **local finiteness** condition. A collection  $\{A_\alpha\}$  of subsets of a topological space  $X$  is said to be **locally finite** if every point  $x$  in  $X$  has a neighborhood that meets only finitely many of the sets  $A_\alpha$ . In particular, every point  $x \in X$  is contained in only finitely many of the  $A_\alpha$ 's.

**Example 43.2.** Let  $U_{r,n}$  be the open interval  $(r - \frac{1}{n}, r + \frac{1}{n})$  on the real line  $\mathbb{R}$ . Then the open cover  $\{U_{r,n} \mid r \in \mathbb{Q}, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  of  $\mathbb{R}$  is not locally finite.

**Definition 43.1.** A  $C^\infty$  **partition of unity** on a manifold is a collection of nonnegative  $C^\infty$  functions  $\{\rho_i : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}\}_{i \in I}$  such that

1. The collection of supports,  $\{\text{supp} \rho_i\}_{i \in I}$ , is locally finite,
2.  $\sum_{i \in I} \rho_i = 1$ .

Given an open cover  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  of  $M$ , we say that a partition of unity  $\{\rho_i\}_{i \in I}$  is **subordinate to the open cover**  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  if  $\text{supp} \rho_i \subset U_i$  for every  $i \in I$ .

*Remark 74.* Since the collection of supports,  $\{\text{supp} \rho_i\}_{i \in I}$ , is locally finite, every point  $q$  lies in only finitely many of the sets  $\text{supp} \rho_i$ . Hence  $\rho_i(q) \neq 0$  for only finitely many  $i$ . It follows that the sum  $\sum_{i \in I} \rho_i(q)$  is finite.

**Example 43.3.** Let  $U$  and  $V$  be the open intervals  $(-\infty, 2)$  and  $(-1, \infty)$  in  $\mathbb{R}$  respectively, and let  $\rho_V$  be a smooth step function which is equal to 0 on  $(-\infty, 0)$  and equal to 1 on  $(1, \infty)$ . Define  $\rho_U = 1 - \rho_V$ . Then  $\text{supp} \rho_V \subset V$  and  $\text{supp} \rho_U \subset U$ . Thus,  $\{\rho_U, \rho_V\}$  is a partition of unity subordinate to the open cover  $\{U, V\}$ .

### 43.3 Existence of a Partition of Unity

In this subsection we begin a proof of the existence of a  $C^\infty$  partition of unity on a manifold. Because the case of a compact manifold is somewhat easier and already has some of the features of the general case, for pedagogical reasons we give a separate proof for the compact case.

**Lemma 43.1.** If  $\rho_1, \dots, \rho_m$  are real-valued functions on a manifold  $M$ , then

$$\text{supp} \left( \sum_{i=1}^m \rho_i \right) \subset \bigcup_{i=1}^m \text{supp} \rho_i.$$

*Proof.* Suppose  $q \in \text{supp} (\sum_{i=1}^m \rho_i)$ . Thus  $\sum_{i=1}^m \rho_i(q) \neq 0$ . In particular, we must have  $\rho_i(q) \neq 0$  for some  $i = 1, \dots, m$ . Thus,  $q \in \text{supp} \rho_i \subset \bigcup_{i=1}^m \text{supp} \rho_i$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 43.2.** Let  $M$  be a compact manifold and  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  an open cover of  $M$ . There exists a  $C^\infty$  partition of unity  $\{\rho_i\}_{i \in I}$  subordinate to  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$ .

*Proof.* For each  $q \in M$ , find an open set  $U_i$  containing  $q$  from the given cover and let  $\psi_q$  be a  $C^\infty$  bump function at  $q$  supported in  $U_i$ . Because  $\psi_q(q) > 0$ , there is a neighborhood  $W_q$  of  $q$  on which  $\psi_q > 0$ . By the compactness of  $M$ , the open cover  $\{W_q \mid q \in M\}$  has a finite subcover, say  $\{W_{q_1}, \dots, W_{q_m}\}$ . Let  $\psi_{q_1}, \dots, \psi_{q_m}$  be the corresponding bump functions. Then  $\psi := \sum_{j=1}^m \psi_{q_j}$  is positive at every point  $q$  in  $M$  because  $q \in W_{q_j}$  for some  $j$ . Define

$$\varphi_j = \frac{\psi_{q_j}}{\psi}, \quad j = 1, \dots, m.$$

Clearly  $\sum_{j=1}^m \varphi_j = 1$ . Moreover, since  $\psi > 0$ ,  $\varphi_j(q) \neq 0$  if and only if  $\psi_{q_j}(q) \neq 0$ , so

$$\text{supp} \varphi_j = \text{supp} \psi_{q_j} \subset U_i$$

for some  $i \in I$ . This shows that  $\{\varphi_j\}$  is a partition of unity such that for every  $j$ ,  $\text{supp} \varphi_j \subset U_i$  for some  $i \in I$ .

The next step is to make the index set of the partition of unity the same as that of the open cover. For each  $j = 1, \dots, m$ , choose  $\tau(j) \in I$  to be an index such that

$$\text{supp} \varphi_j \subset U_{\tau(j)}.$$

We group the collection of functions  $\{\varphi_j\}$  into subcollections according to  $\tau(j)$  and define for each  $i \in I$ ,

$$\rho_i = \sum_{\tau(j)=i} \varphi_j;$$

if there is no  $j$  for which  $\tau(j) = i$ , the sum is empty and we define  $\rho_i = 0$ . Then

$$\sum_{i \in I} \rho_i = \sum_{i \in I} \sum_{\tau(j)=i} \varphi_j = \sum_{j=1}^m \varphi_j = 1.$$

Moreover by Lemma (43.1),

$$\text{supp} \rho_i \subset \bigcup_{\tau(j)=i} \text{supp} \varphi_j \subset U_i.$$

So  $\{\rho_i\}$  is a partition of unity subordinate to  $\{U_i\}$ .  $\square$

## 44 Integration on Manifolds

### 44.1 Riemann Integral of a Function on $\mathbb{R}^n$

A **closed rectangle** in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is a Cartesian product  $R = [a_1, b_1] \times \cdots \times [a_n, b_n]$  of closed intervals in  $\mathbb{R}$ , where  $a_i, b_i \in \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $f : R \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a bounded function defined on a closed rectangle  $R$ . The **volume**  $\text{vol}(R)$  of the closed rectangle  $R$  is defined to be

$$\text{vol}(R) := \prod_{i=1}^n (b_i - a_i).$$

A **partition** of the closed interval  $[a, b]$  is a set of real numbers  $\{p_0, \dots, p_n\}$  such that

$$a = p_0 < p_1 < \cdots < p_n = b.$$

A **partition** of the rectangle  $R$  is a collection  $P = \{P_1, \dots, P_n\}$ , where each  $P_i$  is a partition of  $[a_i, b_i]$ . The partition  $P$  divides the rectangle  $R$  into closed subrectangles, which we denote by  $R_j$ .

We define the **lower sum** and the **upper sum** of  $f$  with respect to the partition  $P$  to be

$$L(f, P) := \sum_{R_j} \left( \inf_{R_j} f \right) \text{vol}(R_j), \quad U(f, P) := \sum_{R_j} \left( \sup_{R_j} f \right) \text{vol}(R_j),$$

where each sum runs over all subrectangles of the partition  $P$ . For any partition  $P$ , clearly  $L(f, P) \leq U(f, P)$ . In fact, more is true: for any two partitions  $P$  and  $P'$  of the rectangle  $R$ ,

$$L(f, P) \leq U(f, P'),$$

which we show next.

A partition  $P' = \{P'_1, \dots, P'_n\}$  is a **refinement** of the partition  $P = \{P_1, \dots, P_n\}$  if  $P_i \subset P'_i$  for all  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . If  $P'$  is a refinement of  $P$ , then each subrectangle  $R_j$  of  $P$  is subdivided into subrectangles  $R'_{jk}$  of  $P'$ , and it is easily seen that

$$L(f, P) \leq L(f, P'),$$

because if  $R'_{jk} \subset R_j$ , then  $\inf_{R_j} f \leq \inf_{R'_{jk}} f$ . Similarly, if  $P'$  is a refinement of  $P$ , then

$$U(f, P') \leq U(f, P).$$

Any two partitions  $P$  and  $P'$  of the rectangle  $R$  have a common refinement  $Q = \{Q_1, \dots, Q_n\}$  with  $Q_i = P_i \cup P'_i$ , and thus

$$L(f, P) \leq L(f, Q) \leq U(f, Q) \leq U(f, P').$$

It follows that the supremum of the lower sum  $L(f, P)$  over all partitions  $P$  of  $R$  is less than or equal to the infimum of the upper sum  $U(f, P)$  over all partitions of  $R$ . We define these two numbers to be the **lower integral**  $\int_R f$  and the **upper integral**  $\overline{\int}_R f$ , respectively:

$$\int_R f := \sup_P L(f, P), \quad \overline{\int}_R f := \inf_P U(f, P).$$

**Definition 44.1.** Let  $R$  be a closed rectangle in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . A bounded function  $f : R \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is said to be **Riemann integrable** if  $\int_R f = \overline{\int}_R f$ ; in this case, the Riemann integral of  $f$  is this common value, denoted by  $\int_R f(x) dx_1 \cdots dx_n$ , where  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  are the standard coordinates on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

**Example 44.1.** Let  $f$  be a bounded monotone increasing function on  $[-1, 1]$ . Then  $f$  is Riemann integrable. Indeed, consider the partition  $P_n = \{p_0 < p_1 < \cdots < p_{2n-1} < p_{2n}\}$  where  $p_i = -1 + i/3$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} U(f, P_n) - L(f, P_n) &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{2n} f(-1 + i/3) - \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=0}^{2n-1} f(-1 + i/3) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \left( \sum_{i=1}^{2n} f(-1 + i/3) - \sum_{i=0}^{2n-1} f(-1 + i/3) \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} (f(1) - f(-1)), \end{aligned}$$

which tends to 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

If  $f : A \subset \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , then the **extension of  $f$  by zero** is the function  $\tilde{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\tilde{f}(x) = \begin{cases} f(x) & \text{if } x \in A, \\ 0 & \text{if } x \notin A. \end{cases}$$

Now suppose  $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a bounded function on a bounded set  $A$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Enclose  $A$  in a closed rectangle  $R$  and define the Riemann integral of  $f$  over  $A$  to be

$$\int_A f(x) dx_1 \cdots dx_n = \int_R \tilde{f}(x) dx_1 \cdots dx_n$$

if the right-hand side exists. In this way we can deal with the integral of a bounded function whose domain is an arbitrary bounded set in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The **volume**  $\text{vol}(A)$  of a subset  $A \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is defined to be the integral  $\int_A 1 dx_1 \cdots dx_n$  if the integral exists.

## 44.2 Integrability Conditions

In this section we describe some conditions under which a function defined on an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is Riemann integrable.

**Definition 44.2.** A set  $A \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is said to have **measure zero** if for every  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there is a countable cover  $\{R_i\}_{i=1}^\infty$  of  $A$  by closed rectangles  $R_i$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^\infty \text{vol}(R_i) < \varepsilon$ .

**Theorem 44.1.** (*Lebesgue's theorem*) A bounded function  $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  on a bounded subset  $A \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is Riemann integrable if and only if the set  $\text{Disc}(\tilde{f})$  of discontinuities of the extended function  $\tilde{f}$  has measure zero.

**Proposition 44.1.** If a continuous function  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined on an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  has compact support, then  $f$  is Riemann integrable on  $U$ .

*Proof.* Being continuous on a compact set, the function  $f$  is bounded. Being compact, the set  $\text{supp}(f)$  is closed and bounded in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We claim that the extension  $\tilde{f}$  is continuous.

Since  $\tilde{f}$  agrees with  $f$  on  $U$ , the extended function  $\tilde{f}$  is continuous on  $U$ . It remains to show that  $\tilde{f}$  is continuous on the complement of  $U$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  as well. If  $p \notin U$ , then  $p \notin \text{supp}(f)$ . Since  $\text{supp}(f)$  is a closed subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , there is an open ball  $B$  containing  $p$  and disjoint from  $\text{supp}(f)$ . On this open ball,  $\tilde{f} = 0$ , which implies that  $\tilde{f}$  is continuous at  $p \notin U$ . Thus,  $\tilde{f}$  is continuous on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . By Lebesgue's theorem,  $f$  is Riemann integrable on  $U$ .  $\square$

**Example 44.2.** The continuous function  $f : (-1, 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , given by  $f(x) = \tan(\pi x/2)$ , is defined on an open subset of finite length in  $\mathbb{R}$ , but it is not bounded. The support of  $f$  is the open interval  $(-1, 1)$ , which is not compact. Thus, the function  $f$  does not satisfy the hypotheses of either Lebesgue's theorem or Proposition (44.1). Note that it is not Riemann integrable.

**Definition 44.3.** A subset  $A \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is called a **domain of integration** if it is bounded and its topological boundary  $\text{bd}(A)$  is a set of measure zero.

**Proposition 44.2.** Every bounded continuous function  $f$  defined on a domain of integration  $A$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is Riemann integrable over  $A$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be the extension of  $f$  by zero. Since  $f$  is continuous on  $A$  the extension  $\tilde{f}$  is necessarily continuous at all interior points of  $A$ . Clearly,  $\tilde{f}$  is continuous at all exterior points of  $A$  also, because every exterior point has a neighborhood contained entirely in  $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus A$ , on which  $\tilde{f}$  is identically zero. Therefore, the set  $\text{Disc}(\tilde{f})$  of discontinuities of  $\tilde{f}$  is a subset of  $\partial(A)$ , a set of measure zero. By Lebesgue's theorem,  $f$  is Riemann integrable.  $\square$

## 44.3 The Integral of an $n$ -Form on $\mathbb{R}^n$

Once a set of coordinates  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  has been fixed on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $n$ -forms on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  can be identified with functions on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , since every  $n$ -form on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  can be written as  $\omega = f(x) dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dx_n$  for a unique function  $f(x)$  on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . In this way the theory of Riemann integration of functions on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  carries over to  $n$ -forms on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

**Definition 44.4.** Let  $\omega = f(x) dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dx_n$  be a  $C^\infty$   $n$ -form on an open subset  $U \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , with standard coordinates  $x_1, \dots, x_n$ . Its **integral** over a subset  $A \subset U$  is defined to be the Riemann integral of  $f(x)$ :

$$\int_A \omega = \int_A f(x) dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dx_n := \int_A f(x) dx_1 \cdots dx_n,$$

if the Riemann integral exists.

**Example 44.3.** If  $f$  is a bounded continuous function defined on a domain of integration  $A$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , then the integral  $\int_A f(x) dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dx_n$  exists.

Let us see how the integral of an  $n$ -form  $\omega = f dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dx_n$  on an open subset  $U \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  transforms under a change of variables. A change of variables on  $U$  is given by a diffeomorphism  $T : \mathbb{R}^n \supset V \rightarrow U \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  be the standard coordinates on  $U$  and  $y_1, \dots, y_n$  be the standard coordinates on  $V$ . Then  $T_i := x_i \circ T$  is the  $i$ th component of  $T$ . We will assume that  $U$  and  $V$  are connected, and write  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  and  $y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$ . Then

$$dT_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dT_n = \det(J(T)) dy_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dy_n.$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_V T^* \omega &= \int_V (T^* f) T^* dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge T^* dx_n \\ &= \int_V (f \circ T) dT_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dT_n \\ &= \int_V (f \circ T) \det(J(T)) dy_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dy_n \\ &= \int_V (f \circ T) \det(J(T)) dy_1 \cdots dy_n. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, the change-of-variables formula from advanced calculus gives

$$\int_U \omega = \int_U f dx_1 \cdots dx_n = \int_V (f \circ T) |\det(J(T))| dy_1 \cdots dy_n,$$

with an absolute-value sign around the Jacobian determinant. Hence,

$$\int_V T^* \omega = \pm \int_U \omega,$$

depending on whether the Jacobian determinant  $\det(J(T))$  is positive or negative. In particular, the integral of a differential form is not invariant under all diffeomorphisms of  $V$  with  $U$ , but only under orientation-preserving diffeomorphisms.

## 44.4 Integral of a Differential Form over a Manifold

Integration of an  $n$ -form on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is not so different from integration of a function. Our approach to integration over a general manifold has several distinguishing features:

1. The manifold must be oriented.
2. On a manifold of dimension  $n$ , one can integrate only  $n$ -forms, not functions.
3. The  $n$ -forms must have compact support.

Let  $M$  be an oriented manifold of dimension  $n$ , with an oriented atlas  $\{(U_\alpha, \phi_\alpha)\}$  giving the orientation of  $M$ . Denote by  $\Omega_c^k(M)$  the vector space of  $C^\infty$   $k$ -forms with compact support on  $M$ . Suppose  $(U, \phi)$  is a chart in this atlas. If  $\omega \in \Omega_c^n(U)$  is an  $n$ -form with compact support on  $U$ , then because  $\phi : U \rightarrow \phi(U)$  is a diffeomorphism,  $(\phi^{-1})^* \omega$  is an  $n$ -form with compact support on the open subset  $\phi(U) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . We define the integral of  $\omega$  on  $U$  to be

$$\int_U \omega = \int_{\phi(U)} (\phi^{-1})^* \omega.$$

If  $(U, \psi)$  is another chart in the oriented atlas with the same  $U$ , then  $\phi \circ \psi^{-1} \psi(U) \rightarrow \phi(U)$  is an orientation-preserving diffeomorphism, and so

$$\int_{\phi(U)} (\phi^{-1})^* \omega = \int_{\psi(U)} (\phi \circ \psi^{-1})^* (\phi^{-1})^* \omega = \int_{\psi(U)} (\psi^{-1})^* \omega.$$

Thus, the integral  $\int_U \omega$  on a chart  $U$  of the atlas is well defined, independent of the choice of coordinates on  $U$ . By linearity of the integral on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , if  $\omega, \tau \in \Omega_c^n(U)$ , then

$$\int_U \omega + \tau = \int_U \omega + \int_U \tau.$$

Now let  $\omega \in \Omega_c^n(M)$ . Choose a partition of unity  $\{\rho_\alpha\}$  subordinate to the open cover  $\{U_\alpha\}$ . Because  $\omega$  has compact support and a partition of unity has locally finite supports, all except finitely many  $\rho_\alpha \omega$  are identically zero. In particular,

$$\omega = \sum_{\alpha} \rho_\alpha \omega$$

is a *finite* sum. Also since  $\text{supp}(\rho_\alpha\omega) \subset \text{supp}(\rho_\alpha) \cap \text{supp}(\omega)$ ,  $\text{supp}(\rho_\alpha\omega)$  is a closed subset of the compact set  $\text{supp}(\omega)$ . Hence,  $\text{supp}(\rho_\alpha\omega)$  is compact. Since  $\rho_\alpha\omega$  is an  $n$ -form with compact support in the chart  $U_\alpha$ , its integral  $\int_{U_\alpha} \rho_\alpha\omega$  is defined. Therefore, we can define the integral of  $\omega$  over  $M$  to be the finite sum

$$\int_M \omega := \sum_\alpha \int_{U_\alpha} \rho_\alpha\omega. \quad (59)$$

For this integral to be well defined, we must show that it is independent of the choices of oriented atlas and partition of unity. Let  $\{V_\beta, \psi_\beta\}$  be another oriented atlas of  $M$  specifying the orientation of  $M$ , and  $\{\chi_\beta\}$  a partition of unity subordinate to  $\{V_\beta\}$ . Then  $\{(U_\alpha \cap V_\beta, \phi_\alpha|_{U_\alpha \cap V_\beta})\}$  and  $\{(U_\alpha \cap V_\beta, \psi_\beta|_{U_\alpha \cap V_\beta})\}$  are two new atlases of  $M$  specifying the orientation of  $M$ , and

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_\alpha \int_{U_\alpha} \rho_\alpha\omega &= \sum_\alpha \int_{U_\alpha} \rho_\alpha \sum_\beta \chi_\beta\omega && \text{(because } \sum_\beta \chi_\beta = 1\text{)} \\ &= \sum_\alpha \sum_\beta \int_{U_\alpha} \rho_\alpha\chi_\beta\omega && \text{(these are finite sums)} \\ &= \sum_\alpha \sum_\beta \int_{U_\alpha \cap V_\beta} \rho_\alpha\chi_\beta\omega, \end{aligned}$$

where the last line follows from the fact that the support of  $\rho_\alpha\chi_\beta$  is contained in  $U_\alpha \cap V_\beta$ . By symmetry,  $\sum_\beta \int_{V_\beta} \chi_\beta\omega$  is equal to the same sum. Hence,

$$\sum_\alpha \int_{U_\alpha} \rho_\alpha\omega = \sum_\beta \int_{V_\beta} \chi_\beta\omega,$$

proving that the integral (59) is well defined.

## 45 Quotients and Gluing

There are many important topological spaces (and manifolds) that are constructed by “identifying” pieces of spaces. This typically takes the form of gluing along open sets or passing to quotients by (reasonable) equivalence relations.

### 45.1 The Quotient Topology

Recall that an equivalence relation on a set  $X$  is a reflexive, symmetric, and transitive relation. The **equivalence class**  $[x]$  of  $x \in X$  is the set of all elements in  $X$  equivalent to  $x$ . An equivalence relation on  $X$  partitions  $X$  into disjoint equivalence classes. We denote the set of equivalence classes by  $X/\sim$  and call this set the **quotient** of  $X$  by the equivalence relation  $\sim$ . There is a natural **projection map**  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/\sim$  that sends  $x \in X$  to its equivalence class  $[x]$ .

Assume now that  $X$  is a topological space. We define a topology on  $X/\sim$  by declaring a set  $U$  in  $X/\sim$  to be open if and only if  $\pi^{-1}(U)$  is open in  $X$ . Clearly, both the empty set  $\emptyset$  and the entire quotient  $X/\sim$  are open. Further, since

$$\pi^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i\right) = \bigcup_{i \in I} \pi^{-1}(U_i) \quad \text{and} \quad \pi^{-1}\left(\bigcap_{i \in I} U_i\right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} \pi^{-1}(U_i),$$

the collection of open sets in  $X/\sim$  is closed under arbitrary unions and finite intersections, and is therefore a topology. It is called the **quotient topology** on  $X/\sim$ . With this topology,  $X/\sim$  is called the **quotient space** of  $X$  by the equivalence relation  $\sim$ . The way we defined the topology on  $X/\sim$  makes the projection map  $\pi$  continuous.

#### 45.1.1 Continuity of a Map on a Quotient

Suppose  $f$  is a map from  $X$  to  $Y$  and is constant on each equivalence class. Then it induces a map  $\bar{f} : X/\sim \rightarrow Y$ , given by  $\bar{f}([x]) = f(x)$  where  $x \in X$ .

**Proposition 45.1.** *The induced map  $\bar{f} : X/\sim \rightarrow Y$  is continuous if and only if the map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is continuous.*

*Proof.* If  $\bar{f}$  is continuous, then  $f$  is continuous since  $f = \bar{f} \circ \pi$  is a composition of two continuous functions. Conversely, suppose  $f$  is continuous. Let  $V$  be an open set in  $Y$ . Then  $f^{-1}(V) = \pi^{-1}(\bar{f}^{-1}(V))$  is open in  $X$ . By the definition of quotient topology,  $\bar{f}^{-1}(V)$  is open in  $X/\sim$ . Thus  $\bar{f}$  is continuous since  $V$  was arbitrary.  $\square$



### 45.1.2 Identification of a Subset to a Point

If  $A$  is a subspace of a topological space  $X$ , we can define a relation  $\sim$  on  $X$  by declaring

$$x \sim x \text{ for all } x \in X \text{ and } x \sim y \text{ for all } x, y \in A.$$

This is an equivalence relation on  $X$ . We say that the quotient space  $X/\sim$  is obtained from  $X$  by **identifying  $A$  to a point**.

**Example 45.1.** Let  $I$  be the unit interval  $[0, 1]$  and  $I/\sim$  be the quotient space obtained from  $I$  by identifying the two points  $\{0, 1\}$  to a point. Denote by  $S^1$  the unit circle in the complex plane. The function  $f : I \rightarrow S^1$ , given by  $f(x) = e^{2\pi i x}$ , assumes the same value at 0 and 1, and so induces a function  $\bar{f} : I/\sim \rightarrow S^1$ . Since  $f$  is continuous,  $\bar{f}$  is continuous. As the continuous image of a compact set  $I$ , the quotient  $I/\sim$  is compact. Thus  $\bar{f}$  is a continuous bijection from the compact space  $I/\sim$  to the Hausdorff space  $S^1$ . Hence it is a homeomorphism.

## 45.2 Open Equivalence Relations

An equivalence relation  $\sim$  on a topological space  $X$  is said to be **open** if the projection map  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/\sim$  is open. In other words, the equivalence relation  $\sim$  on  $X$  is open if and only if for every open set  $U$  in  $X$ , the set

$$\pi^{-1}(\pi(U)) = \bigcup_{x \in U} [x]$$

of all points equivalent to some point of  $U$  is open.

**Example 45.2.** Let  $\sim$  be the equivalence relation on the real line  $\mathbb{R}$  that identifies the two points 1 and  $-1$  and let  $\pi : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}/\sim$  be the projection map. Then  $\pi$  is not an open map. Indeed, let  $V$  be the open interval  $(-2, 0)$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ . Then

$$\pi^{-1}(\pi(V)) = (-2, 0) \cup \{1\},$$

which is not open in  $\mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition 45.1.** Let  $\sim$  be an equivalence relation on  $X$ . The **graph** of  $\sim$  is the set

$$\Gamma = \{(x, y) \in X \times X \mid x \sim y\} \subseteq X \times X.$$

**Theorem 45.1.** Suppose  $\sim$  is an open equivalence relation on a topological space  $X$ . Then the quotient space  $X/\sim$  is Hausdorff if and only if the graph  $\Gamma$  of  $\sim$  is closed in  $X \times X$ .

*Proof.* There is a sequence of equivalent statements:  $\Gamma$  is closed in  $X \times X$  iff  $(X \times X) \setminus \Gamma$  is open in  $X \times X$  iff for every  $(x, y) \in (X \times X) \setminus \Gamma$ , there is a basic open set  $U \times V$  containing  $(x, y)$  such that  $(U \times V) \cap \Gamma = \emptyset$  iff for every pair  $x \not\sim y$  in  $X$ , there exist neighborhoods  $U$  of  $x$  and  $V$  of  $y$  in  $X$  such that no element of  $U$  is equivalent to an element of  $V$  iff for any two points  $[x] \neq [y]$  in  $X/\sim$ , there exist neighborhoods  $U$  of  $x$  and  $V$  of  $y$  in  $X$  such that  $\pi(U) \cap \pi(V) = \emptyset$  in  $X/\sim$ .

We now show that this last statement is equivalent to  $X/\sim$  being Hausdorff. Since  $\sim$  is an open equivalence relation,  $\pi(U)$  and  $\pi(V)$  are disjoint open sets in  $X/\sim$  containing  $[x]$  and  $[y]$  respectively, so  $X/\sim$  is Hausdorff. Conversely, suppose  $X/\sim$  is Hausdorff. Let  $[x] \neq [y]$  in  $X/\sim$ . Then there exist disjoint open sets  $A$  and  $B$  in  $X/\sim$  such that  $[x] \in A$  and  $[y] \in B$ . By the surjectivity of  $\pi$ , we have  $A = \pi(\pi^{-1}A)$  and  $B = \pi(\pi^{-1}B)$ . Let  $U = \pi^{-1}A$  and  $V = \pi^{-1}B$ . Then  $x \in U$ ,  $y \in V$ , and  $A = \pi(U)$  and  $B = \pi(V)$  are disjoint open sets in  $X/\sim$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 45.2.** Let  $\sim$  be an open equivalence relation on a topological space  $X$ . If  $\mathcal{B} = \{B_\alpha\}$  is a basis for  $X$ , then its image  $\{\pi(B_\alpha)\}$  under  $\pi$  is a basis for  $X/\sim$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\pi$  is an open map,  $\{\pi(B_\alpha)\}$  is a collection of open sets in  $X/\sim$ . Let  $W$  be an open set in  $X/\sim$  and  $[x] \in W$ . Then  $x \in \pi^{-1}(W)$ . Since  $\pi^{-1}(W)$  is open, there is a basic open set  $B \in \mathcal{B}$  such that  $x \in B \subset \pi^{-1}(W)$ . Then  $[x] = \pi(x) \in \pi(B) \subset W$ , which proves that  $\{\pi(B_\alpha)\}$  is a basis for  $X/\sim$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 8.** If  $\sim$  is an open equivalence relation on a second-countable space  $X$ , then the quotient space is second-countable.



### 45.3 Quotients by Group Actions

This subsection is based on and inspired by [1]. Many important manifolds can be constructed as quotients by group actions on other manifolds. For instance, the Klein bottle will be defined as a quotient of  $S^1 \times S^1$  by the action of a group of order 2. The circle as defined concretely in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  is isomorphic to the quotient of  $\mathbb{R}$  by additive translation by  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

**Definition 45.2.** Let  $X$  be a topological space, let  $G$  be a discrete group, and let  $\mu$  be a right action of  $G$  on  $X$ .

1. We say  $\mu$  is **continuous** if it is continuous as a map  $\mu: X \times G \rightarrow X$ . In other words,  $\mu$  is continuous if for each  $g \in G$  the map  $\mu_g: X \rightarrow X$  defined by  $\mu_g(x) = xg$  is continuous (and hence a homeomorphism with inverse being  $\mu_{g^{-1}}$ ).
2. We say  $\mu$  is **free** if for each  $x \in X$  the stabilizer subgroup

$$\text{Stab}_G(x) = \{g \in G \mid xg = x\}$$

is the trivial subgroup (in other words,  $xg = x$  implies  $g = 1$ ).

3. We say  $\mu$  is **properly discontinuous** when it is continuous for the discrete topology on  $G$  and each  $x \in X$  admits an open neighborhood  $U_x$  such that the  $G$ -translate  $U_x g$  meets  $U_x$  for only finitely many  $g \in G$ . In particular,  $\text{Stab}_G(x)$  is necessarily finite.

*Remark 75.* What does it mean for  $\mu$  to be continuous at a point  $(x, g) \in X \times G$ ? It means that for all open neighborhoods  $V \subseteq X$  of  $xg$ , there exists an open neighborhood  $U \subseteq X$  of  $x$  such that if  $y \in U$ , then  $yg \in V$ . Alternatively, we can characterize continuity of  $\mu$  using the sequential criterion: let  $(x_n, g_n)$  be a sequence in  $X \times G$  which converges to  $(x, g)$  in  $X \times G$ . Then the sequence  $(x_n g_n)$  in  $X$  converges to  $xg$  in  $X$ . Note that since  $G$  has the discrete topology, eventually we must have  $g_n = g$ . Thus  $(x_n, g_n) \rightarrow (x, g)$  is equivalent to saying  $x_n \rightarrow x$  and  $g \in G$ . Thus we can restate the sequential criterion as: if  $x_n \rightarrow x$  in  $X$  and  $g \in G$ , then  $x_n g \rightarrow xg$  in  $X$ .

**Example 45.3.** Suppose that  $X$  is a locally Hausdorff space, and that  $G$  acts on  $X$  on the right via a properly discontinuous action. For each  $x \in X$ , we get an open subset  $U_x$  such that  $U_x$  meets  $U_x g$  for only finitely many  $g \in G$ . This property is unaffected by replacing  $U_x$  with a smaller open subset around  $x$ , so by the locally Hausdorff property we can assume that  $U_x$  is Hausdorff. The key is that we can do better: there exists an open set  $U'_x \subseteq U_x$  such that  $U'_x$  meets  $U'_x g$  if and only if  $x = xg$ . Thus, if the action is also free then  $U'_x$  is disjoint from  $U'_x g$  for all  $g \in G$  with  $g \neq 1$ .

Indeed, observe that if  $xg \neq x$  and  $U_x \cap U_x g \neq \emptyset$ , then by the Hausdorff property of  $U_x$ , there exists an open neighborhood  $U_x^g \subseteq U_x$  of  $x$  and an open neighborhood  $V_x^g \subseteq U_x g$  of  $xg$  such that  $U_x^g \cap V_x^g = \emptyset$ . By continuity of  $\mu_g$  at the point  $x$ , there exists an open neighborhood  $\tilde{U}_x^g \subseteq U_x^g$  of  $x$  such that  $\tilde{U}_x^g g \subseteq V_x^g$ . By replacing  $U_x^g$  with  $\tilde{U}_x^g$  if necessary, we may assume that  $U_x^g g \subseteq V_x^g$  so that  $U_x^g \cap U_x^g g = \emptyset$ . We now set

$$U'_x = \bigcap_{\substack{g \in G \setminus \text{Stab}(x) \\ U_x \cap U_x g \neq \emptyset}} U_x^g$$

The intersection is finite, so  $U'_x$  is open (and contains  $x$  since each  $U_x^g$  contains  $x$ ). Furthermore we have  $U'_x \cap U'_x g \neq \emptyset$  if and only if  $xg = x$ .

The interest in free and properly discontinuous actions is that for such actions in the locally Hausdorff case we may find an open  $U_x$  around each  $x \in X$  such that  $U_x$  is disjoint from  $U_x g$  whenever  $g \neq 1$ . Thus, for such actions we may say that in  $X/G$  we are identifying points in the same  $G$ -orbit with this identification process not “crushing” the space  $X$  by identifying points in  $X$  that are arbitrarily close to each other. An example where things go horribly wrong is the action of  $G = \mathbb{Q}$  on  $\mathbb{R}$  via additive translations. This is a continuous action, but the quotient  $\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Q}$  is very bad: any two  $\mathbb{Q}$ -orbits in  $\mathbb{R}$  contain arbitrarily close points! Here are some examples of free and properly discontinuous actions.

**Example 45.4.** The antipodal map on  $S^n$ , given by

$$\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_{n+1}) \mapsto (-x_1, \dots, -x_{n+1}) = -\mathbf{x},$$

viewed as an action of  $C_2$  on  $S^n$  (where  $C_2$  is the cyclic group of order 2) is free and properly discontinuous: freeness is clear, as is continuity, and for any  $\mathbf{x} \in S^n$  the points near  $\mathbf{x}$  all have their antipodes far away! For instance, consider the small open ball centered at  $\mathbf{x}$  with radius  $\varepsilon > 0$

$$B_\varepsilon(\mathbf{x}) = \{\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \|\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{x}\| < \varepsilon\},$$

and set  $B_\varepsilon^{S^n}(\mathbf{x}) := B_\varepsilon(\mathbf{x}) \cap S^n$ . Then  $B_\varepsilon^{S^n}(\mathbf{x}) \subseteq S^n$  is open and a neighborhood of  $\mathbf{x}$ , and choosing  $\varepsilon > 0$  small enough (say  $\varepsilon \leq 1/2$ ), we can ensure  $B_\varepsilon^{S^n}(\mathbf{x}) \cap B_\varepsilon^{S^n}(-\mathbf{x}) = \emptyset$ .

**Example 45.5.** Consider the curve  $X := V_{\mathbb{C}}(x^3 + y^3 + z^3 - 1) \subseteq \mathbb{C}^3$ . The map  $(x, y, z) \mapsto (\zeta_3 x, \zeta_3 y, \zeta_3 z)$ , viewed as an action of  $C_3$  on  $X$  is free and properly discontinuous.

**Example 45.6.** Let  $X = S^1 \times S^1$  be a product of two circles, where the circle

$$S^1 = \{z \in \mathbb{C} \mid |z| = 1\}$$

is viewed as a topological group (using multiplication in  $\mathbb{C}$ , so both the group law and inversion  $z \mapsto 1/z = \bar{z}$  on  $S^1$  are continuous). The visibly continuous map  $(z, w) \mapsto (1/z, -w) = (\bar{z}, -w)$  reflects through the  $x$ -axis in the first circle and rotates 180-degree in the second circle, and it is its own inverse. Thus, this gives an action by  $C_2$  on  $X$  which is free and properly discontinuous. The associated quotient  $X/G$  will be called the (set-theoretic) **Klein bottle**.

**Theorem 45.3.** *Let  $X$  be a locally Hausdorff topological space equipped with a free and properly discontinuous action by a group  $G$ . There is a unique topology on  $X/G$  such that the quotient map  $\pi: X \rightarrow X/G$  is a continuous map that is a local homeomorphism (i.e. each  $x \in X$  admits a neighborhood mapping homeomorphically onto an open subset of  $X/G$ ). Moreover, the quotient map is open.*

*A subset  $S \subseteq X/G$  is open if and only if its preimage in  $X$  is open, and if  $U \subseteq X$  is an open set that is disjoint from  $Ug$  for all nontrivial  $g \in G$  then the map  $U \rightarrow X/G$  is a homeomorphism onto its open image  $\bar{U}$  and the natural map  $U \times G \rightarrow \pi^{-1}(\bar{U})$  over  $\bar{U}$  given by  $(u, g) \mapsto ug$  is a homeomorphism when  $G$  is given the discrete topology.*

*Remark 76.* The topology in this theorem is called the **quotient topology**, and it is locally Hausdorff since  $X \rightarrow X/G$  is a local homeomorphism.

*Proof.* Sketch: we show that  $\pi$  is an open map. Let  $x \in X$  and pick  $U_x$  such that  $U_x.g \cap U_x = \emptyset$  for all  $g \in G \setminus \{1\}$ . We first show that  $\pi(U_x)$  is open. The inverse image of  $\pi(U_x)$  under  $\pi$  is a disjoint union of open sets  $\bigcup_{g \in G} U_x.g$ . Therefore  $\pi(U_x)$  is open. Now let  $U$  be any open subset of  $X$ . For each  $x \in U$ , choose  $U_x$  such that  $U_x.g \cap U_x = \emptyset$  for all  $g \in G \setminus \{1\}$  and  $U_x \subset U$ . Then

$$\pi(U) = \pi\left(\bigcup_{x \in U} U_x\right) = \bigcup_{x \in U} \pi(U_x)$$

implies  $\pi(U)$  is open. □

**Example 45.7.** (Möbius Strip) Choose  $a > 0$ . Let  $X = (-a, a) \times S^1$ , and let the group of order 2 act on it with the non-trivial element acting by  $(t, w) \mapsto (-t, -w)$ . This is easily checked to be a continuous action for the discrete topology of the group of order 2, and it is free and properly discontinuous. The quotient  $M_a$  is the **Möbius strip** of height  $2a$ .

To check that the Möbius strip  $M_a$  is Hausdorff, we use the quotient criterion: the set of points in  $X \times X$  with the form  $((t, w), (t', w'))$  with  $(t', w') = (t, w)$  or  $(t', w') = (-t, -w)$  is checked to be closed by using the sequential criterion in  $X \times X$ : suppose  $(t_n, w_n) \sim (t'_n, w'_n)$  are sequences in  $X \times X$  which converge  $(t, w)$  and  $(t', w')$  respectively. Then we need to show that  $(t, w) \sim (t', w')$ . Assume that  $(t, w) \neq (t', w')$ . Choose open neighborhoods  $U$  of  $(t, w)$  and  $U'$  of  $(t', w')$  respectively such that  $U \cap U' = \emptyset$  and such that eventually  $(t_n, w_n) \neq (t'_n, w'_n)$  (We can do this because they converge to different limits and our space  $X \times X$  is Hausdorff). Thus, eventually we have  $(t'_n, w'_n) = (-t_n, -w_n) \rightarrow (-t, -w)$ .

**Example 45.8.** We have a right action of  $\mathbb{Z}^2$  on  $\mathbb{R}^2$  given by

$$\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{a} = (x_1 + a_1, x_2 + a_2) \tag{60}$$

for all  $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$  and  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . The action (60) is free since if  $\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{x}$  implies  $\mathbf{a} = 0$ . Next observe that the action (60) is properly discontinuous. Indeed, it is continuous as a map  $\mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{Z}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  since for fixed  $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{Z}^2$ , the map  $\mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  defined by

$$(x_1, x_2) = \mathbf{x} \mapsto \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{a} = (x_1 + a_1, x_2 + a_2)$$

is continuous (as the component functions are continuous). Furthermore, given  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , choose

$$U_{\mathbf{x}} = \{\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid \|\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{x}\|_{\infty} < 1/2\} = (x_1 - 1/2, x_1 + 1/2) \times (x_2 - 1/2, x_2 + 1/2),$$

that is,  $U_{\mathbf{x}}$  is the open square centered at  $\mathbf{x}$  whose sides have length 1. Then clearly  $U_{\mathbf{x}} \cdot \mathbf{a}$  is disjoint from  $U_{\mathbf{x}}$  for all  $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{Z}^2 \setminus \{0\}$ .

## 45.4 Möbius Strip in $\mathbb{R}^3$

Recall that the Möbius strip  $M_a$  (with height  $2a$ ) was defined as an abstract smooth manifold made as a quotient of  $(-a, a) \times S^1$  by a free and properly discontinuous action by the group of order 2. Using the  $C^\infty$  isomorphism between  $\mathbb{R}/2\pi\mathbb{Z}$  and the circle  $S^1 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^2$  via  $\theta \mapsto (\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$ , we consider the standard parameter  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$  as a local coordinate on  $S^1$ . For finite  $a > 0$ , consider the  $C^\infty$  map  $f : (-a, a) \times S^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  defined by

$$(t, \theta) \mapsto (2a \cos 2\theta + t \cos \theta \cos 2\theta, 2a \sin 2\theta + t \cos \theta \sin 2\theta, t \sin \theta).$$

Since  $f(-t, \pi + \theta) = f(t, \theta)$  by inspection, it follows from the universal property of the quotient map  $(-a, a) \times S^1 \rightarrow M_a$  that  $f$  uniquely factors through this via a  $C^\infty$  map  $\bar{f} : M_a \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ . Our goal is to prove that  $\bar{f}$  is an embedding and to use this viewpoint to understand some basic properties of the Möbius strip.

### 45.4.1 Embedding

**Theorem 45.4.** *The map  $\bar{f}$  is an immersion.*

*Proof.* We first reduce the problem to working with  $f$ , as  $f$  is given by a simple explicit formula across its entire domain ( $M_a$  does not have global coordinates. Of course, working locally for  $\bar{f}$  is “the same” as working locally for  $f$ , so the reduction step to working with  $f$  isn’t really necessary if one says things a little differently. However, it seems a bit cleaner to just make the reduction step right away and so to thereby work with the map  $f$  that feel a bit more concrete than the map  $\bar{f}$  at the global level.)

Let  $p : (-a, a) \times S^1 \rightarrow M_a$  be the natural quotient map. Each point in  $M_a$  has the form  $p(\xi_0)$  for some  $\xi_0$  and the Chain Rule gives that the injection  $df(\xi_0)$  factors as  $d\bar{f}(p(\xi_0)) \circ dp(\xi_0)$  with  $dp(\xi_0)$  an isomorphism (as  $p$  is a local  $C^\infty$  isomorphism, via the theory of quotients by free and properly discontinuous group actions). Hence, the tangent map for  $\bar{f}$  is injective at  $p(\xi_0)$  if and only if the tangent map for  $f$  is injective at  $\xi_0$ . It is therefore enough (even equivalent!) to prove that  $f$  is an immersion. □

## 45.5 Construction of Manifolds From Gluing Data

The definition of a manifold assumes that the underlying set,  $M$ , is already known. However, there are situations where we only have some indirect information about the overlap of the domains  $U_i$ , of the local charts defining our manifold,  $M$ , in terms of the transition functions

$$\phi_{ji} : \phi_i(U_i \cap U_j) \rightarrow \phi_j(U_i \cap U_j),$$

but where  $M$  itself is not known. Our goal in this subsection is to try and reconstruct a manifold  $M$  by gluing open subsets of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  using the transition functions  $\phi_{ij}$ .

**Definition 45.3.** Let  $n$  be an integer with  $n \geq 1$  and let  $k$  be either an integer with  $k \geq 1$  or  $k = \infty$ . A set of **gluing data** is a triple

$$\mathcal{G} = ((\Omega_i)_{i \in I}, (\Omega_{ij})_{(i,j) \in I \times I}, (\phi_{ji})_{(i,j) \in K}),$$

satisfying the following properties, where  $I$  is a (nonempty) countable set and  $K = \{(i, j) \in I \times I \mid \Omega_{ij} \neq \emptyset\}$ :

1. For every  $i \in I$ , the set  $\Omega_i$  is a nonempty open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  called a **parametrization domain**, for short, **p-domain**, and the  $\Omega_i$  are pairwise disjoint (i.e.  $\Omega_i \cap \Omega_j = \emptyset$  for all  $i \neq j$ ).
2. For every pair  $(i, j) \in I \times I$ , the set  $\Omega_{ij}$  is an open subset of  $\Omega_i$ . Furthermore,  $\Omega_{ii} = \Omega_i$  and  $\Omega_{ij} \neq \emptyset$  if and only if  $\Omega_{ji} \neq \emptyset$ . Each nonempty  $\Omega_{ij}$  (with  $i \neq j$ ) is called a **gluing domain**.
3. The maps  $\phi_{ji} : \Omega_{ij} \rightarrow \Omega_{ji}$  is a  $C^k$  bijection for every  $(i, j) \in K$  called a **transition function** (or **gluing function**) and the following condition holds:

- (a) The **cocycle condition** holds: for all  $i, j, k$ , if  $\Omega_{ji} \cap \Omega_{jk} \neq \emptyset$ , then  $\phi_{ji}^{-1}(\Omega_{jk}) \subseteq \Omega_{ik}$  and

$$\phi_{ki}(x) = (\phi_{kj} \circ \phi_{ji})(x)$$

for all  $x \in \phi_{ji}^{-1}(\Omega_{jk} \cap \Omega_{ik})$ .

4. For every pair  $(i, j) \in K$  with  $i \neq j$ , for every  $x \in \partial(\Omega_{ij}) \cap \Omega_i$  and every  $y \in \partial(\Omega_{ji}) \cap \Omega_j$ , there are open balls,  $V_x$  and  $V_y$  centered at  $x$  and  $y$ , so that no point of  $V_y \cap \Omega_{ji}$  is the image of any point of  $V_x \cap \Omega_{ij}$  by  $\phi_{ji}$ .

*Remark 77.*

1. In practical applications, the index set,  $I$ , is of course finite and the open subsets,  $\Omega_i$ , may have special properties (for example, connected; open simplices, etc.).
2. Observe that  $\Omega_{ij} \subseteq \Omega_i$  and  $\Omega_{ji} \subseteq \Omega_j$ . If  $i \neq j$ , as  $\Omega_i$  and  $\Omega_j$  are disjoint, so are  $\Omega_{ij}$  and  $\Omega_{ji}$ .
3. The cocycle condition may seem overly complicated but it is actually needed to guarantee the transitivity of the relation,  $\sim$ , which we will define shortly. Since the  $\phi_{ji}$  are bijections, the cocycle condition implies the following conditions
  - (a)  $\phi_{ii} = \text{id}_{\Omega_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ . This follows by setting  $i = j = k$ .
  - (b)  $\phi_{ij} = \phi_{ji}^{-1}$  for all  $(i, j) \in K$ . This follows from (a) and by setting  $k = i$ .
4. Let  $M$  be a  $C^k$  manifold and let  $\{(U_i, \phi_i)\}_{i \in I}$  be an atlas on it. Then set  $\Omega_i = \phi_i(U_i)$ ,  $\Omega_{ij} = \phi_i(U_i \cap U_j)$ , and let  $\phi_{ij} : \Omega_{ji} \rightarrow \Omega_{ij}$  be the corresponding transition maps. Then it's easy to check that the open sets  $\Omega_i$ ,  $\Omega_{ij}$ , and the gluing functions  $\phi_{ij}$ , satisfy the conditions of Definition (45.3). Indeed,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{ji}^{-1}(\Omega_{jk}) &= (\phi_i \circ \phi_j^{-1})(\phi_j(U_j \cap U_k)) \\ &= \phi_i(U_j \cap U_k) \\ &= \phi_i(U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k) \\ &\subseteq \phi_i(U_i \cap U_k) \\ &= \Omega_{ik}. \end{aligned}$$

Let us show that a set of gluing data defines a  $C^k$  manifold in a natural way.

**Proposition 45.2.** *For every set of gluing data  $\mathcal{G} = (\Omega_i)_{i \in I}, (\Omega_{ij})_{(i,j) \in I \times I}, (\phi_{ji})_{(i,j) \in K}$ , there is an  $n$ -dimensional  $C^k$  manifold,  $M_{\mathcal{G}}$ , whose transition functions are the  $\phi_{ji}$ 's.*

*Proof.* Define the binary relation,  $\sim$ , on the disjoint union,  $\Omega := \coprod_{i \in I} \Omega_i$ , of the open sets,  $\Omega_i$ , as follows: For all  $x, y \in \Omega$ ,

$$x \sim y \text{ if and only if there exists } (i, j) \in K \text{ such that } x \in \Omega_{ij}, y \in \Omega_{ji}, \text{ and } y = \phi_{ji}(x).$$

The cocycle condition ensures that this is an equivalence relation. Indeed, (a) implies reflexivity and (b) implies symmetry. The crucial step is to check transitivity. Assume that  $x \sim y$  and  $y \sim z$ . Then there are some  $i, j, k$  such that  $\phi_{ji}(x) = y$  and  $\phi_{kj}(y) = z$ . But then  $(\phi_{kj} \circ \phi_{ji})(x) = \phi_{ki}(x) = z$ . That is,  $x \sim z$ , as desired.

Since  $\sim$  is an equivalence relation, let

$$M_{\mathcal{G}} := \Omega / \sim$$

be the quotient space by the equivalence relation  $\sim$ . We claim that  $\sim$  is an open equivalence relation. Indeed, let  $U := \coprod_{i \in I} U_i$  be an open subset of  $\Omega$ , where  $U_i$  is an open subset of  $\Omega_i$  for each  $i$ . Then

$$\pi^{-1}(\pi(U)) = \coprod_{i \in I} \left( \bigcup_{j \in I} \phi_{ij}(U_j \cap \Omega_{ji}) \cup U_i \right),$$

which is open in  $\Omega$  since  $\phi_{ij}(U_j \cap \Omega_{ji})$  is open in  $\Omega_i$  for all  $i \in I$ . Therefore,  $M_{\mathcal{G}}$  is second-countable since  $\Omega$  is second-countable.

Since  $\sim$  is an open equivalence relation, we can use Theorem (45.1) to show that  $M_{\mathcal{G}}$  is Hausdorff by showing that the graph

$$R = \{(x, y) \in \Omega \times \Omega \mid x \sim y\}$$

is closed in  $\Omega \times \Omega$ . We do this by showing that if  $(x_n, y_n)$  is a sequence in  $R$  that converges to  $(x, y) \in \Omega \times \Omega$ , then  $(x, y) \in R$ . That is to say, if  $x_n \sim y_n$ , then  $x \sim y$ . Since  $(x, y) \in \Omega_i \times \Omega_j$ , we may assume that  $(x_n, y_n) \in \Omega_i \times \Omega_j$  (since it will eventually be in there anyways). If  $i = j$ , then  $x_n = y_n$ , and hence  $x = y$ , so assume  $i \neq j$ .

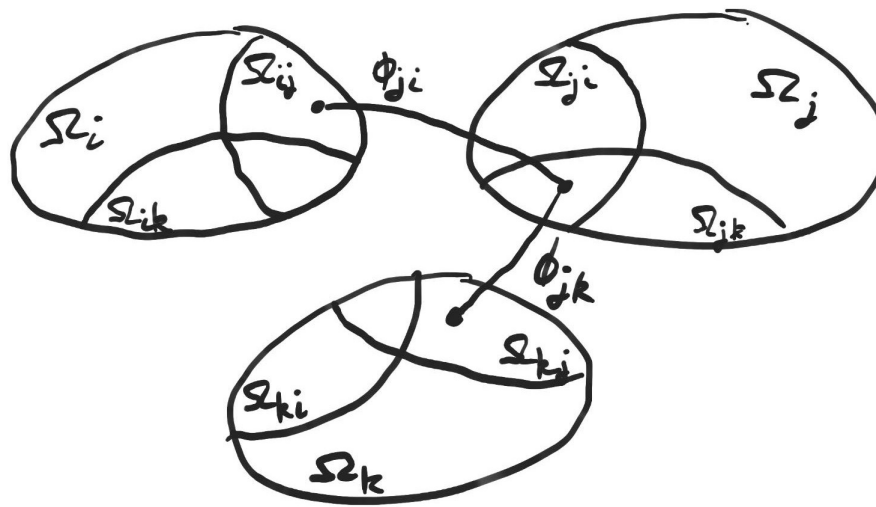
In order for us to have  $x_n \sim y_n$ , we must have  $x_n \in \Omega_{ij}$  and  $y_n \in \Omega_{ji}$ . If  $x \in \Omega_{ij}$ , then it is easy to see that  $y \in \Omega_{ji}$  and that  $x \sim y$ , since  $x_n \sim y_n$  in arbitrarily small neighborhoods of  $x$  and  $y$ . Thus we need to show that either  $x \in \Omega_{ij}$  or  $y \in \Omega_{ji}$ . Assume for a contradiction, that  $x \in \partial(\Omega_{ij}) \cap \Omega_i$  and  $y \in \partial(\Omega_{ji}) \cap \Omega_j$ . Choose open balls  $V_x$  and  $V_y$  centered at  $x$  and  $y$  so that no point in  $V_y \cap \Omega_{ji}$  is the image of any point of  $V_x \cap \Omega_{ij}$  by  $\phi_{ji}$ . But this implies that no point in  $V_x$  is equivalent to some point in  $V_y$ . This contradicts the fact that  $x_n \rightarrow x$  and  $y_n \rightarrow y$ , as the sequence  $(x_n, y_n)$  must eventually be in the neighborhoods  $V_x$  and  $V_y$ . Therefore  $M_{\mathcal{G}}$  is Hausdorff.

Finally, for every  $i \in I$ , let  $\text{in}_i : \Omega_i \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} \Omega_i$  be the natural injection and let

$$\tau_i := \pi \circ \text{in}_i : \Omega_i \rightarrow M_{\mathcal{G}}.$$

Since we already noted that if  $x \sim y$  and  $x, y \in \Omega_i$ , then  $x = y$ , we conclude that every  $\tau_i$  is injective. If we let  $U_i = \tau_i(\Omega_i)$  and  $\phi_i = \tau_i^{-1}$ , it is immediately verified that the  $(U_i, \phi_i)$  are charts and this collection of charts forms a  $C^k$  atlas for  $M_{\mathcal{G}}$ .  $\square$

*Remark 78.* Note that the condition  $\phi_{ji}^{-1}(\Omega_{jk}) \subseteq \Omega_{ik}$  is needed in order for  $\sim$  to be transitive. The picture below illustrates how things could go wrong:



### 45.5.1 Mobius Strip

**Example 45.9.** Let  $X$  be the set of all lines in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . We want to give this set the structure of a  $C^\infty$ -manifold.

Let  $U_v$  be the set of all nonvertical lines in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . A nonvertical is of the form  $\ell_{a,b}^v = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid y = ax + b\}$ . Each such line is uniquely determined by a point  $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . So we have bijection  $\varphi_v : U_v \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ , given by  $\ell_{a,b}^v \mapsto (a, b)$ . We give  $U_v$  a topology using the bijection  $\varphi_v$ : a set  $U \subset U_v$  is open if and only if  $\varphi_v(U)$  is open in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . This makes  $\varphi_v$  into a homeomorphism.

Next let  $U_h$  be the set of all nonhorizontal lines in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . A nonhorizontal is of the form  $\ell_{c,d}^h = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x = cy + d\}$ . Each such line is uniquely determined by a point  $(c, d) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . So we have bijection  $\varphi_h : U_h \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ , given by  $\ell_{c,d}^h \mapsto (c, d)$ . We give  $U_h$  a topology using the bijection  $\varphi_h$ : a set  $U \subset U_h$  is open if and only if  $\varphi_h(U)$  is open in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . This makes  $\varphi_h$  into a homeomorphism.

Now we have  $U_v \cup U_h = X$ . To get a topology on  $X$ , we glue the topologies from  $U_v$  and  $U_h$ : a set  $U \subset X$  is open if and only if  $U \cap U_h$  is open in  $U_h$  and  $U \cap U_v$  is open in  $U_v$ . Let's calculate the transition maps  $\varphi_{vh}$  and  $\varphi_{hv}$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{vh}(c, d) &= \varphi_v \circ \varphi_h^{-1}(c, d) \\ &= \varphi_v(\ell_{c,d}^h) \\ &= \varphi_v\left(\ell_{\frac{1}{c}, -\frac{d}{c}}^v\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{c}, -\frac{d}{c}\right), \end{aligned}$$

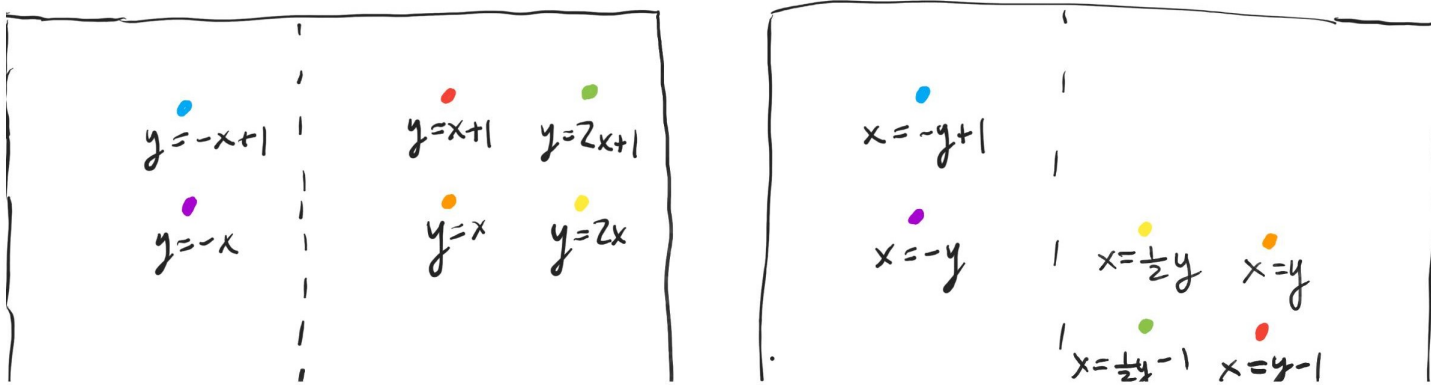
which is  $C^\infty$  whenever  $c \neq 0$ . Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{hv}(a, b) &= \varphi_h \circ \varphi_v^{-1}(a, b) \\ &= \varphi_h(\ell_{a,b}^v) \\ &= \varphi_h\left(\ell_{\frac{1}{a}, -\frac{b}{a}}^h\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{a}, -\frac{b}{a}\right), \end{aligned}$$

which is  $C^\infty$  whenever  $a \neq 0$ . Altogether, our gluing data consists of

$$\Omega_1 = \Omega_2 = \mathbb{R}^2, \quad \Omega_{12} = \Omega_{21} = \{(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid a \neq 0\}, \quad \phi_{12} : (a, b) \mapsto \left(\frac{1}{a}, -\frac{b}{a}\right).$$

This manifold is called the **Mobius strip**. We can visualize it as below:



*Remark 79.* We can describe this manifold in another way as follows: let  $G$  be the group given by

$$G := \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mid a, b \in \mathbb{R} \right\}.$$

The group  $G$  has a natural open subgroup

$$\text{Aff}(\mathbb{R}) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mid a, b \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } a \neq 0 \right\}.$$

Clearly  $G$  can be identified with  $\Omega_1 = \Omega_2 = \mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\text{Aff}(\mathbb{R})$  can be identified with  $\Omega_{12} = \Omega_{21} = \{(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid a \neq 0\}$ . Using these identifications, the transition map  $\phi_{12}$  is identified with the inverse map! Indeed, the inverse of  $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  is  $\begin{pmatrix} 1/a & -b/a \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ .

Given a set of gluing data,  $\mathcal{G} = (\Omega_i)_{i \in I}, (\Omega_{ij})_{(i,j) \in I \times I}, (\phi_{ji})_{(i,j) \in K}$ , it is natural to consider the collection of manifolds,  $M$ , parametrized by maps,  $\theta_i : \Omega_i \rightarrow M$ , whose domains are the  $\Omega_i$ 's and whose transition functions are given by the  $\phi_{ji}$ 's, that is, such that

$$\phi_{ji} = \theta_j^{-1} \circ \theta_i.$$

We will say that such manifolds are **induced** by the set of gluing data  $\mathcal{G}$ .

The parametrization maps  $\tau_i$  satisfy the property:  $\tau_i(\Omega_i) \cap \tau_j(\Omega_j) \neq \emptyset$  if and only if  $(i, j) \in K$  and if so,

$$\tau_i(\Omega_i) \cap \tau_j(\Omega_j) = \tau_i(\Omega_{ij}) = \tau_j(\Omega_{ji}).$$

Furthermore, they also satisfy the consistency condition:

$$\tau_i = \tau_j \circ \phi_{ji},$$

for all  $(i, j) \in K$ . If  $M$  is a manifold induced by the set of gluing data  $\mathcal{G}$ , then because the  $\theta_i$ 's are injective and  $\phi_{ji} = \theta_j^{-1} \circ \theta_i$ , the two properties stated above for the  $\tau_i$ 's also hold for the  $\theta_i$ 's. We will see that the manifold  $M_{\mathcal{G}}$  is a “universal” manifold induced by  $\mathcal{G}$  in the sense that every manifold induced by  $\mathcal{G}$  is the image of  $M_{\mathcal{G}}$  by some  $C^k$  map.

Interestingly, it is possible to characterize when two manifolds induced by the same set of gluing data are isomorphic in terms of a condition on their transition functions.

**Proposition 45.3.** *Given any set of gluing data,  $\mathcal{G} = (\Omega_i)_{i \in I}, (\Omega_{ij})_{(i,j) \in I \times I}, (\phi_{ji})_{(i,j) \in K}$ , for any two manifolds  $M$  and  $M'$  induced by  $\mathcal{G}$  given by families of parametrizations  $(\Omega_i, \theta_i)_{i \in I}$  and  $(\Omega_i, \theta'_i)_{i \in I}$ , respectively, if  $f : M \rightarrow M'$  is a  $C^k$  isomorphism, then there are  $C^k$  bijections,  $\rho_i : W_{ij} \rightarrow W'_{ij}$ , for some open subsets  $W_{ij}, W'_{ij} \subseteq \Omega_i$ , such that*

$$\phi'_{ji}(x) = \rho_j \circ \phi_{ji} \circ \rho_i^{-1}(x),$$

*for all  $x \in W_{ij}$  with  $\phi_{ji} = \theta_j^{-1} \circ \theta_i$  and  $\phi'_{ji} = \theta'^{-1}_j \circ \theta'_i$ . Furthermore,  $\rho_i = (\theta'^{-1}_i \circ f \circ \theta_i) |_{W_{ij}}$  and if  $\theta'^{-1}_i \circ f \circ \theta_i$  is a bijection from  $\Omega_i$  to itself and  $\theta'^{-1}_i \circ f \circ \theta_i(\Omega_{ij}) = \Omega_{ij}$  for all  $i, j$ , then  $W_{ij} = W'_{ij} = \Omega_i$ .*

## 46 Ringed Spaces

**Definition 46.1.** An  **$R$ -ringed space** is a pair  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  where  $X$  is a topological space and where  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is a sheaf of commutative  $R$ -algebras on  $X$ . The sheaf of rings  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is called the **structure sheaf** of  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ . A **locally  $R$ -ringed space** is an  $R$ -ringed space  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  such that the stalk  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  is a local ring for all  $x \in X$ . We then denote by  $\mathfrak{m}_x$  the maximal ideal of  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  and by  $\kappa(x) := \mathcal{O}_{X,x}/\mathfrak{m}_x$  its residue field.

## 47 Equivalence between $C^p$ -structures and maximal $C^p$ -atlases

Fix  $0 \leq p \leq \infty$ , and let  $X$  be a topological premanifold. Let  $\mathcal{A} = \{(\phi_i, U_i)\}$  and  $\mathcal{A}' = \{(\phi'_i, U'_i)\}$  be two  $C^p$ -atlases on  $X$ , so  $\phi_i : U_i \rightarrow V_i$  and  $\phi'_i : U'_i \rightarrow V'_i$  are homeomorphisms onto nonempty open subsets of finite-dimensional



$\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces, and the resulting homeomorphisms

$$\phi_{i_1} \circ \phi_{i_2}^{-1}: \phi_{i_2}(U_{i_1} \cap U_{i_2}) \rightarrow \phi_{i_1}(U_{i_1} \cap U_{i_2}) \quad \text{and} \quad \phi'_{i'_1} \circ \phi - 1: \phi'_{i'_2}(U'_{i'_1} \cap U'_{i'_2}) \rightarrow \phi'_{i'_1}(U'_{i'_1} \cap U'_{i'_2})$$

between open domains in the vector spaces are  $C^p$  isomorphisms in the usual sense. Let us say that a  $C^p$ -atlas  $\mathcal{A} = \{(\phi_i, U_i)\}_{i \in I}$  is **standardized** if the following two conditions hold:

1. for each  $(\phi_i, U_i)$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  the target vector space for  $\phi_i: U_i \rightarrow V_i$  is a Euclidean space  $\mathbb{R}^{n_i}$  (with  $n_i$  uniquely determined by  $U_i$ , as  $U_i$  is nonempty), and
2.  $\mathcal{A}$  has no repetitions in the sense that whenever  $i \neq j$  we have either  $U_i \neq U_j$ , or  $U_i = U_j$  (so  $n_i = n_j$ , and  $U_i = U_j$  is nonempty) the maps  $\phi_i, \phi_j: U_i \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n_i}$  do not coincide.

Since we are insisting on the lack of repetitions in  $\mathcal{A}$ , we may and do drop the indexing set for such atlases: a standardized  $C^p$  atlas is a certain kind of subset of the set of pairs  $(\phi, U)$  where  $U \subseteq X$  is a nonempty open set and  $\phi: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a homeomorphism onto an open subset of a Euclidean space (note that  $n$  is permitted to vary, though it is determined by  $(\phi, U)$  since  $U \neq \emptyset$ ).

If  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{A}'$  are standardized  $C^p$ -atlases on  $X$ , then it makes sense to ask if  $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{A}'$ . This means that each  $(\phi, U) \in \mathcal{A}$  is equal to some  $(\phi', U') \in \mathcal{A}'$ . We say that a standardized atlas  $\mathcal{A}'$  **dominates** a standardized atlas  $\mathcal{A}$  if  $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{A}'$  in the sense just defined. It is clear that if two standardized atlases dominate each other then they are literally equal. A standardized  $C^p$ -atlas  $\mathcal{A}$  on  $X$  is **maximal** if it is not strictly contained inside of another standardized  $C^p$  atlas of  $X$ .

### 47.1 From $C^p$ -Structures to Maximal $C^p$ -Atlases

Let  $\mathcal{O}$  be a  $C^p$ -structure on  $X$ . Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the set of all pairs  $(\phi, U)$  where  $U \subseteq X$  is a non-empty open set and  $\phi: (U, \mathcal{O}|_U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is a  $C^p$ -isomorphism onto an open set  $\phi(U) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  (with  $\mathbb{R}^n$  given its usual  $C^p$ -structure). The collection  $\mathcal{A}$  is a  $C^p$  atlas because of two facts: a composite of  $C^p$  maps is  $C^p$ , and for maps between opens in finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces the “old” notion of  $C^p$  is the same as the “new” notion (in terms of structured  $\mathbb{R}$ -spaces). It is obvious that  $\mathcal{A}$  is standardized. We want to prove that the standardized  $C^p$  atlas  $\mathcal{A}$  is maximal.

Let us see that we can recover  $\mathcal{O}$  from  $\mathcal{A}$ :

**Theorem 47.1.** *For any nonempty open  $U_0 \subseteq X$ ,  $\mathcal{O}(U_0)$  is the set of functions  $f: U_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that for each  $(\phi, U) \in \mathcal{A}$ , the function  $f \circ \phi^{-1}: \phi(U \cap U_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is  $C^p$  on the open subset  $\phi(U \cap U_0)$  in the target Euclidean space  $\mathbb{R}^n$  for  $\phi$ .*

*Proof.* The condition that  $f \circ \phi^{-1}$  be  $C^p$  on the open set  $\phi(U \cap U_0)$  says exactly that  $f \circ \phi^{-1} \in \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{R}^n}(\phi(U \cap U_0))$ , with  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{R}^n}$  denoting the usual  $C^p$ -structure on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Thus, since  $\phi$  defines a  $C^p$ -isomorphism between  $(U, \mathcal{O}|_U)$  and  $(\phi(U), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{R}^n}|_{\phi(U)})$ , by definition of  $\mathcal{A}$  in terms of  $\mathcal{O}$ , it follows that composition with  $\phi^{-1}$  carries  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{R}^n}(\phi(U'))$  bijectively over to  $\mathcal{O}(U')$  for any open subset  $U' \subseteq U$ . Taking  $U' = U \cap U_0$ , we conclude that the condition on  $f$  with respect to  $(\phi, U)$  in the theorem says exactly that  $f \in \mathcal{O}(U \cap U_0)$ . Since  $\mathcal{A}$  is an atlas, so as we vary  $(\phi, U) \in \mathcal{A}$  the opens  $U$  cover  $X$ , it follows that as we vary  $(\phi, U) \in \mathcal{A}$  the opens  $U \cap U_0$  cover  $U_0$ . By the locality axiom for the  $\mathbb{R}$ -space structure  $\mathcal{O}$ , it follows that  $f: U_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  lies in  $\mathcal{O}(U_0)$  if and only if its restriction to each  $U \cap U_0$  lies in  $\mathcal{O}(U \cap U_0)$ , and hence if and only if  $f \circ \phi^{-1}: \phi(U \cap U_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a  $C^p$  function on the open set  $\phi(U \cap U_0)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .  $\square$

### 47.2 From Maximal $C^p$ -Atlases to $C^p$ -Structures

Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be a maximal standardized  $C^p$ -atlas on  $X$ . For any non-empty open set  $U_0 \subseteq X$ , we define  $\mathcal{O}(U_0)$  to be the set of functions  $f: U_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that for all  $(U, \phi) \in \mathcal{A}$ , the composite map

$$f \circ \phi^{-1}: \phi(U \cap U_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

is a  $C^p$  function on the open subset  $\phi(U \cap U_0)$  in the Euclidean space  $\mathbb{R}^n$  that is the target of  $\phi$ . Also define  $\mathcal{O}(\emptyset) = \{0\}$ .

**Lemma 47.2.** *The correspondence  $U_0 \mapsto \mathcal{O}(U_0)$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -space structure on  $X$ . For any  $(U, \phi) \in \mathcal{A}$  and open  $U_0 \subseteq U$ ,  $\mathcal{O}(U_0)$  is the set of  $f: U_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that  $f \circ \phi^{-1}: \phi(U_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a  $C^p$  function on the open domain  $\phi(U_0)$  in a Euclidean space.*

*Proof.* The usual notion of  $C^p$  function on an open set in a Euclidean space is preserved under restriction to smaller opens and can be checked by working on an open covering. Thus, the first claim in the lemma follows easily from the definition of  $\mathcal{O}$ .  $\square$

## 48 deRham Cohomology

Suppose  $F(x, y) = \langle P(x, y), Q(x, y) \rangle$  is a smooth vector field representing a force on an open subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , and  $C$  is a parametrized curve  $c(t) = (x(t), y(t))$  in  $U$  from a point  $p$  to a point  $q$  with  $a \leq t \leq b$ . Then the work done by the force in moving a particle from  $p$  to  $q$  along  $C$  is given by the line integral  $\int_C Pdx + Qdy$ .

Such a line integral is easy to compute if the vector field  $F$  is the gradient of a scalar function  $f(x, y)$ :

$$F = \text{grad} f = \langle \partial_x f, \partial_y f \rangle.$$

By Stoke's theorem, the line integral is simply

$$\int_C \partial_x f dx + \partial_y f dy = \int_C df = f(q) - f(p).$$

A necessary condition for the vector field  $F = \langle P, Q \rangle$  to be a gradient is that

$$P_y = \partial_y \partial_x f = \partial_x \partial_y f = Q_x.$$

The question is now the following: if  $P_y - Q_x = 0$ , is the vector field  $F = \langle P, Q \rangle$  on  $U$  the gradient of some scalar function  $f(x, y)$  on  $U$ ? In terms of differential forms, the question becomes the following: if the 1-form  $\omega = Pdx + Qdy$  is closed on  $U$ , is it exact? The answer to this question is sometimes yes and sometimes no, depending on the topology of  $U$ .

### 48.1 de Rham Complex

Let  $M$  be a manifold and let  $R$  denote the ring  $\Omega^0(M) := C^\infty(M)$ . Then we have the following cochain complex over  $R$

$$(\Omega(M), d) := \quad 0 \longrightarrow \Omega^0(M) \xrightarrow{d} \Omega^1(M) \xrightarrow{d} \Omega^2(M) \xrightarrow{d} \cdots, \quad (61)$$

where  $d$  denotes the exterior derivative. We denote  $H_{\text{dR}}(M)$  to be the cohomology of  $(\Omega(M), d)$  and call it the **deRham cohomology** of  $M$ . We denote by  $Z(M)$  to be the cycles of  $(\Omega(M), d)$  and  $B(M)$  to be the boundaries of  $(\Omega(M), d)$ .

**Proposition 48.1.** *If the manifold  $M$  has  $r$  connected components, then its de Rham cohomology in degree 0 is  $H^0(M) = \mathbb{R}^r$ . An element of  $H^0(M)$  is specified by an ordered- $r$ -tuple of real numbers, each real number representing a constant function on a connected component of  $M$ .*

*Proof.* Since there are no nonzero exact 0-forms,

$$H^0(M) = Z^0(M).$$

Suppose  $f$  is a closed 0-form on  $M$ , i.e.  $f$  is a  $C^\infty$  function on  $M$  such that  $df = 0$ . On any chart  $(U, x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , we have

$$df = \sum_{\lambda=1}^n (\partial_{x_\lambda} f) dx_\lambda.$$

Thus  $df = 0$  on  $U$  if and only if all the partial derivatives  $\partial_{x_\lambda} f$  vanish identically on  $U$ . This in turn is equivalent to  $f$  being locally constant on  $U$ . Hence, the closed 0-forms on  $M$  are precisely the locally constant functions on  $M$ . Such a function must be constant on each connected component on  $M$ . If  $M$  has  $r$  connected components, then a locally constant function on  $M$  can be specified by an ordered set of  $r$  real numbers. Thus,  $Z^0(M) = \mathbb{R}^r$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 48.2.** *On a manifold  $M$  of dimension  $n$ , the de Rham cohomology  $H^k(M)$  vanishes for  $k > n$ .*

*Proof.* At any point  $p \in M$ , then tangent space  $T_p M$  is a vector space of dimension  $n$ . If  $\omega$  is a  $k$ -form on  $M$ , then  $\omega_p \in A_k(T_p M)$ , the space of alternating  $k$ -linear functions on  $T_p M$ . If  $k > n$ , then  $A_k(T_p M) = 0$ . Hence, for  $k > n$ , the only  $k$ -form on  $M$  is the zero form.  $\square$

#### 48.1.1 Examples of de Rham Cohomology

**Example 48.1.** (De Rham cohomology of the real line) Since the real line  $\mathbb{R}^1$  is connected, we have

$$H^0(\mathbb{R}^1) = \mathbb{R}.$$

For dimensional reasons, there are no nonzero 2-forms on  $\mathbb{R}^1$ . This implies that every 1-form on  $\mathbb{R}^1$  is closed. A 1-form  $f(x)dx$  on  $\mathbb{R}^1$  is exact if and only if there is a  $C^\infty$  function  $g(x)$  on  $\mathbb{R}^1$  such that

$$f(x)dx = dg = g'(x)dx,$$



where  $g'(x)$  is the calculus derivative of  $g$  with respect to  $x$ . Such a function  $g(x)$  is simply an antiderivative of  $f(x)$ , for example

$$g(x) = \int_0^x f(t) dt.$$

This proves that every 1-form on  $\mathbb{R}^1$  is exact. Therefore,  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^1) = 0$ .

**Example 48.2.** (De Rham cohomology of the circle) Let  $S^1$  be the unit circle in the  $xy$ -plane. Since  $S^1$  is connected, we have  $H^0(S^1) = \mathbb{R}$ , and since  $S^1$  is one-dimensional, we have  $H^k(S^1) = 0$  for all  $k \geq 2$ . It remains to compute  $H^1(S^1)$ .

Let  $h : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^1$  be given by  $h(t) = (\cos t, \sin t)$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $i : [0, 2\pi] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be the inclusion map. Restricting the domain of  $h$  to  $[0, 2\pi]$  gives a parametrization  $F := h \circ i : [0, 2\pi] \rightarrow S^1$  of the circle. A nowhere-vanishing 1-form on  $S^1$  is given by  $\omega = -ydx + xdy$ . Note that

$$\begin{aligned} h^*\omega &= -\sin t d(\cos t) + \cos t d(\sin t) \\ &= (\sin^2 t + \cos^2 t) dt \\ &= dt. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} F^*\omega &= i^*h^*\omega \\ &= i^*dt \\ &= dt, \end{aligned}$$

and so

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{S^1} \omega &= \int_{F([0, 2\pi])} \omega \\ &= \int_{[0, 2\pi]} F^*\omega \\ &= \int_0^{2\pi} dt \\ &= 2\pi. \end{aligned}$$

Since the circle has dimension 1, all 1-forms on  $S^1$  are closed, so  $\Omega^1(S^1) = Z^1(S^1)$ . The integration of 1-forms on  $S^1$  defines a linear map

$$\varphi : Z^1(S^1) = \Omega^1(S^1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad \varphi(\alpha) = \int_{S^1} \alpha.$$

Because  $\varphi(\omega) = 2\pi \neq 0$ , the linear map  $\varphi : \Omega^1(S^1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is onto.

By Stokes's theorem, the exact 1-forms on  $S^1$  are in  $\text{Ker}(\varphi)$ . Conversely, we will show that all 1-forms in  $\text{Ker}(\varphi)$  are exact. Suppose  $\alpha = f\omega$  is a smooth 1-form on  $S^1$  such that  $\varphi(\alpha) = 0$ . Let  $\bar{f} = h^*f = f \circ h \in \Omega^0(\mathbb{R})$ . Then  $\bar{f}$  is periodic of period  $2\pi$  and

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \int_{S^1} \alpha \\ &= \int_{F([0, 2\pi])} F^*\alpha \\ &= \int_{[0, 2\pi]} (i^*h^*f)(t) \cdot F^*\omega \\ &= \int_0^{2\pi} \bar{f}(t) dt. \end{aligned}$$

## 48.2 The $C^\infty$ Hairy Ball Theorem

Consider the unit sphere  $S^n \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  with  $n > 0$ . If  $n$  is odd then there exists a nowhere-vanishing smooth vector field on  $S^n$ . Indeed, if  $n = 2k + 1$  then consider the vector field  $\vec{v}$  on  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1} = \mathbb{R}^{2k+2}$  given by

$$\vec{v} = (-x_2\partial_{x_1} + x_1\partial_{x_2}) + \cdots + (-x_{2k+2}\partial_{x_{2k+1}} + x_{2k+1}\partial_{x_{2k+2}}) = \sum_{j=0}^k (-x_{2j+2}\partial_{x_{2j+1}} + x_{2j+1}\partial_{x_{2j+2}}).$$

For any point  $p \in S^n$  it is easy to see that  $\vec{v}(p) \in T_p(\mathbb{R}^{2k+2})$  is perpendicular to the line spanned by  $\sum_i x_i(p)\partial_{x_i}|_p$ , so it lies in the hyperplane  $T_p(S^n)$  orthogonal to this line. In other words, the smooth section  $\vec{v}|_{S^n}$  of the pullback

bundle  $(T(\mathbb{R}^{n+1}))|_{S^n}$  over  $S^n$  takes values in the subbundle  $T(S^n)$ , which is to say that  $\vec{v}|_{S^n}$  is a smooth vector field on the manifold  $S^n$ . This is a visibly nowhere-vanishing vector field.

The above construction does not work if  $n$  is even, so there arises the question of whether there exists a nowhere-vanishing smooth vector field on  $S^n$  for even  $n$ . The answer is negative, and is called the **hairy ball** theorem.

**Theorem 48.1.** *A smooth vector field on  $S^n$  must vanish somewhere if  $n$  is even.*

*Proof.* Let  $\vec{v}$  be a smooth vector field on  $S^n$ , and assume that it is nowhere-vanishing. For each  $p \in S^n$ , let  $\gamma_p : [0, \pi/\|\vec{v}(p)\|] \rightarrow S^n$  be the smooth parametric great circle (with constant speed) going from  $p$  to  $-p$  with velocity vector  $\gamma_p'(0) = \vec{v}(p) \neq 0$  at  $t = 0$  (This would not make sense if  $\vec{v}(p) = 0$ ). Working in the plane spanned by  $p \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  and  $\vec{v}(p) \in T_p(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ , we get the formula

$$\gamma_p(t) = \cos(t\|\vec{v}(p)\|)p + \sin(t\|\vec{v}(p)\|)\frac{\vec{v}(p)}{\|\vec{v}(p)\|} \in S^n \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n+1}.$$

(These algebraic formulas would not make sense if  $\vec{v}$  vanishes somewhere on  $S^n$ ). Consider the “flow” mapping

$$F : S^n \times [0, 1] \rightarrow S^n,$$

defined by  $(p, t) \mapsto \gamma_p(\pi t/\|\vec{v}(p)\|)$ . The formula for  $\gamma_p(t)$  makes it clear that  $F$  is a smooth map (and is continuous if  $\vec{v}$  is merely continuous and nowhere-vanishing). Now obviously  $F(p, 0) = p$  for all  $p \in S^n$  and  $F(p, 1) = -p$  for all  $p \in S^n$ . Hence,  $F$  defines a smooth homotopy from the identity map on  $S^n$  to the antipodal map  $p \mapsto -p$  on  $S^n$  (and is a continuous homotopy if  $\vec{v}$  is merely continuous and nowhere-vanishing). Thus, to prove the hairy ball theorem we just have to prove that if  $n$  is even then the identity and antipodal maps  $S^n \rightarrow S^n$  are not smoothly homotopic to each other; likewise to get the continuous version we just need to prove that there is no continuous homotopy deforming one of these maps into the other.

To prove the *non-existence* of such a homotopy, we shall use the (smooth) homotopy invariance of deRham cohomology. Indeed, by this homotopy-invariance we get that under the existence of such a  $\vec{v}$  the antipodal map  $A : S^n \rightarrow S^n$  induces the identity map  $A^* : H_{\text{dR}}^k(S^n) \rightarrow H_{\text{dR}}^k(S^n)$  on the  $k$ th deRham cohomology of  $S^n$  for all  $k \geq 0$ . Let us focus on the case  $k = n$ . To get a contradiction, we just have to prove that if  $n$  is even then  $A^*$  as a self-map of  $H_{\text{dR}}^n(S^n)$  is *not* the identity map.

Consider the  $n$ -form on  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  defined by

$$\omega = \sum_{i=1}^{n+1} (-1)^{i-1} x_i dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \widehat{dx_i} \wedge \cdots \wedge dx_{n+1}.$$

Clearly  $d\omega = (n+1)dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dx_{n+1}$ , so for the unit ball  $B^{n+1} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$  with its standard orientation we have

$$\int_{B^{n+1}} d\omega = (n+1)\text{vol}(B^{n+1}) \neq 0.$$

By Stokes’ theorem for  $B^{n+1}$ , if we let  $\eta = \omega|_{S^n}$  and we give  $S^n = \partial B^{n+1}$  the induced boundary orientation, then

$$\int_{S^n} \eta = \int_{B^{n+1}} d\omega \neq 0.$$

Hence, by Stokes’ theorem for the boundaryless smooth compact oriented manifold  $S^n$  we conclude that the top-degree differential form  $\eta$  on  $S^n$  is not exact. That is, its deRham cohomology class  $[\eta] \in H_{\text{dR}}^n(S^n)$  is non-zero. (Note that  $\omega$  is not closed as an  $n$ -form on  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ , but its pullback  $\eta$  on  $S^n$  is necessarily closed on  $S^n$  purely for elementary reasons, as  $S^n$  is  $n$ -dimensional.)

By the existence of the smooth homotopy between  $A$  and the identity map, it follows that  $A^*$  on  $H_{\text{dR}}^n(S^n)$  is the identity map, so  $[A^*(\eta)] = A^*([\eta])$  is equal to  $[\eta]$ . That is, the top-degree differential forms  $A^*(\eta)$  and  $\eta$  on  $S^n$  differ by an exact form. But the antipodal map  $A : S^n \rightarrow S^n$  is induced by the negation map  $N : \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ , and by inspection of the definition of  $\omega \in \Omega_{\mathbb{R}^{n+1}}^n(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})$  we have  $N^*(\omega) = (-1)^{n+1}\omega$ . Hence, pulling back this equality to the sphere gives  $A^*(\eta) = (-1)^{n+1}\eta$  in  $\Omega_{S^n}^n(S^n)$ . Thus, in  $H_{\text{dR}}^n(S^n)$  we have

$$[\eta] = A^*([\eta]) = [A^*(\eta)] = [(-1)^{n+1}\eta] = (-1)^{n+1}[\eta].$$

If  $n$  is even we therefore have  $[\eta] = -[\eta]$ , so  $[\eta] = 0$ . But we have already seen via Stokes’ theorem for the boundaryless manifold  $S^n$  and for the manifold with boundary  $B^{n+1}$  that  $[\eta]$  is nonzero. This completes the proof.  $\square$

## 49 Exercises

### 49.1 $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R})$

Let  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R}) := \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \mid ad - bc = 1 \right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^4$ . Let  $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R})$  be a path in  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R})$ , given by

$$\gamma(t) := \begin{pmatrix} a(t) & b(t) \\ c(t) & d(t) \end{pmatrix}.$$

such that  $\gamma(0) = I := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . Then by differentiating the identity  $a(t)d(t) - b(t)c(t) = 1$  and evaluating at  $t = 0$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \dot{a}(0)d(0) + a(0)\dot{d}(0) - \dot{b}(0)c(0) - b(0)\dot{c}(0) \\ &= \dot{a}(0) + \dot{d}(0). \end{aligned}$$

Or  $\dot{a}(0) = -\dot{d}(0)$ . In particular, this means that  $\mathrm{Tr}(\dot{\gamma}(0)) = 0$ .

Conversely, suppose we have a matrix  $A$  such that  $\mathrm{Tr}(A) = 0$ . Can we find a path  $\gamma$  in  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $\dot{\gamma}(0) = A$ ? Indeed, we can. The matrix exponential works:

$$e^{tA} := I + A + \frac{1}{2}A^2 + \frac{1}{6}A^3 + \cdots.$$

This is because

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt}(e^{tA}) &= \frac{d}{dt} \left( I + tA + \frac{1}{2}t^2A^2 + \frac{1}{6}t^3A^3 + \cdots \right) \\ &= \frac{d}{dt}(I) + \frac{d}{dt}(tA) + \frac{1}{2}\frac{d}{dt}(t^2A^2) + \frac{1}{6}\frac{d}{dt}(t^3A^3) + \cdots \\ &= A + tA^2 + \frac{1}{2}t^2A^3 + \cdots \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\frac{d}{dt}(e^{tA})|_{t=0} = A$ . Also we have  $e^{tA} \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R})$  since

$$\begin{aligned} \det(e^{tA}) &= e^{\mathrm{Tr}(tA)} \\ &= e^0 \\ &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

### 49.2 $\mathrm{SO}_2(\mathbb{R})$

Let  $\mathrm{SO}_2(\mathbb{R}) := \{A \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R}) \mid AA^t = I\}$ . Let  $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathrm{SO}_2(\mathbb{R})$  be a path in  $\mathrm{SO}_2(\mathbb{R})$ , given by

$$\gamma(t) := \begin{pmatrix} a(t) & b(t) \\ c(t) & d(t) \end{pmatrix}.$$

such that  $\gamma(0) = I := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . Then by differentiating the identity  $I = \gamma(t)\gamma(t)^t$  and evaluating at  $t = 0$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \dot{\gamma}(0)\gamma(0)^t + \gamma(0)\dot{\gamma}(0)^t \\ &= \dot{\gamma}(0) + \dot{\gamma}(0)^t. \end{aligned}$$

In particular, this means that  $\dot{\gamma}(0)$  is a skew-symmetric matrix.

### 49.3 Vector Field in $\mathbb{R}^3$

Let  $\omega$  be a vector field in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  given by  $\omega := (0, y, 0) := y\partial_y$ . Let's find a path  $\gamma$  in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  such that  $\dot{\gamma} = \omega(\gamma)$ . A general path  $\gamma$  in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  has the form

$$\gamma(t) := (a(t), b(t), c(t)) \quad \text{and} \quad \dot{\gamma}(t) = (\dot{a}(t), \dot{b}(t), \dot{c}(t)).$$

Therefore  $\omega(\gamma)$  (So we need

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{a}(t) &= 0 \\ \dot{b}(t) &= b(t) \\ \dot{c}(t) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

In particular,  $\gamma(t) = (a(0), b(0)e^t, c(0))$  works.

## 49.4 Lie Groups

**Definition 49.1.** A **Lie group** is a  $C^\infty$  manifold  $G$  that is also a group such that the two group operations, multiplication

$$G \times G \rightarrow G, \quad (a, b) \mapsto ab,$$

and inverse

$$G \rightarrow G, \quad a \mapsto a^{-1},$$

are  $C^\infty$ .

For  $a \in G$ , denote by  $\ell_a : G \rightarrow G$ , where  $\ell_a(x) = ax$ , the operation of **left multiplication by  $a$** , and by  $r_a : G \rightarrow G$ , where  $r_a(x) = xa$ , the operation of **right multiplication by  $a$** . We also call left and right multiplications **left** and **right translations**.

Actually smoothness of inversion can be dropped from the definition of a Lie Group.

**Theorem 49.1.** *Let  $G$  be a  $C^\infty$  manifold and suppose it is equipped with a group structure such that the composition law  $m : G \times G \rightarrow G$  is  $C^\infty$ . Then the inversion  $G \rightarrow G$  is  $C^\infty$ .*

*Proof.* Consider the “shearing transformation”

$$\Sigma : G \times G \rightarrow G \times G,$$

defined by  $\Sigma(g, h) = (g, gh)$ . This is bijective since we are using a group law, and it is  $C^\infty$  since the composition law  $m$  is assumed to be  $C^\infty$ . (Recall that if  $M, M', M''$  are  $C^\infty$  manifolds, a map  $M \rightarrow M' \times M''$  is  $C^\infty$  if and only if its component maps  $M \rightarrow M'$  and  $M \rightarrow M''$  are  $C^\infty$ , due to the nature of product manifold structures.)

We claim that  $\Sigma$  is a diffeomorphism. Granting this,

$$G = \{e\} \times G \longrightarrow G \times G \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{-1}} G \times G$$

is  $C^\infty$ , but explicitly this composite map is  $g \mapsto (g, g^{-1})$ , so its second component  $g \mapsto g^{-1}$  is  $C^\infty$  as desired. Since  $\Sigma$  is a  $C^\infty$  bijection, the  $C^\infty$  property for its inverse is equivalent to  $\Sigma$  being a **local isomorphism** (i.e. each point in its source has an open neighborhood carried diffeomorphically onto an open neighborhood in the target). By the Inverse Function Theorem, this is equivalent to the isomorphism property for the tangent map

$$d\Sigma(g, h) : T_g(G) \oplus T_h(G) = T_{(g,h)}(G \times G) \rightarrow T_{(g,gh)}(G \times G) = T_g(G) \oplus T_{gh}(G)$$

for all  $g, h \in G$ .

We shall now use left and right translations to reduce this latter “linear” problem to the special case  $g = h = e$ , and in that special case we will be able to compute the tangent map explicitly and see the isomorphism property by inspection.

□

## References

- [1] Brian Conrad, *Quotients by group actions*, <https://virtualmath1.stanford.edu/~conrad/diffgeomPage/handouts/qtmanifold.pdf>.
- [2] Loring W. Tu (2011), *An Introduction to Manifolds* (2nd ed.). Springer.